





DISCOURSE  
OF  
CHYRURGIE

LOWE

1612















3878<sup>(1)</sup>  
B

LOWE, P.

Wanting pp 245-6, 349-50

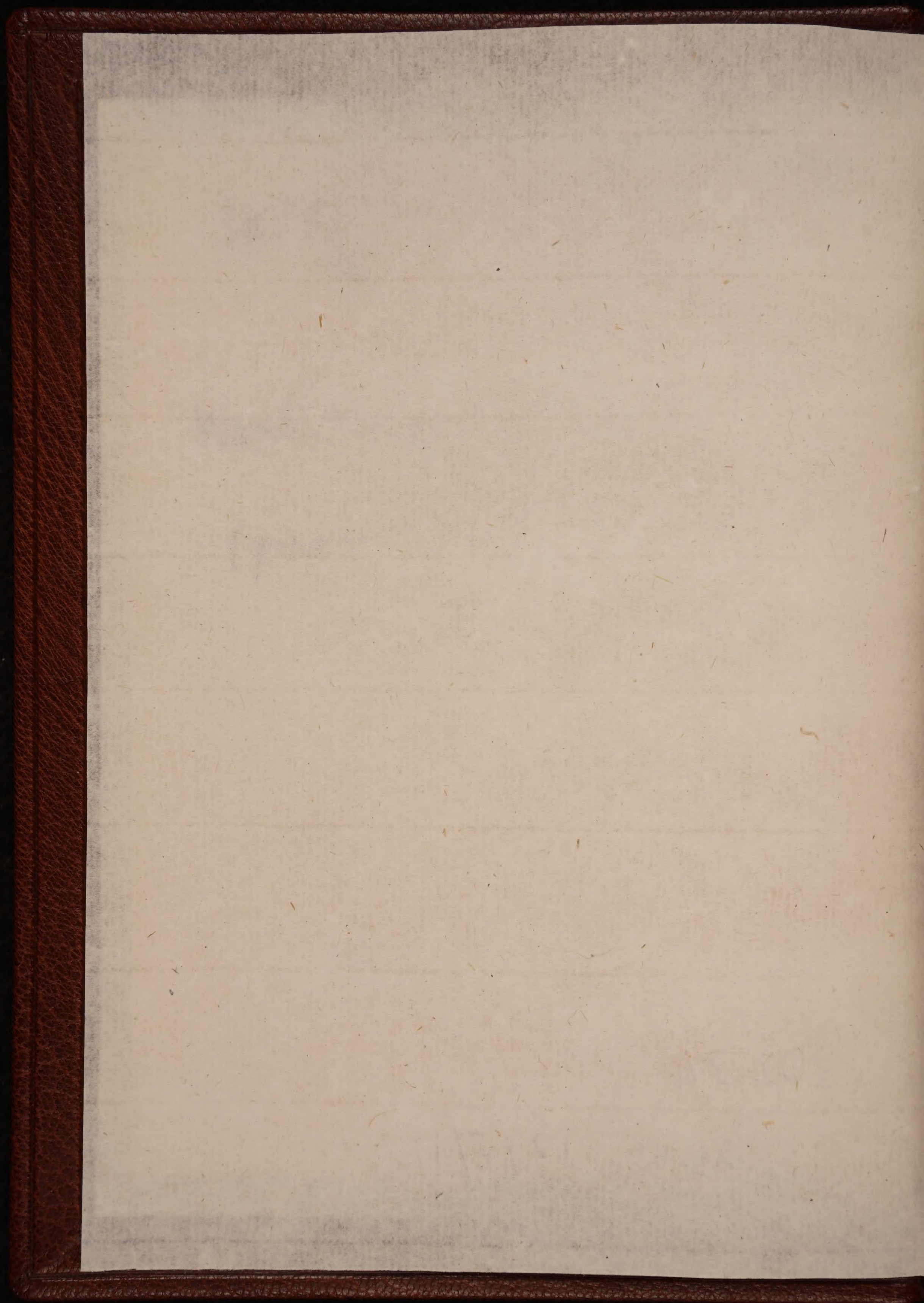
(present in copy 2)



30234

Payne 12/7/11















A  
DISCOVRSE  
OF THE WHOLE ART  
OF  
CHYRVRGERIE.

---

Wherein is exactly set downe the  
Definition, Causes, Accidents, Prognosti-  
cations, and Cures of all sorts of Diseases, both in  
generall and particular, which at any time hereto.

fore haue been practized by any Chirurgeon : Accor-  
ding to the opinion of all the ancient professors  
of that Science.

*Which is not onely profitable for Chyrurgions ; but  
also for all sorts of people : both for preventing of  
sicknesse ; and reuerie of health.*

Compiled by PETER LOVVE Scottishman, Doctor in the  
facultie of Chirurgie at *Paris* : and ordinary Chyrurgeon  
to the French King and Navarre.

*Wherunto is added the rule of making Remedies which Chirur-  
gions doe commonly vse : with the Presages  
of Diuine Hyppocrates.*

The second Edition ; corrected, and much augmented,  
and enlarged by the Author.

---

AT LONDON,

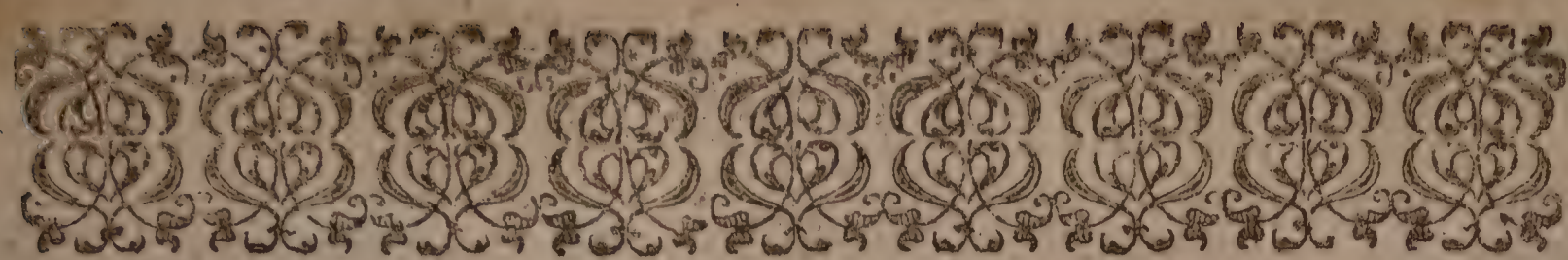
Printed by Thomas Purfoot.

An. Dom. 1612.









TO  
The vertuous, Right Honourable,  
*and most worthy of all honors, & good titles, James  
Hamilton Earle of Abircorne, Lord Paslay Kilpatrick,  
Monkcastle &c. Knight of Mungton, Sheriffe heretable  
of Linlithgowshire, one of his Maiesties most Honou-  
rable Prinie Counsaile : Your honours dutifull loving  
seruitour wisheth a long and happy life,  
with increase of Honour, and  
Vertue.*



Y VERY GOOD

Lord, the vniuersall appro-  
bation of the best practi-  
sed in my professiō abroad,  
of a few of my trauells,  
hath embolned me to re-  
view them more curious-  
ly, & renew them in more  
comely fashion, detracting  
what seemeth superfluous,

and supplying some defects. In which labour I haue ex-  
perimented the vndoubted truth of the vulgar saying,  
that our last workes smell of greatest perfection,  
proceeding from riper judgement. The most suffici-  
ent in all ages, *prouocarunt a prioribus ad posteriora cogi-  
tata : Deus & natura vt nihil frustra sit; nec precipi-  
tante* : as God in the production of the great world, v-  
seth successiue creation, substituting the most cōsummate  
workes to the antecedent; Man the abridged Image of  
the Diuinitie, the Crowne and end of all : but so, that  
his matter precedeth his forme, *argillaceo ergastulo spira-*



---

## The Epistle

---

*culum vita insufflatum* : so nature in the fabrication of the *Microcosme* of the *Embryon*, which time formeth *omnibus numeris absolutum hominem*. Thus fareth it with the Imitators of so accomplished Architypes; in whose number I enrowle my selfe, hauing already published the first fruites of my studies of the whole Art of Chirurgerie, in Theorick and practick, with the curation of a great many other diseases not yet practised by any Chirurgion: but yet as a matter somewhat endigest which now I recall and strue to perfect in a more methodicall order. All which I embolden my selfe to shroud vnder your honourable shield and protection, in regard of your Honours manifold curtesies and liberalities extended to all Schollers and strangers, whereof I haue good experience in infinite benefits bestowed by your Honour, for the which do I thinke my selfe principally bound to doe you all seruice. The which I being now willing to performe, as also tending the comoditie and benefit of my natie country, as likewise to exonerate my selfe of that burden which euery man is bound to vndertake for the common wealth. But if my Industrie could haue produced better effects, it would reioyce to passe vnder the protection of so honourable a Patron. May it then please your Lordshippe, (euen as *Minerua* harboureth her Owle vnder the target, *Citherea* the deformed *Cyclops* in her louely bosome, and *Apelle* the night rauen vnder the heauenly lute) to accept in good part, the painefull trauels of your humble seruant, as a manifestation of my vnfeined seruice, and particular durie to your Honour: which I humbly offer to you as a pledge of my zeale and good will toward you, your Honourable and  
matchles



*Dedicatorie.*

matchles vertues, which are sprung partly from your noble Parents, but more plentifully enriched by your iuincible mind, and peerles endeauors, whereby yee manifest to the world the true *Idea* of perfect nobilitie, Leauing to your posteritie a memorable remembrāce of your neuer-dying Fame. If your L. will vouchsafe to patronize my trauels, farre vnworthy so honourable a Patron, I shalbe safely protected from the malignitie of Calumniators, who pick out detractions of the perfectest workes; as the *Cantharides* poyson of the most fragrant flowers: but my labours want not your reward, if it win your L. goodwill: nor my mind his desire, if your L. vouchsafe to fauour. And thus beseeching God the giuer of all true honour, with wisdom to encrease both these blessings in you, with as many happy yeeres, as vertues, and whatsoever good thing else: commending my labours with my selfe to your L. honourable protection and good liking, as one that daylie entermit-teth not to wish the aduancement of your Honourable estate. So I humbly take my leaue at my owne house in *Glasgow*, the 20. day of December in the yeere of our Lord God. 1612.

*Your Honours most dutifull*

*seruitour to command.*

PETER LOVVE.



C 3

To

30234





## To the friendlie Reader.



*T*is commonly sayd, as it is of truth (good friend) that Idleness is the mother of all vices, which doth not onely engender them, but also nourisheth and entertaineth the same: for avoyding whereof, as also because thou hast had my first labours agreeable, I have taken courage to trauell further for thy profit: for my greatest contentment is to aduance thy study, and to instruct thee in the whole course of Chirurgerie, with the manner to cure the most part of all diseases vsually practised by Chirurgians, as well by ancient as late writers. of diuers & sundry practises, & hidden secrets, not practised heretofore by any Chirurgian, as you shall clearly perceine in this worke. Three things do I not publish, as Plato his common wealth, Cicero his Oratorie, and Sir Thomas More his Eutopia: Leauing to the world a wished perfection not practised. But I impart to you my labours, hidde secrets, and experiments by me practised, and dayly put in vse, to the great comfort, ease, and delight of you, and such as haue had occasion to vse my helpe in France, Flaunders, and else where, the space of 22. yeeres: thereafter being Chirurgian maior to the Spanish Regiments at Paris, 2. yeeres: next following the French King my Master in the warres 6. yeeres, where I tooke commoditie to practise all points and operations of Chirurgerie. Upon which occasion I endeauoured my selfe to collect my practises at vacant houres, into this Booke, according to the opinion of the ancient & learned practitioners in Physick and Chirurgerie, in such plaine termes as I could, for the vse of the common sort: which now I doe offer to thee newly corrected and enlarged for thy greater comfort. Seeing then I doe not entreat of any vaine fable, but of such earnest and serious matter as toucheth the profit of all men in generall, and the benefit and the commoditie of euerie



## To the Reader.

every one in particular : so I hope the readers hereof will vouchsafe to attribute and graunt such diligence and willing eare, mind, and attention hereunto, as yee are accustomed in these cases which yee account most waightie, grave, and necessarie, and which yee are most desirous to know, learn, and understand; herein thou mayest reap the fruites of my travells and studies, and by thy friendlie accepting of my labours, or at least my good will, thou shalt gaine to thy selfe fruition and commoditie of such other things as I shall enforce my selfe in short time to entreat of, profitable for all men, as you shall perceine hereafter, specially in the treatise of the helpe of Women in their Infantment, with the curation of such diseases as happen to maydens, and married women, with the treatise called the Poore mans guide, which are workes esteemed by the learned : who haue seene them most necessarie for the common-wealth. Some men perhaps more respecting their owne private gaine, than publique profit, will thinke that I should haue concealed the misteries of this art, as the Egyptians, who were the first inuentors of it, did write in letters Hierogliphiques, all their remedies. But I rather follow the Græcians, who use once euerie yere to write in the temple of Esculapius, that was dressed in Epidauro in the presence of all the people, all the sickness they had cured, together with their severall remedies : for as the philosopher Aristotle sayth, bonum quod communius, eò præstantius : also beeing mooued by the counsell of Plato, who writ diuinely : and Cicero in the first of his offices saying, we are not borne for our selues, nor should haue regard to our owne particulars, but also to the commoditie of our parents, friends, and generally to the commonwealth of that Country where we tooke our birth. The which was also obserued amongst the old Romanes, when their estate most flourished : For they did account him among the number of the infortunates, that during his life did not manifest himselfe in some one publique benefit or other, his affections and thankfull heart to the place wherein he was first bred. Neuertheles there will be some enuious, malicious, and ignorant persons, who onely are borne to find fault, before they will or can vnderstand, not ceasing to barke at me, and my travells, yet neither haue power to bite, nor doe better. Such I may iustlie compare  
to



## To the Reader.

to Aristarchus, or Antiphilos, those peereles pick-thanks, whose filthy hearts being so inflamed with malice, will find fault. To whome I will answer that of Erasmus Roterodamus, Vt ignaui canes omnibus ignotis allatrant; ita Barbari quicquid non intelligunt, carpunt ac damnant. Onely vppon this hope I rest, that as in goodwill and loue I haue done this for the aduancement of all men, specially young Chirurgions, so the well disposed and all such friends, who will weigh error in ballance of goodwill, will censure in the best sort, and where the defects are, they will in friendly and charitable manner correct, and amend the same. To such doe I addresse this worke: whome I hope will consider, that in man no perfection can be found, but onely belongeth to God. The Ignorants, and such as find fault, I would desire them to put to their hands and doe better: wishing euerie man as much profit, and benefit in reading hereof, as my willing attempt hath intended them. And so I end, bidding thee most hartily farewell, from my house in Glalgow, the 20. day of December in the yeere of our Lord God. 1612.

PETER LOVVE,

To





TO  
My very W<sup>or</sup>shipfull, learned, and  
well experimented good friends, Gilbert Primrose  
Sergeant Chirurgian to the Kings Maiestie; IAMES  
HARVIE cheife Chirurgian to the Queenes Maiestie; those of the  
Worshipfull companie of Chirurgians in London, and E-  
denborough, and all such well experimented men in this  
Kingdome who are licenced to professe the Diuine art  
of Chirurgerie : Peter Lowe wisheth all  
happines of Life.



L L men of vertue, and well af-  
fectioned to the Common-welth  
(Worshipfull Brethren) ought  
without all dissimulation to en-  
deauour themselves by all means  
possible, to instruct such as erre  
and doe ignorantly in that which  
is profitable to the Common-  
wealth : as also to make such  
know that which is hurtfull and

vnprofitable, to the effect, the simple or common sort, may  
choose that which is commodious and profitable, and reiect  
that which is hurtfull : For these, and diuers other good consi-  
derations, ought all men (chiefely yee who haue authoritie,  
Learning, and Knowledge in the Art) to stop such as worke  
vnskillfully : as I doubt not, to the grieve of all honest men,  
this art is seene dayly abused by a number of ignorant malici-  
ous people, who passe away (but tryall, or punishment) like  
as cosoners, quack-saluers, charlittans, witches, Charmers, & di-  
uers other sorts of abusers; whose names I will for the present  
omit, in hope they will desist, their owne consciences accusing  
them

A



them. But alas I doubt not, but the most part of them lacke both soule, conscience, and feare of God, are of more vnhappy life, ignorant, and voyd of all skill giuing euer to the diseased *quid pro quo*, promising maruails, and to cure all things in short space : which I graunt is a sure *Maxime*, as I could giue ouer many examples to the destruction of many, and grieffe of those to whome they appertaine. Of those abusers, there are eight or nine diuers sorts : For some runne from one towne to another, promising to heale all things by vomitories, and laxates, chiefly with antimonie, *præcipitatum*, which is powder of Quicksilver, Laureola, Elebour, Colocynth, *Æsula*, Catapus, and diuers other poysonayble medicaments, full of venom vncorrected, without eyther waight or measure : those are the death of infinite numbers, who for the most part end their daies by cruel vomiting, insatiable going to the stoole, with syncops and intolerable dolour of the stomacke and intestines; of those, some die the first or second day, the most robust, the seventh or eight day at the farthest. Another sort of those deceiuers alleage to haue their knowledge by reading some other vulgar Bookes, those fellowes promise rare things, and are garnished with some words that are obscure, and not common, nor well can be vnderstood to themselves, or by their Auditor : But to make it the more plausible they euer thrust in those obscure words, in any purpose, and to make the matter to haue more faith, they enterlace Scripture, with sighs, and sobs, and diuers other circumstances. The third takes vpon him to heale all things by Charmes, and praying to Saints of the like name that the sicknes is of, alleaging the diseases to be some Saints euill, as for example : such as become paralitick through a deflux of humors on the nerves, they terme it to be a blast of euill wind, and by praying to S. *Blaot*, it shall heale: such as are hydropick, doe pray to S. *Hidrop* : such as loose their sight, pray to S. *Cleere*, those who heare euill or hath disease in their eares, pray to S. *Oxyn* : such as hath the gut called *Chiragra*, or any other disease in the hands, pray to Saint. *Main*, with diuers other which were long to repeat. Those  
deceitfull



deceitfull ignorant people, consider not that all those diseases were long before any of those Saints. The fourth sort alleage to haue the curation of all diseases from their Parents, as heritage, and those be impudent deceauers. The fift sort vaunts to be skilfull in such like diseases, by experience vpon themselves, alleadging them to be most skilfull in the cure of the french Poxe, because he was cured himselfe sundry times of the same disease. The sixt takes vpon him to cure all things by poysonable Vomitories onely, chiefly antimony, by the which those deceauers peruerbs all orders diuine and humane, in townes, and nations, as euer hath been obserued in Phisick, that hath many euils happening, expressly condemned by *Hippocrates* and diuers other of the learned. The seuenth sort of those ignorants, hauing some vlcers in their legs or armes a certaine space, takes vpon him to heale all sores, alleadging by some reuelation, to haue an vnguent, called *unguentum ad omnes plagas*: this fellow with the rest doth cure all their abuses & mischises, with a truce or stone. The eight sort who hauing almost drunken out one of his eies, and vseth some few remedies for the same, professeth himselfe to be a fine Eynest. The nynti sort who hath been cut of the stone, or rupture, or scene beasts cutte, takes vpon him to be most excellent in the rupture, or stone. All those with diuers others take on them to haue done many cures, yet they forget the infinite murthred by them. Such mischies was neuer suffered among the infidels, much lesse should be amongst Christians, to the great dishonor of god and his lawes. I read at Rome in the time of *Cato*, that ignorants were banished that common-wealth, the Learned onely & expert retained for the preservation of the publique weale, with power to such, to punish all abusers who durst bee so bold to trangresse the commaundements, constitutions, statutes and ordinances diuine and humane. I might recite heere many authorities both of the ancient and new writers, as well of Ethnicks as Christians, whereof sufficient witnesses remaine of the great paines they haue taken in keeping the Canons of this art, and punishing of Impostors, in such sort, that they were



esteemed as gods. Seeing those Ehnicks have been so curious in this matter, how justly may we that take the name of Christians be euill thought of, for suffering of such abusers in our Art: yet I hope all honest men, especially you, who are towards his Maiestie, will be earnest in purchasing of priuileges and lawes, for restraining of all Ignorant abusers in this Kingdome, Like as is graunted to men of our Art, in other ciuill Countries, to the great aid and comfort of all Kings of those parts. It pleased his Sacred Maiestie to heare my complaint about some fowerteene yeeres agoe, vpon certaine abusers of our Art, of diuers sorts and rankes of people, whereof we haue good store, and all things fayling, vnthrifis, and Idle people doe commonly meddle themselves with our Art, who ordinarily doe passe without either tryall or punishment. The matter beeing considered, and the abuse waighed by his Maiestie and Honourable councell, thought not to bee tolerated, for the which I got a priuiledge vnder his highnes priuie seale, to try and examine all men vpon the Art of Chirurgerie, to discharge, & allow in the West parts of Scotland, who were worthy, or vnworthy, to professe the same. The which I obserued as I might, although there be men of greater authoritie & sufficiencie to punish, and correct such, if they would. But such is the iniquitie of time, that abusers are commonly ouerseene by such as ought to punish them: in such sort that one blind guides another, and most commonlie fall both into the ditch. In the meane time are permitted to vse charmes, lyes, execrable oaths, miserable poyson, fallacious and vncertaine experiments, whereby they destroy both friend and foe, euer detracting the true professors of the Art. Now worshipfull Brethren, in respect of those enormities with diuers moe, which were long to repeat, I doubt not but all yee who are learned and true professors, hauing acceffe, and credit with his Maiestie, will seeke and obtaine such priuiledges, and lawes, as well to correct and punish abusers, as also to withstand the friuolous or fantastickall opinions of such as vse them, and neither for request nor lucre, to admit any such ignorant abusers to professe



fesse our Art, but say with the Learned Philosopher, *Plato*, *Socrates*, and the world are our friends, but the veritie aboue all. Which veritie maketh the flourishing of all Cōmon wealths, arts & sciences. The which if you endeaour your selfe to prosecute, no doubt but that God of veritie who doth recompence each one according to his merits, as also doth punish transgressors, shall reward you accordingly. The which God I beseech to blesse and prosper each one of you in your calling, with good successe in your Cures, happy end in this world, and life eternall heereafter. From my house in *Glasgow*, the 20. day of *December* in the yeere of our Lord God, 1612.

Your loving friend

Peter Lowe.

A 3

G. Ba-





G. Baker one of his Maiesties  
chiefe Chirurgians in  
*Ordinarie.*

**W**H O can deny, but he deserues great fame  
that profit yeelds, t' all Nations where he goes?  
His Country may reioyce to heare his name,  
that in strange Lands, such books of knowledge shows.  
His studie is how to make good Surgeons knowne,  
rebukes the bad, and honours men of skill:  
Then let him reape the corne which he hath sowne,  
his haruest seekes no more but worlds good will.  
The Schooles hath plac't him in a Doctors state,  
The grauest heere his Learning doth commend,  
The Learned sees his study hath been great,  
Whereby he brings great things to perfect end.  
A wonder is, how world bare men rewards  
For ryding horse, or dressing meate you see,  
And those that saue mens liues they least regard,  
for they get neither stipend, gift, nor fee.  
Blind is that age that doth the best despise,  
And helps the worst, to worship, wealth, and grace.  
A common thing, Vice lets not Vertue rise,  
But holdes it downe, that ought haue highest place.  
Yet none can rob the learned of their right,  
No more then take sweet smell from flower in field.  
Then doctor *Lowe* thy Lampe doth giue such light,  
That euerie one to vertue fame doth yeeld,  
Passe on with prayse through euerie soyle and coast,  
Where *Lowe* is knowne he shalbe honoured most.

G.B.

*John*



---

*In praise of the Authour.*

---

John Norden Phisitian in praise  
of the *Authour.*

**A**pollo seene in Simples, for his Art  
In curing men, a God was nam'd to be :  
Knowing all secrets in each hidden part  
That vertue yeildeth to each hearbs degree.  
And by his knowledge of hearbes simplicitie.  
The Heathen tooke him to be a Dietie.

For when as Nature wounded, was oppress'd,  
Not able to sustaine the grieve she bare :  
The body dying, then for want of rest,  
Simples recut'd, such their vertue are :  
That who so seekes, and knowes each simple found,  
Their Nature soone shall cure any wound,

See *Chiron* heere, *Apollon* Puple, hee  
Declar's the secrets of his Matters skill :  
He seekes no meede, nor looks for any fee,  
Then giue him honour for his meer good-will :  
That being Stranger borne, yet loues vs so,  
To leaue his Art with vs to cure our woe.

In praise of the Author, Lenuoy.

**L**ow is thy name, high growes thy fame  
Amongst all English men,  
Thy Booke shall saue my verse from blame,  
When world well weighes thy pen,  
If *Zoylus* or *Momus* brood,  
Doe carp at thee, what then?  
Feede thou thy hope with heauenly foode  
Amongst wise learned men.

*John Norden Phisitian.*



In praise of the Author and his worke.

Thomas Churchyard Esquier, in praise of the  
Author and his worke.

**T**He Noblest science under sunne,  
That most mens lines doe saue,  
The art that greatest praise hath won,  
Whereby great helpe we haue,  
Is Surgerie, for knowledge there,  
In highest grace doth shine.  
The skill is honoured euery where,  
For specially griefes diuine.  
When wrath and rage makes quarrels  
And men in furie fight, (rise,  
In Surgeon such great knowledge lies,  
Greenewounds are healed streight.  
Flesh cut, blond lost, and euery vaine,  
And sinnowes shronke away,  
He can by art restore againe:  
And comfort their decay.  
The mangled bones are set and knit,  
In their owne proper place,  
And euery Limme in order fit,  
Comes to their force and grace.  
By surgeons mean who quickly sees,  
The daungers as they are:  
And mends the mischiefes by degrees,  
With knowledge and great care.  
Hath instrumēt to search each ioynt,  
Each skull or brused bone.  
And can with balmes and oyles anoynt  
The nernes and vaines each one.  
Knowes all the nature, and each kinde  
Of hearbes, of flowers, and weedes,  
And can the secret vertue find  
Of blossomes, leaues, and seedes.

Heales cankers, vlcers, and old sores,  
Hath precious powders small.  
To eate proud flesh, and rotten kores,  
And drie vp humor all.  
What grieve of body can be nam'd,  
But he can helpe in hast?  
Yeathough the liuer be inflam'd:  
Or lights and lungs doe wast.  
In time and temper he can bring,  
The lack of each lame part,  
As though in hand he had a string,  
To leade mans life by art.  
Halfegods, good Surgeons may be cald,  
Much more then men they be,  
And ought like Doctors be enstald:  
In seats of high degree.  
What doth preserve the lines of men,  
May clayme due honor right,  
And should be prayss'd by tong and pen,  
As farre as day giues light,  
Long studie giues a glorious crowne,  
A garland deckt with flowers,  
Vnder whose shade of rare renowne,  
The Muses makes their bowers:  
To set and see whose gifts excell,  
In wit and cunning skill.  
Who best doth worke, who doth not well,  
And who bears most goodwill  
To vertue, learning, and good mind,  
The muses fauour those,  
And giues them grace of their owne  
Great secrets to disclose, (kind,  
Remues



## In praise of the Author and his worke.

Reuines their wits, make sharp their  
To iudge, discerne, and know (sence,  
Whose tong is typt with eloquence,  
And whose fine penne do flow,  
And who the liberall art detaines,  
And mortall vertue haue,  
In whome a hidde skill remaines:  
And cunning knowledge braue,  
It seemes a stranger here of late,  
Hath from the Gods diuine,  
Got credit, honour, and estate,  
To please the Muses Nine.  
The Surgeons of our King likewise,  
Doth praese him for his skill,  
His printed bookes may well suffice,  
To win the worlds good will.  
His merits far surmounts the loue,  
I beare to men of worth,  
My pen doth but affection moue,  
His deedes doe set him forth.

His knowledge makes blind bonglers  
Their boldnes brings him fame, (blush,  
Vaine Valentine not worth a rush,  
Where Low, but shewes his name.  
You paultry, senceles, saucie lackes:  
That patch up wounds in post,  
Trudge hence, truss up your pedlers  
He cares not for your boast, (packs,  
His face and brow from blot is cleere.  
The Sages of our soyle,  
Bids Doctor Low, still welcome here,  
To your great shame and foyle.  
Who well deserues, is honoured much,  
As tryall dayly shewes,  
Who hath good name, is wise and rich,  
And loued where he goes.  
Since of this Doctor and his Art,  
Those vertues I rehearse,  
I him in every poynt and part,  
Salute with English verse.

Qd. Thomas Churchyard Esquier.



In laudem Authoris.

In Commendation of M. Peter Lowe, By  
Anagramme Let Power.

**M**y simple Muse too simple to recite,  
A Chorus of thy Chyrurgion prayse,  
Yet from my willing mind accept this myte  
Fraught with affection and no frivoul phrase.  
Thy Booke, the beauty of thy brow bewrays.  
This worke, thy worth and neuer-dying will,  
Thy true reported discipline displaies  
That learned scansen of thy former skill.  
Goe on rare Lowe and vse thy talent still,  
Grudge not, what speech those spitefull minds expels,  
The Fates hath (*Let*) thee (*Power*) for to kill  
Those murmuring *Momus*, apt for nothing els.  
Now may you end your old Chirurgian strife,  
*Lowe's* *Lauterne* can *Lett Power* to your life.

Ad virum vertute & doctrina  
præstantem, *Petrum Lowem*, Chirur-  
giæ Doctorem.

Carmen Iambicum.

**S**unt plurimi, quos esse splendidos iuvat,  
Alterius & superstites virtutibus  
Clarere posteris : Opus laudariæ,  
Dignumq; creta scilicet notariæ.  
Sic proditur Vappa hominis & mens degener.  
Sunt quos priorum inuenta, clarioribus  
Ditariæ multum suis, iuvat notis :  
Opus mehercule laude dignus sua.  
Namq; est boni quocunq; vel invamine  
Bene posse : nec non velle posteris bene.

Sed



## In laudem Authoris.

*Sed quid meretur ille, propria manu  
Non qui addit inuentis, sed invenit prior?  
Solum farere, polum ferire vertice,  
Nec non haberi vel humanus Deus,  
Homo vel esse diuus in omne seculum.  
Hoc differens solum a Deo viuus, quod is,  
Dum illustrat humani tenebras ingenij,  
Perdurat idem neutiquam mutabilis:  
At hic velut candela, qua dum illuminat  
Nostros ocellos, proprio lumine deperit:  
Post reliquum est: habemus hoc quod vidimus.*

*Tua ergo perge dare, feresq; hanc gloriam:  
Nec proprijs vixit, nec obijt commodis.  
Quod & fatentur ultro & vsq; predicant  
Qui vel tantum hoc videre opus chirurgicum:  
Sic mortuo virtus alet famam tibi.*

I. M. C.

V. Med. Doctor.

*Ad doctissimum virum Petrum Loweum  
Chirurgiae Doctorem.*

*C*landis in angusto praecepta volumine cuncta,  
Quae Cons. Hippocrates, quaeq; Galenus habet.  
Considet hic viridi lauro redimitus Apollo,  
Delphicus illa suo protulit ore Deus  
Sed latuit nimum thesaurus tantus: amicis  
profer: & in medium progrediatur opus.

M. I. O. Chir. Parisi.



In laudem Authoris.

In librum chirurgicum Petri Lovel chirurgi Britanno-scoti carmen Encomiasticon,

Lectori.

**A**ccipe phœbeit amabile munus alumni,  
In lucem eximia, qui dedit artis opus.  
Nocturna versato manu versato diurna,  
Hoc opus eximium Lector amice, præcor.  
Nullus adhuc melius, morbos, medicamina, causas,  
Et methodum docuit, artis Apollineæ.  
Annos ante aliquot quæ Chirurgemata partu,  
Fœlici peperit, parturit hæc eadem.  
Ac multis auget numeris; genio, ingenio, se  
Monstrat Chirurgum, nomine, reque bonum.  
Felix Ambrosio quondam Gens Galla Pareo,  
Nilque minus nostro Scotica gens Lovel.  
Gratia magna suo debetur, lausque labori:  
Perpetuum auctorem nam manet inde decus.  
Maeste ergo virtute Petre, hæc tua Scripta tute-  
Artis Et ingenij clara trophæa tui: (runt.

Zoilo.

Dente Theonino, qui carpere cuncta; vel audes  
Vel cupis hic dentem zoile frange tuum.

Iacobus Haruæus Serenissimæ  
Reginæ Chirurgus Primarius

The





*The names of the Authors, both Hebrues, Ara-  
bians, Greekes, Latines, and French, whose helpe  
I haue used in this worke.*

**A**

**A** Bdales.  
Adamus Lonicerus.

Aetius.

Eraſtus.

Albertus Magnus.

Albucaſis.

Alexis Pedomontanus.

Alexander Aphrodiſienſis.

Alexander Peripateticus.

Alexander Benedictus.

Alphonſus ferreus.

Ambroſius.

Amarus Lucitanus.

Andreas de Bruell.

Andromius de vinſor.

Antillus.

Antonius beneuenius.

Antonius Sebelicus.

Antonius muſa.

Anaxagoras.

Andreas furneſius.

Apuleus Platonius.

Archigenes.

Arculens.

Ariſtoteles.

Arnoldus de villa notia.

Attilus.

Auerroes.

Auicen.

Azaramias.

**B**

**B** Accanellus.

Bayrus.

Baptiſta Montanus.

Baptiſta porta.

Bartholomeus.

Barta Pallia.

Blemor.

Bodinus.

Brunus.

Bruenſueck.

**C**

**C** Ato.

Cardanus.

Capiuaccius.

Celſus aurelius.

Chelmetius.

Chiron.

Cicero.

Clemens Alexandrinus.

Columbus.

Conſtantine Africanus.

Conſtantine.

Cornelius



Cornelius Agrippa.  
Cornelius Celsus.  
Cyreneus.

## D

**D** Emocrates.  
Dionisius.  
Dioscorides.  
Divus.  
Dodoneus.

## E

**E** Mpedocles.  
Evonimus.

## F

**F** Allopius.  
Fernelius.  
Fioronantus.  
Franciscus rosetus.  
Franciscus pedomontan.  
Fuchius.  
Fumanellus.

## G

**G** Alenus.  
Gellius.  
Georgius pistoreus.  
Georgius Cufnerus.  
Gordonius.  
Gualterius Brant.  
Gualterius Riff.

Guydo de Canliato.  
Gulielmus de saliceto.  
Gulielmus placentinus.

## H

**H** Aly abbas.  
Heliogabalus.  
Henricus.  
Henricus Rantzovius.  
Herodotus.  
Herophilus.  
Hippocrates.  
Holerius.  
Homerus.  
Hurnius.

## I

**I** Acobus divus.  
Iacobus dondus.  
Iacobus hoterius.  
Iesus filius hali.  
Iohannis frant.  
Iohannis Langius.  
Iohannis Lebor.  
Iohannes de vice.  
Iohannis de Vigo.  
Iohannes Separionis.  
Iubertus.  
Iustinianus.

## L

**L** Angfrancus.  
Laurentius.  
Leonellus fauentinus.

Magninus



# M

**M** Agninus mediolanensis.  
 Marcus Antonius.  
 Marcellus.  
 Marcus Lepidus.  
 Macrobius.  
 Marianus Sanctus.  
 Matheolus.  
 Messalinus.  
 Mesues.  
 Menodotus.  
 Mizaldus.  
 Moses.

# N

**N**icholaus Alexandrinus.  
 Nicholaus Abraham.  
 Nicholaus Leoniceus.  
 Nicholaus Monardus.  
 Nicholaus Myrepsus.  
 Nostrodamus.

# O

**O**lphanus ferreus.  
 Oribasius.  
 Orisis.  
 Orphe.

# P

**P**Almareus.  
 Paracelsus.

Pareus  
 Parmenides.  
 paulus agineta.  
 Petrus hispanus.  
 Petrus de argilla.  
 Petrus franco.  
 Petrus primandey.  
 Petrus Tuxiganus.  
 Petrus angelus agathus.  
 Philippicus gaulonius.  
 Plato.  
 Plantin.  
 Plinius.  
 Pithagoras.  
 Possidonius.  
 Primander.  
 Ptoleme.

# Q

**Q**Verfitanus.

# R

**R**Asis.  
 Rogerius.  
 Robertus gropretius.  
 Rollandus.  
 Rondoletius.  
 Rosa anglicatia.

Sardinus



# S

**S** Ardinus.  
 Shelander.  
 Scribonius Largus.  
 Soranus.  
 Stephanus Grumlen.  
 Statias.  
 Synecius.  
 Syluius.

# T

**T** Angacius.  
 Tertullianus  
 Thales.  
 Thesaurus pauperum.  
 Theodoricus.  
 Theodorus.  
 Theophrastus Paraselsus.

Titus Liulus.  
 Trallianus.

# V

**V** Alerius Maximus.  
 Vezatius.  
 Viaticus.  
 Vickerus.  
 Vido Vidio.  
 Vlpianus.

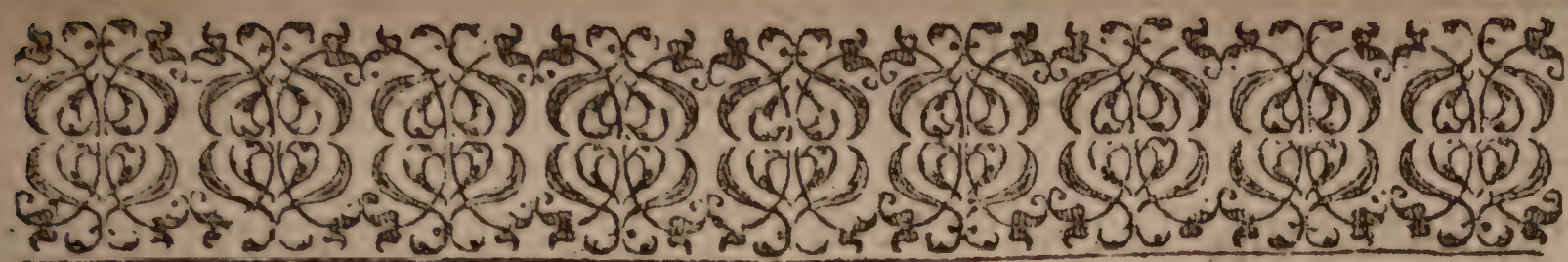
# Y

Ysidorus.

# Z

Zenophanes.





# A Discourse of the whole Art of *Chyrurgerie.*

By PETER LOVVE Scottihman.

This Discourse is diuided into tenne Bookes;  
*the first whereof containeth 14. Chapters;*  
*whose Contents be these.*

- Chap. 1. Of the originall, antiquitie, and excellency of Chyrurgerie.  
2. Of Chyrurgerie in generall, the operations and instruments  
3. Of Naturall things in generall. (thereof.  
4. Of the Elements and consideration thereof.  
5. Of the Temperaments and complexion of mans body.  
6. Of the foure humors, in particular and generall.  
7. Of Members, and parts principall of the body.  
8. Of Vertues, and faculties, and whereof they proceed.  
9. Of Actions, and operations of vertues.  
10. Of Spirits, and whereof they proceed.  
11. Of Age.  
12. Of the entertainment of old age.  
13. Of remedies to be vsed by aged people.  
14. Of Colour, figure, and kinde.

## CHAP. I.

### ¶ Of the Originall, Beginning, Antiquitie, *and Excellency of Chyrurgerie.*



Considering with my selfe, that all men are  
naturally obliged to serue the common  
wealth by some honest profession, and that  
no man is able to discharge that dutie and  
benefit to his native countrie, except hee  
learne in his tender age, the Science wher-  
in the ornament therof consisteth, after full deliberation I ap-  
plied



Medicines  
most ancient  
and honora-  
ble.

The author  
of Chirurge-  
rie.

*Illiad. Lib. 12*  
*Gen. 6.*

Chirurgerie  
was before al  
other Scien-  
ces.

*Iofna king.*

Chirurgerie  
invented by  
God.

*2 Kin. 20. 7.*

*Tob 6. 8.*

*10. 11.*

*12. 13.*

*Leu. 1. 12. 13.*

plyed my selfe to the studie of Chirurgerie, which is by the consent of all learned men, not only a science very profitable & necessary to all sorts of people, but also most ancient and honorable, as manifestly testifieth all the antiquitie: in reading wherof we find the invention of Chirurgery ascribed (for the excellency therof) to the Gods themselues, to wit, to Esculapius Son of Appollo, from the which Podalire & Machaon his Sons, learned the same and cured sundry and diuers which were deadly hurt at the siege of Troy, as reporteth Homer the poet. Clemens Alexandrinus saith, that the first operator was Mizram sonne to Ham the Sephew of Noah, & after him Apis and Orizis Kings of Egypt. Cornelius Celsus saith, that it was found and exercised long before any other sciences. But passing with silence, Appollo, Esculapius, Machaon, Podalire and all that sort of gods, as also Hippocrates, Galen, Pithagoras, Enipedocles, Parmenides, Pimander, Democritus, Chiror, Pæon, Heraclides, Diocles, Caristius, Herophilus, Erastratus, Sanctus Cosinus, and Damianus two worthy Arabs, Mesues, Avicenna, Auerroys, Paulus, with infinite others Arabs, Hebrues, Greeks, and Latins, and all the ancient Philosophers, together with Alexander the great, Iofna the 9. King of Scotland, who liued before Christ 161. yeares, Marcus Antonius, and diuers others Emperors, Kings, and Princes which professed the same, as is evidently shewed vnto vs by the holy scriptures and prophane writers, like as by the writtes of the learned, who professed the same, that the medicine Chirurgeon with the medicaments was inuented and approued by God himselfe, for in the 20. chap. of the 2. booke of the kings we reade how Esay healed by Gods commandement Ezechi- as by laying a figge on his biles and sores: as also in the 6. and 10. chap. of Tobias, how the Angell commaunded him to slay a fish call Cassidill, and to take the gall thereof to the web of the eyes. In the 12. and 13. of Leuiticus God commaunded the Israelites when they entred in Capernaum, that if there appeared any signes of leprosie, like as pustules of



of diuers colours vppon the skinne, that such should bee brought befoze Aaron. and reiected foꝛ lepers, by such signes as is set downe in that chapter. But what, not onely was it inuented by the diuine power, but in like manner expꝛessly commaunded in the 38. chap. of Eccles. and diuers other places, that the professors thereof should bee honoured by all men, foꝛ God created him to the effect that he remaine with thee to assure thee, and them which are with thee, and that thou defraud him not of his wages, foꝛ God created the medicines of the earth, and the wise will not disdain the same: foꝛ hee gaue this science to man, that hee may be glorified in his meruailous woꝛkes, foꝛ hee is the curer of all thinges. Now seeing I haue sufficiently both by the scripture and otherwise pꝛoued the excellency of Chyrurgerie, it is not needfull to compare the same with other arts and sciences, foꝛ if any art be pꝛaised because it was and is professed of noble men, yee may clereely perceiue that the Gods, Emperours, Kings, and Princes haue practised the same. If wee consider the sentence of the diuine Philosopher Plato, that things good are difficile, there is nothing harder then Chyrurgerie, the which will occupie a man all his life time, to seeke out the nature of things pertaining thereto. If things be pꝛaised foꝛ their strength and force, what thing is of more strength then to restore man to his health, which otherwise was altogether lost: some man may perchance object to mee and alleage, that many professors of Chyrurgerie, with their charmes, hearbes full of poyson, and false promises destroye many people, who would easily haue recovered their health if they had giuen no credit to such dissemblers. I answered that such deceauers deserue and merite to bee grievously punished, and banished out of all countreyes, as I haue said in my epistle to Chirurgions. I reade foꝛ the restraining of such abusers, that the wise Iuriconsult Vlpian in the 50. and last booke of the Digests expꝛessly defended, y any bailly, gouernor of Prouince, oꝛ Iudge, should chosse, constitute, oꝛ licence any of our profession, but to leaue that to the Doctors & Masters

Eccles. 13.8.

Chirurgions.  
esteemed by  
all men.Iohannes  
Nazerane  
filius me.  
ue  
medi. morb.  
partic.God cured  
all things.Compa-  
rison of Chi-  
rurgerie  
with other  
arts and Sci-  
ences.Worthy men  
practised  
Chirurgerie.The studie  
of Chirurgie  
asketh long  
time.Deceiuers  
should be  
punished and  
banished.Vlpian l. b.  
50. digest.Professors  
of Chirurge-  
rie should be  
licenced only.



*Iustin. lib.  
de gest. cod.  
10. lit. 52.*

Liberties  
and exempti-  
ons of Chi-  
rurgions.

sters of each Citie, to choose the best experimented, to the end the country and citties may be the more safely with their families and friends committed to their charge. Iustinian libro de gestis inhibites any to practise, but such as are lawfully admitted by the maisters of the art. The sayd Iustinian likewise saith, that those of our profession were in such estimation, that their wiues and families were maintained in all liberty, and exempted from all publike charges, subsidies, tributes, imposts, watching, warding, riding in hosts, or inquests, and all other such common charges, which lawes are all yet obserued in Fraunce, Italy and diuers other ciuill parts. Would to God it were so in this Isle, so god would be glorified, his highnes subiects well serued, and honest men relieved of great burden; as no doubt the best disposed do so thinke. And so I end this chapter of the Antiquity and Excellency of the diuine art of Chyrurgerie.

### CHAP. II.

## Of Operations, and Instruments of Chyrurgerie.

Interloquutors, } Peter Lowe, Doctor of Chyrurgerie,  
and  
John Lowe, his Sonne.

*Pe.* **Y**EE might haue perceiued by my former discourse touching the originall of Chyrurgery and the excellency thereof, the great desire I haue to profit you therein, and to giue good example to all those who would professe the same. In consideration wherof, I am determined to conferre with you in that matter, seeing leisure doth permit me, as also because I am mindfull to cause you to remaine in Paris for your further instruction, and passing of the degrees there accustomed in the sayd Arte, forthe which I will in these three Books following, as also in euery generall chapter ensuing, set downe so briefly as I can, the forme and method



thod that the Doctors of Chyrurgerie in *Paris* vseth, in their first examination called the examination tentatiue, where the Prouoste of the sayd Colledge, and sixe other Maisters that hee will choose, will examine you exactly vppon the whole groundes of Chyrurgerie, according to the which form I will begin & demand of you in few words, the whole principall points of Chyrurgerie: but according to *Cicero*, seeing all doctrine whatsoeuer which is grounded vppon reason, should beginne at the definition, to the end we may the better vnderstand that whereof we entreat, first than will I aske of you what is Chyrurgerie?

Forme of  
examination  
at *Paris*.

*Cicero lib. 1.  
Officio.*

*Ioh.* It is a Science or Arte, that sheweth the manner how to worke on mans body, exercising all manuall operations necessary to heale men, in as much as is possible by vsing of most expedient medicines. It is an old graeke word composed of the word *Cheir* which signifieth hand, and *Ergon* which signifieth operation. Yet no operation manual is comprehended vnder Chyrurgerie, but such as is practised on the body of man for healing of diseases.

*Pe.* Why say you Arte or Science?

*Ioh.* Because it is diuided into Theorick & Practick as saith Hieronymus Mantuo.

Diuision of  
Chirurgerie.  
as saith Hiero-  
nymus mantuo

*Pe.* What is Chyrurgerie Theorick?

*Ioh.* It is that part which teacheth vs by rules onely the demonstrations, which wee may know without vsing any worke of the hand, and therefore we call it Science.

What Chi-  
rurgerie the-  
orick is.

*Pe.* What is Practick?

*Ioh.* It is that part which consisteth in operation of the hand, according to the precepts in healing infirmities, as Apostumes against nature, byles, wounds, fractures, bones that be out of their naturall place, with diuers other operations belonging to the worke of the hand, as yee shall heare in the first Booke.

What Prac-  
ticke is.

*Pe.* Ere you goe further, let vs know what is the subiect of this Arte?

The subiect  
of Chirurge-  
rie.

*Ioh.* Mans bodie, which as Abdale the Sarracen saith,



the most diuine and admirable thing in the world.

*Pe.* Seeing the subiect is so excellent, it is necessary that the Chyrurgion bee learned and wise, as well for the preservation of sicknes, as recovery of health.

How the chyrurgion should learne his art.

*Ioh.* It should be so.

*Pe.* How ought the Chyrurgion to learne his Art?

*Arist. prim. ethico.*

*Ioh.* Arist. the Prince of Philosophers counselleth vs to beginne at generall things, thereafter to proceede to things more particular, from easie and facile things, to obscure and difficile, as is obserued in all other sciences.

The operations of Chyrurgerie.

*Pe.* How many operations vseth the Chyrurgion most commonly?

*Ioh.* Fiue.

*Pe.* Which be they?

1. To take away.

*Ioh.* The first, is to take away that which is hurtfull and superfluous, as to take away tumors against nature, lups, cankers, wartes, and such like; to draw the water out of the hydropickes; to take away a sixt finger, or toe; to drawe forth a childe being dead, out of the mothers wombe; to cut a legge being gangrened or mortified, and such like. Secondly, to helpe and adde to nature that which it wanteth, as

2. To helpe and adde.

to put an artificiall eare, nose, or eye, a hand or leg, a platten in the roose of the mouth, which is needfull to those who by the Spanish sicknesse or like disease, haue the roose of the mouth falling, as is set downe in my treatise of the Spanish

3. To put in that which is out.

sicknes. The third, is to put in the naturall place, that which is out of his place, as to put in guttes, the catwle, or nette that couereth the guts, called the *Epiplon* or *Omentum*, after they be fallen in the *Scrotum*, *Inguen*, or *Vmbilicke*; to put

4. To separate.

bones in their own place, being out of ioynt. The fourth, to separate that which is contained, as aposthuines, opening a vaine, scarifying, applying of horseleaches, ventoses, by cutting the ligament vnder the tongue, cutting twoo fingers growen together, by cutting the prepuce of the yarde, by cutting the naturall conduit of women being closed naturally together, or else by accident, as oft chaunceth after wounds, ulcers,



ulcers, and such like. The fift, to ioyne that which is separated, as in healing broken bones, bones that be out of their place, healing of woundes, ulcers, fistuloes, and such like.

5. To ioyne together.

*Pe.* What method is to be obserued of the Chyrurgion in working those operations?

What method is to be vsed by the Chirurghion.

*Ioh.* First, to know the disease; next, to doe the operation as sone as may be, surely and without false promises or deceits; to heale things that cannot bee healed: for there are some, who being boide of knowledge or skill, promise for lucre sake, to heale infirmities, being ignorant both of the diseases and the remedies thereof. These faults be often committed of some, who vsurping the name of Chyrurgion, being unworthy thereof, haue scarce the skill to cut a bearde, which properly pertaineth to their trade.

Vagabonds and simple Barbers.

*Pe.* It seemeth by your wordes, that there are some infirmities pertaining to our Art, which are incurable.

*Ioh.* There be diuers, like as Cancer occult, leprosie, elephanticke particular: also when the diseased refuse the remedie proper for the cure thereof, as to cut a member being mortified, to make incision of the hydropycke: and also when by the curing of the maladie, their ensueth a greater disease, like as to stay altogether suddainly the hemerods which haue long runne, or any other naturall euacuation voluntary. (I saw in Paris a woman that had a fluxe of blode which flowed quarterly, sometime monethly, the which being stopped, shee dyed immediatly thereafter) to cut the varice in the leg, or else where, because the humors taketh the course oftentimes to some principall part, which is cause of death, also in healing the biles which come in the legges or armes, called *malum mortuum*.

Diseases incurable.

History.

*Pe.* What remedies then are most expedient to bee vsed in those diseases?

*Ioh.* Remedies palliative and preservative to let the euill that it encrease not, as wee shall intreate of each of them in their severall places.

Remedies palliative and preservative are to be vsed.

*Pe.* To doe all those operations, what qualities are required



quired of the Chyrurgion?

*Ce'sus.*  
The qualites  
which are re-  
quired in a  
Chirurgian.

A Chirurgion  
should not be  
auaricious.

Conditions  
of the patient

Two sortes  
of chirurgical  
instruments.

Good regi-  
ment.

Handie in-  
struments.

*Ioh.* There are diuers, and first of all as Celsus saith, that he be learned, chiefly in those things y<sup>e</sup> appertaine to his arte, that he be of a reasonable age, and haue a good hand, as perfect in the left as in the right, that hee bee ingenious, subtile, wise, and tremble not in doing his operations, that hee haue a good eye, and good experience in his art before hee beginne to practise the same, also that he haue seene and obserued of a long time of learned Chyrurgions, that he be well manered, affable, hardye in thinges certaine, fearefull in thinges doubtfull and dangerous, discrete in iudging of sicknesse, chaste, sober, pittifull, that he take his rewarde according to his cure, and ability of the patient, not regarding auarice.

*Pe.* What conditions ought the Patient to haue.

*Ioh.* Diuers also, and first he must haue a good opinion of the Chyrurgion, that he haue a good hope to be cured of him, to be obedient to his counsels, for that auaieth much in healing of maladies, that he indure patiently that which is done for the recouerie of his health.

*Pe.* Which are the instruments that the Chyrurgion ought to vse in his operations?

*Ioh.* They are of two sortes, for some are common, others are proper; and the instruments and remedies common, be also of two sortes, for some be medicinals, some be ferramentals.

*Pe.* Why do you call them common?

*Ioh.* Because they serue indifferently to diuers parts, and may be vsed in all parts of the body.

*Pe.* Which are the medicinals?

*Ioh.* They consist in ordaining good regiment in thinges naturall, vnnaturall, and against nature, in letting of blood, also in applying plasters, cataplasmes, lineaments, pouders, vnguents, and such like.

*Pe.* Which be the instruments ferramentals?

*Ioh.* Some are to cut as rasors, some to burne as cauters actuals, some to drawe awaye, as tenals incisives, pincets, firballs,



tirballs, some are to sound, as to sound a wound, the stone in the bladder, and such like : some are to solve wounds and knit vaines and artiers, as needels.

Pe. Which are the proper instruments?

Proper instruments.

Ioh. Those which serue to one part onely, as in the head a trepan, with sundrye other capitalls : in the eye an instrument called *speculum oculi*, a needle proper to abate the Cataract : in the eare a squirt for deafnesse, or to draw forth any thing inclosed in the eare : some in the mouth as *speculum oris*, or *dilatorium* for convulsion : others are proper for the plurisie, others for the hydropisie : some to draine the stone, which are made of diuers fashions : some are proper for women as *speculum matricis*, sundry are proper for the birth, as ye shall here in my treatise of the sicknesse of women : some are for the fundament as *speculum ani* : some for broken bones and such as bee out of their place, as machines, laks, glossocomes, as is set downe by Oribasius in his booke called *Antidotarium*.

Oribasius in *antidotario*.

Pe. Which of those remedies are most necessary to be had alwayes with him?

Remedies that a chirurgeon should haue alwaies with him.

Ioh. *Arnoldus de villa noua* counselleth alwayes to haue fire to helpe in necessity for things that are common; the first an astringent or retentive, to staye a bleeding or fluxion that commeth in any part : the second is *Basilicon*, to make matter in a wound or an Aposthume : the third, some cleansing salve as *Apostulorum* or *Diapleo* : the fourth, is to fill vpp a wound or bile with flesh that is hollowe, like as *unguentum aureum* : the fift, is *cerat galen*, or *rosat mesues*, proper to appease a great dolour or heate which oft chanceth : the sixt, is called *Desiccatorium rubeum*, or such like, to drie and cicatrize the skinne.

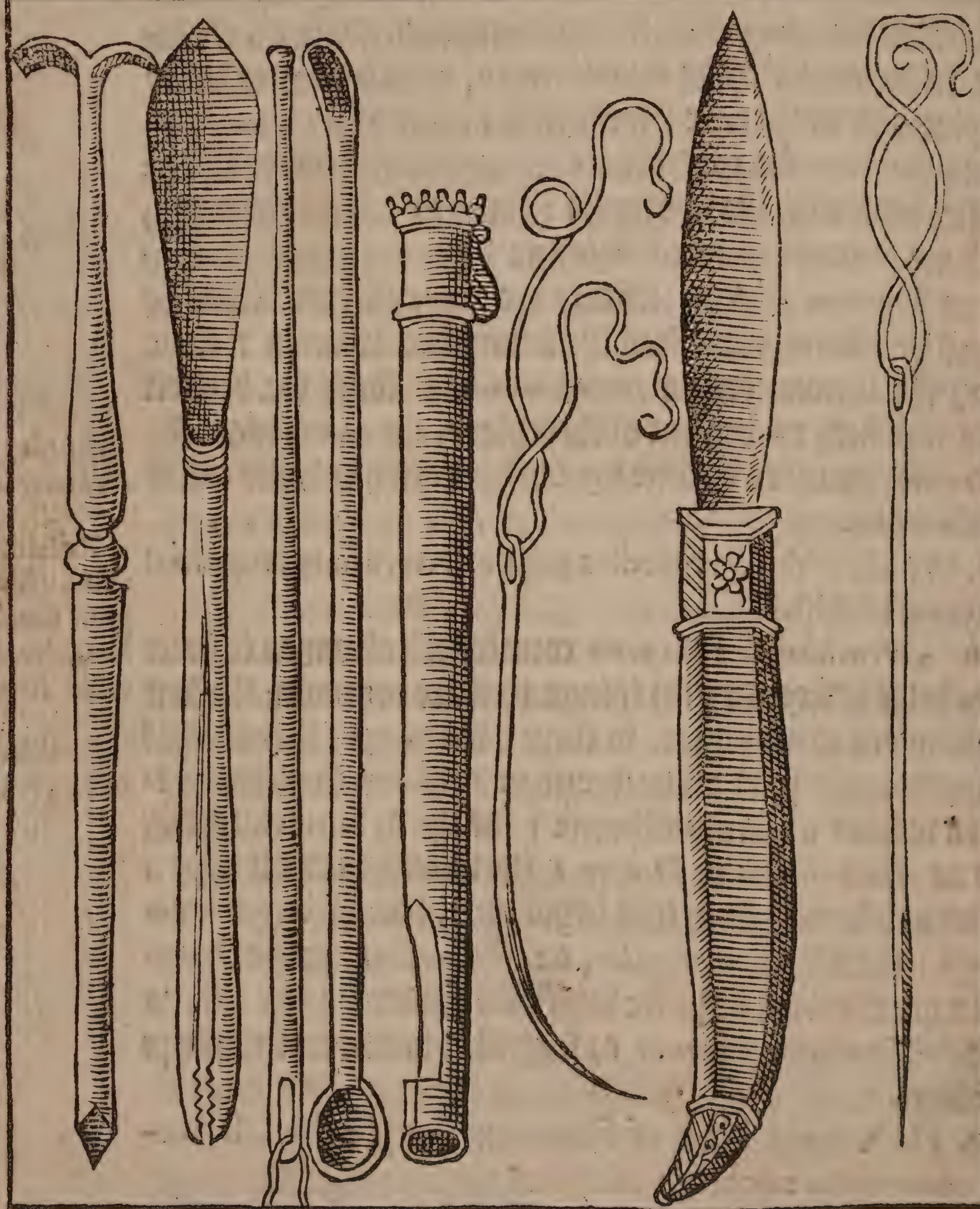
*Arnoldus de villa noua*.

Pe. How many kinds of ferraments ought the Chyrurgeon commonly to carry with him?

Ioh. Diuers, as a paire of sheeres, a raso, pincets, a lancet, a sound, a tirball, a needle, and a cannon for needles.

Instruments



*Instrumentts for a little case.**Pe. How*



*Pe.* How many things are to be obserued by the Chyrurgion before he vndertake any operation?

*Io.* According to Haly Abbas, there are five ; the first, to know well the temperaument of the patient : the second, he must know the sicknesse and nature thereof : the third, whether it be curable or not : the fourth, remedies proper and meete for the disease : the fift, the right waye to apply such remedies as be needfull : of all those hee ought to giue good reasons and authozitie, of such famous men as haue written of this Science.

*Haly Abbas*  
in his Chyrurgerie.

Things to be knowen of the Chyrurgion before he beginne.

*Pe.* In how many thinges consisteth chiefly the contemplation of Chyrurgerie?

*Io.* In three things, according to Fuchius.

*Pe.* Which are they?

*Io.* The first, are those things that concurre to the making & constitution of our body, and therfore are called things natural. The second, are those things which conserue y body from sicknes, & being rightly vsed, nourish the same ; our ancients call them things vnaturall, because if they be immoderately and ill vsed, they be altogether contrary to our bodies. The third, are those thinges indeede which are contrary to our bodies, and therfore are called things contrarye to nature, as Galen writeth.

Contem-  
platiue Chyrurgerie.

*Compendium medic. & chirurg.*

*Pe.* Tell me something more particularly of those contemplations of Chyrurgerie.

*2. Therapen: & multis alijs locis.*

*Io.* I am content, if your leisure permit.

*Pe.* Then we will in the next Chapter, proceed to naturall things.

### CHAP. III.

## Of Naturall things in generall.

*Io.* **M**A if it please you to prosecute the discourse of naturall things, seeing wee haue already intreated of



of Chyrurgerie in generall, of the operations and instruments Chyrurgicals.

*Pe.* I like very well of this methode, then tell mee how many naturall things are reckoned by the Chyrurgion?

7 Naturall things are reckoned by a Chyrurgion.

*Io.* Heauen, the first is called Elements. The second, is Temperament or Complexion. The third, Humors. The fourth, Members. The fifth, Vertues or Faculties. The sixth, the woorkes and effects of Vertues. The seauenth, Spirits.

### CHAP. IIII.

#### ¶ Of Elements.

*Pe.* Seeing, according to your former diuision of naturall things, Element is the first; then tell me what is an Element?

*Arist. 5. metaph. cap. 3.*

*Io.* It is the most simple part whereof any thing is made, and in the destruction thereof, is lastly resolved.

*Pe.* How many Elements are there?

2. Sorts of Elements.

*Io.* Two according to the contemplation of Chyrurgery, viz. simples or intelligibles, and composed or sensibles.

*Pe.* Which are the intelligibles?

Speculative Chyrurgerie first obserued by Hippocrates.

*Io.* Those which are known onely by speculation and iudgement, the which was first obserued by Hippocrates.

*Pe.* How many are they in number?

4 Elements. *Arist. 2. lib. de gen. & corrupt.*

*Io.* They are foure according to Arist. to wit, the fire, the aire, the water, and the earth, the which haue diuers qualities, hote, colde, moyst, and drie.

*Pe.* Are these foure Elements otherwise distinguished?

Another diuision of Elements.

*Io.* They are distinguished also according to their lightnes and heauinesse.

*Pe.* Which are the light?

*Io.* The fire, and the aire, and seeketh vpperward by reason of



of their lightnes.

*Pe.* Which are the heauy?

*Io.* The water, and the earth; for by reason of their heauy-  
uinesse, they moue downwarde. Heavy Ele-  
ments.

*Pe.* Which are the sensible Elements?

*Io.* They are similar or like partes of our bodie, as sayth  
Galen.

*Pe.* How many are they in number?

*Io.* Twelue, to wit, the Bones, the Cartilages, Flesh, 12. sensible  
Elements.  
Perues, Artiers, Pannicles, Ligaments, Tendons, Mem-  
branes, y<sup>e</sup> skin, the fat grease, y<sup>e</sup> marroine: to the which similar  
parts, some adde partes made of the superfluitie of our body,  
as the haire, and nailes, which are also profitable.

## CHAP. V.

### Of Temperaments.

*¶* Wherein is shewed the Temperature of mans body; of euerie  
Nation; and foure seasons of the yeare.

*Pe.* **W**hat is Temperament?

Definition.

*Io.* It is a mixtion of the foure qualities of  
the Elements as saith *Avicen*: or, as saith *Galen*, it is a con-  
fusion or mixing of hote, colde, drie, and moyst.

*Avicen.*  
*Galen. cap. 1.  
de comp' exilio.*

*Pe.* How many sorts of Complexions are there?

*Io.* Two, to wit, well tempered and composed, or euill  
tempered.

*Pe.* What is temperament well tempered.

*Io.* It is that which is equally composed of the foure qua-  
lities of the Elements, of the which composition and sub-  
stance among all naturall things, there is but one so tempe-  
red, which is the inner skinne of the hand, chiefly in the ex-  
treamitie of the fingers, as saith *Galen*, and is called *Tem-  
peramentum*. Temprature  
equallie  
disposed.



*Lib. de Temperamentis.* *peramentum ad pondus.* There is another kind of this, called temperament *ad Iustitiam*, which is according to Judgment.

*Pe.* What is Temperament *ad Iustitiam*?

Temperament *ad Iustitiam*. what.

*Io.* It is that which is composed according to the exigence and dignity of nature, and is known by his operations, for when any thing naturally hath his operations very perfect, wee esteeme it tempered *ad Iustitiam*.

*Pe.* What is temperament, euill tempered?

Euill temperamentis.

*Io.* It is that, in which one Element governeth and hath dominion more than other, as the hote doth surpasse the cold, and so forth.

*Pe.* How many euill temperaments are there?

*Io.* There are diuers, which indeede passe not the limits of health, for some surpasse the temperate in one simple quality, some in two composed, and so forth.

*Pe.* How many simple qualities are there?

Foure simple qualities.

*Io.* Foure, as yee haue heard, hote, drie, colde, and humide : in like manner there are foure composed, to witte, hote and drie, hote and humide ; colde and drie, colde and humide, of the which *Galen* hath openly written.

*Pe.* What parts of our bodies are attributed to these qualities?

*Lib. 1. artis parue.*

*Galen Lib. de ligamentis.*

*Io.* To the hote, wee attribute parts most hote in our bodies as the Spirit, the heart, the bloud, the liuer, the kidnies, the flesh, the muscles, artiers, vaines, skinne, and splene.

The temperature of our bodies in particular, and what temperature euery one is of.

*Robertus grossartius reg. sanitat.*

It is necessary for the

To the colde we attribute the haire, bones, cartilage, ligaments, tendons, membraines, nerues, the braines, and the fatte grease, the flesh, the paps, the stones, lights, liuer, kidnies, marrowe. To the drie, the haire, the bones, cartilages, membraines, ligaments, tendons, artiers, vaines, nerues, the skinne. Neuerthelesse, some excede others in these qualities, as you may perceiue by their order : for it is necessary in healing woundes and vlcers, to knowe the temperature of euery part, for other remedies are to be vsed in harde and drie parts, then in soft and humide parts.

*Pe.* How



*Pe.* How are the foure qualities compared to the foure Chyrurgion  
quarters of the yeare? to know the  
temperature  
of the patient.

*Io.* The Spring time is hote and humide, most healthfull  
as sayth Hyppocrates, and continueth from the tenth of  
March, to the 11 of June. The Summer beginneth at the  
11 of June, and endeth on the 13 day of September, and  
is hote and drie. The autumnne or haruest from the 13. day  
of September vnto the 13. of December, and is colde and  
drie, very vnhealthfull, sickly, the which sicknesse if they con-  
tinue till winter, are most dangerous. The winter from the  
13 daye of September vntill the 10 day of March, is colde  
and humide, in this time of the yeare men eate much, ingen-  
der abundance of crudities, of the which commeth diuers  
sickneses.

Compa-  
son with the  
foure quarters  
of the yeare.

*Aphor. f 19.  
& prim. de  
natura huma-  
na.*

Sicknes in  
autumne very  
vnhealthfull.

*Petrus Tuxi-  
ganus de regi.  
sanitate.*

*Pe.* How many wayes know ye the temperature of mans  
body?

*Io.* Fiue, to wit, by the constitution of mans body ; by  
the operations and functions ; by the countreyes wherein  
men are borne ; by the colour ; and by the age ; which being  
all well considered, we may iudge of euery mans complexi-  
on.

Fiue wayes  
to know mas  
temperature.

*Pe.* How know you the temperature of mans body by the  
constitutions?

*Io.* Galen sayth, those which are fat bee colde, like as fat-  
nesse is ingendred of a colde habitude ; those that bee grosse  
and full of flesh bee hote, because much flesh is gendered of  
great abundance of bloud, as sayth *Auicen.*

*Lib. 2. de tē-  
pramentis  
cap. 6.*

*Pe.* How knowe you the temperature of mans body by  
the operations?

To know  
the tempera-  
ture by the  
constitution.

*Io.* Galen saith, that any creature, plant, hearbe, is of a  
good temperature when they doe well their functions na-  
turall.

*1. Treatise  
cap 1.*

*Galen. Lib. 1  
de temperam.  
cap. 6.*

*Pe.* How by the Nations and Countries know you the  
temperature?

*Io.* The people towards the South are melancholique,  
cruell, vindicative, always fearefull, they are subiect to mad-  
nesse



The constitution of those towards the South.

*Lib. 2. de temperamentis. cap. 6.*

They are subject to Venus games, and why.

A thousand wives.

*Bodin.*

They are very temperate.

The complexion of the people towards the north, colde and humide.

They of the North are strong and cruell.

They are good drinkers

Subject to ielousie.

Laborious men towards the North.

nesse and furiousnesse, as often chaunceth in the Realme of Fez, Morruecos, Affricke, Ethiopia, and Egypt, where there is a great number of mad men ; they are also subiect to leprosie, cheifly in Ethiopia, they be leane, pale coloured, blacke eyed, and are hote by the naturall ayre, and as *Galen* saith, they are also subiect to Venus games, because of the melancholique spumous humoz, which is the cause that the Kings of Affrica, Ethiopia, and Egypt, haue had at all times a great number of wiues and concubines : so that some haue had three hundred or foure hundred, some a thousand as reporteth *Bodin* in his common-wealth : they are subiect to the falling sicknesse, scrofuls, and feuer quartaine ; yet they are wise, modest, and moderate in their actions : they are also proper for the contemplation of naturall and diuine thinges, they haue little interior heate, and for that cause are verie temperate, because they cannot digest much meate. So we may saye, that those people being subiect to greatest sicknesse and vices, are also adorned with great vertues, where they are good. The people towarde the North are colde and humide, neither so wicked and deceitfull : they are faithfull and true, yet because they are of a grosser witte and more strength, they are more cruel and barbarous, they haue greater force and are stronger by reason of their thickenesse and coldenesse of blood : they be very couragious, for the great abundance of blood, & of smaller iudgement : they haue great heat in their interior parts, and therfore eate well and drinke better, which is an unhappy vice : They are high in stature, great bodied, more beautifull than those of the South, lesse giuen to the lust of the flesh, and lesse subiect to ielousie, which is a comon vice to the people towards y<sup>e</sup> East, as the Greeks and Turkes ; or West, as Spaine, and such like countries : but principally the people of the South, from whome is come the vse to geld men, whom they call Eunuchs, to keepe their wiues. Moreover, they who are toward the North, are more laborious, and giuen to artes mechanickes, and more proper for warres, than Sciences. The people betwixt the South



South and the North, as Italie, Fraunce, and such like, bee almost of the Northern peoples temperature, but somewhat hotter : they haue lesse internall heate and force then the Northern people, but more then they of the South, and therefore decide their quarrells oftener by reason, than force. Yet it is certaine, that those of the West drawe more to the qualities of those of the North : like as those of the East to the conditions of the South.

The complexion of those of the west and East

*Pe.* How know you by the colour, mans temperature?

*Io.* Galen sayth, those which are of colour somewhat red, yellow, or blew, bee of a hote temperature; those which are blacke, white, or leade colour, are of a colde complexion : otherwise be the foure colours, red, yellow, blacke, and white; the red is ordinarily sanguine, the blacke melancholique, the yellow collicke, and the white phlegmaticke.

Galen de Sanitate tuenda.

*Pe.* How know you mans temperature by the age?

*Io.* Forasmuch as there is a particular of the age, we will deferre it till we come to that Chapter.

To know the temperature by age.

*Pe.* By what outward markes knowe you euery mans complexion?

*Io.* He of the sanguine complexion is fleshly, liberall, louing, amiable, gracious, merrie, ingenious, audacious, lubricke, giuen to Venus game, red coloured with diuers other qualities, which sheweth the domination of the blood, and it is hote and humide, and is in good health in Sommer and in winter by reason of his humiditie.

The Cholerique is hastie, prompt, and in all his affayres enbious, couetous, subtile, hardye, angrie, valiant, prodigall, leane, yellow coloured, and is hote and drie, and is in good health in winter.

The Phlegmaticke is fat, soft, white, sleepe, slothfull, dull of vnderstanding, heauie, much spitting, and white coloured : finally his temperature essentiall or accidentall is colde and moyst, and is in good health in Sommer.

The Melancholique which is either by nature or accident of colour, liuide, & plumbine, solitary, coward, fearefull, sad, enbious,



envious, curious, auaritious, leane, weake, slowe, and so forth: mozeouer, colde, & drie, and are well in haruest: as touching the complexion of euery Age, you shall heare in the Chapter of Age: and as for the complexion of euery part of the body, you shall heare in the poore mans guide.

## CHAP. VI.

## ¶ Of Humors.

All sicknes  
procedeth of  
some humors.

What hu-  
mor is.

Whereof hu-  
mors do  
proceed.

There are 4.  
humors.

*Pe.* **T**Hou knowest that the most part of all sicknesses proceedeth and are entertained by some Humor, and sometime by sundry humors together; therefore it is most necessary that the Chyrurgian know perfectly the humors of our bodies, to the end hee giue the better order for the curation of maladies: then tell mee what is an Humor?

*Ioh.* It is a thinne substance, into the which our nourishment first is conuerted: or it is a naturall Juice wherewith the bodie is entertained, nourished, or preserued.

*Pe.* Whereof proceedeth the Humors?

*Ioh.* Of the iuice or Chile which is made in the stomacke, of the aliment wee are nourished with, changed by the naturall heate of the stomacke and parts neere therto: thereafter brought by the veines *Meseraikes* to the liuer, and maketh the foure Humors which differ in nature and kind.

*Pe.* How many Humors are there?

*Ioh.* There are foure, which represent the foure Elements, aswell by the substance, as qualities, whereof euery thing is made; *Galen* calleth them the Elements of the body.

*Pe.* Which are the foure Humors?

*Ioh.* The Blood, the Flegme, the Choller, and Melancholy.

*Pe.* What



*Pe.* What is blood?

*Io.* It is an Humoꝝ hote, aerious of good consistance, red coloured, sweete tasted, most necessary for nourishment of the parts of our body, which are hote & humide ingendered in the liuer, retained in the vaines, and is compared to the aire, as sayth *Galen*. The bloud nourisheth the body. 2. De placitis.

*Pe.* What is Flegme?

*Io.* It is an Humoꝝ colde and humide, thin in consistance, white coloured, when it is in the vaines it nourisheth the parts cold and humide, it lubzifieth the moving of the ioints, and is compared to water.

*Pe.* What is Choller?

*Io.* It is an Humoꝝ hote and drie, of thinne and subtile substance, blacke coloured, bitter tasted, proper to nourish the parts hote, and drye, it is compared to the fire. *Trallianus lib. 7. Cap. 16.*

*Pe.* What is Melancholie?

*Io.* It is an Humoꝝ colde and drye, thicke in consistance, solwer tasted, proper to nourish the parts that are colde and drie, and is compared to the earth, or winter.

*Pe.* How many sorts of blood are there?

*Io.* Two, Naturall and Vnnaturall.

*Pe.* How many wayes degendereth the blood from the Naturall? The bloud degendereth two wayes.

*Io.* Two wayes; first by some alteration or transmutation of the substance, as when it becommeth more grosse and more subtile then it should bee, or else by aduulsion, when the most subtile becommeth in choller, and the most grosse in melancholie.

Secondly, through vnnaturall proportion and euill mixture with the rest of the Humoꝝ, and then it taketh diuers names: as for example, if with the blood there be abundance of Pituit, such is called *Flegmaticke*, if the choller exceed the chollericke, and so forth in the rest. Whereof euery humor doth proceed.

*Pe.* How many sorts of Flegme are there?

*Io.* Two in like manner, Naturall and vnnaturall.

*Pe.* How many kinds of Pituit vnnaturall are they?



2. de diff-  
rentijs febrilium  
Cap. 6.

*Io.* According to *Galen* there are foure sorts; the first called *Vitrea*, because the Humour is like vnto melted glasse, it is cold and proceedeth of gluttony and idleness, it prouoketh to vomit, causeth great paine in the parts where it falleth, as on the theeth, and Intestines.

The second, is called the swete *Flegme*, because in spitting of it, it seemeth swete, it prouoketh the body to sleepe.

The third, is called bitter *Flegme*, because in spitting, it seemeth bitter, it is colde and maketh the body hungrie.

The fourth, is salt *Flegme*, it maketh the body drye and thirsty. There are some who make another kind called *Gipsei*, because of the forme and hardnesse it hath like *Lyme* called *Gypsum*: It is often in the ioynts and is reckoned vnder *Vitrea*.

*Pe.* How many sorts of Choller be there?

*Io.* Two in like manner, Naturall and Vnnaturall.

2. Sorts of  
choller, natu-  
rall and vn-  
naturall.

*Pe.* How many wayes becommieth the Choller Vnnaturall?

*Io.* Two wayes; first, when it spilleth, rotteth, and is burnt, and then it is called Choller *Adust* by putrefaction. The other is made of the mixture of the other Humours.

*Pe.* Into how many kinds is it diuided?

Tractatus de  
atra bile &  
multis alijs  
locis.

*Io.* In foure, as sayth *Galen*. The first, is called *Vitellin*, because of the colour and thicke substance: It is like the yolke of an egge, it is ingendered in the Liver and baines, when by the vnnaturall heate it doth dissipate and consume.

The second, is called *Verrucose*, because this colour representeth a wart called *Verruca*.

The third, is called *Eruginus*, because it is like the rust of brasse or copper called *Erugo*.

The fourth, is called the blew Choller, because it is blew like *Azur*. These three last Humours as saith *Galen*, are ingendered in the stomacke by vicious meats, and euill iuice, which cannot be digested and conuerted into good iuice.

*Pe.* How many sorts of melancholique are there?

*Io.* Two, Naturall, and *Adust*.

*Pe.* How



*Pe.* How many kindes of Vnnaturall or adust are there?

*Io.* Two, the first is that whereof commeth the Humoz Melancholique, which is like the lee of blood when it is very hote and adust; or by some hote Fever, that the blood doth putrisie, as sayth *Avicen*, and differeth from the naturall melancholique, as the dregges of wine burnt, from the unburnt. *Galen* saith, that Humoz which is like the lees of wine, when it becommeth moze hote, it ingendereth an Humoz against nature called *Attabilis*, of the which no beast can tast. 14. Method.

*Pe.* Knowing these foure humors and their generations, we must know in like manner, that in our bodies there is coction, therefore tell mee how many kinds of concoctions are there?

*Io.* There are three as sayth *Iohannes Bacchanellus*. The first, is made in the stomacke which conuerteth the meat we eat into the substance called *Chile*, in the which the foure humors are not, but potentially. The second, is done in the liuer, which maketh of the *Chile* the masse Sanguinarie, as saith *Galen*. The third, is made through all the body, of which are ingendered the foure humidities which the Arabians call humors nourishing, or Elementaries, as saith *Avicen*. The first hath no name, and is thought to bee the humoz which droppeth from the mouth of the vaine. The second, is called *Ros*, the which after it is drunken into the substance of the body it maketh it humide, whereof it taketh the name. The third, is called *Cambium*. The fourth is called *Gluten*, and is the proper humiditie of the similar parts. Lib. de consensu med. 4. de usu partium. 2. Cano cap. 1.

*Pe.* Haue not these humors a certaine time in the which they raigne more than other in mans body?

*Io.* Yes indeede, for the blood raigneth in the morning from three houres untill nine: in like manner in the spring time the Choller from nine in the morning untill three in the afternone, as in Sommer: the Flegme from three in the

What time  
euery humor  
raigneth.



afternoone vntill nine at night, as in autumnne : the melanc-  
cholicque, from nine at night vntill thre in the morning, like  
as in winter, and this is the opiniō of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*  
as touching humors. Such things being well vnderstode,  
yee may know what humor raigneth in the sicke, and what  
time he shall be most grieued.

## CHAP. VII.

## Of Members and Parts.

The definiti-  
on of mem-  
bers.

*Galen*

*Pe.* **W**Hat call you Members or Parts?

*Io.* *Avicen* speaking of Members saith, they  
are bodyes ingendered of the first commixtion of humors.

*Pe.* How many sorts of Members are there?

*Io.* Fiue, of the which the first is called principalls. The  
second, are Members that serue the principall Members.  
The third, are Members that neither gouerne, nor are go-  
uerned of others, but by their owne proper vertues. The  
fourth, are Members which haue proper vertues of them-  
selues, and also of others. The fift, is called Members excre-  
mentals, and not proper Members, as others.

*Pe.* How many principall Members are there?

*Io.* Amongst the parts of the humane bodie there are  
found foure, which are most chiefe and principall, to wit, the  
braines, the heart, the liuer, and the testicles. The first thre  
are called principalls, because by them all the body is gover-  
ned, and without them men cannot liue. The fourth, which  
are the testicles is called principall, because without them  
men cannot be procreated, saith *Galen*.

*Pe.* Which are they that serue the principall Members?

*Io.* The *Serues* serue the braines; the artiers the heart;  
the instruments *Spermaticks*, the testicles: by the *Serues*  
the spirit *Animal* is carried through all the body; the spirit *Vital*

Parts seruing  
the principall  
members.

all



*all* is carryed by the Arteries; the vaines serue to carrye the blood through all the body, as also to bring the *Chile* to the liuer: the instruments *Spermatike* for the bringing and casting forth of the seede.

*Pe.* Which are the Members which neither gouernes, nor are gouerned of others.

*Io.* The bones, the cartilages, membraines, glands, tendons, ligaments, fatte, simple flesh, and so forth.

*Pe.* Which are they that haue proper vertue of themselves, and also of others.

*Io.* The bellie, the kidneis, and the matrix.

*Pe.* Which are the Members called excrementous?

*Io.* The nailes, and the haire.

*Pe.* Are the Members no otherwise diuided?

*Io.* They are diuided into two parts, similars and dissimilars.

*Pe.* Which are the parts similar?

*Io.* The Bones, Nerues, Flesh, and so forth, which are so called, because the least part of them hath the same name that the whole hath.

*Pe.* Which are the parts dissimilars?

*Io.* The eare, eye, legge, hand and foote, &c.

*Pe.* Why are they called dissimilars?

*Io.* Because when they are diuided, they lose the name of the whole, as the membraines of the braines are not called braines, nor the membraines of the eye, the eye, and so forth in other dissimilar parts.

Members  
which haue  
proper vertue  
of others and  
also of them-  
selves.

*Galen de differ.  
ren. morb. ca. 3.*

## CHAP. VIII.

### Of Vertues.

*Pe.* **V**hat call you Vertues?

*Io.* They are the cause whereof proceedeth



Lib. 1. de facultatib. naturalib.

the actions or powers, as saith Galen.

P E. How many Vertues or Faculties are there?

I O. Three; to wit, Animall, Vitall, and Naturall, which haue a certaine sympathy one with another, for if one be hurt, all the rest suffer with it.

P E. What is Animall?

I O. It is that which cometh from the braines, and sendeth the sence and moving through all the bodie by the Nerves.

P E. How many sorts of Vertues Animall are there?

I O. Three; to witte, Motiue, Sensitiue, and Principall.

P E. Wherein consisteth the Vertue motiue?

I O. In the instruments that moue voluntary, as the Muscles and Nerves.

P E. Wherein consisteth the Vertue Sensitiue?

I O. In the senses externall and internall.

P E. Into how many parts is the Vertue Sensitiue externall diuided?

Sensitiues  
external,  
deuided  
into five.

I O. Into five; Seeing, Hearing, Tasting, Smelling, Feeling.

P E. What is the vertue Sensitiue interior?

I O. It is a vertue that correspondeth to the five externall vertues, by one Organ onely, and therefore is called Sence common.

Wherin the  
vertue principal  
consisteth.

P E. Wherein consisteth the vertue Principall?

I O. In imagination, reasoning, and remembzing.

P E. May those vertues be diuided seuerally one from another?

I O. Yes, because one may be offended without another, which sheweth them to haue diuers seates in the braine particularly.

P E. What is the vertue Vitall?

I O. It is that which carryeth life through all the body.

P E. How many sorts of vertues vitall are there?

I O. Two; to wit, vertue Vitall Actiue, that is, in doing  
operat



operations : & vertue vitall passive in suffering operations.

*Pe.* What is the vertue active?

*Io.* They are those vertues which dilateth the heart, and artiers, as chanceth in mirth and loue.

*Pe.* What is vertue Passive?

*Io.* They are those vertues which constraîne and binde the artiers and heart, as happeneth in melancholique, sadness, and reuenge.

*Pe.* What is the vertue Naturall?

*Io.* It is that which commeth from the liuer, and sendeth the nourishment through all the bodie.

*Pe.* Into how many parts is it diuided?

*Io.* Into foure, the first in attraction of things proper: the second in retaining that which is drawn : the third, in digesting that which is retained : the fourth, in expecting that which is hurtfull, and offensive.

*Pe.* Do all those vertues do their operations at once?

*Io.* No, for first attraction is made, then retained vntill perfect digestion be made : lastly, vertue expulsive, casteth forth all things hurtfull to nature.

---

CHAP. IX.

¶ Of Actions and Operations  
of Vertues.

*Pe.* **W**Hat call you the actions of vertues?

*Io.* They are certaine affections or mouings actiues, proceeding of vertues.

*Pe.* How many sorts are there?

*Io.* Three; like as, vertues Animall, Naturall, and Vitall.

*Pe.* Seeing the difference is not great betwixt Vertues and operations of Vertues, it is superfluous for the present to insist further in that matter?



## CHAP. X.

## ¶ Of Spirits.

Definition  
of Spirits.

P E. **W**Hat are Spirits?

I o. They are a substance subtile and acious of our body, bredde of the part most pure and thinne, of the bloud sent through all the body, to the effect the members may doe their proper actions.

P E. In what part of our bodies abound they most?

*Andreas de  
Lorrain.*

I o. As saith *Andreas de Lorrain*, they abound in the heart and artiers, in the braines and Nerues.

P E. How many sorts of Spirits are there?

I o. Thre; Animall, Vitall, and Naturall.

P E. What is the Spirit Animall?

*Democritus  
put forth his  
eyes, and why*

I o. It is that which remaineth in the braines, of which a great part is sent to the eyes, by the Nerues optickes, some to the eares and diuers other parts, but most to the eye: therefore those who haue lost their sight, haue their other vertues more strong, the which caused *Democritus* and other Philosophers to put out their eyes, to the end their understanding might bee more cleare.

P E. Is the Spirit Animall brought through all the Nerues substantially?

I o. No, but onely by the Nerues optickes, because they haue manifest hollownes, and not the rest.

P E. What is the Spirit Vitall?

I o. It is that which is in the heart and artiers & is made of the euapozation of the bloud, and of the ayze laboured in the lights by the force of Vitall heate, and thereafter is diffused through the members for the conseruation of the naturall heate.

P E. What is the Spirit Naturall?

I o. It



10. It is that which is ingendered in the liuer and vaines, & there remaineth while the liuer maketh the bloud & other naturall operations. The vse of it, is to helpe the concoction: and there be foure thinges which bee annexed to those naturals, which are Age, Colour, Figure, and Kind.

## CHAP. XI.

## ¶ Of Age.

*Pe.* Seeing, heretofore we haue discoursed of things naturall and their number: it shall be needfull in this place to speake of such thinges as are annexed to naturall things, beginning at Age which is the first: So I will demand of you what is Age?

*Ioh.* It is a space or part of our life in which our bodies are subiect to many mutations.

*Pe.* Thou knowest that all things which are created, if they bee materiall, should haue an end, and that there is nothing vnder the heauens, except the soule of man, but it is subiect to corruption and change, as all the Philosophers grant, like as *Aristotle*, *Hippocrates*, and *Galen* do testifie; and it is certaine, that we from our birth are subiect to diuers alterations: therefore tell me into how many diuers apparant mutations haue our ancients diuided the life of man?

*Ioh.* In that there is found very great controuersie: For the *Egyptians*, and *Pythagorians*, were so superstitious, that they did publish by their writs, and were of opinion, that there were so many Ages as there were signes in an hundred yerres: thinking therby a man to liue onely a hundred yerres, and that euery seuenth yeare we should perceiue some notable change, besides the particular change of euery signe both in the temperature of the body, and manners of the minde. Yet I am of opinion, that Age should not bee diuided according

*Arist de longi-  
tud. & breuit.  
vta.*

*Hippoc. lib. 1.  
De dieta.*

*Galen lib. 1. de  
sanit.*

The *Egypti-  
ans* and *Pitha-  
gorians* opini-  
on concerning  
mans life.



Hippocrates  
de partu.

ding to the number of the yeares : thinking that horevppon should either depend youth, or olde age : but rather after the temperature of the body, for old men y are cold & drie may be termed old, so there be many old folkes of 40 yeares, and diuers who may be thought yong of threescore. There be some complexions that ware sone olde, in other later : these of the sanguine complexion be long in growing olde, because they haue much heate and humiditie. The melancholique warreth sone olde, because they bee colde and drie. As touching the feminine sexe, it becommeth soner olde than the Masculine. Hippocrates reporteth that women in the mothers wombe are formed in seuen moneths, and growe slower than men ; but being borne, doe grow faster, and become soner wise, olde, or failed : for the feblenes of their bodie, and fashion of life, being for the most part idle : and there is nothing that bringeth soner old age, than idleness and want of exercise.

Pe. Is mans age no otherwise diuided amongst the olde writers ?

Plato and Pythagoras opinion of Age.

Iob. Amongst the olde Philosophers there be sundrie opinions. Plato affirmeth man to liue fourescore and one yerres. Pythagoras onely fourescore, and did diuide them in twentyes, comparing the ages to the foure times of the yeare : to wit, the Spring-time, to childhoode : the Sommer, to youth ; the autumnne, to manhoode : and winter, to old age.

Varro diuided age five ways.

The Philosopher Varro did diuide age five wayes, to wit, childhoode, to fiftene yerres : from fiftene to thirty, young men : from thirty to forty five, men : from that to threescore, old men : from thence, they be termed very olde.

The opinion of the Egyptians and Alexandrians.

The Egyptians and Alexandrians were of the opinion, that men did liue according to the increasing and diminishing of the heart, thinking the heart to grow till fiftie yerres, and that euery yeare it did augment two dramme weights : and after fiftie yeares, did euer diminish, till in the end it became to nought : Which opinion I doe not approue, because I haue opened (sundry) very olde people, in whome I haue



haue found the heart as bigge and heauie, as in those of younger age.

The learned Philosopher & mediciner Staseas was of opinion that men should not liue long, by reason of the sundrie chaunces of fortune and doubtfull health of their bodies, for he sayth, wee ought onely to liue so long as the commodities of our life be more in number, than the discommodities thereof.

Staceus opinion of mans age.

Pithagoras and Cicero did both accuse Nature, for giuing of long life to Crookes, and Harts, who were unprofitable creatures, and so short to men: To the which the Philosopher Possidonius doth agree, and sayd, that one daye of a learned mans life is better than neuer so long of an ignorant: some doe adde another kind of olde age called *Senium ex morbo*.

Pithagoras & Cicero de senectute.

Possidonius opinion.

The most part of our late writers are of opinion, that the naturall course of our life indureth five speciall mutations, which they doe call ages, to witte, Infancy, Adolescence, Young age, Mans estate, and olde Age: the infancie is hote and humide, but the humiditie surpasseth the heate, and lasteth from the houre of our birth till thirtene yeeres, and is gouerned by the moone as saith Ptolomeus: In this time man is subiect to many griefes and diseases, like as feuers, fluxes, Wormes in the belly, the Stone, Aposthumes, and sundry others.

1. Age gouerned by the moone.

The Adolescence is hote and humide, but the heate beginneth to surpasse the humiditie: the voice beginneth to grow great in men, and paps in women, and it lasteth to twentie five yeeres, which is the time prefixed for growing in height; in this time men incurre many diseases, chiefly the Staticke, as saith Gordon. & is gouerned by Mercury who formed the manners and wit.

2. Age hote and humide, gouerned by Mercurie.

Gord.

The third age is youth, which is hote and drie, but more hote then drie, and lasteth till thirtie and five yeeres, and is subiect to hote feauers, frenzies, with sundry other diseases, and is gouerned by Venus, and ingendereth great cupiditie of

3. Age hote and drie, gouerned by Venus.



of lust.

4. Age temperate governed by the Sunne.

The Fourth, is mans estate, most temperate of all, and lasteth till fiftie yeares, and neither augmenteth nor diminisheth: in this time men are subiect to hote Feuers, Fluxes of bloud, Plurisie, Lethargie, Phrensie, and such like, and is governed by the Sunne, Author of wisdom and gravitie.

1.

Then cometh old age, which lasteth the rest of our life, and may be divided into three. The first, called græne age, which is prudent and full of experience, fit to governe common wealths, and lasteth to seventy yeares, and is governed by Iupiter, author of wisdom and counsell.

2.

Then beginneth the second part of olde age, accompanied with diuers little incommodities, the heate then almost decayeth, and is cold and drie, like plants which doe become rotten and decayed: in this time man is subiect to many diseases, as Epilepsie, Lethargie, Punnies, and such like, as saith Gordon: and is governed by Saturne, then they be full of sloath, dull, froward, and vneasie to be governed.

3.

Lastly, followes the third part of olde age, which is called *Decrepit*, vnto the which (as saith the royall Prophet) happeneth nothing but griefe and sorrow. All the actions both of body and spirit are weakened, the feeling groweth remisse, the memory decayeth, and the iudgement faileth: so returneth to infancy, whence proceedeth the Greeke proverbe, *Bis pueri Senes*.

Eccle. Cap 12.

This last age is set downe in Eccle. 12. Bethou wise Salomon. With such a braue Allegorie, that nothing in the world can bee found so excellent, for the which I shall set it downe at large in this place.

The allegory.

Haue mind (saith he) of thy Creator in the daies of thy youth, or in the daies of aduersity: Come, while the Sunne is not darkened; nor the Moone; nor the Starres; nor the cloudes returne after the raine: When the keepers of the house shall tremble, and the strong men shall bowe themselves. And the grinders shall cease, because they be few in



in number ; and they shall waxe darke which looke out by the windowes, and the dores shall be shut without, because of the base sound of the grinding. And all the daughters of Singing shall bee abashed, also they shall bee affraide of the high things : And feare shall be in the way : And the Almond tree shall flourish : and the Grasshopper shall be a burden : and concupiscence shall be driuen away : while the Siluer cord is not lengthened, nor the Golden Ewer broken : nor the pitcher broken at the well : nor the wheile broken at the Cesterne, and dust returne to the earth as it was, and the Spirit to God that gaue it.

This is the true description of the last age, which is admirable, and required a good Anatomist to expound the same; the Allegorie followeth. Haue mind (saith he) of thy creator in y<sup>e</sup> dayes of thy youth, while the Sun is not darkened: that is to saye, while the eyes haue not lost their sight : nor the cloudes returne after the raine, which is, when the eyes hath long wept, their passeth befoze them grosse thicke vapours like clouds. When the keepers of y<sup>e</sup> house shal tremble: which is, when the armes and handes which are giuen for the defence of man, are failed. And the strong men shall bowe themselves : which is, the legges wherevppon the whole body stands, doth bowe and becommeth weake. The grinders shall cease : that is, the teeth which breaketh and grindeth the meate, shall be decayed. And they shall ware darke which looke out by the windowes: that is, when the eyes are ouerwhelmed with some cataract or taye which couereth the prunall called the windome of the eye. The doore shall be shut without, by the base sound of the grinding: that is, the chappes and lips which cannot well open, and the chanells whereby the meat doth passe, groweth narrow. And he shall rise at the voice of the bird, that is, olde people cannot sleepe but doe rise at the crowe or calling of the cocke. And all the daughters of Singing shall bee abased: which is, when the voice doth decay. The Almond tree shall flourish : that is, the head and beard of all people becommeth all white. The

The explication of the allegory.

Grasse



Grasshopper shall bee a burden : which is, when the legges groweth great, swelling, and tumified with abundance of colde watery humors. Concupiscence shall be driven away : which is to say, olde people shall haue little or no appetite to meate. When the Silver cord is lengthened : that is, when the marrow that goeth along the backe groweth supple, and boweth the backe forward. When the Golden Civer is broken : that is, the heart which containeth y<sup>e</sup> arteriall blood and vitall spirits, shall be weakened. The Pitcher broken at the fountaine: that is, the great vaine Cane, that may no more shoute blood from the liuer, which is, the Spring that humecteth the whole body in such sort, that it serueth no more then a broken vessell. The wheele broken at the Cesterne, that is, the Perues and bladder doth growe so weake, that they can no more retaine the water. When all these things do arrive, the dust returneth to the earth as it was, which is, when the materiall body returneth to the earth : and the Spirit shall turne to God that gaue it. These bee the best descriptions that can be giuen of olde age, with their times and yerres, according to the opinion of our ancients.

## CHAP. XII.

### ¶ Of the entertainment of olde Age.

*Pe.* **B**Eeing earnestly requested by some of my friends, (who are aged and sickly) to prescribe some forme of regiment for the better entertainment of their life, which I am willing to doe, although it bee more medicinall then Chyrurgicall : Yet in respect of their intreaty, and the great number of aged people in their countries, who may not at all times haue the counsell of the learned : for the which cause I thought good to speake some thing briefly of that matter:



matter. And therefore I will demand of you, how many principall rules were necessary to bee obserued by old people in their dyet?

*Ioh. Eight.*

*Pe.* Which be they?

*Io.* The first is, that they neuer eate while they find some little appetite, for then meate is most agreeable to the stomacke, and will better digest the euill meate hauing some appetite, then the best meate hauing no appetite, as at length is set downe by Hippocrates.

The second rule is, that the meate should bee well sodden and chewed before it bee let ouer, otherwise it chargeth the stomacke too much, and troubleth the concoction not being cut small with the teeth or knife, which being done, aduanceth the first digestion. This is the reason that they that haue many teeth liue long, as saith Hippocrates.

*Lib. 2. epid.*

Thirdly, they must be very wary to ouercharge their stomacke, but euer rise from the table with appetite to eat more, for in ouermuch charging the stomacke, the naturall heat is weakened. Hippocrates saith, a man should neuer eate till hee bee full, neither busier to exercise; for moderate trauell excitates the naturall heat: so, very necessary for all people to be vsed before meate.

*sect. 6.*

*Petrus Luxiganus.*

*6. Epid.*

Fourthly, that they eate only of one or two sorts of meate, at once, otherwise it troubleth the stomacke, for all meates are not of one qualitie, and some digest sooner than other: besides, the eating of diuers meates and sundry sauces, prouoketh much drinke, which is an hinderance to the digestion as saith Hippocrates, Plutarch, Plinius, and Macrobin, who were of opinion, that one sort of meat is best, & of most easie digestion.

*Petrus Luxiganus de sanit.*

*Plutarch.*

*Plinie Macrobin.*

*6. epid. 3. Sec.*

Fifthly, there ought an order to be obserued in eating, and those meats that digest easiest, should first enter into the stomacke, like as pottage, prunes, and such other, as hath the vertue to loose the bellie; grosse and rude meate should last be taken.



The first, they shall eate more at supper then at dinner; provided, they bee not subiect to catars, and distillations, and that because there is more time betwixt the supper and dinner, then between dinner and supper, to digest and distribute the aliment through the body: for certaine it is, in sleeping the heate retyzeth to the center, so it digesteth the better: besides, all digestion would haue rest, and so it digesteth the better.

Seauenthly, that which they eate should be of good nourishment, and easie of digestion, abstaining from all grosse, viscus, windy, flegmaticke, and melancholique meates, by reason old people hauing the naturall heate cold, dissipate not the grosse superfluity, easily.

Eightly, that they be nourished oft and little at one time, which is meete to be obserued both by olde and young, as is at large set downe by Galen, speaking of Antioch mediciner, and Telephus grammariour. According to those rules, we find the olde mediciners as Hippocrates, Galen, and Auicenn haue euer practised. Galen remarketh that the Athlits eate flesh neuer but at night. Aristoxenus writeth, that the Pythagorians eate onely at dinner a little bread and honie. Philemon the olde writer saith, that the Graeke souldiers at Troy tooke foure meales a day; the first thre, onely a little bread and wine, and at night a little swines flesh. These rules shall bee sufficient in this place, in respect wee are to speake heereafter (of the nourishment most proper to be vsed, and to be abstained both by olde and young) at length in the chapter of meate and drinke: as also concerning the ayre and exercise, shall be set downe in sundry chapters in the second treatise of this booke.

3. Galen con-  
seru. health  
Hippocrates.  
Galen. Auicenn  
5. conseru. of  
health.  
Aristoxenus.  
Philemon.

Vide lib. 2.  
Cap. 2.

Vide 2. treatise,  
cap. 2.



## CHAP. XIII.

¶ Of such remedies or helpes as should  
be used by old people.

**Pe.** Seeing age is subiect to sundry inconueniences and diseases, I would faine know certaine remedies for correcting and helping of the same? The diseases  
of olde age.

**Io.** They be so many in number, that it will be tedious to prescribe remedies for them all.

**Pe.** I will shew you those which I haue found most commonly in those people, like as constipation and hardnes of the belly, flowing, stopping, or binding in the breast, weake, salt, and bitter humors, whereof proceedeth great aching, heate, and acrimonie in the making of water, much winde, with vniuersall faintnes, by reason of the weaknesse of the stomake and the decay of naturall heate, subiect to many fluxions, euer spitting, coughing, and watering at the eyes. For the which affections I would prescribe some familiar and weake things : for strong and violent thinges must not be used to such people? Strong and  
violent things  
must not be  
used by olde  
men.

**Io.** As concerning the hardnes of the belly, diuers things may be prescribed, yet I find broth most familiar, which may be made diuersly : like as to take the tender leaues of malloines, mercuriall, and of the Barbary tree, beetes, Horse-hoofe or Coltsfoote, with a few Prunes Damaske : let all bee well purified and sodden with a soft fire, a piece of Aleale or Hutton, and take a draught of that in the morning next your heart : or you may make a broth of gremicall, or colwoed, with a little oyle de Olive. But for the wealthier sort, may be made thus which is most good : Take an olde Cocke and pull him quicke, bruse him well, and kill him, pull out the guts, and wash him twice with white wine, then fill vp his belly with Perceley rootes, leaues of Burridge, and Broth for  
the welthier  
sort.



Remidies for  
the oppressed  
stomacke  
with wind.

Buglosse, Wimpernell, Mercurie, Spinnage, Figges, Ray-  
sons, Plowdamas, Dates, Hillope : Seeth all at a soking  
fire till it bee well sodden, take of the broth a reasonable  
draught, three mornings together. It hath the vertue to  
loose the belly, it cleanseth the passages of the water, and gi-  
ueth breath. Glitters and suppositours were necessary some-  
time to be vsed. For the heate of the Water a little of Cas-  
sia were good, and sometime a little Turpentine washed in  
Rose water, & taken with white Wine, it being first allayed  
with the yolke of an egge. It may be likewise taken in pilles  
the forme whereof yee shall heere in the poore mans Guide.  
As for the weaknesse of the stomake, and wind that oppres-  
seth y same, confection ginger, suger, aniseedes, cannell, carro-  
way confection, are good : or tablets of *Aromaticum rosatum*  
Cannell water, spirit of aniseedes, and cloues. To helpe  
the naturall heat, external and internall things may be vsed,  
as cappes of capitall, powders for the braines, amongst the  
which, cloues is best, plasters of vnguent, and pore on the  
heart, vnctions on the stomake, or the weight of two crowns  
of Amber grease in a new layd egge, *Teriata* and *metridate*,  
confection of *Alcermis* imperiall water : the formes thereof  
are common, so not necessary to be set downe in this place.

### CHAP. XIIII.

#### ¶ Of Colour, Figure, and Kind.

Pe. **V** Hereof proceed the Colours?

Io. Of iust proportion of the humors, which  
rule doth gouerne in mans body : as if there bee a iust pro-  
portion of the foure humors, the colour is red : if aboun-  
dance of melancholique humor, it is liuide and blacke : if a  
boundance of choller, the colour is citrim and yellow : if  
phlegme, the colour is white and pale.

Pe. What



*Pe.* What is Figure, or habitude?

*Io.* It is a thing that sheweth the temperature whereof the body is composed.

*Pe.* How many sorts of Figures are there?

*Io.* There are foure ; the first, is called *Quadrature*, which is of good temperature. The second, is *Crassitude* or thickness, and sheweth exceeding heate and humidity. The third, *Extenuation*, which is hote and dry. The fourth, is very fatte, proceeding of exceeding coldnes and humidity.

*Pe.* What is a Sex?

*Io.* It is nothing but a distinction betwene man and woman; the man is of a hote temperature, but the woman, and Eunuchs are cold.

The temperature of man and woman.

*Pe.* Is it a generall rule that men are hote, and women cold?

*Io.* No, for *Galen* saith, that it is possible to finde women of more hote temperature then men, but seldome : and so we end naturall things, wherein consisteth the constitution of mans body.

*Lib. de pulsib.*







# THE SECOND BOOKE,

*Of Unnaturall things.*

The confideration whereof is most needfull  
for the preservation of health ; and con-  
taineth six Chapters. By

PETER LOVVE  
Scottishman.

- Chap. 1. Of the Ayer.  
2. Of Meate and Drinke.  
3. Of Moouing and Exercise.  
4. Of Sleeping and Waking.  
5. Of Repletion and Euacuation.  
6. Of perturbations & passions of the mind.

*Pet.*



*Anicen.*

HAVING spoken sufficiently of naturall  
Things, which are proper for the constitu-  
tion of mans body : Now, in like man-  
ner it is necessary, that wee goe forward  
with those things which are called vnna-  
turall things, and conserue the body, if  
they be rightly vsed; and if otherwise, they  
destroy the nature and health of mans body, as saith *Anicen*  
Prince



Prince of the Arabians, and therefore are called vnnaturall things : of the which I would very gladly knowe the number?

*Io.* There are Sixe ; To wit, the ayre that goeth about vs, the meate and drinke we vse, the motion and rest of our bodies, sleeping and waking, repletion and euacuation, together with the perturbations of our mind.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Ayer.

*Pe.* Seeing the Aire is so needfull to vs, that no health Nothing can  
liue without  
the ayre.  
 may be maintained, nor no defection cured without the same, as wee see by the continuall inspiration, that all naturall creatures draweth for their refreshing, as also for the regendring of the spirit Animall. In like manner, the Ayre may alter our bodies in three manners : to witte, by qualitie, substance, and mutation, as ye shall reade more at large in the poore mans Guide, and is no lesse profitable and necessary to our life then respiration, without the which we cannot liue a moment, as saith *Galen*. Therefore I would know of you what aire is? 6. Method. et.  
8. de Placitis  
Hipocrates  
Platonis.

*Io.* It is the matter of our respiration.

*Pe.* How many sorts of Aire is there?

*Io.* Twoo ; to wit, that which is good, and that which is euill.

*Pe.* What call you good Ayre?

*Io.* That which is pure, cleane, thinne, exempt from euill euapozations, deepe valleyes, clouds, rotten smelles, farre from stinkes, mosses, cauernes, carrions and all corruption: such ayre is best against all sicknesse, as well for the preservation of health, as curing of sicknesse, as saith *Cardanus*.

*Pe.* What is euill Ayre?



Lib. I, de diffi-  
cultate spirans.

Henricus  
rantz. lib. 7.  
de conservand.  
valetud.

Lib. de sub-  
tilitate.

Cardanus lib.  
artis parue.

*Ioh.* It is that which is contrarie to the other, thicke, rotten, neere hilles, mosses, stinkes, the sea, and all such toynes as bee loine and close, infected with euill saours, or scituated betwixt twoo hills or places where passeth the filth of toynes: also that which is nebulous, and commeth from stinking breaths, also by the celestial influence, as saith *Hippocrates*. In like manner, that which is exposed to the South wind, and the airc which is inclosed in close houses for a certaine time, which becommeth mouldie and putrified, because euery thing that is hote and humide and wanteth euentilation, becommeth putrified. The great toynes neere the sea, as often we see in the end of autumnne and Sommer great maladies, and dangerous, sometimes the plague as writeth *Cardanus*: for it entreth into our bodies by the mouth and nose, when we breath, of the which often are ingendred maladies very difficult.

*Pe.* Whereof proceedeth the variety of the qualities of the Ayre?

*Ioh.* Of thre things, like as of Regions or Countries, of wounds, and of the scituation of the place where we are.

*Pe.* How proceedeth the varietie of the Ayre by the Countries?

*Ioh.* There are some which are euill tempered, and others well tempered, according to the climate where they are scituated, like as vnder the Pole Articke and Antarticke the farre distant Sunne beames, which maketh the temperature extreame colde, for the which it is uninhabitable: yet there are some inhabited, as Scythia and other such Countreyes vnder the equinoctiall line: The vntemperature is so extreame hote, because of the right reflexion of the Sunne, especially betwixt the circle Articke and Cancer: Like as in the Antarticke and Capricorne the airc is moze temperate, cheifly in the middelt according to the approaching of the Sunne, as we see in the foure seasons of the yeare. *Cardanus* saith, that those countries which are mountainous are most temperate, and that a man may liue an hundred yeres in such places.

*Plinius*



*Plinie* saith, that Men, Beastes, and Trees, are farre *Plinius.*  
stronger and more barbarous in hillie parts, and that for  
their great liberty. Those which dwell in the lower parts  
and valleyes, are more effeminate, as saith *Titus Livius.* *Titus Livius.*

*Pe.* Seeing the Ayre is so necessary for the curation of  
maladies, is there no waye to alter and accomodate it by  
art, to the sicknes?

*Io.* Yes verely, and for this cause *Hippocrates* counsaileth  
in maladies cronickes, to change the aire and countrey,  
and maladies comitialles, to change the ayre, countrey, and  
nouriture.

*Galen* counsaileth those who haue vlcers in the Lights, to  
dwell at Rome, because there the aire is very drie : in com-  
mon sicknesses wee helpe the ayre somewhat by art, like as  
in feuers, which are hote and drie, we chouse a house which  
is colde and humide : Diuers windowes for the euentila-  
tion thereof, or winds made by art, also by casting cold wa-  
ter through the house, by spreading and strewing of flowers  
and braunches of trees which are cold and humide, like as  
violets, roses, wilde vine berry trees, and such like : Also  
be ware to haue many people in the chamber, as counsaileth  
*Cardanus.*

*Cardanus lib.*  
*5. artis parus.*

But when the sicknesses are cold and humide, as feuers  
putrified, catarrhes, hydropses, tumors pituitous, we chouse  
houses which are hote and drie. Also to spread & strew flow-  
ers, hearbes, branches of trees which are hote and drie, as  
commonly Sage, Lauender, Mariorom, Spinnage, and  
such like.

Under the signification of the aire in this place, wee vn-  
derstand all manner of windes, little and great, the which  
is most necessary to be considered, because they doe not one-  
ly alter and change the body, but also the spirit. It goeth  
by the nose to the braine, by the mouth to the heart, by the  
pores of the skinne and moving of the artiers, through all  
the body, It furnisheth the aliments to our spirits : For  
this the diuine *Hippocrates* noteth, that the good and euill  
dispositi<sup>o</sup>n



disposition of our spirits and humors, dependeth vppon the constitution of the ayre and winds. For we see where there is great trouble and variety of windes, the people are arrogant, difficult to be gouerned, and very cruell.

*Pe.* Seeing that of the wind those accidents fall, let mee know what is winde?

*Hippocrates.*

*Ioh.* Hippocrates saith, it is no other thing but an vnstable motion of the ayre, the which being stirred by some motion it purgeth.

*Pe.* What nature is it of?

*Io.* It is hote and drie, like as it is made of an exhalation hote and drie.

*Pe.* How many diuers sorts of winds are there?

*Io.* There are foure principall, to witte, *Eurus* from the East, hote and drie : *Zephyrus* from the West, colde and humide : *Auster* from the South, hote and humide, putrefactive, it passeth by the sea Mediterrane : *Boreas* from the North, cold and drie, resisting against putrifaction.

*Arist.* attributeth two collaterall to each of those foure, and so in all maketh twelue, some make two and thirtie, like as the mariners, but the contemplation of these matters is not much requisite in a Chyrurgion.

*Bodin.*

*Bodin* saith, in his Common-wealth, that the winds make great variety in vs, for in countreyes where the wind is violent and great, the people are turbulent in spirit : and there where the winds are not so violent, the people are of a more quiet spirit.

*Pe.* What meane you by scituation or place?

*Io.* I meane, as to be scituated towards the sea stinkes, doles, moles, and such as you haue heard. Also those inho haue no other aspect, but either to the South which is humide and putrefactive, or to the West which is colde and humide. Also to be dwelling in ground which is fatte, the aire is hote and humide ; and in ground that is full of sand, hote and drie.

*Titus Linius.*

*Titus Linius* saith, that the places change the nature of our bodies,



bodies, as those which dwell in mountains differ from those which dwell in lower places : Also saith he, those countries which are fertile, the men are ordinarie colwards, given to lust : the countries and places barren, the people are more hardy and ingenious, quicke spirited.

*Arist.* saith, those that dwell in cold regions, are proude, cruell, and barbarous in their manners, very strong : in hote countreys they are wise, and more fearefull; those which dwell in lowe Harsh Countreys are dull, sleepe, the which proceedeth of the disposition of the aire.

## CHAP. II.

### ¶ Of Meate, and Drinke.

*Pe.* Seeing the aliments are no lesse to be considered for the preservation of the health, then the aire; it is therefore necessarie to knowe what is aliment, with diuers sortes thereof?

*Io.* Aliment, is that which augmenteth and nourisheth our bodies.

*Pe.* How many kinds of aliments are there?

*Io.* There are diuers sorts; flesh, filhe, hearbes, fruites, cozne, drinke naturall and artificiall, condiments simple, and composed.

*Pe.* Are they all vsed after one intention?

*Io.* No, they are of diuers natures, and must bee vsed in diuers manners, according to the temperature of the body, as writeth *Cardanus*.

*Pe.* What sort of nouriture ought we to vse most commonly?

*Ioh.* That which nourisheth well, ingendereth good iuice: of the which *Galen* hath written in his bookes of the Faculty of Aliments, and in the bookes of Conseruation of health, as

*Galen lib. de  
facult. alimen.*

also



also *Hippocrates* in diuers places.

*Pe.* In the vsing of Aliments, how many things are to be obserued.

*Io.* Pyne ; to witte, the goodnesse, quantitie, qualitie, *Trallianus lib.* vse and custome, appetite, order, howe, age, and tyme of the 7. yere.

*Pe.* First then, we must consider, that he who would haue his body entertained in good health, must vse meats of good nouriture or aliment : then tell me what is aliment which ingendereth good iuice?

*Io.* It is that which is light of digestion that nourisheth well, maketh little excrements, and ingendereth good bloud, as saith *Cardanus*, such as Capons, Partridges, Larkes, Weale, Button, Kidde, yolkes of Egges, Fesants, Quails, Tootzalls, all mountaine birdes, being larded with sage or hissope : Also some kind of fishes may bee vsed, as witnesseth *Cardane*; such as Soles, Trouts, Guggins, & Perches. Good bread of wheate, that is neither ouer new, nor too stale, *Lib. 25, ca 27.* as counsaileth *Auicen* : for ouer new and hote bread doth digest euill, altereth the body, and ingendereth obstructions, sending vapours and fumes to the head. And being too old drieth too much, and remaineth long in the stomacke. In breaking of this bread, it were good to mixe some pouder of Carway, fennell, or Anniseedes, specially for such as are euill disposed and weake stomacked. Such as bee well disposed, oftentimes euill bread or drinke cometh in good season, like as it happened to King *Ptolomie* wandring through Egypt, who did eate of sheapheards bread, which hee did esteeme the best bread that euer he did eate. Likewise, *Varius* flying from Alexander, and being sore thirsty, did drinke muddy water, wherein had ben throwne a great number of dead carkasses, yet hee thought with himselfe that hee neuer did drinke better drinke.

*Pe.* What drinke is meetest to be vsed?

*Io.* Good cleane wine that is of good colour and taste, moderately taken, for it hath the vertue to nourish, strengthen,

corro



corroborate the naturall heate, tempereth the humors, and purgeth both by sweate and urine, giueth appetite, helpeth the facultie concoctrix, and maketh men ioyefull; and olde wine is best being hote in the third degree, and new wine in the first degree. The strongest wine hath most heate, and the sweetest wine vnhealthfull. Yet burnt wine that is boyled with suger, is very good for old weake people, who haue their naturall heate decayed, it nourisheth in those good blood, but wine must be moderately taken by all men, for being ouer largely taken, it hurteth the engine with the whole seues of the body, weakneth the same, and rendereth it dull and hebet, debiliteth the perues and braines, prouoketh trembling and shaking of the members, spasme, apoplexie, palsie, and oftentimes suddaine death: so it is meekest both for body and goods, to be moderately taken.

*Henri. us Ran-  
zouius de con-  
ser. Valetud.*

But, because euery countrey or nation doth not afforde wine, therefore in stead thereof we vse Hydromell composed of water and hony: or Apocras made of water, white bread, suger, with a little hony: or Tisen made of water, Barley, Licourish, and a few prunes boyled together. Also beere and Ale that is olde, cleane, and well made, which is now our ordinary drinke.

*Pe.* Haue our ancient writers made any mention of Ale?

*Io.* Galen or Hippocrates hath made no mention; yet I reade, that the old Arabians did esteeme much of it, and inuented diuers formes of compounding it, yet much different from our forme.

*Auicenn, Auerroys*, with diuers others, but specially *Magninus Mediotanensis* hath largely written of it: saying, it hath great force to quench thirst, loose the belly, temper the body, and prouoke sleepe, and is as necessary as meate, both to humect the body, and restore that humiditie which is dissolved, as also to put downe grosse meates to the lower parts of the stomacke.

*Auicenn, Auerroys.*

*Magninus, his regiment of health.*

*Henricus Ranzouius in his regiment of health.*

*Pe.* What sort of grain is Ale most commonly composed of?

*Io.* Of Barly, Dates, or Wheate; but according to the diuersity



diuersity of the graine, it is of diuers qualities: that which is composed of barlie and oates, doe lesse nourish, and ingendereth fewer obstructions and ventosities, then that of wheate. And that Ale which is most grosse and thicke, is worst: that which is thinne and cleare is healthfull, yet it is more grosse than wine, and more harder to digest. Also it maketh more obstructions: that which is new made, doth engender inflammations, wind, vapours, & dolour of the head, specially being immoderately taken; but being moderately taken it digesteth well, nourisheth much, and maketh people fatte.

I find that our auncients in default of other graines, did make their drinke of the graine called *Lolium*, in the bulgar language called Rye or Darnell, it groweth commonly among wheate, and of all those graines it is the worst. It prouoketh great dolour and giddinesse of the head, hurteth the sperves and sinews, as saith Ouid and Virgill.

Ouid. 1. Fast.

Virg. 1. Geor.

Plini. lib. 18.

cap. 17.

*Infelix Lolium, & Steriles dominantur Avena.*

Pe. Which are the elements that ingender euill humors?

Iob. All such as are of euill digestion, like as Bacon, yet Galen greatly commendeth it for the similitude it hath with humane flesh: but it hath bene found by experience, that the great vsage thereof sometime causeth leprosie, because as is alleadged, some swine among all other beasts are most subiect to that sicknesse, for the which, as saith Tertullian and Baptist Mantuan, Moses did forbidde it to the Iewes, because they were already subiect to that sicknesse. Salt breese is also found vnhealthfull, as also Hearts flesh, Hares, Hammes, Goates, Geese, and all sorts of water fowles, Chiese, Fruit, all sort of *Ligumina*, with all sorts of bread, except that which is made of wheate, as writeth Galen. As touching the propriety of euery sort of aliment, ye shall heare at large in my treatise intituled, The poore mans Guide.

Tertullian.

Bapt. Mantuan.

Moses.

Henricus Ran-

gouins de con-

suetud.

Gal. Lib. de

bono & malo

succo.

Pe. What meane you by the quality of meate?

Io. That we neuer eate more than contenteth nature, and not



not according to appetite. *Hippocrates* counselleth a man *Hippo. 2. apho.*  
 who will live in health, not to fill himselfe too full of meate,  
 neither bee slowe to exercise and trauell, in so doing hee shall  
 seldome be sicke: for as *Cicero* and some other olde writers *Cicero.*  
 say, that we should eate to live, but not live to eate, as many  
 doe now a dayes, like as the one halfe of the people do burst  
 with morning drinckes, breake-fastes, dinners, afternoones  
 drincking, supper and collation: so that they give no let to  
 nature, to digest that meate which they have formerly ta-  
 ken, which both wracketh their bodies, and offendeth God by  
 such gluttonie: the other sort of people be halfe hungry, who  
 labour and trauell soze, yet wee doe see they be lesse subiect  
 to sicknesse, and live longer. *Possidonius* saith, that intempe- *Possidonius.*  
 rancie and gluttonie feebleth the body, dulleth the mind, and  
 bringeth soone old age, whereof proceedeth this saying,

Many more persons by gluttony are slaine,

Then is by warre, famine, or other paine.

For, saith he, there is no riches nor treasure so great, which in  
 small time may not be swallowed up in their bellies, & at last  
 bringeth man to servitude. *Cato* forbiddeth feasting and ban- *Cato.*  
 quetting, for diuers respects: First, it is chargeable, and un-  
 certaine whether it purchaseth the fauour of him who is bid-  
 den, or displeasure to those that are not bidden, with diuers  
 other discommodities which are set down in the methode of  
 Ciuill Policie written by the Bishop of *Caietane*.

*Pe.* Is there alwaies a iust measure to bee obserued in  
 meate?

*Io.* No, for in those which are well wee vse according to  
 their temperature; and in the sicke according to the diuersity  
 of the sicknes.

*Galen* doth counsell in long sicknesses, the sicke to vse a  
 moze larger dyet; and in shorter sicknesses a lesser diet, and  
 when the sickness is in the vigoꝝ or force, there must be a ve-  
 ry spare dyet vsed, as saith *Hippocrates*.

*Cardanus* is of opinion, that euery man should eate but  
 little at once, for the concoction is the better made, and  
 fewer

*Gal. Lib.*

*Glauc.*

*Hipocra. 5.*

*aph.*

*Carda. Lib. 1.*

*de sani. tuend.*



fewer superfluities and excrements will remaine.

The olde Romaines were accustomed at certaine times to suppe in their open closes and courts, to let the people see their great sobriety.

*Pe.* what doest thou obserue touching the qualitie of meat?

*Io.* In those people which are well, according to their temperature : and in those which are sicke, according to the diuersity of the disease : in children, aliments that bee hote and humide : in hote diseases, colde meates : and in colde sicknesses, hote meates, and so forth.

*Pe.* What do you obserue touching custome or vse?

*Io.* Custome should bee obserued ; for, as saith some of our ancients, custome is a second nature : we see, that which is accustomed, although it be not ouer good, yet is needfull to be obserued : and if it bee altered, it must bee done by little and little, as saith *Hippocrates*. I haue diuers times in other countries seene men become sicke, by changing of their aliment and custome. *Hippocrates* doth counsell vs to eate of that wherevnto we haue best appetite, although it be worse then that wherunto we haue no appetite: for it is better saith he, because the stomacke doth more quickly and better digest it, than that which we take vnwillingly.

*Pe.* Thou knowest that good order is to bee obserued in all things, and cheifly in meate and drinke, for the great effects that ensue of them: then tell me what order should be vsed in eating and drinking?

*Cardan. Lib. de sanitate tuenda.* *Io.* *Cardane* counsaileth vs, to eate that first which is easiest to be digested, otherwise we force our stomacke. *Hippocrates* doth counsaile vs, to vse light and humide things in the morning, to open the belly : and such things at night as nourisheth the body : And it is best euer to eate before you drinke, for the digestion is best wrought in so doing.

*Pe.* Is there any time obserued when man should eat, and drinke?

*Io.* It is alwayes best after some exercise, and then to eat moderately, the exercise helpeth the digestion, and augmenteth



teeth the naturall heate: in sicke folkes, the time is obserued according to the force of y<sup>e</sup> sickness & custome of the diseased. Yet in the beginning of the excrese, it is best to bee very sparing in eating and drinke, except in great necessity; some after meate it is best neither to write, reade, nor vse any profound meditation, for such thinges retourneth the naturall heate which should be occupied in digestion.

*Pe.* What obserue you touching age?

*Io.* I obserue in children humide aliments are best, for in vsing of ouer drie meates, you drie vp the body, and so hinder the growing. To young men who are exceeding hote and drie, aliments of contrarie qualities must be vsed like as to olde, who are cold and drie, we should vse meates that humedeth the parts solide. In like manner, yong people should *Hippo. aphorij.* eat oftener and more than olde, because they haue abundance of naturall heate. Hippocrates saith, that olde people fast easily; next, those who are of manly age; then adolescency and young men; but last of all children, for long fasting heateth the blood.

*Pe.* What distinction make you touching the time of the yeere?

*Io.* In winter which is colde and humide, we should vse meates hote and drie, and in greater quantitie than in summer, and drinke little and good: in the Spring time which is hote and humide, we should eat lesse and drinke more, but weaker, vsing meates of good nourishing: In Sommer, which is hote and drie, wee must vse meates colde and humide, diminishing the eating, and augmenting the drinke, more then in the Spring. In Autumne, which is cold and drie, we should begin to eat a little more, and drinke lesse then in sommer or spring time.

*Pe.* What is drinke.

*Io.* It is any liquor which appeaseth the thirst, and mixeth the meate in the stomacke.

*Pe.* What is thirst?

*Io.* It is an appetite of a thing colde and humide: for, the  
C
Drinke



Drinke doth humect and refresh either actually present, or potentially to come. *Plinie* saith, that hote drinke is contrary to nature, and we must not drinke so soone as we be set down at the table, for that doth moue and augment cattarhes and distillations, and drinking when wee goe to sleepe doth the like.

*Crinus* of  
drunkards.

Here we must obserue in drinking, that wee neuer drinke so much till it swimme in the stomacke, as diuers doe now a dayes, who drinke for pleasure, of whome *Crinus* hath made mention: saying, the first draught quencheth the thirst; the second, maketh man ioyefull; the third, drunke; and the fourth, putteth him cleane out of his senses.

*Macrobius*.

*Macrobius* maketh mention, that eating doth make a man quiet, and drinking causeth men to clatter. Drinke moderately taken, hath three offices: first, it helpeth the digestion: secondly, it minglet the meate in the stomacke: thirdly, it bringeth to the liuer, vaines, and artiers. Of it, there be two sorts, the one doth nourish, like as Wine, Beere, and Ale: the other doth not, as water.

*Pe.* What kind of hearbs are meetest to be vsed?

*Aetius*.

*Io.* The Arabians doe commend Sage, Mint, Barge-rom, Rosemary, Wimpernell, Carway, Fennell. *Aetius* permits Colwort, or redde coale, but hee defends Leekes, and Onions, because they are vaporous: hee forbiddeth also colde hearbes, such as Lettis, Peppie, and others of that quality.

### CHAP. III.

## Of Moouing and Exercise.

*Pe.* **W**Hat meane you in this place by moouing?

*Ioh.* All kind of voluntary exercise, as labouring, running, ryding, playing, wrestling, leaping, dauncing,



cing, and fencing.

*Pe.* Doth those exercises bring any commodities to our bodies?

*Ioh.* In right vsing of them, there commeth great commoditie for the preieruation of health, and in euill vsing of them, great and perillous accidents. *Hippocrates* saith, who *Hippo. rates.* desireth health, let him not bee dull to labour, for a man may not bee healthfull, if hee trauell not to dissipate the extremities of the third digestion, that is much recommended by *Galen* : but hee blames all exercise that moues the body vnequally.

*Pe.* What particuler commoditie haue we of exercise?

*Io.* It helpeth the naturall health, it quickeneth the spirit, it openeth the pores of our body whereby the excrements *Robertus Grossetus regi- sanita.* are consumed and wasted, it comforteth all our members, it confirmeth the inspiration, and other actions of our bodies.

*Pe.* What time is most meete for exercise?

*Io.* It is best before meate, or long time after meate, for the stomacke being full of meate, it hindreth the digestion.

*Fuchius* reporteth, that the schollers of *Almaie* playe immediately after meate, which causeth them to bee full of humors, crudities, scabs, and vlcers. *Hippocrate* saith, that labour, meate, drinke, sleeping, playing, and women, ought to be moderately vsed, like as all other exercises, the exercise should be afore or long after meate, as yce haue heard when the digestion is perfect in the stomacke and vaines : if otherwise it be vsed, there gathereth aboundance of crudities and cholericke humors : the exercise duely done, it purgeth the body of many excrements : the exercise ought to be done in this manner, after yee rise in the morning yee shall walke a little, to the end that the excrements of the first digestion may fall into the intestines, and those of the second into the bladder, that done, spitte out all in the mouth, throate, and stomacke, wash thy hands, face, and eyes, with water of Eye-bright mixed with white Wine, vse frictions on the thighes and legges downe, euer to diuert the vapours which ascend,



ascend, write not, nor read presently after meate, rub your face with a rough cloth, to cause it to exhale, and dissipate the vapours which are ascended.

*Pe.* What sayest thou touching rest?

*Io.* Like as exercise duely used, hath great force for the conservation of health : so on the contrary, much rest not only dulbeth the principall instruments of our body, but also of our mind, as saith the Poet.

*Variam semper dat otia mentem.*

It maketh many crudities, and thereupon great abundance of great humors. Galen reckoneth idlenesse to be the cause of many colde maladies, as also the mother of many mischiefes, the which were too long to recite in this place.

### CHAP. IIII.

## Of Sleeping and Waking.

*Lib. I. symptū.  
causis Pyl.  
Ægin.*

*Pe.* **W**hat is sleepe?

*Io.* Galen saith, it is a rest and quietnesse of the body, and chiefly of the spirits and faculty animall, fortifying the strength, helping the concoction, correcting the perturbations of the mind, and humecting the internal parts of the body.

*Pe.* What is the cause of sleeping?

*Hippo. lib. I de  
insomniis.*

*Io.* The chiefe cause is in the braines, when the vapours ascend therevnto, and by the coldnesse of the braines, those vapours are turned vnto humors, the which closeth the conduits of the Perues.

*Pe.* What things do prouoke sleepe?

*Io.* All such thinges as make abundance of vapours, like as wine, Ale full of barne, milke, and all things that are moist and colde, and commonly after meate vapours ascend first to the head, and so prouoke sleepe : for this cause some  
use



Use a little oyle of Roses, and Camphier, mixed with wo-  
mans milke, and apply it to the temples of the head.

*Pe.* Doe all men sleepe alike in quantity?

*Io.* That is according to the temperature of the person,  
for some sleepe longer, and some shorter.

*Pe.* What time is ordinarily ordayned for man to sleepe? *Lib. de tuend.*

*Io.* Seauen, or eight houres, some nyne as sayth *Galen.* *valetud. cap. 8*  
*Plinie.* *Plinie.* Plinie saith, that in sleeping we spend the halfe of our time, it  
dulleth the head, it hindereth to digest the crudities, it gathe-  
reth aboundance of excrements, it hebeteth & maketh grosse  
the spirits of olde folkes and childzen, it retaineth the excre-  
ments; in sleeping cover well thy head, and fete, for cold  
of the extremities is very contrary vnto those that haue their  
braines cold and humide.

Plinie in the 7. of his naturall History sayd, that Epime-  
nides did sleepe in a caue the space of 57. yeeres, being wea-  
ryed, and by the heate of the Sunne; yet when he wakened,  
he thought he did sleepe but one day.

*Pe.* What time is most meete to sleepe?

*Io.* Hippocrates, Aetius, and others, are of this opinion,  
to walke on the day, and sleepe on the night, for that is the in-  
stitution of nature; Also that sleepe should begin two houres  
after supper, such time is most meete for the digestion of our  
meats, for by sleepe the naturall heate is in the center of the  
body. Sleeping on the day filleth the braines full of humi-  
dity, also it hindereth the concoction, of the which commeth  
ganging, risting, winds, heauines of the members, chiefly  
of the head, and diuers sicknesses, as catarhes. Cardane  
counsailleth to sleepe in the day, but meaneth of such folke as  
doe not rest in the night. *Not good to  
sleepe in the  
day.* *Lib. de contra  
dicent medico*

*Pe.* When men goe to sleepe, which side should they lye  
vpon?

*Io.* First on the right side, because thereby the meat go-  
eth more easily to the bottome of the stomacke; thereafter on  
the other side; in no wise on the face, for that causeth defluri-  
ons in the eyes, as saith Iesus; nor on y<sup>e</sup> backe, for that heats  
the *Lib. de oculis.*



the great vaine Caeue, and sendeth vapours to the head, maketh hote in the raines, the apoplexie, mair, grauell, and diuers other accidents : in no wise the hands vnder the head, as some doe, for that causeth defluxion of humors on the lights : sleepe not soone after meate.

*Pe.* What is to be obserued in sleeping, of sicke folkes?

*Io.* Hippocrates saith, those sicknesses wherein sleeping is painfull, esteeme them to bee dangerous and mortall, if not painfull, it is a good token.

*Pe.* Is it needfull to obserue dreames in sleeping?

*Li. ro de som-  
nis.*

*Io.* Cardane saith, dreames are not to bee neglected, because sometime by that wee knowe the affections of the humors, which diuanieth : as for example, the sanguine dreames are merrie, the cholericke dreames are fiery, the melancholique sadde, the flegmaticque cold.

*Pe.* What meanest thou by waking?

*Hippocrates.*

*Io.* Waking should be moderately vsed, for much waking corrupteth the braines, and the good temperature, it debilitateth the senses, altereth the spirits, moueth crudities, alterations, heauines of the head, resolution of all the body, dissipateth the naturall heate. Hippocrates saith, that sleeping and waking if they be excessive, they are euill and perillous : so mediocritie is best in all things : the cause of wa-

The cause of waking is the drynes of the braines.

king is drynesse and heate of the braines, it dryeth the habitude of the bodye : thus much concerning sleeping and waking.

## CHAP. V.

### ¶ Of Repletion and Euacuation.

*Pe.* **T**Hou shalt vnderstand that Repletion, Plenitude, and Aboundance, is all one matter : Therefore I would know, how many kinds of repletion there are?

*Io.* There



*Io.* There are two, to wit, in quantity and quality.

*Pe.* What meane you by repletion in quality?

*Io.* I meane, when the quality of meat exceedeth without the humors.

*Pe.* What meane you by quantity?

*Io.* I meane, when meat, drinke, and humors, are in so great quantity, that nature cannot overcome, and it is called excesse or satiety, of the which cometh most infinite maladies.

*Pe.* How many kinds are thereof?

*Io.* Two; the one of meat, called *Sacietas* of the latines, the other of humors.

*Pe.* Is satiety of meat otherwise diuided?

*Io.* It is yet diuided in two; The one is called *Sacietas ad vasa*, that is, when the stomacke and vaines are so full that it maketh them ouerlarge, as happeneth to them that are alwayes eating and drinking in such quantity, that they are constrainned to vomit it vp againe: for that not onely offendeth God, but weakeneth their own bodies. Two sorts of excesse of meat.

The other sort of plenitude is called *Sacietas ad vires*, which is, when there is so great aboundance, that the vertue, force, or faculties of our bodies cannot digest.

*Pe.* Tell mee what the qualitie of repletion of humors is?

*Io.* It is, when all the humors, or one alone, exceedeth and dimaneth, such as are good and lovable.

*Pe.* How callest thou it, when all, or one onely dimaneth?

*Io.* When all, it is called Plethore by the Greekes, and Plenitudo by the Latines: when one dimaneth, as the vitious humors, it is called *Cacochymia* or iuice vitious, either of the choller, flegme, or melancholique.

*Pe.* What is euacuation or inanition?

*Io.* It is an out-drawing and taking away of the humors which dimanes and molesteth our bodies, which are euacuated either vniuersally or particularly.

What euacuation is.



*Pe.* Which are the vniuersall euacuations?

*Io.* Those which are doone by purgation, vniuersall, bleeding, vomiting, scarrification, exercise, friction, bathing, medicaments, digerents, hemerodes, menstruous, purgations: also by the act venerian, in like manner by abstinency of meat, but that is done by accident.

*Pe.* Tell me by what manner the euacuation vniuersall is done?

The mis-  
cheifes of Ve-  
72165.

*Ioh.* By purgations, and by medicaments, catartickes accominodated to euery kind of humoꝝ, by things diuretiks, vomitoꝝ, things which prouoketh spitting: and diuers others, which I leaue to the learned mediciner: Phlebotomie, how it is vsed, when, and after what fashion, yee shall heare at length in the sixt Booke: like as of frictions the body is euacuated by the immoderate act of Venus, like as diuers other mischeifes ensueth therevppon. And first of all, it is hurtfull foꝝ the eyes, and all the organs sensitiues: the nerues, the thorax, the neires, and diuers other parts of the body, maketh men forgetfull, prouoketh the gout, dolours, nephretickes, and diuers diseases of the bladder, bringeth soone old age, consequently death.

*Plinie.*

Galen saith, that those beasts who often ioyne together, are of shorter life than those who ioyne seldomer: it doth hurt being immoderately vsed, not onely to the man, but to all animals. *Plinie* telleth of twoo that dyed sodainly in the act venerian: women are alwayes better disposed, saith *Hippocrates*?

Notwithstanding the Bishop of Illerden in Spaine, in his Booke intituled *Consilium fraternitatis*, reporteth that a woman in his time did complaine to the king of Arragon, that her husband did know her thirty times a day, and her husband confessing the same, was commanded vppon paine of death not to know her aboue six times a day; least the woman should be in danger of her life. Wherefore saith hee, we are not so much to maruaile at the ability of the husband, as at the complaint of his wife, seeing the verse sayth,

*Et*



*Et lassata viris nondum satiata recessit.*

And also in the 30. chapter of Salomons *Proverbes*: three things are insatiable, and the fourth was neuer satisfied. But, because such as delight in this pastime, will formalize; as also, because the vsage hereof is sometime profitable to the Chyrurgion; I will not altogether condemne it: but like as I haue set downe the discommodities, so shall ye heare the comodities hereof, according as some learned men haue written. *2 Prou 30. Lib. 1. cap. 15.*

Paulus *Aegineta* sayth, the vsage of Venus moderately vsed, maketh the body moze agill and quicke, it softeneth the instruments being hard, it openeth the conduits, it purgeth the flegme, and is profitable for all phlegmaticke passions, and heauines of the head, driueth away anger, sadness, melancholique imaginations, nocturnals, and procureth appetite. *Haliabides l. 5. Philippus Galen.*

*Aetius* calleth it a worke of nature, and being moderately vsed, doth good. It euacuateth the sperme, which otherwise might become to some venomous qualities; & so deliuereth man of many euils, as *Galen* saith. *Lib. 3. cap. 8. Henricus Ran- zanius.*

*Hippocrates* reporteth, that the first act of Venus ceaseth many great sickneses: abstinency doth also euacuate the body both in the sicke and in the whole. The which is di- uided in two wayes: The first, when yee neither eat nor drinke at all, and that is called abstinence. The second, when wee take meate, but not so much as is needfull for the conseruation of the vertue, and that is properly called dyet. *Gal. 6. de locis affectis.*

*Pe.* Which are the particular euacuations?

*Io.* When the braines are discharged by the roose of the mouth, and nose evidently, by the eyes and eares obscurely: the lights by the trach artiers by spitting, & stomake by vomiting; the intestines by the excrements at the fundament; the liuer, splene, kidnies, and bladder, by vrine; the priuy parts of women, by naturall purgation, or monethly courses



courses: as yee shall heare in my Booke of Womens diseases.

CHAP. VI.

¶ Of the Passions and Perturbations of the Mind.

*Pe.* **A** *Rist.* doth diuide the mind into two parts: to wit, that of reason, and the other without reason. It is subiect to diuers passions, therefore shew me what thou callest the passion of the mind?

*Ioh.* It is a suffering of the mind by the iust course, the which maketh maruailous mutations in the body, and therefore most necessary to bee remarked, because of the great chaunces which ensue therevppon, as we may perceiue by

*Arist.* who sayth, that the motions and perturbations of the mind, bringeth great mutations into the naturall heate.

*Hippo. 6. epid.*  
*Gal. 2. de sum.*  
*can cap. 5. &*  
*method. 2.*

*Henri us Ran-*  
*zou us de con-*  
*ser. Valaud.*

In like manner *Hippocrates*, and *Galen* do shew, that many dye by the motions and perturbations of the mind: for they either dilate, or comprime the heart, for y<sup>e</sup> which the vitall spirits are rather cast forth by the great dilatation of the hart, or els retained by the great compression therof; amongst the which, ioy, hope, and loue, casteth the spirits outwardly: sadness, and feare recalleth them inwardly to the center of the body in diuers manners.

*Pe.* How many such passions are there?

*Io.* There be diuers: But here I will tell of such which are most common, like as mirth, sadness, feare, anger, shame, fastnes, enuie, hatred, hope, and loue.

*Pe.* What



*Pe.* What is mirth?

*Iob.* It is an affection of the mind, of a thing good and pleasant, by the which the blood and spirits are pleasantly spread for the present goodnes, by the dilatation of the heart: but if it be great and last any long space, oftentimes death ensueth, because the heart is altogether destitute of blood. *Arist.*

reporteth of a woman named Policrita, that dyed for ioy. *Policrita.*  
readeth that one Philippides a writer of Comedies, being contending with an other, and overcame him beyond his expectation, did die for ioy. *Philippides.*

Valerius Maximus writeth of two women, one Chilon a Lacedemonian, and Diagore a Rhodian, that did die for ioy, for the happy returning of their sonnes from the warres, as also because they had overcome their enemies. *Valerius lib. 9. cap. 12. Chilon. Diagore.*

Gellius reporteth of one Diagoras, when hee did see his three Sonnes crowned at Olympus for their vertue, died for ioy, imbracing them in presence of the whole people. These accidents happen oftener to women, then to men, because they haue the heart moze cold, & the fewer vitall spirits, & so doth sooner dissipate, and so die. In like manner, men who be faint hearted and feeble spirited, yet ioye moderately vsed, worketh many good things in vs. It resuffocateth the spirit, helpeth the concoction, and all the habitude of the body, fortifieth the vertue animall; but much laughing is hurtfull, chiefly to yong children.

*Pe.* What is sadnes?

*Io.* It is an affection that doth reuoke the naturall heat inwardly, to the center of the body, but at great leisure it presseth the heart, dryeth vp the body, that hardly the spirit vitall can gouerne as befoze, and is so weakened, that it may not go with the blood through the rest of the body, so wasteth the bodye in such sort, that it becommeth atrofied and leane, wherupon death often ensueth.

*Henricus  
Ranzouius de  
conser. valetu.*

Cicero sayth, it were a great good amongst men to liue on eating and drinking, but it were a greater good if men could liue without sadnesse and melancholly, because the meate  
*me.*



We eat doth make corruption of humors in our body, but sadness and melancholly doth consume the flesh, bones, & gnaweth the entrails, of the which diuers dye. Salomon sayth, a sad spirit dryeth vp the bones, and a merry heart reioyceth the mind.

*Plinius* reporteth, that one *Petrus Rutilius* after hee had heard that his father had a repulse of his petitions, died with sadness. *Marcus Lepidus*, after his wife was diuorced from him, did likewise dye; with *Elye* the high priest of the Jews, and diuers others.

*Pe.* What is feare?

*Cornelius Agrippa de occultis philosoph. lib. I. cap. 63.*

*Io.* It is a motion which reuoketh the spirit to the center, to the heart by the artiers, which suffocateth the vitall and naturall heat, causing trembling, whereof sometime the belly loseth, and sometimes death ensueth.

So I find that feare maketh the like accidents which melancholly do, but greater, and in shorter time it draweth the bloud and spirits to y heart, the visage becometh pale, the extremities cold, with vniuersall trembling, intercepting the voyce, with palpitation of the heart, being suffocated by the great aboundance of bloud and spirits, that it cannot moue freely.

*Zenophon.*

*Galen* sayth, that this passion happeneth oftener to women, & those of cold temperature, then to others. *Zenophon* sayth, that the great torments of feare are moze vehement, then all present aduersities. Diuers learned men do affirme that men haue growen white in 25. yeeres onely by the apprehension and feare of death.

*Antonius de abditis morborum causis.*

*Antonius Benuenius* writeth, of a boy that dyed for feare, by seeing two men clad in blacke going to y stoule: the which boy dyed eight dayes after about the same houre, like as doth the most part.

*Pe.* What is anger?

*Io.* It is a suddaine reuocation or calling backe of the spirits, to the externall parts with an appetite of reuenge: or it is an ardent heat or ebullition of bloud in the heart, with desire  
fire



fire of reuenge: it enflameth the whole habitude of the body, causeth feuers by reason of the inflammation of the heart, the spirits and blood are troubled, as also the braines and nerues, of the which commeth frenzies, and other euill accidents, it bindeth the heart and lights.

Pe. What is shamesallnes?

Io. It is a motion of our body mixed with anger, by the which one knowing and suspecting his own fault, would be angrie with himselfe, seeing the iudgement of others. In *Haly Abbas Lib. 5.* this passion the blood returneth in, and suddainly doth come out, the cheekes and face becommeth red, of this passion some dye. Plinie telleth that one Diodorus professor of Dialecticke, who hauing a question propounded vnto him, and not answering as he should, dyed for shame. Valerius Maximus reporteth, that Homer dyed for shame, because he could not answer a question propounded to him by certaine fishers.

Plinius.  
Diodorus.

Valerius  
Maximus.

Pe. What is enuie?

Io. It is a heauy oppression of the heart, angrie at the felicity of some other man.

Pe. What is hatred?

Io. It is an old malicious habitude bred of anger, by the which the heart would reuenge the iniurie.

Pe. What is hope?

Io. It is a motion, by the which the heart desireth the good future: it openeth and dilateth the heart, like as ioy for the present good.

Pe. What is Loue?

Io. It is a feruent motion, by the which the heart desireth ardently, and endeauoureth to draw vnto it, a good, assured, and apparant, not much different from hope, except the loue be more ardent.

The





# THE THIRD BOOKE,

*Of things altogether contrary to  
our Nature.*

*Which containeth three Chapters. By Peter  
Lowe Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Maladie.  
2. Of the cause of Maladie.  
3. Of Accidents and Sumptomes.

*Pet.*



Haue discoursed with you of Naturall things, whereof our body is composed; as also of Vnnaturall things, which may alter our body being not duly vsed: So, now I intend to speak vnto you of things which are altogether contrary to our nature, and destroyeth it. For the which

*Galet 2. de tē-  
per. & 1. de  
sump. om. caus.*

cause *Galen* calleth them things contrary to nature. Therefore let me know what things be those which be altogether contrary to our nature, with their number?

*Ioh.* They be three; to wit, Malady, cause of Maladie, and accidents of Malady.

*Chap. I.*



CHAP. I.

¶ Of Maladie.

*Pe.* Seeing thou callest the first of the three things contrary to Nature *Maladie*, then tell me what is the definition thereof.

*Io.* It is a disposition against nature, which hunteth manifestly the operations of the body. Definition.

*Pe.* What is health?

*Io.* It is a constitution according to nature, which maketh the actions of our body perfect.

*Pe.* How many kinds of Maladies are there?

*Io.* Three; to wit, Intemperie, Euill confirmation, and Solution of continuitie. Three kinds of Maladies.

*Pe.* What is Intemperie?

*Io.* It is a malady in the similar parts, digressing from the owne temperature.

*Pe.* By how many wayes was it diuided?

*Io.* Two wayes; to wit, either by the simple intemperie, or by the aboundance of the humors onely, as by colde, hote, moist, and drye.

*Pe.* What is euill confirmation?

*Io.* It is a vice in the parts organickes, either in figure, magnitude, or scituation, as for example, that which should be naturally right, is oblique, and so forth: as if a part were augmented or diminished contrary to nature: also in the number of the parts, as if a man had five fingers, or six: also in the scituation or collection, as if parts naturally ioyned were disioyned, as happeneth in dislocations. What euill confirmation is.

*Pe.* Which is the third kind of Malady?

*Io.* Solution of continuitie both in the similar and organicke parts, which haue diuers names, according to the varietie of the parts where they are.



## CHAP. II.

## ¶ Of the cause of Maladie.

The cause of  
Malady.

*Pe.* **W**Hat is Maladie?

*Io.* It is some affection which maketh sickness, of the which some are externall, some internall.

*Pe.* Which are the externall?

*Io.* They be called procatartickes, or primitives, as strokes, falles, wounds, shot, and such like: as also euill nouriture.

*Pe.* Which are the internals?

*Io.* They be two antecedents, and coniuncts.

*Pe.* Which are the antecedents?

*Io.* Euill humors in the body.

*Pe.* Which are the coniuncts?

*Io.* It is that which maketh the sickness presently, and is always accompanied with the sickness.

*Pe.* How commeth the cause of Malady?

*Io.* There are some who haue it from their mothers wombe and from their parents, which wee call hereditarie sickness: some doe ingender after our birth, as by the euill regiment of life, strokes, and falles, as ye haue heard.

## CHAP. III.

## ¶ Of Accidents and Symptomes.

*Lib. de symp-  
tom. differen.*

*Pe.* **W**Hat call you Accident or Symptome?

*Io.* Galen saith, that symptome is any thing that chaunceth to man by nature: so the causes interns of sicknesses, may be called symptomes.

*Pe.* How many kinds of Symptomes are there?

*Io.* Three



*To.* Three; the first, is when the action is offended; which Three kinds  
may bee divided three wayes: that is, either by aboliti- of symptons.  
on, diminution, or deprivation. As for example, in blind-  
nesse the sight is abolished. Diminished, as suffusion, which  
happeneth in the beginning of the cataract of the eye. De-  
priveth, as for a certaine time, like as in changing the sim-  
ple affections of our body, or the whole habitude from one ex-  
treame to another: as the naturall heat to the inflammati-  
on, the scabbe of the flesh to leprosie. The third is, in the  
vice of the excrements by immoderate extention or expulsion,  
as the hemoroids, the purgations or monethly courses  
of women, and vaines. These or either of these be-  
ing retained or euacuated over much, maketh  
many great and euill accidents  
in the body.



F

THE





# THE FOVRTH BOOKE:

*Of Tumors, or Aposthumes against  
Nature ; the Contents whereof containeth  
XVI. Chapters ; By PETER LOVVE  
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Tumors in generall.  
2. Of Phlegme.  
3. Of Epiniſtis, Terminthus, and Theribinthus.  
4. Of Furuncle, or Dothin, which proceedeth of phlegme.  
5. Of Anthrax, or Carbuncle.  
6. Of Gangrena, and Histiomen.  
7. Of Sphasshell.  
8. Of the extirpation of fingers or toes.  
9. Of the Tumor called Herisipilis.  
10. Of Herpes.  
11. Of Ædema.  
12. Of the windy Tumor which proceedeth of Ædema.  
13. Of the watery Tumor which proceedeth of Ædema.  
14. Of Atheorema, Steotema, Melleriseris.  
15. Of the Melancholique Tumor, called Schirre.  
16. Of Cancer, or Carcinoma.

## CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Causes, Signes, and Curation of  
*Aposthumes in Generall.*

*Pet.*



The definitiō  
of aposthums.

OW it shall be necessary that I instruct thee  
in the exercise of Chyrurgery : For the  
better vnderstanding of the same, I will  
beginne at Tumors against Nature, in de-  
maunding first of thee what is a Tumor or  
an Aposthume?  
*Io.* It is a disease composed of three diuers maladies ; to  
wit,



Wit, euill complexion in the similar parts, euill composition *Gal. 2. ad glan.*  
 or constitution in the instrumentall parts, and solution of *cap. 7.*  
 continuitie in both similar and instrumentall parts, offend-  
 ding the action of the member where it is.

*Pe.* What are the causes of Aposthume?

*Io.* Some are generals, and some are specials.

*Pe.* Which are the generall causes?

*Io.* Either fluxion, or congestion.

*Pe.* What is fluxion?

*Io.* It is a motion of the humors of the body, to some cer- *Gal. lib. 13.*  
 taine part, the which either by quantity or quality, or both *method. cap. 5.*  
 together, may not be receaued by the part without offence. *& 6.*

*Pe.* Which are the causes of fluxion?

*Io.* They are double; to wit, either in part or parts that  
 send, or in the part or parts that receaue.

*Pe.* How is the fluxion made in the parts that send?

*Io.* When the faculty retentrix of the part is overcharged  
 with humors, which doe either offend in quantity, quality,  
 or both: so then the part dischargeth it selfe by the vertue ex-  
 pultrix, chiefly being strong: as likewise when the part that *Alexander, A-*  
 sendeth hath connerion with the part that receiueth, or the *phroditus pro-*  
 part that receaueth being inferior to the part that sendeth: also *blem. 74 lib. 2.*  
 if the said parts haue any sympathy together, as the stomacke  
 with the braine.

*Pe.* Which are the causes in the parts that receaue?

*Io.* They be diuers, like as weaknes, not hauing force  
 to expello: put themselves elsewhere: also when the vessels  
 and conduits are large where the matter doth passe, or be-  
 cause it is soft in substance, so more easie to receaue, some-  
 time so: the dolour which maketh attraction of the matter  
 from the parts neere vnto it, as likewise great heate which  
 draweth and prouoketh fluxion.

*Pe.* What is congestion?

*Io.* It is a masse of matter contrary to nature, ingendered  
 of the superfluities of the third concoction of that aliment and  
 foode, which are distributed so: the nouriture of the parts of



the body, which chaunceth when the aliment is not so digested, that it may well bee appropriated to that part which should be nourished.

*Pe.* Which are the causes of congestion?

*Comment. in  
aphorif. 2. sect.  
1. lib. 4.*

*Io.* They are either imbecility of the faculty concoctrix, of the part which cannot digest that which is sent to it by nature, for the nouriture thereof: or imbecility of the faculty expultrix, which cannot expell the superfluities that resteth commonly in the part.

*Pe.* By what meanes know you the Tumors made by fluxion, and that by congestion?

*Haly Abbas.  
lib. 8.*

*Io.* The Tumors which bee made by fluxion are with great dolour, rednes, pulsation, and maketh the degrees faster than those which are done by congestion: those which are done by congestion doe grow little and little, and in like manner doe diminish when they come to their declination.

*Pe.* Which are the speciall causes of Aposthumes?

*Io.* They are three, primitive, antecedent, and coniunct.

*Pe.* Which are the primitive causes?

*Tauca'eius lib.  
umor preter  
naturam.*

*Io.* They are externall, like as falls, strokes, and other externall violences which may moue the humors of our body: also great heate of the ayre, as likewise meate or drinke taken ouer-cold.

*Pe.* Which are the causes Antecedents?

*Io.* They be internall, not knowing as the precedents, the which doth ingender not onely the malady, but also enterkeyned; such as the humors naturalls offending either in quantity or quality: also the intemperature, weaknes, euill confirmation, and dolour of the parts.

*Pe.* Which are the coniunct causes?

*Io.* The coniunct is the matter gathered together in the place and so is called, because it is with the sicknes, and nourisheth it with the disposition of the member.

*Gal. cap. 6. lib.*

*10. met. & ca.*

*7. lib. 2. meth.*

*Pe.* Which are the generall signes of Aposthumes?

*Io.* Tumor or swelling in any part by the naturall disposition, offending the action: also differing of the parts which should



Should be like to other: also dolour and heate.

Pe. By what signes know you euery kind of Tumor?

Io. Either by the colour, intemperature, hote, cold, hardnes, softnes, dolour, tention, gnawing: as also by the continuation of the fluxion: for first the colour is like vnto the humors, as if it be red, it proceedeth of the sanguine humor, if white of pituit, if blacke of melancholique, if yellow of choller: Furthermore, if there be heate, it signifieth either sanguine, choller, or burnt humor, if cold, watery, or windie, it signifieth the humor pituitous or melancholique, to be in the part: also hardnes with dolour signifieth plegme, if without dolour, schir: if softnes without dolour, it signifieth Edema: great tention betokeneth repletion of wound: if mortification or gnawing it signifieth the acrimonie of the humor, which maketh the tumor.

*Gal. 14. meth. cap. 9 & 6. de morb. cau. & comen. in apho. 38.*

Pe. How many sorts of aposthumes is there?

Io. Two, hote and cold.

Pe. Which are the hote?

Io. Those, which proceed of blood and choller.

Pe. Which are the cold?

Io. Those which come of phlegme or melancholy.

Pe. Which are those that proceed of blood?

Io. They be diuers; like as Phlegmon, Carbunculus, Fimous, Figetlon, Terminthus, Terebinthus, Cathinetha, Gangrena, Anthrax, Tuberculus, Ophthalmia, Scintantia, Bubo.

Pe. Which are those that come of choller?

Io. Eresipilis, Herpes, Formica, Empetago.

Pe. Which are those that proceed of pituit?

Io. Edema, with all watry and windy aposthumes, Atheroma, Steotema, Helleriseris, Asitois, Leuchophlegmatia, Bruncocele, &c.

*Gal. lib. 11. mor. contra naturā cap. 5. & 13. meth.*

Pe. Which are those that come of melancholy?

Io. Leprosie, Schirrous, Cancer, Carunculus, Warts, Claves, Fimous, Morphea, *alpha & nigra*: Of all which we shall hereafter intreat particularly in severall Chapters.



Here it shall suffice to know that they do proceed of the foure humors.

Pe. What iudgement giue you of Tumors?

Io. Some be curables, some dangerous, others dolorous, some long in healing, and some to be mortall.

Pe. Which are curable?

*Gal. ad glauc.  
cap. 4. & lib. 1.  
& 4. meth.*

Io. Those which are in the parts musculous, and bodies of good temperature.

Pe. Which are the dangerous?

Io. All those which doe penetrate internally in the body, and those which are very large, not pointed as saith Hyppocrates, and those which are in parts very sensible.

Pe. Which are the dolorous?

Io. Those which are in the parts neruous and membranous, and are ingendered of a sharpe and biting humor.

Pe. Which are long in healing?

Io. Galen saith that those, which happen in rich and delicate persons, because they refused fit remedies for the curation of such tumors, also all those that are hard, and in euill disposed bodies and hydropickes, elephantickes, all such are long in healing.

Pe. Which are mortall?

Io. Those which are venomous, or taken the course inwardly towards the noble parts, or those which are in the noble parts.

Pe. How many times or degrees haue the Aposthumes?

*Gal. lib. de tot.  
morb. cap. 3 &  
ca. 1 de morb.  
tempori.*

Io. Foure, to wit, the beginning, augmenting, state or vigour, and declination.

Pe. What is the beginning?

Io. It is when the humor doth first appeare and beginneth to swell.

Pe. What is augmentation?

*At us lib. 4.*

*Gal. li. 4. ca. 4.*

*meth. & 6 epi-*

*men.*

Io. It is when the tumor groweth more and more, as also the accidents,

Pe. What is the state or vigor?

Io. It is when neither the tumor nor accidents grow, but remaine



remaine in one estate.

Pe. What is the declination?

Io. It is when we perceiue the tumor and also the accidents, to diminish with a dissipation of the humor, either by resolution or suppuration. *Aetius lib. 4. cap. 38.*

Pe. What is resolution.

Io. It is the euacuation of the humor, by the pores of the flesh insensible to vs.

Pe. What is ruppuration?

Io. It is a vertue which maketh the humor gathered in the place into matter : so all aposthumes doe either end by one of those determinations, or else by induration or corruption ; so in all, there are but foure terminations, the best is resolution in the beginning, the worst corruption, but suppuration is better then induration.

Pe. Which are the signes of those terminations?

Io. The signes of resolution are lightnes or ease, of the member tumified, diminution of dolour, pulsation, and tension, with itching in the part. The signes of ruppuration, are dolour pulsation, augmentation of hote and feuer, with eminent tumor. The signes of induration are diminution of tumor and the accedents precedent, with a manifest hardness. The signes of corruption are diminution of feeling of the dolour, with change of the colour and so becommeth by little and little blacke, and euill sauoured.

Pe. What is the generall cure of aposthumes?

Io. As for the cure we must vnderstand, that either the tumor or swelling is in making or is already made, for the which cause we haue two intentions the one to stay the fluxion of the humor to the place, the other to euacuate the humor gathered in the place.

Pe. How stayest thou the fluxion?

Io. First I consider, if it come of plenitude of all the body, and then I stay it by letting blood : if the region, ayer, time of the yeare, and strength of the patient do permit, after the forme you shall heare in the 9. Booke : also by bathing exercise,

*Gal. ad glauc. ca. 2. & lib. 3. meth. ca. 4. &c*



exercise, vnctions, degerents, and abstinence. In like manner if cacochimie or plenitude of humors, I heale it by vomiting, purgations, and glisters. If through imbecillity of the part, I fortifie it by fit remedies. If by the scituation which is lower, I scituate the parts in such fashion, that the part which offendeth is higher than the whole. If dolour bee the cause, I stay it, by vsing anodine remedies, as ye shall heare in the tenth Booke. If great heat, I stay it by cold things, and returneth the fluxion by scarrifications, ventosing, cornets, Horsesleaches, straight binding, frictions, and such like.

*Gal. lib. 5. sim-  
tom. ca. 10*

*Pe.* By how many wayes do you fortifie the part?

*Io.* By three wayes, that is, by cold and humide things, or cold and drie, or cold and stipticke, so any part may be delibated three wayes, that which relaxed with heat and humiditie, must be comforted with cold and drie things: the hote and drie is healed by cold and humide things: if hote and open of the pores, it is cured by things cold and stipticke.

*Pe.* Which is the second intention?

*Io.* It doth consist in euacuating that humor, which is made, to the end the member may returne into his owne estate.

*Gal. lib. 14.*

*meth. ca. 1. 4. 5*

*Pe.* How is euacuation vsed?

*Io.* Two waies, first by drawing the humor to some other part, as to repell it inwardly: also in fortifying of the member.

*Pe.* When shall repercussives be vsed.

*Gi. lib. 1.*

*prognost. com.  
apo. 35.*

*Io.* In the beginning, and that aswell on the soze as about it, but that which is on the soze must not bee so astringent, nor corroboratiue as that which is about.

*Pe.* How many kinds of repercussives are there?

*Io.* There are diuers, for some be cold without astringion, like as Bolarminie, Plantine, the Stone, Hermatite: some be hote, as galls, red wine, nuts of Cypres, wormewood, masticke, and such like.

*Pe.* Are they not otherwise diuided?

*Io.* Guydo



*Io.* Guydo of Coleac doth diuide them into proper, and *Guydo in his* commune : the proper as *Oricrate, Solanum, Sol armez Chyrurgery.* *nie, Wormewood, and such like :* the communes are these, whites of Egges, Mallowes, oyle of Roses, Cammomile, Masticke, and such like.

*Pe.* How shall these diuers sorts be vsed?

*Io.* When the matter is hote the repercussives shall be cold, and when it is cold, they shall be hote.

*Pe.* Are repercussives indifferently vsed in all sicknesses?

*Gal. li. 14. meth. cap. 3.*

*Io.* There are ten exceptions wherein the proper are not vsed. First, when the matter is in the emunctoires of the noble parts. Secondly, if the matter be venomous. Thirdly, being thicke and euill to remoue. Fourthly, when it is very hard impacted in the place. Fifthly, when it happeneth in the crisis of a sicknes. Sixtly, when the matter cometh of a cause primitiue. Seauenthy in a bodie plethoricke. Eightly, when the part is weake, and the body destitute of force. Ninthly, when it is in the noble parts. Tenthly, when it is with vehement dolour, and in that we vse anodines, and not repercussives.

*X. exceptions of vsing repercussives.*

*Pe.* How is the second intention done?

*Io.* By euacuating that is done in the place, and that by resolving and disculent medicaments and euaporatiues, that are meanly hote and humide. In like manner by drawing emplasters, by sucking, ventosing, of the part grieued as saith Auicen.

*Auicem.*

But yet in both the euacuations, wee must regard the quantity and quality of the matter which the tumor is composed of : As also to the nature of the place where it is, for we must not cure those which proceed of blood, as those which come of phlegme, choller, or melancholie.

Also wee must respect the nature of the parts ; for wee must vse other remedies in soft and humide parts, as the flesh and glands, then in hard and dry parts, as nerues, ligaments, cartilages, and bones.

*Gal. ad glauc. cap. 2.*

*Ulex.*



*Gal. 2. ad glau.  
Gal. 7. meth.  
cap. 13.*

Wee must also haue respect to the parts of the body, for some are simples others composed, some of one temperature, some of another, so the remedies which must be vsed, to the part. Wee must also respect the confirmation of the part, for some are hollowe without or within, some are soft, easy to receaue refluxion.

*Gal. artis. par.  
cap. 9.*

In like manner, we must regard the communications of the veines one with another, also the commodity of the condites, to expell the excrements : as also to the vertue of the place, for some are sensible, some not : as also to the diuersity of the parts, for some are noble parts, as the braine, the heart, and the liuer, which send the vertue through all the body by the nerues, artiers, and vaines : others doe serue the principall parts, without whose action wee cannot liue, like as the stomacke, kidnies, bladders, and sundry others.

*Gal. lib. 2. ad  
glau. ca. 2.*

In parts that are sensible, we must beware to apply medicines that loose and resolute immoderately, or to applye any thing that is of a strange quality, and venomous.

*Pe.* Are there no other things to be obserued in the cure of tumors?

*Io.* Wee take our indication according to the diuersity of the tumor.

*Pe.* How many sorts of tumors are there?

*Four sorts of  
tumors.*

*Io.* Foure, some are hard, others soft : some inward, and some vlcered.

*Pe.* What remedies vse you in those aposthumes?

*Io.* In hard aposthumes, we vse remedies that soften and haue a hote and somewhat drie vertue, wee vse no resolutiues in such tumors, by reason the matter wareth hard like a stone : the soft are cured by hote things, that resolute and open the pores : the vlcered aposthumes, like as *formica*, are healed by cold things : the inward are cured by diminishing the matter, with bleeding, purging, and other general remedies, abstaining from all strong drinke, violent exercise, and perturbations of the minde, like as anger, feare, and the rest, which yee haue heard in the Booke of *Unnaturall things.*



things.

The rest of the cures pertaineth to the iudgement of the expert Chyrurgion, euer vsing such remedies that hath the vertue to soften and make ripe, like as Cassia, Fistula, Trisacle, and such others, which haue the vertue to resolue hidden aposthumes.

*Marianus Scapula de modo exam. Chyrur. Antonius Bonnenius de abdit. morb. cau.*

*Pe.* If the aposthumes neither end by resolution, induration, nor corruption, but by suppuration, what shall be done?

*Io.* They must be opened.

*Pe.* How many wayes must they be opened?

*Io.* Two wayes, either by themselves, or by helpe of the Chyrurgion.

*Pe.* Which are those that be opened by themselves?

*Io.* Those which are hote, eminent, soft, and tender skinned.

*Pe.* In what time do they open most commonly?

*Io.* Some in tenne, fiftene, or twenty dayes doe open, others in fortie or threescore dayes: and this happeneth according to the temperature, or by the application of fit remedies.

*Hip. 2. progn.*

*Pe.* Which be those that be opened by the helpe of the Chyrurgion?

*Io.* Those which are hard, cold, large in bodies, euill disposed, and thicke skinned: in cold membranous parts, and in the emunctoires.

*Pe.* How many wayes doth the Chyrurgion helpe?

*Io.* Three wayes, either by Canter actuall, potentiall, or incision.

*Pe.* How many waies maketh the Chyrurgion his incision?

*Io.* Three wayes; some incisions are made in length, breadth, and circular, according to the part.

*Three wayes of incision.*

*Pe.* What meane you by length?

*Io.* When it is according to the rectitude of the muscles, nerues, and membranous, to the end the action of the part, may



may be preserved.

Pe. When make you your incision by bread?

When incision  
by bread is to  
be made.

*Cornelius Cel-  
sus lib. 7. ca. 2.*

Io. When we haue intention to destroy the action of the part, as in spasm or convulsion we cut the nerue or muscle ouerthwart, to saue the rest of the body, for better it is to debilitate one member then lose the whole.

Pe. When vse you incision circular?

Io. When the cauitie is great, to the end the humor or matter may euacuate the better. And heare I doe remarke that sometime in opening those Aposthumes, there is errour committed, in those which penetrates vnder the wombe, for they appeare to the simpler sort to bee Aposthumes, and are onely called ruptors, whereof good heed would be taken.

*Gal. 13. meth.  
cap. 1.*

Pe. I haue enformed you sufficiently touching Aposthumes in generall, I will hereafter perticularly intreat of euery one of them by themselves, beginning at those which proceede of blood, and first with phlegmon, because it is most common, and causeth diuers accidents. Then I will follow out the rest in order, as well generally as perticularly, which being downe, I will entreate of woundes after the same methode.

## CHAP. II.

### Of Phlegmon.

Definition.

**P**hlegmon, is a tumor or Aposthume against nature, ingendered of defluxion of blood, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, but most commonly in the soft parts, and is of colour redde, hard, inflameth soze, accompanied oftentimes with feuers, and diuers other accidents, of the which there are two sorts. The true flegmon that is ingendered of blood, being in any part more than is needfull for the vse thereof: The other proceedeth of unnaturall blood, altereth by some



some change, as by mixing one or more of the other humors with it : so according to the domination of the humor it taketh the name, as for example, if the cholericke humor dominate amongst the blood more than the rest of the humors, the humor shall be called phlegmon Crespilis, and in like manner in the rest, as phlegmon, Edematus, or Schirrus : so that these humors are seldom found alone, but mixed together.

*Gal. lib. tumor  
cap. 5.*

The causes are triple, primitive, antecedent, and coniunct: the primitives are externall and first motives, like as great usage of meate which engendereth much blood : also all those things which may move the humors and provoke fluxions, likewise falls, strokes, contusions, broken or bruised, excessive heate, labour, and such like. The antecedent cause is of great superfluitie and abundance of blood, offending either in quantity, quality, or both : also intemperancie, euill confirmation and dolour of the part. The coniunct or con-  
*Gal. de differ.  
morb. cap. 12*

current cause is the blood or matter affixed in the afflicted part. The signes are inflammation, rednesse, hardnes, feuer, dolour, pulsation, chiefly being in maturity : the Judgements, the small ones doe often resolue : the great ones doe oftentimes aposthume, and sometime do ingender into great sicknesses, according to the euill disposition of the body and parts where it chanceth, as in mortification and schir : sometime

*Gal. meth ca. 3  
Haly Abbas  
lib. 6.*

it doth returne to the place from whence it came, as happeneth in the emunctoirs of the noble parts : as for the curation, it shall be reduced to foure points : the first, shall consist in good dyet of life : secondly, in staying of the tumor that floweth to the place or part : thirdly, in euacuating that which is within the place : fourthly, in correcting the accidents which often doe chaunce. As touching the first which is good dyet, it shall bee obserued in six thinges not naturalls, which must bee colde, contrary to the humor which is hote, sometime it must be cold and humide vsing weake drinke, or in time of feuer vse onely tisung with a pure cleane aire, rest and hold thy belly loose, either by suppositours or glisters, and  
abstaine

*Iohannes To-  
gatus institut.  
chyrur. lib 1.  
ca. de phleg.*



*Gal. 13. meth.  
cap. 6.*

abstaine from women. If it happeneth with feuer, the humoꝝ that floweth must be diuerted, by taking away the cause as repletion of the euill humoꝝ, by blæding and purgations, also by strengthening the part if it be weake. Likewise by frictions, ventosing, and binding of the part. The humoꝝ shall be euacuated diuers wayes, according to the time oꝝ degree of the aposthumes, in the beginning we must vse repercuſſiues made of whites of egges, orecrate, rose and plantaine waters, cataplasmes made of bol armenie, Terra sigillata, barke of pomgarnet, henbane, oyle of roses, vnguent rosat, mesues, album rasis, diacalthises, mingled with oyle of roses oꝝ pupilion.

How to vse  
the augmen-  
tation.

For the augmentation which is the second degree, we vse repercuſſiues and resolatiues made of mallowes, roses, plantaine, wormewood, barley flower, oyle of camomill, orecrate, powder of roses, and merctiles, sodden in wine, called sapa, rose water, vinegar, saffron : Also yolkes of Egges, with milke, bread, and a little saffron, of which things you may make cataplasmes, linements, fomentation, as you shall find expedient : in the vigour we vse repercuſſiues and resolatiues, in like force made of mallowes, parietarie, and althea roasted vnder the hote ashes, oyle of roses, cammomell, with a little beane flower.

*Auicenn.*  
The declina-  
tion how to  
be vsed.

In the declination we vse onely resolatiues : *Auicenn* doth counsell to soften a little, which may be done with fomentations made of althea origan, lintseed, fenigrec, with flowers of roses, and cammomell, which thinges must all be sodden in white wine with a little barley meale, and hony : also vnguent of Arrogon, Martiatum, Agrippa de althea, de mele, lotho diachilon parvum, vnguentum resumptivum, occisotium, oꝝ enulatum, these oꝝ either of them may be vsed.

*Galen.*

We correct the accidents, which is the fourth point, as dolour, which must bee appeased by all meanes, when the great accidents, which often doe ensue, for the which we do vse oile of roses, ware and wine sodden together, as counsaileth *Galen*.

Also



Also cataplasmes of bread and milke, with butter and saffron, water, oyle of roses, violets, cammomeil, aniseedes, or sweet almonds. Likewise the flowers of mallowes, cammomeil and melelot sodden in wine, putting thereto a little barley flower, goose-grease, and lintseede. Also vnguent, rosat, and pupilion, if those things be not sufficient wee take the leaues of the henbane and poppy, roasted vnder the hote ashes, then tempered with the iuice of sorrell and houslecke, putting to it a little hennes grease and saffron.

*Gal. lib. 5. simpli. ca. 6. & r3 meth. cap. 6.*

If the matter taketh the course inwardly to some noble part, wee remedy it by application of ventosies and cornets, straight ligatours, and such like.

If the matter doth come to a disposition schirrus, we must vse medicaments that soften and digest, like as you shall heare in the Chap. of Schir.

If it tend to putrifaction, it must be helped by deep scarifications, labiments, cataplasms made of beane flower, sodden in vinegar and honie, with such other remedies, as you shall heare in the Chap. of Gangrena.

*Gal. lib. 5. meth. ca. r3.*

It happeneth oftentimes, that this tumor tendeth to suppuration, which is knowne by the great swelling and rednes of the place, eminency, great heat, dolour, pulsation, feuer, and such like. These things being perceiued, we passe from resolutiues to suppuratiues, as to foment the place with hote water or oyle, also with hony and water mingled together, called *Hydreleon* : or a cataplasme may be made of white flower sodden in *Hydreleon*, with a little fresh butter, Calis, Hennes, or Goose grease : or you may make a suppuratiue of little roots, Sorrell, Parratarie, and Mallowes, sodden in *Hydreleon*, whereunto you shall adde a little flower of Fenegrec and linsaeede, oyle of Lillies, with a little leauen.

*Paulus lib. 4. cap. 17.*

After it be taken from the fire put to it two yolkes of egges : this remedy appeaseth the dolour and procureth matter. For the same effect we vse the emplaster called *Diachelon magnum* or *Basilicon* : the suppuration made, we know by the diminution of the accidents, and the tumor which is pointed,

*Gal. 2. ad glan. ca. 7. & lib. 5. simpli. cap. 8. & apho. 22. li. 1.*

also



also by pressing on it with the two thombes, wee find it soft  
with great induration : then if it open not shortly of it selfe,  
it must be done by a cauter or lancet, otherwise it waxeth hol-  
low and putrified within : in the opening of it there are three  
rules to be obserued, as you haue heard in the generall chap-  
ter : in making of your incision, let it be in the inferiour part,  
that the matter may euacuate the better, but take heede it e-  
uacuate not too much at one time : the incision must be made  
in length, eschewing nerues, sinowes, vaines, and artiers.  
*Gal. 3. meth. cap. 5.* *How to make the incision.*  
*Auicen cap. 6. lib. 1.* *Gal apho. 27. lib. 6.* *Cels. li. 7. ca. 2.*  
*Auicen* counsaileth to open by the breed which I doe not ob-  
serue : when it is opened we vse the yolke of an egge, with  
a little Turpentine, and oyle of roses for a certaine space,  
thereafter hony of roses, or sirrope of roses, Mundificatiue  
de apio, *Apsstulorum* or other Mundificatiue set down in the  
tenth Booke of this worke, sometime I doe adde a little *E-*  
*giptiacke* specially to those vlcers which withstand the former  
remedies. The vlcer being cleansed, I mingle a little Tur-  
pentine and Hony, with the powder of *Iris*, *Albes*, and *Thus*,  
or a little *Unguentum aureum*, with these powders : there-  
after, the plaster of *Diacalcytheos desiccativum rubeum*, *Di-*  
*apompholegos serussa*, *Deminio* and such like, that hath the ver-  
tue to siccatrice and heale the vlcer.

## CHAP. III.

¶ Of Epiniæis, Terminthus, Terebinthus,  
Figethlon, Fima, and Ectimata, which pro-  
ceed of Phlegmon.

BEcause that the most part either of old or new writers,  
hath made small mention of those tumors. So that the  
young Chyrurgion may be the better instructed, I thought  
good to speake of them in this place, beginning with Epiniæ-  
tis,



Of Tumors which proceed of Fleg. *Lib. IIII.* 81

tis, which is an euill pustule brownish of colour and very painfull, chiefly in the night : this vlcer by it selfe often- *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28* times doth occupy the corner of the eyes, auoiding a water sanguinolent which sheweth it to be ingendered of the like cause, as Carbuncle. Yet not so vehement, in respect it hath no communication with the contagion : for the cure whereof *Paulus lib. 4. cap. 9.* haue recourse to the Chapter of Carbuncle.

*Terminthus* is a tubercle or little tumor, almost of the same nature, proceeding of an hote burnt blood couered with little blacke round pustules, which by their vehement heat produce an eschar : it possesse for the most part the thighs, and is cured, as the former.

*Therebinthus* is thought by Oribasius to be a kind of *Phimma*. Upon it appeareth little blacke round pustules, which being opened, auoideth a filthy frothing matter, and is cured as the former. *Pa. li. 4. ca. 29*

*Phigethlon* is a tumor or inflammation in the glandulous parts, ingendered of an hote fiery blood, when it doth appeare in the inguen, it is called *Bubo*. *Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 1.*

*Amatus Lusitanus* is of opinion, that this tumor proceedeth of a cholericke humor mingled with some pituit. There is a sort of it that appeareth vnder the oxter and iawes, or cragge, and is pestiferous.

Of those, small mention hath bene made of our antients, which maketh me belieue they haue not been known in those hote countreyes : it is commonly with feuer, sometime it cometh before the feuer, other times after the same, proceeding of the like humor as Carbuncle, saue onely the matter is not so fiery and hote, but the cure is little different : in this ye must abstaine from repercussiuues in respect of the malignitie; vse suppuratiues, as counsaileth *Fernelius*. *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28*

*Phima* is also a tumor in the inguen and parts glandulous, ingendered for the most part of the like humor, as the rest, it groweth slowly, and suppureth hastilie. It is thought by Hippocrates, not to occupie alwaies the inguina : The *Greekes* tearmeth it *Raccodes*, which is a tumor in the priuy parts. *Fer. li. 4. pa. 18*



Gal. ad glauc.  
cap. 1.

Hippo. lib. 4.

cap. 9.

Plinius.

Plinius.

Fernell.

Lonicarius  
Francofimen-  
cis.

Paulus lib. 4.

cap. 8.

parts. Galen saith the like : for the cure vse anodils, sup-  
puratiues, and mundificatiues.

Estimata or Exempta are called by Hippocrates and some  
other Latine interpreters, such as Plinius, Papulas, which  
are little bubs or pustules, that breake out by themselves  
through the skinn, sometime in the head, and are ingender-  
ed of a corrupt, malignant, grosse humoz, thought by the  
learned to be the rest of the menstruous humoz : yet it is  
mingled with some pituit, as saith Plinius, and Fernell. It  
is called by some Latine writers *variole*, or *pituita ruptionis*,  
in bulgar, the small pockes : there is one sort of them called  
*morbilli*, or *scopuli*, which are white in the midst, and red  
in the borders, they are little blobs upon the skin, produced  
of an ebullition of blood, putrifaction of the aire, ouer great  
repletion of meat, specially fruite, retention of the moneths,  
or reuolution of venomous blood : such blobs for certaine,  
are discerned the first or second day, the third and fourth day,  
they rylse in tumors, and becommeth white, thereafter cru-  
stous : yet, in some the malignity is so great, that it doth  
not onely corrupt the soft parts of the body, but also the so-  
lide and hard parts, as the bones, thereafter death ensueth,  
as I haue diuers times obserued. As for the cure, in respect  
it is impertinent in this place, I will supersede the same to  
my Booke of Infantment, where it shall be particularly set  
downe all the sorts of that disease, and others incident to  
yong children, with their cures.

#### CHAP. II II.

### ¶ Of the Tumor, Furuncle, or Dothin, which proceed of Phlegmon.

Definition,

**F**uruncle, is a tumor that is sharpe pointed with inflama-  
tion and dolour, chiefly when it groweth to matter, and  
is



Of Tumors which proceed of Fleg. *Lib. IIII.* 83

is ingendered of a thicke humoꝝ, in the soft parts, it groweth commonly to the bignesse of a Doves egge, and is lesse then *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28* Phima, it occupieth foꝝ the most part the skinne.

*Galen* saith that *Furuncle* is a tumor procreate of the like *Li. tumor contra naturam.* humoꝝ, as the burgens of the face, and comes in all parts of the body, and is of two soꝝts : the one is like little bubons, is hard, and cometh slowly to maturation : the other is fiery hote, and inflameth, prouoking feuer, yet differs little from Phima, except it is harder and more sharper. The causes are externall & internall : the internall cause is abundance of grosse corrupt blood, euer boyling and burning, like that of Carbuncle, the which nature separating it selfe from the most pure, as vnprofitable and euill, sendeth it to the circumference oꝝ externall parts of the body, and ingendereth *Furuncle* : the externall cause, is in the vice of the skinne, wearing of vnaccustomed clothes, sodainely taking colde after great heat, oꝝ vehement heat immediatly after cold : retention of the monethly courses. The signes, it is pointed red coloured like phlegmon, suppured after the same soꝝt, and in that it differeth from the simple Carbuncle, when it occupied the skinne onely, it may easily be helped, but being more profound it is more painefull and malignant. The cure consisteth first in generall remedies, as purgations and blæding, next laye on it a little *Diachilon*, with Hennes grease, oꝝ *Basilicon*. *Two sorts of Furuncle.* *The cause is two-fold.* *Hip. lib. de hum. mid. 2. su.*

*Galen* counsaileth to chewe wheate in the mouth fasting and lay on it, oꝝ figges sodden in *Hydromell* : oꝝ *Allom clo- uen* in two, and mingled with hony and linget, also *Henbane* beaten with butter may be applyed. If it be deepe and much inflameth, oftentimes it degendereth into *Anthrax* and Carbuncle, and in that case it must be cured, as you shall heare in their proper Chapters. *Gal. lib. tumor contra. natur. Pa. li. 4. ca. 23*



## CHAP. V.

## ¶ Of Anthrax or Carbuncle.

Definition.

**T**here is small difference betwene Anthrax and Carbuncle, saving that Anthrax is the Greeke word, and Carbuncle the Latine, and is so called, because it burneth the place where it is, like unto coales. Carbuncle is defined to be a pustule, inflamed, blacke, burning the place, it is soze with many blisters about it, as if it were burnt with fire or water. The cause is diuers, according to the sundry kinds thereof: the cause of the simple Carbuncle is an ebullition of grosse blood, thicke and hote where it falleth in any place: it burneth and maketh vlcers, with a scale, accompanied with great inflammation and dolour.

Cause.

Difference.

*Tangacius lib.*  
*1. inst. Chirurg.*

Signes.

*Cels li. 9. ca. 28*  
*& lib. 6. ca. 18*

The signes of the simple Carbuncle are these, there appeareth many little blacke pustules not eminent, sometime pale which groweth sodainly red, with great inflammation about the place where it is, and is harder then it ought to bee, the sicke loseth appetite and coueteth sleepe, accompanied with cold, sweat, and feuers.

The signes of the maligne are vomiting continually, weaknes of appetite, trembling, sounding, beating of the heart, the face waxeth white and liuide.

Iudgements.

The Iudgements, if it happeneth nere the stomacke or throte, it telleth the respiration as saith *Celsus*: that which ripeth and commeth to matter, is good: that which appeareth and euanisheth away, is mortall: that which is first red, then yellow, is not euill as saith *Auicen*: that which is first pale and after blacke, is euill: all those which are in the eminentiores of the noble parts, be most dangerous.

Cure.

The cure consisteth in vniuersall and particular remedies, the vniuersals are a good dyet of life, which shall be colde and humide, as you haue heard in Phlegmon, resisting alwayes the



the malignity of the humoz : his drinke must be made with *Arnoldus li. 3.*  
 sirope of Lymons, *Acetosis*, *Suplicis*, *Capilli veneris*, *Gra-* *brevi. ca. 22.*  
*natorum*, *Buglossi* with water of the said things, abstaine frō  
 wine, & drinke only water as counsaileth *Celsus* Else alwaies *Cels. li. 5. ibid.*  
 y tablets of *Diamargarita frigida*. conserues of roses, & bu-  
 glosse, bol armenie, *terra sigillata*, and Quorze in fine powder,  
 of those ingredients you shall make opiats with sirope of Ly-  
 mons and Triacle, vsing this epitheme on the noble parts,  
 chiefly the heart. *Rec. aqua scabiosa, rosarum, nenipharis,*  
*an. 2. unc. aqua buglossi 1. unc. irossiscorum, rasis, camphoris, an.*  
*1. scrupul. corallorum rubrorum 1. dragm, distria sandali & boli*  
*armenici an. unc. 1. croci & aceti parum fiat epithema,* vse  
 glisters and bleed much, as counsaileth *Galen*, in the same *Gal. 14. meth.*  
 side the paine is on vsq; *ad animæ defectum.* The particular & 2. *ad glauc.*  
 remedies are these, first we make deepe scarrifications, and  
 washe it with water and salt called *aqua marina*, wee laye  
 ho:stleaches on the scarrification, vsing a cataplasme on the  
 part, of crummes of white bread, leaues of Plantine, Arno- *Paulus lib. 4.*  
 glosse, flower of Lentills sodden in vinegar and hony. *Hip-* *cap. 25.*  
*pocrates* counsaileth to apply actuall cauters, or other caustick *Hippocrates.*  
 medicament, as oyle of vitrioll, vnquenched Lime, arsenicke  
 on the part *quoniam in extremis morbis extrema sunt adhiben-* *Celsus.*  
*da remedia.* We apply also ventosies, and other medicines,  
 which haue the vertue to draue the venome from the noble  
 parts.

*Arnoldus de villa noua* counsaileth for the extinguishing of *Arnoldus.*  
 the Carbuncle, onely to take the powder of Coziander, well  
 bruised and mingled with honey, and applyed it on the  
 part. *Paulus* doth counsaile to separate with a rasour the *Gal. lib. 13.*  
 infected from the other parts, and raised from the roote. *meth. cap. 6.*

Afterwardes vse this cataplasme to mittigate the paine  
 and prouoke the fall of the scale, composed of Lin-seed, Gal-  
 lowes, violets, yolkes of egges, butter, and barley meale, for  
 the sharpnesse of the humoz put about the part infected *Vn-*  
*guentum de bolo*, and on the pustules the pastules of *Andro-*  
*mus*, and *Musa* : When the scale is fallen, cleanse the vicer  
 3 with



with sirupe of Roses, homie of Roses, and Turpentine, mundificatiue *de appio* and such like, which being done, siccatize and fill it vp as other vlcers; some doe counsaile to take *Consolida maior* and braye it betwene two stones and apply to it. *Agria* is likewise a pustule malignant of the nature of a Carbuncle, the skinnie becommeth first red, in the end it eates and corrods, but the cure is little different from a Carbuncle.

*Agria*, what it is.

### CHAP. VI.

## Of Gangrena and Histriomen.

Definition.

*Gal. 2. de locis affect. & 2. ad glauc. cap. 10.*

Cause.

*Gal. 2. ad glauc.*

**W**hen the inflammation nether resolneth, returneth inwardly, suppureth, nor becommeth hard, it degenereth in Gangren, which is a mortification, not altogether of the part, but tending thereto by little and little, through the great violence of the inflammation: for thereby the vaines and artiers are stopped in such sort, that the naturall heate cannot passe, so the part easily doth corrupt and consume, and so wareth Gangrenat for lacke of naturall and vitall spirits. The cause is, great quantity of bloud in the member which letteth the spirits to passe, so bindeth and intercepteth the same in such sort, that the vaines and artiers cannot wooke their transpiration and requisite exhalation: so for lacke of naturall heate, the member doth suffocate. As also great application of cold medicaments in Phlegmon and Heresipilis, or by some violent externall cause, chiefly in the foot or hands which happeneth oftentimes by cold, crisis of feuers, or malignant and venomous maladies. As also straight ligatours, contusions, strokes, falles, or biting of venomous beasts, chiefly in the wayes and passages where the spirits do passe, or by some pointed stroke vpon the membaines, tendons,



or neruous parts. The Signes are, if it come of inflammati-  
 on, we perceiue the red colour, dolour, pulsation and feeling  
 to decay, it wared pale, soft, and blacke, and in pressing on  
 it with the fingers, it falleth downe and riseth not again: but  
 if it proceed of cold, we perceiue great beating, paine, coldnes  
 without motion or feeling, accompanied with trembling and  
 shaking: and if it proceed by straight ligatours, binding,  
 hurts or biting of venomous beasts, we know by the prece-  
 dent signes and others, according to the diuersitye of the  
 cause. The Iudgements are, if it be not helped presently, Iudgements.  
 the force of it is such that the part dieth presently, as also the  
 parts adiacent, and so causeth death of the whole body: but  
 if the muscles and nerues be not hurt, and the person young  
 and of good constitution and well handled in the beginning, it  
 is not so difficult. The Cure, after generall remedies, like as  
 purgations, bleeding, and dyet, it consists in vsing of co-  
 dials with deepe scarrifications on the part, then washing it  
 with water and salt, then applying Cataplasmes made of  
 flower of beanes, barley, Orob, and Lupines sodden in vi-  
 negar, putting therebnto a little roses, myrre, mirtles, and  
 Aristolochia, washing often the soze with orinell, decoction of  
 Abrotonum, Abscynthium, vtriusq; centorum gentiana, and  
 suchlike: beware of cold, and vse warme clothes, and all o-  
 ther such things as hath the vertue to entertaine the naturall  
 heat: you may also vse Aquanita with triacle, Mulbricate & a  
 little Calcantum, if it be rebellious. And if it be necessary to  
 vse more strong remedies, you shall take Egiptiacke, and  
 mingle therewith a little Arsenicke or Orpimont, and apply to  
 the scarrifications, which remedies must all be vsed with good  
 Iudgement: noting well when the Gangren ceaseth, and the  
 fury of the malady be almost past, then cause the scarre to fall  
 with honey, butter, yolkes of egges, and other fit remedies.  
 If none of those preuaile, but y the Gangren doth become in  
 Sphasell, we must vse the like cure as wee doe in Sphasell,  
 to fortifie the rest of the body as you haue heard.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Cels. li. 5. ca. 27

Cure.

Gal. 2. ad glau.

cap. 9.

Paulus lib. 4.

cap. 13.

Cataplasme  
for Gangrena

Cels. li. 5. ca. 26



## CHAP. VII.

## Of Sphasell.

Difference.  
*Gal. ad glau.  
cap. 9.*

**W**E must here consider the difference betwixt Gangren and Sphasell, and know that Gangren is the Latine woord, and is a mortification of the parts where it happeneth, except the bones, and is curable: But Sphasell or sideration, is a mortification both of the soft and solide parts, which is no way remedied but by amputation: some doe call it Saint Anthoine, or Saint Martials fire.

Cause.  
*Albucasis lib.  
2. cap 87.*

The Causes are like as you have heard in Gangrena: besides, it is ioyned with the euill disposition of the humors venomous, which for the most part doth corrupt the bone before it maketh any externall shew: it doth sometime proceed of old vlcers, which haue bene long oppressed with a rotten filthie matter, which corrupteth the bone, and causeth mortification. Likewise cold, as chaunceth to people who are in prisons, ships, campos, or in cold countries, as oftentimes happeneth in Swedan and such cold countries. Likewise biting of vipers, mad dogges, and other venomous beasts.

Signes.

The Signes are these, the member waxeth blacke, like as it were burnt, afterwards it becommeth rotten, and in short time it ouerthroweth the whole body in such sort, that the skinne doth come from the flesh.

Judgements.  
*Cels. li. 5. ca. 26*

The Judgements are, it is for the most part incurable, and for common, the patient dyeth in cold sweat.

Cure.

The Cure consisteth in remedies generals, and particulars. The generalls shall consist in purgations, dyet, and bleeding, which may be obserued also in the time of the suppuration, by suffering the bloud to flowe, which both discharge the part, impasse the feuer, and other euill accidents which might happen. It were good in this time to vse cordiall remedies, both before and after the amputation for strengthening of the body, as also to impasse the euill vapours

Vse cordiall  
remedies be-  
fore and after  
amputation.



pours and fumes which might ascend and make motion. For this purpose you may take a dramme of Teriacke, with the water of the flowers of Borrage and Buglosse, siroppe of roses, and Buglosse may be vsed and applied on the region of the heart; also epithems of roses and buglosse water, of each one three ounces, with vinegar, wherein Schilla hath bene sodden six drames, Teriack and Mithridat of each 2. drams, Camphir 2. scrup. with the 3. cordiall flowers, of each one a little, Saffron 1. scrupl, mingle all together and apply to the heart, with a little piece of scarlet cloth, maketh it warme befoze it be applied: thereafter you shall goe to the amputation of the member, which shall be done in this manner. The friends being first aduertised of the danger because that oftentimes death ensueth: for the which cause the learned Cellus calleth it a miserable remedie, so that I thinke the expert Chyrurgions should assaye all remedies, befoze they come to that extreme remedie, which is done with great danger, cheisly in doing of the operation, and that either for fluxe of blood, feare, faintnes, & sounding after it is done. Likewise there happeneth often feuers, raueries, extreame dolours, conuulsions, cold sweats, and oftentimes suddaine death: for the which the parents and friends would be foresene of the danger which may happen, and that they should aduise whether (vpon hope of recouery) it be more expedient to assaye that extreame remedie, or otherwise to referre it into the hands of the Lord. Yet by our daily practise, the most part do vse it, because in so doing there is some hope of recouery: and in not so doing, there is nothing to be expected but suddaine death, and better it is to lose one member, then the whole body. As concerning the place of amputation there is diuersity of opinions.

Hippocrates and some others counsaileth to cut in the ioynt, alleadging it to be more easie to bee done, for in so doing the marrow is not discovered as in other parts, nor the fluxe of blood so great. Others thinke best to cut foure inches from the ioynt, either aboue or vnder, according to the

The maner of  
amputation.  
*Cels. lib. 5. ca. 26*

*Cels. lib. 5. ca.  
de Sphalo.*

The place of  
amputation.



the circumscription of the putrifaction which is both more easy and surer then in the ioynt.

4. Inches from  
the ioynt.

For those causes and diuers other circumstances which might be here alleadged, I aduise to make the incision foure inches from the ioynt in all amputations, except onely when the mortification or riuing of the bone end in the ioynt, then it must be cut in the ioynt, chiefly the ioynt of the knee; alwaies it is hard to ciccatrize and heale, by reason the end of the bone is spongiuous and humide, so the loather to conglutinate: but wheresoeuer you make your amputation, remember to marke it wel with inke or others, & to cut rather a little of the whole, than to leaue any portion of the infected. If any of the infected remaine, it corrupteth the rest, and so requireth new amputation, as I haue often seene.

Scituation of  
the sicke.

The place of amputation being so remarked, wee scituate the sicke in a fit place, hauing respect both to the nature, qualitie of the part, and our owne commoditie. For this purpose some doe set the sicke on a bed side for feare of sincops. I my selfe vse onely a chayze, which I find most commodious both for the sicke and Chyrurgion, because it may bee commodiously placed: which done, you shall haue two men to hold and attend vpon the Patient, then the Chirurgion shall commaund the sicke to bend out, and extend that member to the end the skinnie, vaines, artiers, and nerues may bee more lengthened, and after the amputation may bee more apparant to be knit or cauterized. That being done, the Chyrurgion shall plucke vp the skinnie and muscles as much as he can, thereafter he shall take a strong ribben, and bind the member fast about the place of the member, two inches aboue where the amputation shall be.

Bind the member with a  
ribben

The vsage of this ribben or band is diuers. First, it holdeth the member hard and fast, so that the instrument or incising knife may cut more surely. Secondly, that the feeling of the whole parts may be stupified, and rendered insensible. Thirdly, that the fluxe of bloud may be stayed. Fourthly, it holdeth vp the skinnie and muscles which must cover the



the bone after it bee cut, and so it maketh it more easie to heale. The bandage then being thus made, we cut the flesh with a rasoꝝ oꝝ incising knife, which must be somewhat crooked to the forme of an hooke oꝝ halfe moone.

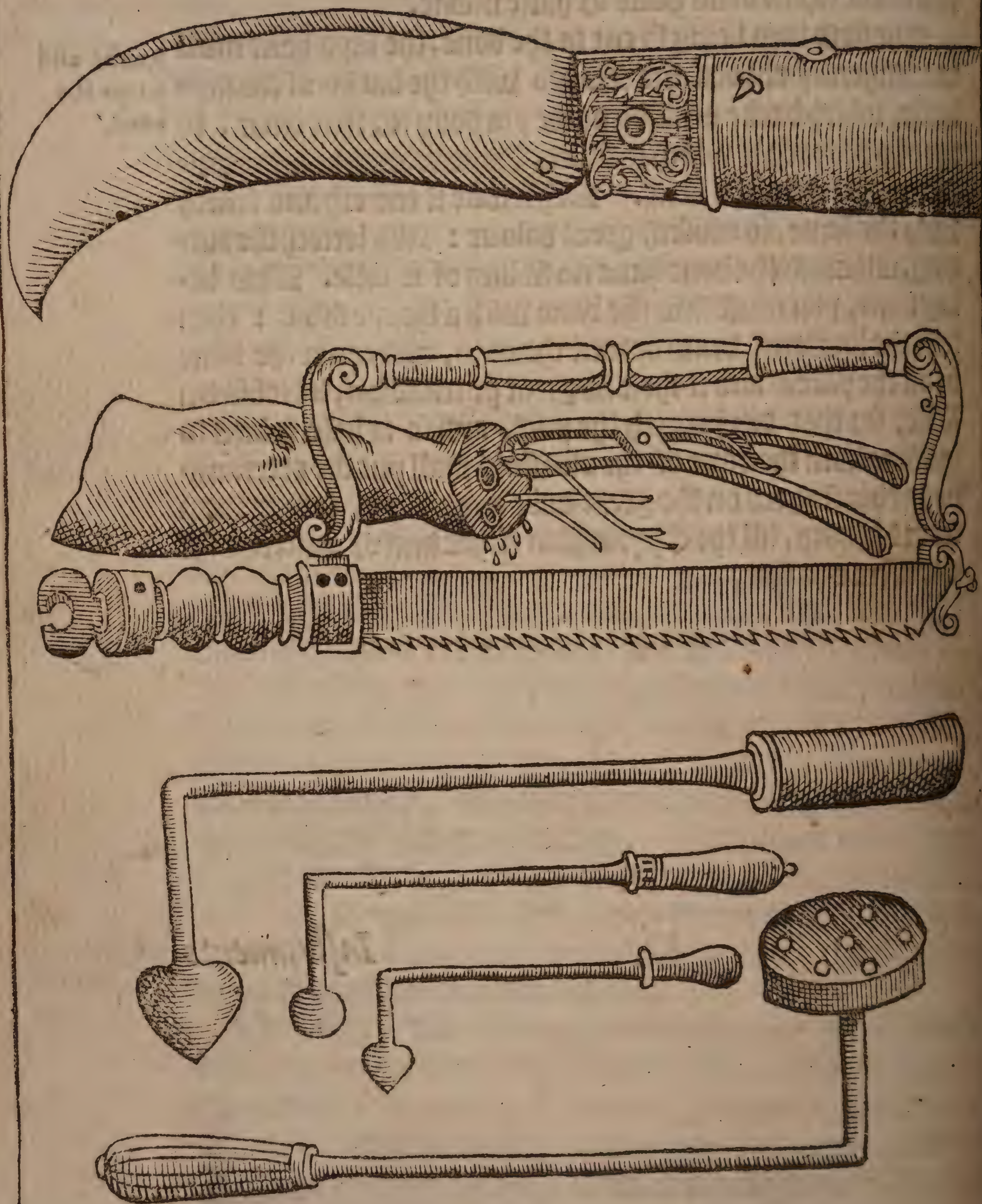
The flesh then being so cut to the bone, the sayd bone must be diligently rubbed and scraped with the backe of the sayd knife, which backe must be made purposely foꝝ that effect, to the end the periost which couereth the bone, may be lesse painful in cutting of the bone. Otherwise it teareth and riueth with the same, so causeth great dolour: Also letteth the cutting, although the bone haue no feeling of it selfe. This being done, you must saw the bone with a sharpe sawe: then loose the ligatour, draw downe the skin, and couer the bone in all the paces; and if there be great putrifaction, let it blæd a little, foꝝ that dischargeth the part, and so is lesse subiect to inflammation: then one of the Assistants shall put the extremities of his fingers on the great vaine and artiers, to stay them from blæding, till the Chyrurgion either knit oꝝ cauterize the one after another,

Rubbe and  
scrape the  
bone.

*Instruments*



*Instruments, and Cauters actuals, for extirpation.*





as he shall thinke expedient. But where there is putrefaction, we stay the fluxe of blood by Cauters actuals, and where there is no putrefaction, malignity, nor humors venomous, we vse the ligatour. The cauter or actuall fire maketh scale, stayeth bleeding, consumeth, and draweth into it the virulency and malignity of the humors which is in that part, and in that point it is more sure and better then knitting. In knitting we lose much blood, and by drawing the vaines with the backe, decurbing, or other instrument, they do breake. Also being knit do often vnloose, so that I find the fire more expedient, being done and applyed meanlie. Then to doe it we must haue three or foure little instruments of Iron, crooked at the end, with a point in forme of a button: of which, some be round, some filate, and some broad, to rubbe on the end of the bone.

How to staye  
the fluxe of  
blood by ac-  
tuall Cauters.

It hath the vertue to drie and corroborate the same, being made red hote: then we take either of them and apply on the vaines one after another, continuing them a certaine space till the scale be made; taking heed always not to burne ouer much of the vaine.

In amputation without putrefaction, I find the ligatour reasonable sure, providing it be quickly done. To doe it, first thou shalt cause the assister as I haue said, to hold his fingers on the vaines, letting one loose, on the which thou shalt take hold with the backe Decurbin, taking a little of the flesh or muscles with it: then put through a needle with a strong thread, knit with a double knot, tying a little of the flesh with the vaine, which will make it hold the better: but if it slippe as oft it happeneth, you shall first put through the needle in the vtter skinne, an ynch aboue the wound, nere to the side of the vaine, cause it to come forth by the other side of the vaine, yet higher than the orifice of the vaine: Then pull out your needle an ynch from the part where it went in: Then put a peece of cloth in two doubles betwixt the two threads, then tye it hard, to the end the knot enter not in the skinne. This way and forme must be vsed in the rest of the vaines,

as



Powder to  
stay the blood

as also in diuers other parts of the body : The blood being so stayed, we vse an astringent powder, as this. *Rec. boli armenici 3. ounces, farine volatilis 2. ounces, picis, resinae, sanguinis draconis an. 1. dragm.* of this powder you shall strain on the wound, with drie flaxe or caddesse. Thereafter an astringent or defensiu made of the foresayd powders, whites of egges, and oyle of roses, applyed on flore in like manner, the which flockes or caddes must be wet in oricrate, and bee of such breadth as may couer the soze, thereafter take a double cloth, not onely sufficient to couer the soze parts, but likewise the parts adiacent, also wet in oricrate and annointed with the foresayd defensitiue : The bands must be also wet in the said oricrate, then bind it well in such sort that it bee neither too straight nor too slacke, then scituate the member in good sort, and remoue it not for thre dayes, chiefly in winter, but that must bee obserued according to the accidents which doe happen.

In changing of those remedies, beware to take away the scarre or knot of thread, and for auoiding thereof wee rubbe first the part with cerot Galen, to the end the defensiu cleaue not fast to it.

To staye an  
artier or vain  
if it open.

If it happen any vaine or artier to open, you shall dissolue a little vitreoll in vinegar, and laye on the vaine or artier with flore the breadth of a groate or sixe pence, this will presently stay it, as I haue often proued.

If it happen that twoo or thre of the said vaines do open, cause thy seruant to put his fingers on them, and tye them as you haue heard.

The second dressing must bee done in the same manner, with some astringent, chiefly on the vaines and artiers, and so continue till such time that there be no more feare of blood, which will continue eight or ten dayes : On the rest of the wound, you may vse a digestiue made after this forme.

Take Turpentine well washed in Plantine water 4. *unc.* honey of Roses, 1. *unc.* Barly flower halfe an ounce, two yolkcs of egges, and a little Saffron, incorporate all well together,



gether, and apply to the soze till it be perfectly suppured, then use mundificative de appio apostolorum, or my owne mundificative, with this emplaster, composed of equall portions of Diapalma and red Desiccative, for a tyme, next use this Siccatriant to the entire curation.

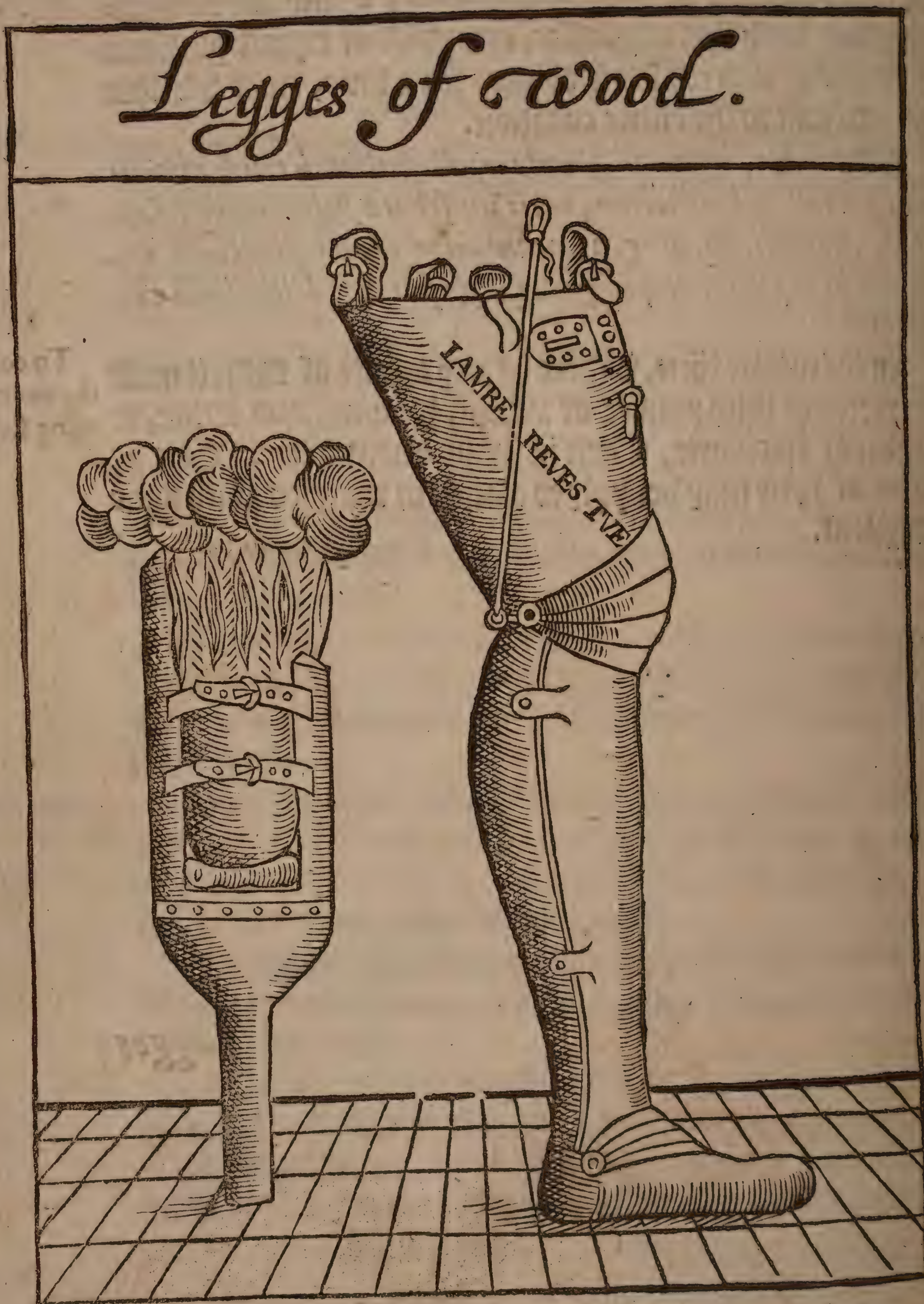
Take *inhiapraparata*, *plumbi crudi*, *antimonij crudi corticis mali gronati*, *balansticrum*, *nucis muschata*, *boli armenici*, *sanguinis draconis*, an. drag. i. accipiantur omnia simul cum tribus uncijis unguenti diapomphologos & fiat magdalion bone consistentia.

In the meane time, if there be any exesse of flesh, it must be corrected with powder of Allom, Savine, and Oker, or powder of Mercurie, taken in small quantities: these or either of these may be applyed alone, or mingled with some Unguent.

To corral  
the ouer-gro-  
wing flesh.

Legges



*Legges of wood.*



All the forme of this operation is most learnedly and skilfully practised by my good friend Maister James Haruey, Her maiesties chiefe Chyrurgion to the Quenes Maiestie, who hath writ<sup>chie e Chy-</sup> ten diuers learned bookes of Chyrurgery, and in practise hath<sup>rurgion.</sup> excelled the most part in his time.

But for further declaration of the premisses, I will recite a Historie. History which happened during the siege at Paris : where, through great hunger, cold, and other miseries, happened many grievous sicknesses, as Gangrens and mortifications; amongst the which there was a Spanish souldier of that regiment whereof I was Chyrurgion maior, who had a blacknes or little spots in his foote and toes, as if they had bin burnt. I did cut off his toes and scarrified the rest, and after vsed such remedies that he shortly healed.

Some after, happened the like in the other foote, which I would haue cut and cured as the former : but he and his fellows esteemed it a deformitie, and would not suffer the same. So the griefe daily did augment with such violence and furie, that by the aduise of the best and learned Chyrurgions in Paris at that time, I was constrained to cut off the whole legge, and so did helpe him. At this same time there was a wife in the coyning house of Paris, at which time the Citty being scarce of money, and hardly besieged, they did coyne brasse and copper. So this woman by the continuall<sup>Historie.</sup> sorting & telling of this coyne, there did enter of the ewre of that brasse and copper vnder the nailes of her fingers, which infected the whole points thereof, shortly they became blacke and insensible : whereupon deepe scarrifications were made, with lauements, & all other fit remedies which might be deuised ; notwithstanding we were constrained to cut off three of the foremost ioynts of the fingers. Thus haue I alleadged to shewe the daunger of delaye, that if any such thing happen, it should not be differred ; but diligently proceed as you haue heard. And thus I end the Tumors which procede of the sanguine humoz, and shall prosecute the rest God willing.



## CHAP. VIII.

¶ Of the extirpation of superfluous fingers  
and toes, with such as are corrupt & bruised.

6 Fingers or  
toes.

*Pau. li. 6. ca. 43*

It happeneth oftentimes in the hands and fete, that there is implanted against nature, six fingers or toes, or more; to the great deformity of the part, and hinderance of the action: There may likewise happen in those parts Gangrens and mortifications for diuers causes, as you haue heard in the last Chapter: Like as you shall heare in the chapter of Panaris & Paranochia, & which maketh oftentimes corruption in the bone before any outward appearance, so that for either of those causes the Chirurgion is oftentimes constrained to cut off the whole finger, or at least one ioynt, or some portion thereof, if fit remedies preuaile not: then to do that operation, you shall be meekest, and with smallest paine to be done, with Tenals incisives,

*Tenals*



*Tenals incisives, to cut off fingers and toes.*





How to take them away. *Alb. li. 2. ca. 47* which in one instant cut both flesh and bones. Some for this purpose doe vse a sharpe Chizell and a Gallet, laying the member on a blocke and so cuts it off : which forme neither doe I thinke so good, nor so methodicall, as the former. The extirpation being done of one ioynt, two, or halfe, as shall be requisite, you shall stay the fluxe of blood : thereafter follow out the rest of the cures, as you haue heard in the precedent chapter. Here followeth those Tumors which proceede of Choller.

## CHAP. IX.

¶ Of Tumors bilious, called by the Latines *Flaua Bilis*; and first of *Eresipelas*.

*Raty Abbas  
lib. 2. cap. 3.*

*Gels li. 5. ca. 29*

Difference.  
*Arnoldus de  
villa no. a.*

*Gal. 2. ad glau.*

Cause.

WE haue said that there were two sorts of hote tumors ; to wit, Phlegmon. whereof we haue spoken, and Eresipelas, whereof wee meane for to speake. Eresipelas, is a tumor which proceedeth of the cholericke humor, accompanied with great inflammation and dolour, for the most part not eminent without pulsation : It is pale or red coloured, and is called by the Greeces *Eresipelas quoniam adheret Pelis* : for by the subtiltie of that humor, it cometh to the superfiice of the skinne, and is called in Latine *Ignis sacer*, in the vulgar, Wilde fire, it differeth little from Phlegmon. Some esteeme them to differ, by reason the one proceedeth of blood, and the other of Choller : They differ also in colour, the one being red, the other oftentimes pale. Phlegmon entrencheth deepe in the muscles, the other remaineth in the skinne. Of this disease there are two sorts, the true Eresipelas which cometh of Choller onely, but when it is mingled with the grosse humors, there cometh three kinds of it, as you haue heard in Phlegmon. The cause of this tumor is abundance



dance of cholericke humoꝝ, great heat of the Sunne, strokes, falles, and vsing of hote medicaments which moueth fluxion, and draweth the humoꝝ to any part of the body.

The Signes are these, the tumoꝝ is very vehement, burning hote, dolorous, and mordicant, it doth seldome come to maturitie, it appeareth oftentimes in the necke and face, by reason of the tendernes of the skinne, the colour is not perfect red, but mingled, and is somewhat pale. When it is touched, it doth suddainly vanish, and shortly returneth againe. It is dolorous without great pulsation, yet with great feuer, not vnlike to the feuer Tertiane, it beginneth soꝝ the most part with paine in the thighs, and tumoꝝ in the liskes oꝝ inguen.

Signes.

Togacius lib. 1  
cap. 8.

The Judgements, the simple Eresipelas endeth rather by resolution, than suppuration. The other, which Celsus calleth wilde fire oꝝ *Ignis sacer*, participates with the excrementous parts of the cholericke humoꝝ, which being moze thicke doth not passe, so exulcerateth, which is better than if it strike in; that which commeth soꝝth, is good; that which appeareth in the face and in wounds, is euill; those which happeneth in the matrice is mortall, also causeth the death of the fruit; those which appeare in the head are very dangerous, and if good remedies be not vsed, the partie dyeth, as sayth Paulus

Judgements.

Cels. cap. citato.

Hippo. aph. 19  
lib. 7.Hippo. 29. aph.  
lib. 6.

Egineta.

As touching the Cure, there are two things to be obserued, euacuation generall, diuersion, coꝝroboration of the part recipient, & refrigeration with consolidation of the part: the way of life must be cold and humide, contrary to the humoꝝ which is hote and drie, as you haue heard in the generall Chapter. Abstaine from wine and other strong drinke, all things that are sweet, solwer, and bitter sauces, from anger and vehement exercise, great heat, and such like. The humoꝝ must be euacuated by purgations, glisters, blæding, and sometime scarified; if it become liuide, being first fomented with hote water, vsing things on the soze which bee cold and humide, and that with great Judgement. Apply on the soze the iuice

Cure.

Pa. li. 4. ca. 21

Cels. li. 5. ca. 26



To cure it in  
the face.

oꝛ water of Solanum, Houſleke, Lettice, Succorie, Umbilicus, Menaris, Cucumber, wet a cloth therein and apply: When it is in the face, cold water and oricrate may be vſed, as counſaileth Galen and Auicen. For the ſame purpoſe I doe often vſe ſerot Galen oft waſhed in Roſe and Planten water, as alſo *Rofatum meſues*: if there be vehement dolor as often chaunceth, the rotes and leaues of Henbane roſted vnder the aſhes, and mingled with a little pupilion is very good; alſo *Vnguentum album cum camphora*. Likewise a cataplaſme of barlie flower, linſeede ſodden in Hydromell oꝛ oricrate, putting to it a little pouder of Camomell, and oyle of Roſes, all thoſe remedies muſt be liquide and often removed, and the ſore well cleaned that nothing remaine on it, if it be come to a bile oꝛ vlcer, and is cured as Herpes.

*Formica.*  
Error of the  
Chirurgions.

As touching *Formica* and *Ignis perſicus*, the ſignes and cure differeth little from Eresipelas, yet you muſt note that diuers Chyrurgions doe and haue committed errour in the cure of this diſeaſe, eſteeming it to proceede of a malignant furious humoꝛ, foꝛ the which they euer applye cold medicaments not regarding purgations, bleeding, comforting of the part, neither the time when theſe colde medicaments oꝛ reſolatiues ſhould be applyed. For the which I haue ſometime ſene enſue Gangren and mortification, wherefoꝛe the ſkilfull Chyrurgion ſhould abſtaine from thoſe cold medicaments: when the inflammation, redneſſe, and heate doth diminith, you may apply ſuch thinges as you haue heard befoꝛe. Thus I haue thought good to aduertise the young Chyrurgion, becauſe ſuch accidents happen, as I haue ſometime remarked.

### Chap. X. Of Herpes.

*Gal. 2. ad g' an.*  
*cap. 1.*

**H**Erpes, is a little vlcer accompanied with tumoꝛ, proceeding of a pure bilious humoꝛ, without mixture of any other humoꝛs, it occupieth moſt commonly the extremities



ties and outward parts of the skinne, and is comprehended  
 vnder Eresipelas like as Formica and Impetigo, which are Difference.  
 little cholericke pustules : the old Grækes doe make three  
 kinds of it. The first, is made of the thinne choller which  
 burneth the skinne, and is called simple Herpes. The Se-  
 cond, is made of a more thicke choller, which vlceraeth a *Gal. comment. in*  
 great part of the skinne, and is named by the vulgar Wilde *apho. 45. lib. 6.*  
 fire, or Herpes depascens, because it eateth and consumeth  
 the skinne to flesh. The third kind, is made of choller and  
 pituit together, accompanied with some malignitie, as com-  
 monly it happeneth to those who are infected with the neapo-  
 litan or french disease. It is called by our ancients *Herpes*  
*miliaris*, because the pustules of it are like vnto the graine  
 called *milium*. These pustules haue diuers denominations; *Diuers deno-*  
 some call them *papula* or *pituita eruptionis* : others doe call *minations of*  
 them *Ecthimata*, some doe call them *Exanthemata*. The *Herpes.*  
 Cause and Signes differ not from those which you haue  
 heard in the precedent chapter. As for the cure it doth con- *Cure.*  
 sist in three parts, first in staying the fluxion by euacuation *Gal. 2. ad glau.*  
 vniuersall, prouocation of vrine, and good dyet, as in Ere- *& 14. meth.*  
 sipelas. Secondly, in euacuating that which is in the place, *cap. 7.*  
 by such things as haue the vertue to discusse, diger, and dry  
 lightly, and not humect : then in the beginning you shall vse  
 Vine leaues, Plantaine, Goose-berry leaues, Arnoglosse, put-  
 ting thereto a little barley flowze, with some honye, also the  
 barke of the Pomgranet dissolued in wine, with a little fine  
 flowze made in forme of cataplasme. The third intention is *Pau. li. 5. ca. 20*  
 in drying vpper the vlcers, for all vlcers whatsoeuer require  
 desiccation by gentle medicaments, excepting alwayes the  
 maligne vlcers, in the which you must vse more strong and  
 mordicant remedies. First, you shall vse fomentations of  
 Roses and Plantaine sodden in wine or water and an un-  
 guent made of oyle of Walnuttess and Ware, thereafter  
 washed well in Smiths water, also Vnguent roset is good:  
 or this vnguent thus made. *Rec. Vnguenti popilionis serati*  
*refrigerantis Galeni serusca an. drach. vn dim. litargiri. unc.*



3. olei rosacei unc. i. malexentur omnia simul & fiat unguen-  
 tum. The other pustules, like as *Formica* and *Impetigo*  
 are cured commonly by generall euacuations. As for other  
 defedations of the skinne, which proceed of the melancholicke  
 or chollericke humors, they are cured by vniuersall euacuati-  
 ons, sweating, bathing, else by applying some vnguent on the  
 part affected, like as *Vnguentum anulatum*, putting thereto a  
 little *Mercurie*. It is excellent for this purpose, as also to  
 kill the itch which happeneth to young children. For this, take  
*Enula Campagne* roots, seeth them in the iuice of *Plantane*,  
*Rogerus tra.* 2 *Fumitorie*, yolkes of Egges, hogges grease or fresh butter,  
 being all mingled together, put thereto a little brimstone well  
 purified with oyle of *Hypericon*, make an vnguent of good  
 consistence.

## CHAP. XI.

¶ Of Tumors which proceed of the pitui-  
 tous humor, and first of *Oedema*.

Definition.  
*Gal.* 2. ad glan.  
 cap. 3.  
 Difference,

**H**aving spoken of the two hot tumors, and of those  
 which commonly come of them: now in like manner  
 I shall shewe you of the two cold tumors, the one ingender-  
 ed of melancholie, as you shall heare at length in that chap.  
 the other of *Flegme* or *pituit*. *Oedema* is a soft tumor with-  
 out dolour, white coloured. Of it there are two sorts, as of  
*Phlegmon*; the one the true naturall *oedema*, ingendered of  
 the pure *Phlegmaticke* humor; the other is made of *Fleg-*  
*mon*, mingled with the other three humors, and taketh di-  
 uers names according to the principall humors, as you haue  
 heard. And like as there is two sorts of it; so it may be na-  
 med two wayes, to wit, either *Malady* or *Symptome* of  
*Malady*, as happeneth in the face, and legges. In such as  
 are



are oppressed with abundance of cold watry humors, called by the Physicians Cathecticks. Also those which are become Edematiques through long sickness, which accidents are called maladies, and they require no particular curation, save onely rubbing the part with oyle and salt, water and salt, or oricrate, wetting a cloth therein, and lay on it : Also strong Claret wine mixed with Smiths water, and apply it warme after the same forme, the wine doth corroborate & drye. The Cause is a phlegmaticke fluxion of humors, pituitous and flatuous in any part of the body : Also imbecillity of the part which receaueth, and can neither digest nor expell that which is hurtfull, also great idleness. The tokens of these, the tumor is soft, cold ; in pressing on it with thy fingers, there remaineth a hole, and riseth not againe. It is cleare, & not dolorous, and happeneth oftene in the weakest parts, as in the ioynts and glandulous, and in the extremities, as in the face, legges, and fete, chiefly in cold weather, and old people ; or after long sicknesses, in people that be full of humors, and make no exercise.

Gal. 1<sup>ph</sup>. 2. sec.  
1. & lib. 1.

Cause.

Gal. 2. ad glan.  
cap. 3.

The Judgements, this tumor hath foure degrees or times, as others hath, the beginning, augmentation, state, and declination. It happeneth oftener in Winter than in Summer, because that season doth produce the cold phlegmaticke humor rather than any other. This tumor turneth seldome in matter, except in hote places, by reason the matter is cold, it endeth oftentimes by resolution : Sometime it turneth to Schirre, nodosities, or some other colde abresse, which happeneth by the great vsage of digestiues, which maketh the matter ware hard.

Judgements.  
It hath foure  
degrees.

In the Cure there are twoo points to be obserued : first to diuert the fluxion by remedies that hath the vertue to cleause the pituitous humor called Phlegmagogis, as Diacatolicon, Diaphenicon, Diacartami Agricke, Pillulus, Chocia, Diacurbith and such like. For the administration of the which, you shall vse the counsaile of the expert Physician or Chyrurgion : as also in dyet tending to hote and drye : cate-  
rosted

Cure.



rosted meates rather than sodden, but a little quantity, abstaine from all things that breed flegmon, like as fruits, potage, chæse, fish, hearbs, water fowles, sadnesse, and much sleepe, drinke wine with little water, vse well baked bread, with things to corroboreate the noble parts. Abstaine from women, chiefly the sicke being weake: yet some doe commend the vsage of women in maladies pituitous, for it heateth and dryeth, vse moderate exercise, hold euer the bellie loose: abstaine from bathes, and all thinges that humects: also from bleeding, although it be commended by Guydo, for it is hard to find in a body that is plethoricke a true Edema. The second intention consisteth in taking away that which is in the place, which shall bee done according to the times and degrees of the tumor: first then you shall vse medicinalments repercussives, and discutients, which shall be weake and not strong.

*Gal. 4 meth. ca. 4, & 2, ad glauc.* Galen doth much commend oricrate, by reason the vinegar repelleth by the cold vertue, and resolueth by the dry vertue: if it be not sufficient, mixe with it a fewe ashes of the Oake tree, *sal niter*, and some Claret wine: also the emplaster *de vigo*, or a fomentation made of Camomell, Melilot, Rosemarie, Sage, Wormewoode, Driegan, Ysople, and Red-roses, of each one a handfull; salt and sulphure, of each one an ounce, seeth them all in Smiths water, with a little vinegar, and foment the part with a sponge or cloth: you may also make a *Lixivium* of the cinders or ashes of the fig or vine tree, as counsaileth Avicen. it drieth and cleanseth mightily. If need be, of stronger desiccation, vse this remedy set downe by Brunus: take Allom, Sulphure, Myrhe, and Salt, of each a like quantity, mixe all with vinegar, of Roses make a ligament. For the same purpose you may make cataplasmes of flowers Beanes, Lentiles, and bran sodden in vinegar, putting thereto Anisæds, Myrtill, or Iris, and plaster of melilote is also good.

Rogerus also counsaileth to take iuice of Inalwort, Sorrell, and Marrubium, take of euery one of them a reasonable quantity,



quantity, and seeth them with *Unguentum de althea*, honie, *Comment. in*  
 oyle, and butter, make a cataplasme thereof. If it wax hard, *aph. 41, lib. 1.*  
 you shall vse this *Rec. Exurge. bubula vnc. 3. gab. bedel-*  
*li ammo. in aceto dissolutorum sing. vnc. 1. picis vnc. semiss. the-*  
*rebenthina 2. vnc. myrrha drach. 3. corticis thuris drach. 2.* If it tend to  
*olei veteris vnc. 2. fiat unguentum.* If it tend to suppuration, *suppuration.*  
 as often happeneth in hote parts, vse this suppuratiue, take  
 the rootes of Althea, 3. vnc. Lillie rootes, 2. vnc. Camomell  
 and Melilot of each one a little handfull, flowre of Orzob  
 and Fenegrek, vnc. 1. beat all these and mixe with Venes  
 grease, Butter, oyle of Lillies, and Camomell, of each halfe  
 an vnc. make a cataplasme, cleanse the blcer, and cure it as  
 other Aposthumes. If it ware hard and schirrus, cure it as  
 you shall heare in the chap. of Schir.

## CHAP. XII.

¶ Of the woundy Tumors that de-  
pend of Edema.

**Y**EE haue heard in the generall chapter, diuers kinds of  
 phlegmaticke tumors which pertain to Edema, wher- *Gal. li. 13, met.*  
 of I will now speake, beginning with the woundy tumors, *cap. 4.*  
 which are nothing else but certaine wounds and inflations, *Definition.*  
 ingendered by a spirit thicke & vapoious and not of a subtil & *Auicenn lib. 4.*  
 aerious substance. Sometime those wounds are inclosed vn- *cap. 2.*  
 der the skinne and within the membraines, which maketh *The place*  
 distention, & sometime dolour according to the part where it *where they*  
 is. They are sometimes in the ventericill, puddings, and *are.*  
 capacity betwixt the puddings, and periton, as in Tympa-  
 nies, which sound like a drumme. Those winds are some-  
 time dispersed amongst the muscles, which is properly infla- *Difference.*  
 tion, and differeth from Edema, for in pressing on it with the  
 fingers



*Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 6.* fingers, the print or seale doth not remaine. The other kind of it doth approach neere vnto Oedema, which is, the flatuosities dispersed in other parts musculous.

*Gal. lib. symp. caus.* Cause. The Cause of tumor, is too much vsage of colde flatuous meats, phlegmaticke, which causeth these winds. The cause also may be in the ventricill and guts, in like manner in the obstruction and straightnes of the passages, and imbecility of the naturall heate, saith Galen.

*Gal. 2. ad glau. cap. 6. Pau. li. 4. ca. 28* Signes. The Signes are Tumor, softnesse more clære than Oedema; and by pressing on it with the fingers, there remaineth no marke as in Oedema: by knocking on it, it soundeth like a bladder full of wind, and in that point it differeth also from Oedema.

*Car. ad finem lib. 4. de sani. tuen.* Cure. The Cure doth consist in two points; first, in dyet which shall be hote and drie, eating little and of light digestion, good bread of wheate well baked, and salted, vsing things to corroborate the naturall heate, discusse the thicke cold vapours, and to attenuate. Also to corroborate the ventricill with aromaticke things and electuaries, as Diacalamintho aromatico, Gariaphilata, Diagalanga, Rose, and such like; Eate good flesh, as Mutton, Meale, and such like, rather roasted than sodden, the drinke must be good Claret or white wine.

*Gal. 14. meth. cap. 34.* The second intention consisteth in euacuation of the humor which is in the part, by topicall remedies, which haue the vertue to clarifie and make the skinne thinne, to the end the vapours may passe out more easly: such are called discutients or carmenatiues, like as Anisædes, Fennell, Asope, Parsly, *Bacci laurei*, Juniper, Paritarie, Camomell, and Helilot, oyle of *Aryn*, and Bayes: Of those we may make cataplasmes, fomentations, or laciues, as shall bee thought expedient: Also linements of Camomell, Rue, Lillies, and a little aquauite, or the emplaster called *Bacci laurei*, *oxycroci*, & *de vigo*. mixed together make an emplaster and lay on the soze: also a new water sponge wet in laciue, or *lana succida*, wet in warme wine and oyle, and applyed. If those vapours or windes maketh dolour, as commonly happeneth



peneth in the cholericke passion : first, you shall appease the  
 dolour, then euacuate the matter, which shall be done accor-  
 ding to the habitude of the body where it is, and discretion of  
 the learned Chyrurgion, vse likewise glitters carmenatives.  
 If those flatuosities be in the intestines, you may apply thre  
 or foure great ventosies on the belly.

If it make do-  
 lour; how to  
 heale it.

*Pauli. 4 ca. 28.*

### CHAP. XIII.

#### Of the watrie Tumors which depend on Oedema.

**T**his tumor is a water or serositie, gathered together in  
 any part of the body, but specially betwixt the skinnie  
 and flesh. The Signes are like to the true Oedema, but the  
 tumor is looser and doth not so resist the twitch, nether doth it  
 sound like wind, as the other. It is likewise more cleare,  
 chiefly betwixt you and the light, as ye shall heare in *Hernia*  
*Aquosa*. The Judgements, it happeneth oftener in the ex-  
 tremities, as in the feete, ioynts, and Cods, than in other  
 places, because the watry humor doth easily descend, and dul-  
 leth the naturall heate in those parts. The Cure differeth  
 little from the true oedema, and as it occupieth diuers parts  
 of our bodies, it taketh likewise diuers names; as if it bee  
 contained within the periton, it is called a spise of *Hydropsie*  
*tearmed Ascites*, and that cerosity discending in the *Scro-*  
*tum* or Cods, is called *Hydrofelon*. If that watry humor  
 come in the head, as sometime happeneth vnder the muscles,  
 pericran, or skin, it is called *Hydrocephalon*. If this bitter  
 watry humor ether for y rottennes, or ebullition, become mix-  
 ed with the bloud in any part, it is called *Phlistinas*, which  
 are little blisters or brownish blobs, which commonly happen  
 in the hands, for the cure of those you shall heare at length in  
 the proper chapter.

*Pa. li. 9. ca. 27.*  
 Signes.

Judgements.

Cure.

*Gal. li. 3. ca. 2.*

Chap.



## CHAP. XIIII.

¶ Of the tumors Phlegmatickes called *Atheorema*, *Steotema*, and *Melleriferis*.

**T**hose tumors are commonly called excreffences phlegmatickes, by reason they proceede of the phlegmaticke humoꝝ; yet they differ from the other tumors, because they are inclosed in a membaine, little bagge, or chest: they are composed of diuers sorts of strange matter by the which they haue taken their names, as hath bene remarked by the most learned amongst the auncients. *Atheorema*, is so called, because in it is contained a matter like greuelloꝝ pottage, called by the Greeks *Athera*. *Steotema*, is so called, by reason in it is contained a humoꝝ like grease, called by the Grekes, *Stear*. *Melleriferis*, is so called, because in it is contained a matter both in colour and consistance like unto hony, called by the Grekes *Meli*, and is the hardest of them thꝛee to heale. As foꝝ *Bruncoceci*, *Ganglion*, *Tesudo*, and the residue, I shall speake hereafter in the particular tumors. Those tumors doe happen most commonlie in membrainous places, and where there is scarcitie of flesh, as in the ioynts, hands, head, and diuers parts of the face.

*Pa. li. 6. ca. 36*  
The matter whereof they are composed  
*Atheorema.*  
*Steotema.*  
*Melleriferis.*

*Scituation.*  
*Auicenna 25.*  
Cause.  
Primitiue.  
Cause antecedent.  
Coniunct.

*Signes.*  
The forme of *Atheorema.*

The Cause is primitiue, antecedent, and coniunct. The primitiue or first motiue is strokes, falles, violent forces, immoderate eating and drinking. The Cause antecedent is abundance of humoꝝ, chiefly of the phlegmaticke naturall, ingendered chiefly by euill dyet. The coniunct cause is the diuers kinds of matter contained in the part.

The Signes, they appeere by little and little without either dolour or inflammation preceding; neuerthelesse, by reason of the diuersitie of the substances contained in them, they haue diuers signes.

The *Atheorema* is long in figure, and in pressing on it with the finger, it goeth in slowly, and returneth not sodainly, it



it is soft without dolour. The Colour is (of the skinne) naturall, in it is found sometime with the matter, haire, bones, and such like.

Colour.  
Matter.

The signes of *Steotema* is hardnesse, and if it goe in, in pressing on it, it returneth not easilie: it is large at the roote, in the which is contained with the matter accustomed, bones, cotten, and such like. Of the which I did find great quantitie in the knee of an *Spanne*, whome I did cure at Paris. It differeth from *Atheorema* both in figure, and substance, the figure being more round, and the substance more thinne.

The forme of  
*Steotems*.  
Matter.

The Signes of *Melleriferis* is great softnesse, in touching subtil and cleare: in pressing on it, it goeth in easily, and likewise doth returne, it is round in figure, in it is contained besides the matter accustomed, a grauellie hard matter.

The forme of  
*Melleriferis*.

Matter.

Those tumors for the most part are little at the beginning, but by processe of time groweth very great, some very hard, and in some of them is contained a very strange matter, like as haire, bones, cotten, grauell, sometimes little animosie like *Wæs*; the which be all inclosed in a bagge or chest, as hath bene sayd.

In the Cure of those, there is one simple intention to be done, to wit, euacuation of the matter contained in the place, which is done either by *Launcet*, *Cauter* potentiall, or *cantick* stone, not euacuating all the matter at one time: the ouerture must be proportionable to y<sup>e</sup> tumor, which should be obserued in opening of all tumors: Those tumors are sometime inserted with vaines, artiers, nerues, and tendons, for the which great dexterity would be vsed in y<sup>e</sup> operation, specially in taking away of the bagge wherein the matter is contained, that you offend not the former parts: For oftentimes there cometh great fluxe of blood as I haue sometime seen, cheifly in the temples.

Cure.

Great dexte-  
ritie in the o-  
peration of  
them.

The tumor being opened, and the membaine discovered which will appeere white, you must separate the same gently from the flesh, either with your spyle or other fit instrument proper to pull it out, with that which in it is contained,

*Cels. li. 5. ca. 28.*



The mem-  
brane must  
be consumed,  
and how.

*Paul. lib 4.*  
*Ætius 15.*

ned, and if there remaine any portion thereof, you shall vse such medicaments for the cleansing of it, as you haue heard in other tumors: the matter being euacuated and the membrane remaining wherein it was inclosed, the same must be wholie consumed, and wholly cleansed away, otherwise it will grow againe as before: We vse to consume that membrane with pouder of *Mercurie*, *Egyptiacke*, and such like, alwayes with discretion for feare of inflammation, thereafter incarnate and close the wound, as in others you haue heard: some doe vse resolutiues in those tumors, which are both tedious and vncertaine. There are certaine other tumors phlegmatickes, like as *Talpa*, *Napta*, or *Natha*, *Telludo*, *Gangleon*, *Nodus*, & *Lupea*, which tumors doe all depend on the former, yet little mention hath bene made of them by our ancients. Those tumors doe not much differ from the former, neither in the causes nor signes: they doe occupie for the most part the drie parts, as the other which are emptie of flesh, like as the head, face, ioynts, hands and fete, as sayth *Avicen*. The cure of such are little different from the former, except that some of them be oftener cured by resolution, as you shall heare in the booke of Tumors in particular, speaking of those tumors.

#### CHAP. XV.

¶ Of the Tumors engendered of the melancholicke humor, called by the Latines *Atrabilis*, or *Nigra cholera*, and first  
*Schirre*.

Seeing I haue sufficiently spoken of the tumors ingendered of the sanguine, cholericke, and pituitous humors: Now it resteth to speake of those which proceed of melancholy,



lie, called tumors schirrous, for the Greeke word Schir doth  
 signifie hardnesse. Schir is a hard tumor with little dolour  
 or feeling : of the which there are two kinds, the one is called  
 the true exquisite Schir, and the other the false. The true  
 and exquisite is a hard tumor without feeling, procreate of a  
 naturall melancholicke humor, which is in the dregges or  
 grounds of the blood : It is a slimie sharpe superfluitie,  
 blacke coloured, sowre tasted. The false or illegitimate Schir  
 doth proceed of an unnaturall melancholie humor, which is  
 ingendered of the most grosse part of the chyle, as you have  
 heard; the false is altogether without feeling, or hardly may  
 be perceived. There is an other sort of Schir, ingendered of  
 a phlegmaticke, thicke, tough matter, and is composed of an  
 humor thicke and cold. The Cause is a cold drie humor ei-  
 ther of matter melancholique, phlegmaticke, or both: for  
 first, when the blood is made in the liuer, there is ingendered  
 in it a melancholicke humor, which is like vnto the lye or  
 dregs of wine, the which afterwards is drawn to y<sup>e</sup> milt for  
 the nouriture thereof : it is engendered, especially by the u-  
 sage of such meats as are apt for the making of the same, and  
 the milt being weake to drawe it, it goeth vnto the vaines  
 and there is mingled with the vaines, which by their vertue  
 expultrix doth expell the same by the Hemorrhoides, month-  
 ly courses, or varices, and sometime it doth disperse through  
 the skinne, and oftentimes doth breed the Gorphea or Le-  
 prosie. Sometime it is cast in the most weake parts of the  
 body, and according to y<sup>e</sup> place and quality of the humor, breed-  
 eth either Schir or Cancer. If it be cast in any drie part, as  
 the ligaments, tendons, or ends of the muscles, on the milt,  
 kidnies, liuer, or matrice, it causeth Schir. If it be cast on the  
 soft and glandulous parts, as the paps, emunctoires of the  
 noble parts, face, or priuie parts, it maketh Cancer. It may  
 also proceed by the sadnes, suppression of the Hemorrhoides  
 and monethly courses : also by too much applying of colde  
 medicines or tumors, as on Eresipelas or Flegmon, by that  
 meanes the most subtil doth resolute, and the rest doe become  
 hard.

Definition.

Gal. 2. ad glan.

cap. 5.

Difference.

Gal. 2. ad glan.

cap. 9.

Cause.

Gal. 14. meth.

cap. 3.

Gal. 5. sim. ca. 8

Gal. li. 7. meth.

cap. 16.

Pau li. 7. ca. 32



Signes.

It closeth the  
conduit of  
the nerues.  
Roland. lib. 1.

hard. The Signes are these, the tumor is hard and groweth slowly, and of colour liuide when it cometh of melancholy, but when of the phlegmaticke humor it is white; and being mixed of both humors together, it is of a liuide and white colour, insensible, because of the humor which is thicke and drie, closed the conduits of the nerues, so that the animall spirit is in such sort inclosed, that the part hath no feeling. Those which hath no feeling are altogether incurable, but such as haue any feeling, and being taken in the beginning, in some sort may be helped, those which come to suppuration degendereth easily into Schir.

Cure.

Gal. 2. ad glau.

Gal. 1. ap. citat.

Gal. li. tumor  
contra natu.  
1. ap. 6.

The Cure consisteth in three things; first, in dyet tending to heate and humiditie, euer abstaining from anger, sadnesse, feare, and venereal exercise: The second point doth consist in euacuating the matter antecedent, by purgations, bleeding, prouocation of the moneths, and Hemorrhoides: the third point, is to euacuate that which is contained in the place, which must be done by thinges remollients and resolvents, like as Goose-grease, Hens, Cockes: Also Gumme armoniacke, *Stirax*, *Galbanum*, rootes of *Althea*, *Lillies*, *Camomell*, with oyle of *Camomell*, and *Lillies*; of those you may make lineaments and cataplasmes: also the emplaster of *Diachilon magnum, album, de vigo*. With double *Hercurie*. Galen doth much commend Goats dirt to dicusse tumors scirrhus. Sometime it happeneth in the tendons, and then we vse perfumes thus made. Take the stone called *Pyritis*, or any other stone being red hote, and quench it in strong *vinegar* or *aquauite*, thereafter receiue the smoke on the sore part, then apply remollient remedies: sometime after the perfume, the gumme armoniacke dissolved in *vinegar*, is good being vsed with good discretion. Those tumors if they augment much with vehement dolour, as often happeneth, I vse to apply a cataplasme of *Ryce* sodden in milke, with *floure*, *Beanes*, *Barly*, and a little *Harts grease*, by the vse whereof I haue found great helpe. If this tumor tend to suppuration, you must vse no hote remedies to moue it much,



much, by reason it degendereth easily into Cancer, for reme-  
die whereof haue recourse to the next chap. In some parts *Ga'.lib.2.ad*  
it may be cut, providing that all be cut and nothing left adhe- *glanc.*  
rent to the whole parts, neither any portion of the roote. For  
the great fluxe of blood which sometime happeneth, you must  
either knit the vaines or stay it by actuall Cauters; if it doe  
not penetrate to the internall parts: but if it doth penetrate  
it is dangerous, as saith Hippocrates; for the which he for- *Hip.6.apb.cap.*  
biddeth to seeke the exquisite cure of the hidden Cancer. *38.*

CHAP. XVI.

¶ Of Cancer, which the Greekes cal-  
led Carcinoma.

**A**lthough that Cancer bee comprehended vnder the  
schirrous humors, yet there is great difference: for *Pa.li.4.cap.24*  
Cancer is a hard tumor, round, vnequall, with dolour, punc- *Denifinition.*  
tion and pulsation: it groweth sooner than Schir, and hath  
great vaines about it, tumified and swelled, full of melan- *Celf.li.5.ca.28*  
cholicke blood, and doth resist being prest vpon. It is some-  
time taken for the soze of a beast, and is called Cancer, be-  
cause it sticketh fast to the part as doth the Crabbe-fish to  
that which it taketh hold on; as also the vaines which are a-  
bout are like vnto Crabs feet. It is of colour liuide or blacke, *Aetius.li.16.*  
hard, and rough, eating, gnawing, and going, like vnto the *cap.44.*  
Crabbe-fish. There are two kinds of it, the vlcerate and *Difference.*  
vnlcerate. The vnlcerate, is called the hidden Cancer.  
The vlcerate, is immobill, hote by accident, through the acri-  
monie of terrestrious humor.

The Cause of it is a drie melancholicke humor, not onely  
in the part as Schir, but also in the vaines about it, the which  
in time becommeth sharpe and maligne, and so becommeth

Cause.



*Gal. 2. ad glan.* ulcerate : also euill dyet, and vsing of thinges which breed  
*Paul. ii. & loco citato.* thicke corrupt blood, with such other causes, as you haue  
 heard in the chap. precedent. Also the debility of the milt and  
 parts which it doth possesse, being destitute for the most part  
 of naturall heate, and cold of themselves, as in the paps and  
 other glandulous parts, as vnder the armes, in the nose,  
 eares, rofe of the mouth, conduits of women, and funda-  
 ment, fete and hands.

Signes.

*Gal. tumor  
 contra natu.*

The sore is e-  
 uill sauoured.

Iudgements.

*Gal. lib. 3. met.  
 cap. 16.*

It hath diuers  
 denominatiōs

Cure.

The Signes are dolour, vntion, pulsation, chiefly in the  
 night, betwixt nine and foure in the morning: in which time  
 I haue seene the sicke so grieuously tormented with such in-  
 tollerable paine, that it was hard to be endured. The sore is  
 loathsome to be looked on, pale, sandy or ashy coloured, euill  
 sauoured, by reason of the humor which is most filthy, so-  
 dide, and stinking. It seemeth soft to looke vnto, but in tou-  
 ching of it, it is hard, vnequall, and cauernues, or hollowe:  
 the lippes and borders are tumified and turned ouer, euer a-  
 voiding a virulent matter, like vnto the thinne dregges of  
 Claret wine.

The Iudgements, those in the stomake, paps, head, shoul-  
 ders, necke, and vnder the armes, be all incurable; by rea-  
 son, those parts may not be cut for the great flux of blood that  
 may easily ensue of the great vaines and artiers. Of those,  
 some are little ulcered, others much; some recent, and some  
 inueterate; in diuers parts, some are more malignant than  
 others, and for the most part are all incurable. It hath di-  
 uers denominations according to the parts it doth occupy. If  
 it happen in the face, it is called by Vallesius *Eresipelas in fa-  
 cie* or *noli metangere*. If in the legges or thighs, it is called  
*Lupus*: and if in any other part it is called Cancer.

The Cure shall first be in purging of the humor, rectify-  
 ing, and drawing of blood, prouoking of the Hemorrhoides  
 and monethly courses, if age permit, as also by staying the  
 melancholicke humor from falling or settling on the part, vs-  
 ing moderate exercise, specially before meat, sleepe onely sea-  
 ven or eight houres, euer holding the belly loose, with vsing  
 of



of good dyet, which must be cold and humide, like as broth *Ælius 16, &*  
of cooling and loosing hearbes. Abstaine from long fasting, *45.*  
and all thinges which ingender the melancholicke humoꝝ,  
as is amply set downe by Galen: and all such thinges as doe *Gal. lib. 3. loco*  
heate the blood, like as salt flesh, old Hares, Venison, Harts, *aff. &.*  
Goates, Vinegar, spices, cheese, mustard, fish, and sundry  
others of like quality; from great trauaile, sadnesse, anger,  
melancholie, vsing onely one kind of meat, vsing alwayes  
from the table with appetite to eat more, vse euer such meats  
as breedeth good nourishment and blood, like as Gutton,  
Meale, Capons, and other sort of fowles, except water  
fowles drinke Tysan, Whey, a little Ale or white Wine;  
that is old, mixed with Teriacke and Mitridacke: also decoc- *Adamus Loni-*  
tion of Schine is good. As for topicall remedies, and if it be *ce. de con. 2. ale.*  
in fit places, some do counsaile to cut it in such sort that there  
remaine no roote noꝝ portion thereof: if so be, it must be taken *Gal. 2. ad glan.*  
in time before the vaines bee filled with that humoꝝ, other- *cap. 12.*  
wise it will bee residue, as I haue often remarked, for the  
which I will giue you two examples. In Paris a gentle  
woman named Madame Butrow in the yēere of our Lord  
God 1591. who had a Canker in her thombe, for the which  
I made amputation in presence of Master Marescot. and  
Martin doctors of Physicke, with Leifort, and Peter Doc- *Historie of*  
tors of Chyrurgerie, I stayed the fluxe of blood and cured the *Carcinoma-*  
wound sone thereafter, which being closed, within 8. weekes *tous tumors.*  
after it brake out in the pleye of her arme, and vnder her axer  
with such malignity and intollerable paine, that notwithstanding  
of all remedies aswell generals as particulars shee dyed  
within ten weekes after. In like manner I had a Gentle-  
man in Glascoe vnder my cure, in the yēere of God 1603.  
called James Campbell, who had a Canker in the pleye of his *Historie of*  
arme, which was caused partly by the application of cold ve- *Carcinoma-*  
nomous remedies, by the which it did grow in short space to *tous tumors.*  
such bignes and corosion, through the acrimenie of that hu-  
moꝝ, that it did both corode vaines and artiers, with great  
fluxe of blood and other dangerous symptomes, for the which



par. li. 4. ca. 26

Milke of an  
Asse applyed  
to the sore.  
Vrine of a  
maide.

Goats dunge  
killed the can-  
ker.

Water of Car-  
dus Benedi-  
ctus

I did cut off the arme w<sup>th</sup> in thre inches to the head of the Brachium, and did cure the wound perfectly. But in short time after, it brake out vnder his arme and in his pappe w<sup>th</sup> such intollerable paine, that he liued scarce thre moneths after. These two examples I thought good to set downe, that the yong Chyrurgion be not ouer-rash in promising, before he try the nature of the disease, and the part where it is: as likewise, that all men should eschew the handes of abusers, which most commonly in all diseases doe applye colde venomous things, as was done to this Gentleman: in such cases I haue euer vsed medicaments, refrigeratiues, desiccatiues, & pacifiers of pain, w<sup>th</sup> such other things, as haue y<sup>e</sup> vertue to let the augmenting of the disease, such as the iuice of Rorall, Jusqueam, Plantane, Lettice, Endiue, Sorrell, Centory, Shepheards purse, wet a cloth in those iuices and lay on the sore. Asses milke may be likewise vsed, as also to be drunke by the sicke. I haue oftentimes vsed in this, only the vrin of a yong maide-child of 5 or 6 yeers old, wet a cloth therin and apply warme to the sore as the former, by this remedy I preserued a Nun, who had a Canker in her pap the space of 10 yeers. Petrus Hispanus doth counsaile in Cankers of the paps, to apply goats dunge w<sup>th</sup> hony, which he alleadged doth kill the Canker: also mans excrements burnt and put in powder, and applyed, doth the like. Diuers other remedies may be vsed for this purpose made of oyle of Roses, Vergie, Seruse burnt Lead, Litharge, Pompholigos, Tuthia, Thuris, Mastick, Camphier emplaster Diapalma, or Diapopholigos, certaine of those mired together, beaten in a mortar of lead, and apply to the sore, doth preserue the same in one estate, also correcteth y<sup>e</sup> acrimony of the humors, the sore were so much the better if it were sometime washed w<sup>th</sup> water of Cardus Benedictus. If you find that those remedies let not the augmenting of it, you must haue recourse to the Chap. of Cankers and Ulcers, in the Booke of Ulcers; and so I end this Booke of Tumors in generall.





# THE FIFT BOOKE,

*Of Tumors in particular.*

*Which containeth LXXV. Chapters, whose  
Contents be these ; By PETER LOVVE  
Scott shman.*

*Chap.*

- 1 Of the excellency of the head.
- 2 Of the falling of the haire of the head.
- 3 Of taking away of haire of any part,
- 4 Of Lice, Morpions, and Nyts.
- 5 Of *Psyracia*, and *Exenthemata*.
- 6 Of *Tinea* or *Achoris*.
- 7 Of *Hydrocephale*, and *Physocephale*.
- 8 Of *Nodus*, and *Gangleon*.
- 9 Of the excellency of the Eye.
- 10 Of the composition of the eye.
- 11 Of certaine maladies of the eye.
- 12 Of a regiment for the sight.
- 13 Of *Lippitudo*, and *Ophthalmia*.
- 14 Of the weeping eye.
- 15 Of the Fistule in the corner of the eye.
- 16 Of *Hordelion* or *Pisthia*.
- 17 Of the haire of the eye-brees.
- 18 Of *Midriacis*, or *Dilatatio pupille*.
- 19 Of *Suffusio*, or *Cataracta*.
- 20 Of the cure of *Cataracta*.
- 21 Of the dolour in the eares.



Chap.

- 22 Of tumors in the eares.
- 23 Of Vlcers in the eares.
- 24 Of the tumors behind the eares called parotides.
- 25 Of the tumors in the nose called *Sarcoma*, *Polypus*, &
- 26 Of the fluxe of blood at the nose. (Ofena.)
- 27 Of the lips and their diseases.
- 28 Of the Hear-shaw or clouen lippe.
- 29 Of the mouth, tooth, and toothache.
- 30 Of the corrupt and hollow tooth.
- 31 To helpe the mouldy blacke euill sauoured tooth.
- 32 Of the superfluous flesh at the roote of the teeth.
- 33 Of the pustules and vlcers in the mouth.
- 34 Of the diseases in the tongue.
- 35 Of the tumor vnder the tong called *Ranunculos*.
- 36 Of the relaxation of the *Vuia*.
- 37 Of the tumor of the *Amigdales*.
- 38 Of the tumor in the throat called *Scmans*.
- 39 Of the tumor called *Scrophule* or *Struma*.
- 40 Of the tumor in the crage called *Bruncocele*.
- 41 Of the tumor called *Aneufisma*.
- 42 Of the tumor in the paps,
- 43 Of the tumor called *Plurisie*.
- 44 Of the tumor in the nauell called *Exumphalon*.
- 45 Of the tumor in the belly called *Hydropsie*.
- 46 Of the fistule in the fundament.
- 47 Of *Thymus* in the fundament.
- 48 Of *Condoloma* in the fundament.
- 49 Of the tumor called *Hemorrhoides*.
- 50 Of the falling of the intestin called *Exitus longanonus*.
- 51 Of the Periton, Piplon, and intestins.
- 52 Of the spermaticke vessels.
- 53 Of the tumor in the Cods,
- 54 Of *Hernies* in generall.
- 55 Of the tumor vnguinall called *Bubonoccele*.
- 56 Of the hernie intestinall.
- 57 Of the hernie or ruptour called *Epiploccele*.
- 58 Of the watry hernie called *Hernia aquosa*.



Chap.

- 59 Of the windy hernie called *Physocoele*.
- 60 Of the hernie called *Hernia carnosa*.
- 61 Of the hernie called *Hernia varicosa*.
- 62 Of the hernia humerall.
- 63 Of the bladder and diseases which happen in it.
- 64 Of the wand or yard and certaine diseases incident
- 65 Of certaine other diseases of the yard. (to it.
- 66 Of the tumor in the liske called *Bubo*.
- 67 Of the tumor or paine in the hippe called *Siatica*.
- 68 Of the tumor or paine in the knees.
- 69 Of the tumor in the legges called *Varicus*.
- 70 Of the paine in the legs called *Dracunculns*.
- 71 Of the tumor called *Elephantiasis particularis*.
- 72 Of the tumor in the fingers called *Pannaris*.
- 73 Of warts in the hands.
- 74 Of the mulls in the heeles.
- 75 Of the cornes in the feet, or toes.

CHAP. I.

¶ Of the excellency of the head.



Having briefly shewed in the former books of those tumors which generally did proceed of the foure humors, with their definition, Cause, Signes, and Cure : so now I am mindfull to entreate more particularly of tumors, and certaine other affections per-

taining to Chyrurgerie, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, beginning first at the head, and some severall parts thereof in particular, so descending to the fingers and toes. The head is esteemed by the consent of the most learned, to haue the first place in respect of the worthines thereof : for amongst all the members of man saith the Philosopher, the head hath the first and principall place, for the high and mighty things in it contained.

The head  
hath the first  
place, & why.

*Isido-*



Herophilus.  
Zenocrates.  
Erasistratus.  
Strato.  
Herodotus.  
Blemor.  
Cyreneus

Aristotle.

Hermes.

In the head is  
the first prin-  
cipall of all ac-  
tions

In it is 200.  
maladies.

*Isidorus* saith, it is called *Caput*, a *capere*, for all the mem-  
bers do take and borrow from it, being the wel-spring or seat  
of wit, memory, the five externall senses, to wit, Seeing,  
Hearing, Tasting, Feeling, and Smelling. A tower in it is  
contained the life or soule of man, which is thought by Hero-  
philus the Philosopher, to be placed in the lower part of the  
braines: and Zenocrates in the height of the head. Eras-  
tratus in the two membraines, which the Arabians call Me-  
res Strato, betwixt the eyes. Herodotus in the eares. Ble-  
mor the Arabike, and Cyreneus the mediciner, in the eyes,  
by reason that all the passions of the life, is there remarked,  
as in a mirrour. Some of the Philosophers be of other opi-  
nions, like as Aristotle that great interpretour of nature,  
who thought the heart to be the seat of life, or soule, becaule  
it is the seat and wel-spring of all the naturall heate, which  
first liueth, and last dyeth, and is the onely storehouse of the  
vitall spirits, beginner of the vaines and artiers, chiefe au-  
thour of respiration, and diuers more proprieties alleaged by  
the authour. Yet because that diuers Philosophers are of di-  
uers opinions concerning this matter, I will not heare exa-  
mine them all particularly, but onely shall be contented with  
the opinion of the most learned, who affirme this *Animus* to  
haue the seate onely in the head and braines, in which parts  
doth shine the most noble effects: all the organs of mouing,  
feeling, memory, imagination, discretion, reason, and diuers  
more are found there: so that we may iustly thinke, like as  
the heauens are the first principall, whereupon depend all  
the generations, and alterations elementaries: euen so in the  
head is the first principal of all the actions and motions of our  
body. Yet notwithstanding, of the worthines therof and all  
those benefits in it contained, it is subiect to many grievous  
diseases, but for the present I am not minded to make an ex-  
act description of them all, the enterprize were too great, for at  
least it behoued me to write 200. seuerall chap. for in it is  
contained so many seuerall maladies. I will onely for the  
present, set downe briefly certaine of those which are most  
common



common in their countries and that with their severall remedies, by severall chapters; beginning first at the haire of the head.

## CHAP. II.

¶ Of the falling of the haire, called by the Latines *Alopecia*.

**A**lopecia, is a falling of the haire of the head, chinne, and browes, leaving the parts void, sometime with ulcers: to this disease the For is much subiect called Alopec, for the which it taketh the name Alopecia. The Cause is divers, as in the defect of the aliment, humors, or vapour fuliginous, whereof the haire is gendered and entertained as happeneth to old people: also by some corruption which doth cut away the vapours, or aliment whereof the haire should be nourished and ingendered, like as happeneth in rotten fevers, French pox, and leprosie. Also by corruption of the whole humors of the body, or by the vice of the pores, being either closed too much, or over loose. Also by vestiges of old blcers and siccatrices of woundes, as sayth Avicen: also by burning and applying of hote drying salues.

Definition.

Cause.

Cels li. 6. ca. 1.

Gal. 14 therap.

The Signes, are when we see the haire fall without cause manifest, and little blcers at the roote thereof, without scales or other superfluity, it is called Alopecia, and is of divers colours according to the humors infected: as if it proceed of the blood, the colour will be red: if of cholles, the colour will be yellow: if of phlegmon, white: if of melancholie, blacke or leady coloured.

Signes.

The colour thereof according to the humor.

Gord. part. 11.

The Judgements, such as are naturally bold, old people, Eunuchs, and such as lack beards, thisicks, and parts where siccatrices of woundes and blcers have bene, and places being

Judgements.



- ing rough, rugged, and groweth not redde, bee all incurable. But if the falling of the haire come accidentally by the euill disposition of the part or otherwise, and not inueterated but recent, it may be helped : but if it hath bene of long continuance, either it is impossible or very difficile. The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies, as purgations according to the humors which offends, hauing a speciall regard of the head and bleeding if cause require, as at length is set downe by the learned Gordomus. The particular remedies shall be first to raise the head, chiefly the empty places, and rub much with rough clothes, vsing such things as hath the vertue to draw vertue to the part ; next make a laiment of the leaues of the vine, and oake tree, doves dunge burnt, woodbine, *Capilli veneris*, Colwort, and Mercurie, seeth all in water, and make a decoction to wash the head often with all : next ye shall vse lineaments, as counsaileth Galen of oyle of *Lauren*, *Petrull*, *Walnuts*, *Aspicke*, and *Abrotanum*, also Boares grease, ffores dunge, or vipers. Gerardus for this purpose counsaileth, to take Barlye bread and salt burnt together, and mixed with Boares grease or hony, and annoint the empty part, or this, approued by *Iohannes Baptista porta*, take Bees & burne with theyr dirt and mixe with Rose oyle, and anoynt the part, which will cause the haire to grow : or this set downe by Nostredamus, take Bees and dry them in an ouen or otherwise, till you may reduce them to powder, then mixe that powder with hony or Swans bloud and annoynt the part. Dioscorides counsaileth for this purpose to take Euphorb and mixe with oyle. Iohanne Lebot counsaileth to distill the excrements of a red haired man and anoynt the part, for this purpose the distilled water of hony is very good : the composition whereof ye will find in my booke of the Spanish or French sicknes : but forasmuch that oftentimes the haire being growen on empty parts doth become white. For the helpe whereof Nostredamus approueth greatly diuers times to anoint the void parts with the milke of a bitch which impasseth it to grow white.



*CHAP. III.*

To take away haire in any part, and impasse  
the growing of the same againe.

**L**ike as want of haire in places where it ought to grow,  
as well for health as ornament of our bodies, it is also  
vnseemly and euill fauoured that haire should grow in places  
vnaccustomed, it maketh great deformity, and is sometimes  
painfull, specially in the inner side of the eye-lids. To take  
away this deformity, there is sundry remedies set downe by  
Galen and diuers others, of the which some are dangerous,  
like as Arsenicke, Dypmunt, vnlaked Lyme, Graueling,  
Vitrell, Coprice, burnt brasse, and diuers others of such  
nature, they not being applyed in little quantity, with other  
dregs to corrupt their virulency, as for example, I haue vsed  
this, take three whites of egges, vnquenched lyme 3. vnc.  
Dypmunt halfe an vnc. common licie a little, mixe all to-  
gether, and let it be of consistance of a soft vnguent, annoynt  
the part, and let it remaine halfe an houre, or in the tender  
parts a quarter of an houre, then wash it awaye with hote  
water: if the haire fall not away at the first, annoynt it a lit-  
tle againe and wash it as before, then to refresh the part an-  
noynt it with oyle of Roses or Walnuts: and other reme-  
dies which I learned of a country man, which I haue often  
vsed, take Cats dirt well dreyed and put in powder, mixed  
with strong vinegar, and rub the part with it, and the haire  
will shortly fall away. Dioscorides counsaileth, first to draw  
the haire by the roote, then take the iuice of fumentary, and  
mixe with a little gumme of Arabicke and apply on the part:  
it doth also impasse the growing of the haire, or this remedie,  
take halfe a pound of vnquenched lyme, stipped in common  
licie, or mans vrine, adding thereto halfe an vnc. of Dyp-  
munt, seeth all to a thinne consistance like vnguent: or this  
set

Vnseemly  
haire to grow  
where it  
should not.

Galen.

Rando. tract.  
de fucis.

Alexis Pedro-  
mantanus.



*Gord. part. II.* set downe by Gordonius, take vnslacked lyme and Dyp-  
 munth, seeth them in water till such time that by putting a  
 Goose quill in it, the feathers fall away : if in seething, it grow-  
 weth ouer thicke, adde to it a little vaine, and annoynt the  
 part, thereafter wash the place with warme water, then an-  
 noynt it with oyle of Walnuts and Rose.

( *HAP. II II.* )

¶ Of Lice, Morpions, and Nyts, which of-  
 ten doe vse the skin and roots of the haire.

Definition.

The first kind  
 Lice & why  
 so called.

The second  
 kind Morpi-  
 ons.

The third  
 kind Nyts, &  
 where they  
 remaine.

**T**hese three sorts of vermin vegetable called *Ptheriasis*,  
 or by the Latines *Pediculi*, are ingendered in any part of  
 the body, chiefly in the hote and humide, as the head, priue  
 parts, and the armes, by reason of the great quantity of haire  
 and excrements in those parts. The first of those kinds is  
 called by the generall name *Pediculi* or Lice, because they  
 haue many feete, are greater than the others and groweth  
 chiefly in the head, from the which they disperse through the  
 whole body. The Morpions, called by the Latines *Pessola-*  
*ta*, or *Pedicolata*, are found chiefly about the priue parts, and  
 vnder the armes are not to be seene, but where there is haire:  
 they wagge not nor trauaile as the Lice, but doe sticke fast  
 to the skinne, and are taken away with difficulty: they co-  
 rode the skin, and is called by Aristotle *Ferum animal*. The  
 Nyts, called by the Latines *Lendes*, are least of all, and are  
 either found in the head at the rootes of the haire, or vnder the  
 skinne, prouoking great itching in the parts. Those three  
 sorts of vermin doe greatly molest the body, but chiefly the  
 Lice. Of them ensue a grieuous disease, called by the La-  
 tines *Morbus pedicularis*, they issue out at all parts of the bo-  
 dy, & ought not to be neglected, by reason that both holy and  
 prophane



prophane histories maketh mention, that diuers being infected therewith, end their daies miserable: Like as Herod Heord. King of Iudea after he had reigned 37. yeeres, dyed miserable of vermine. Likewise Sylla Dictator of Rome, a Sylla Dictator. great Captaine (in Anno) for the Romanes: he was a man very insatiable, and dyed likewise of vermine. Pherisides Pherisides. the famous Philosopher and writer of Tragedies, after he had long liued ended his dayes of the lousie sickness: there be sundry others which were long to repeat.

The Cause interne of those three sorts of vermin, is great Cause. corruption of the grosse humors, which nature cannot altogether digest, but sends to the pores and meates of the true skinne, and there remaineth untill they take life. Of their generation and life taking, I leaue it to the learned Physicians. They may be ingendered of any of the foure humors, as Gord. part. 11. saith Gordenius, and are nourished of the iuice of the liuing flesh: For the which Aristotle doth say, that this Animall Arist. 5. de hist. animal. hath the residence in liuing creatures, and leaueth them so soone as they be dead and destitute of life. They are as I haue said for the most part ingendered of a corrupt humor, as we doe perceiue in the lousie sickness: for then they come forth at the pores of the skinne in such frequency and greatness, that the pores are open; after the same forme we see the out-comming of drops of sweat. The Nyts are ingendered The Nyts are ingendered of the egges of Lyce. of the egges of the Lice, as sayth Aristotle. The Norpions are ingendered of a more dry hard humor, halfe burnt; so they are more flat and not so tumified as the lice.

There is yet a fourth kind called Chyrons, they likewise The fourth kind is called Chyrons. take life and corrodes betwixt the flesh and the skinne, and are ingendered of a more drie matter than the other, and are chiefly found in the hands of idle people: the cause externall of those animous, is euill regiment of eating and drinking, of such as ingendereth rotten humors, surfeiting of fruits, figges, nastinesse, idlenes, and seldome change of cloathes, as I haue oftentimes remarked in armies and camps, men of good temperature and dyet vered with vermine, negligence



*Arist. 5. hysto.  
animali. 31.*

in combing of the head is a great cause. Aristotle sayth, that lyce grow in great quantities, by the much vsage of waters: for it ingendereth crudities, randers the braines and other parts moze humide, young children are much subiect, by reason they haue the braines humide. Aristotle sayth, that women are moze subiect than men, and children moze than those of elder age, and those children who hath their haire full of lice, are lesse subiect to the dolour of the head or epilepsie.

Signes.  
Iudgements.

The Signes are euident to sight in those parts. The prognostickes, if they doe multiply in great numbers by an internal cause; it signifieth either Morpha or leprosie to ensue, by reason the naturall heat is diminished, and cannot digest that euill mater as it ought.

Cure.

The Cure is, first to euacuate the body of blood pituit, and other corrupt humors whereof the vermin is ingendered, which shall be done with pillowes of *Agaricke*, *Hirapitra*, *Galen*, *Diachatholicon*, *Diaphenicon*; vse decoctions inwardly of *Garlike* and *Calamint* as counsaileth *Auicenn*. Secondly, in keeping of good regiment of life, abstaining from

Change often  
cleane clothes

such things as ingendereth filthy corrupt humors: vse things of good digestion, and that ingenderth good iuice, and change often cleane clothes. Thirdly, vse the things that hath the vertue to dry and cleanse, as baths made of decoction of *Calamint*, *Cyprus*, *Herba pedicularis*, called *Staphysagna* alume and salt, wash the whole body and head therewith, or the head onely: if it be alone infected, then vse this vnguent; take 3. vnc. of oyle, *Ulaire* 5 vnc. *Hydrargiron* well extinguished 1 vnc. oyle of bitter almonds halfe an vnc. mire all in a mortar and annoynt the head and other parts, saue the suters of the head, or this *Rec. Sem. Staffisagriae vnc. 2. bellori albi. vnc. 1. salis 2. dragm. argenti vini vnc. 2. axungei porcini. lib. 1. olei laurini vnc. 9. saponis veneti lib. semiss. fiat vnguentum*, and annoynt the parts: also the hearbe *Staffisagria* put in powder and strewe the head therewith, or wash it with the simple decoction thereof: I find it one of the best and easiell remedies for this purpose. *Paulus* doth counsaile

*Pauli 4. cap. 3.*

*Arnold. lib. 1.  
cap. 19.*

*Gord. part. 11.*

*Paul. lib 3.*

onely



enely to annoynt the part with oyle and stronger vinegar. I use with it a little Aloes, and find it good. *Gordonius saith, Gordonius.* that the pouder of the hearbe *Staphisagria* destroyeth not only vermine on men, but giuen to fowles stayeth the vermine in them. *Lebot counsaileth this, take two ounces of the seed of Staphisagria, Orpin. ount halfe an ounce, oyle of bitter Almonds 4. ounces, vinegar and waxe as much as will make it a good consistant of vnguent : or this, which may be used for young children, take Laurell oyle, and that of Rapherts 2 ounces of each, Pepper and Saffron in pouder, of each one a scrupl. make an vnguent thereof. Here you must remember, that those medicaments which haue the vertue against Lyce ; it is also good for Cartaines and Pyts, yet for the cartaines I haue often used this, take halfe an ounce of butter well washed in Rose or Calaminth water, quicke-siluer well extinguished 2. drammes, Aloes 1. draine, make an vnguent and annoynt the part.*

*Lebot lib. I r. of ornament.*

The Chyrons which come in the hands or other parts, are cured by washing of those parts with salt water, or water wherein salt fish hath bene sodden, or rubbe them with the iuice of Hedder or Henbane, or strong vinegar mixed with a little Aloes. If you would know more diuersity of remedies for the vermine, take aduise with *Viccarus, Petrus Hispanus, Vigo, Alexis, and Lebot.* There is of those Chyrons or little Lyce found in the membaine coniunctiue or white of the eye, which maketh great paine and itching, for the which you must very cunningly with a stable hand and a siluer needle, such as we abate the cataract with, picke them out one by one, then wash the eye with Rose and Cusfrage water.

*Chyrons in the membaine of the eye.*



## CHAP. V.

¶ Of the disease of the head called *Psyracia* and *Exanthemata*.

Definition.

*Adamus Lonic-  
erius de cons.  
valetud.*

**T**hose little pustules or Aposthumes which possesse the outward skinne of the head and rootes of the haire, are like vnto the biting of fleas, or as if one were burnt with hote water, and are of diuers colours; sometime white, otherwhiles red and flat, otherwhiles high swelled, pointed, and dolorous, auoiding a corrupt matter, especially being prest vpon, they are sometimes vlcerated.

Cause.

The Cause proceedeth of ouer great aboundance of grosse, corrupt, filthie, and vicious humors of the body, the which being conuerted in vapours, is sent to the head, the which nature expelleth to the externall parts thereof.

Signes.

The Signes are euident, and may easily be discerned from those which do proceed of a malign infectious humor, as those of the pox, which are euill & more in number, redder and atry, more broad, auoyding a matter virulent, of the which I shall speake in their owne places.

Cure.

*Galien. de sa. it.*

The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies, as purgations, pilloties to purge the head, made of Aloes, Colocynth, and such like, vse fumes to prouoke the head to sweat: The particular remedies are of diuers things, and diuersly composed, according to the nature of the humor & pustules, which is sometime hote, otherwhiles cold. The simples whereof we make our compounds for these pustules, be these, take the leaues of Ruts and Cyprus, Lytharge, Ceruse, Acatia, Galla, Sulphure, Myraboll, Nutmegs, Pistrum, oyle of Rose, Vinegar, Water, Wine, Mare, iuyce of Malloes, Barly flower, pimpermell little rootes. Paulus counsaileth for these pustules to take Kuthe, Hony, and Allom, braye all well together and annoynt the part being  
first

*Paul. 3. ca. 3.*



first raised. For the same purpose, take Lytharge of both  
sorts, Ceruse, of each halfe an ounce, quicke bymestone two  
drammes, beat all well and mixe with a little swines grease,  
and make a lineament. Viaticus approueth much bitter Al-  
monds well washed with waime water, beate them while  
they come to the consistance of an vnguent, and anoynt the  
part; bitter Almonds also bruised with little rotes and in-  
cense, and boyled in vinegar, water, or wine, and apply on  
the sores. If the pustules or little vlcers agree not with those  
remedies, but be rebellious and vneasie to be cured, in that  
case we touch them with the water of Sublimy. If they be  
not much inflamed, you may touch them softly with water  
of separation vsed by the Gold-Smiths. If you thinke these  
waters ouer-strong, mix with them a little Plantine or Rose  
water: or this, take 4. ounces of Rose water, 2. ounces of  
Squauite, 1 dramme of Sublime, let all seeth in a vessell of  
glasse, till the sublimie be consumed; and so follow out the  
rest of the cure, as you haue heard in Eresipelas.

Viaticus.

Touch them  
with water of  
separation.

## Chap. VI. Of Tinea.

**T**inea or Achoris is a malady of the skinne and muscles  
of the head accompanied with scabs, scurffs, scalles, vlc-  
cers, and falling of the haire, easie coloured, fetide, vnplea-  
sant, horrible to the sight, of the which there are five kinds,  
as sayth Guydo: yet Galen doth onely allow three kinds,  
and I am mindfull here to speake of two which are most  
common: the one is humide and vlcerateth, the other with a  
drie scabbe full of scalles: of these two, the one is easie to  
heale and familiar to young children, possessing for the most  
part the head and face: the other is worse accompanied with  
malignity, insident to people of elder age.

Definition.  
Haly Abbas  
serm. 8. part. 1.  
doct. 2.  
Guido.  
Galen.

Pau. li. 3. ca. 3.

The Cause of that which happeneth to young children, is  
the impuritie of maternall bloud, they were nourished with-

Cause.



in the mothers wombe, or by the father, mother, or nurse, who had y<sup>e</sup> disease for y<sup>e</sup> time. The cause of those in elder age, proceed of euill regiment of life, a corrupt salt pituit or mixture of a corrupt, grosse, bilious, melancholicke humo<sup>r</sup>, or by haunting such as be infected, for it is contagious.

Signes.

The Signes you haue heard in the description, besides that sometime it is virulent, sanious, corrodng the skinne full of little holes, like those which the mothes make in cloth, and is called by the Latines *Ulceris capitis manantia*. Sometime it is drie, accompanied with grosse thicke scabbes, by reason of the vehemency of the corruption and adustion of the humo<sup>r</sup>.

Iudgements.

The Iudgements, in young ones it is easie to heale, and such strong remedies ought not to be vsed as to those of elder age : this, with all other scabbes of the head and face that happeneth to young children, with that purulent rotten humo<sup>r</sup> which issueth at the eares, doth deliuer them from Epilepsie, and diuers other great maladies, so better oftentimes to haue patience and let nature worke, than to be ouer curious in the cure.

The Iudgements of the elder people, if it bee recent it is somewhat difficile to cure, and is called *Tinea quasi tediosa et fortiter tenens*, and being inueterate it must haue a long time great trauaile, very difficill to helpe, and almost incurable: or if it cure, it leaueth the vestige and weakeneth the part with emptinesse of haire.

Cure.

Vnguent for  
Tinea.

Gord. part. 11.

The Cure in yong children shall be, first in prescribing a dyet to the nurse, which may bee done by the aduise of the skilfull Physitian, next vse this vnguent, take the iuice of Fumentary, with a little Centorie, Scabious, Anula Campana, of each 3 ounces, Lytharge 2 ounces, mixe them with 4 ounces of Swynes grease, oyle of walnuts, and make a sufficient quantity, and make an vnguent : or this which I haue oftentimes vsed, take Turpentine and wash in common water, thereafter in fumentarie water, fresh butter washed in rose water 2 ounces, salt halfe an ounce, two yolkes of



of egges, iuice of Lymons and oyle rose, of each 1. ounce, Camphier halfe a scrupl. of those you shall make an vnguent and anoynt the head. You shall find diuers other remedies for this purpose, set downe in my booke of the deliuerance of women, and diseases incident to yong children.

The cure of those in elder age and inueterate, first euacuate the humoꝝ which prouoketh the disease, next raise the head, euery weeke once wash it with a lixue made of sinders of the vine tree of Brauelen, in the which shall be sodden Cephalicke, hearbes, and some sope, and wash the head therewith, after the which vesicatories were good to be vsed.

The cure of elder people.

The common people vse only for this purpose strong vrine, which is not good: For as Galen saith, it is of a saltish quality; such as are skillfull in this cure, do first raise the head, and plucke out the haire by the roote, with a bonnet made onely of pitch. Lebot counsaileth to take flower of cleane rie halfe a pound steeped in vinegar, next take halfe a pound of pitch put in powder, melt all on a soaking fire, and worke all together, thereof make your bonet which not only pulls out the haire, but also the euill humoꝝ: that being done, you shall vse *unquentum anulatum cum duplici mercurio*, and annoynt the head, auoyding alwayes the suters and openings of the head, for the mercurie is hurtfull for the braines. Or you may vse this, approued by Ambrose Parrie; take *unquentū anulatum*, with double Mercurie, Egiptiacke, of each 3. vnc. Vitrioll Roman in powder, 1. drinne: incorporate all together, make an vnguent, and annoint the head.

Strong vrine is not good.

Paracelsus.

Petrus Hispanus counselleth to raise the haire and wash the head with strong vinegar and vrine, then take the roote of *Enula campana*, tender branches and leaues of the figge tree, bitter Almonds, bruiſe all with oile and strong vinegar, adde vnto it the ashes of the rootes of greene cole, Colwort, Lytharge, Hydargiron, Seruse, Salt, seeth and bruiſe all together and apply vnto the head.

Petrus Hispanus.

Gordonius doth approue for this purpose, if it be rebellious and inueterateth, as also for all other infections of the skinne,

Gord. part. xi.



Pouder for  
Tinea.

skinne, as leprosie, *malum mortuum*, *Morphea*, and such like, this vnguent, take the two Elebozs, quicke bymstone, Vitrioll, Allom, Put-galles, finders of Grauelie, of each one halfe an ounce, make all in a pouder: thereafter take the iuice of Bozage, Scabious, Fumitarie, and Paritary, of each 3 ounces, let all seeth with the grounds of strong vinegar and old wine, on a soaking fire, till the iuices be consumed, thereafter put vnto the pouder, with the decoction, with halfe an ounce of liquide pitch, make all one consistance of vnguent. Some vse for this purpose *unguetum marceatum*, *agrippa*, *aragon de alihea* adding to them the 12. part of *Hydragiron* and anoynt the head, saue onely the suters. The malady called *Fanous* or *Chyrion*, is little different from this either in Cause or Cure, except the holes are larger, and casteth a matter moze like vnto hony, for the which it taketh the name.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of Hydrocephale, and Physocephale.

Definition.  
*Albuc. l. b. 2.*  
*cap. 1.*

Difference.

Cause.

*Adamus Lonic.*  
*de confer. vale.*

**H**Ydrocephale, is a watry serous filthy blood, or humoz, which doth occupie the whole head or some part thereof, especially in yong children: and Physocephale is a windy humoz, which doth the like. These tumors are either contained betwixt the penitran and skinne, betwixt the muscles, betwixt the penitran and cran, or betwixt the cranium and members, which couer the brains called *dura* and *pya* matter but the tun or in that case is not so great.

The Cause is either externall, or internall. The internall, cometh from the matrice and by the mothers milke, which is too serous and watry, and such like foode as breed watry humors. The externall cause cometh of cold presently, after the birth, also through the vnskilfulness of midwives, as



I haue sometimes remarked, who did draine and presse the child's head so much, at the time and after y<sup>e</sup> deliuey, that the *Pa. li 6. cap. 3.* vaines and artiers did breake, not being as yet strong, so the *Ætius lib. 6. cap. 1.* bloud did shade and spread through the rest of the head, and so degendereth into water.

The Signes are great tumors with deformitie of the head, the eyes and face swelleth, as doth appeare in hydropticke. *Signes.*

The Judgements, are such as bee within the cran are incurable: those that are betwixt the cran and pericran, or between the pericran and muscles, may be cured but hardly. It groweth oftentimes to such greatnes that the child dyeth. *Judgements.*

As for the curation of such as are curable, they are partly healed by dyet, and vsing of drying thinges, abstaine from things humide, as you haue heard in Oedema. Also by external remedies applyed to the part, that hath any drying vertue, with some striction: also to comfort the head, which shall bee done by fomentations, lineaments, vnguents, and such like, made of Calaminth, Origan, Betonie Camomill, Belilot, Anthoes, and red Roses: also you may make lexiues of the ashes of the vine tree, thereafter shau the head, and applye this emplaster following. *Cure.*

*Rec. olibani unc. 1. sarcocolli dragm. 1. gummi arabici seminis raphali cō- anethi an. 1. unc. dimid. olei de spica parum. sera quantum sufficit fiat emplastrum.* *Emplaster for Hydrocephale.* Do this, take hony halfe a pound, Origan an handfull & halfe, cōmon salt halfe an ounce, mire all in forme of cataplasme and apply hote to the head: Do this, which I haue sometimes vled; take shell Snailles and bruiſe them shells and all, and apply them to the head in forme of a plaster, so let it remaine while it fall away of it selfe, for it doth mightily resolue: if by those meanes you profit not, the humoz being in great aboundance, you must make incision in diuers formes, according to the part and humoz therein contained, but in such sort that the humoz and water flowe not all at once, but by little and little; of ouer great euacuation sodainly done, great accidents, and sometime death ensueth, chiefly in yong children: so it shall be best you make your *Make the euacuation by degrees.*



Macrocephale, what.

euacuation by degrees, and cure the wound as you haue heard in Oedema. If the cran or membzaines are offender, ye must vse incision and perforation of the cran, then euacuate the humoꝝ and heale the wound, as in others. In the meane while purge the Spurle, vse good regiment, and such as hath the vertue to dry, purge the head and hold the belly loose. There is another kind of this called *Macrocephale*, which is a super-naturall greatnes of the pan, flesh, and muscleg, and not properly Tumor; it receaueth no curation, it is seldome seene one of this sort. I did see in Paris in the yeare of God 1583. to the greatnesse of a pot, which would containe 12. english points.

#### CHAP. VIII.

¶ Of the tumor called *Nodus* or *Gangleon*, which commeth in the head.

Definition.

*Cels. li. 7. ca. 6.*

**T**hose tumors which happen commonly in the head, are sometimes hard, otherwhiles soft, comonly round, & doe happē for the most part in dry neruous parts of the body, but chiefly on the head and ioynts, hands and feet, ridge backe, wrests of the feet and handes, other ioyntes, and parts empty of flesh.

Cause.

*Pa. 4. ca. ciii.*

The Cause, are strokes and wearinesse of the ioynts, vaines, and tendons, either by extention, contortion, stroke, or hurt; also by the humoꝝ which floweth to the part, and can neither digest nor turne to good substance as it ought, but degendereth in a cold grosse thicke humoꝝ, amongst the substance of the febzes and tendons, chiefly in the articles and such other parts, as you haue heard in *Atheorema*: as also the Signes.

The



The Cure consisteth first in good dyet, eschewing all meats which ingender grosse humors, vsing things of good digestion, and abstaine from drinking of water, purge, and bloud, haunt no humide places : as for the particular remedies, this humor is sometime inclosed in a membaine, and in that case proceed to the cure, as you haue heard in Atheorema. Sometime it is neither inclosed in a bag nor chest, and then we apply a thinne cake of lead, rubbed with quicke siluer, which hath great vertue to resolute, or an emplaster resolutiue made of *Galbannum ammoniacke*, oyle of Lillies and Bayes, Brimstone and Vitreoll, Roman calcined. Also the emplaster of Vigo, *Diachelimum magnum cum duplici mercurio* and apply it. Or this, *Rec. emplastri, occiderei, unc. 1. musilaginis, altheae, lini & Phenugraci sing. dragm. 6. Euphorb. sacap, ammoni, sing. dragm. 3. dissoluantur gummi in aceto, fiat emplastrum.* At the first it is good to rubbe it with fasting spittle while it growe red : if it be mobile and small cragged, it may be knit with threed or silke somewhat fast, drawing it faster euery day, so it cutteth the sooner but the better : if it be dipped in *aqua sublimata* and dryeth before the applying, so it will fall of it selfe.

Cure.

It is inclosed  
in a bagge.

Auicen.

Orib.li.7. §10.

Rub it with  
fasting spittle.

The rest of the cure is easie, by those meanes you may take away warts in any part : if it neither resolute nor open of it selfe, we open it with a launce or Cauter, produceth the fall of the Eschar, and consumeth the chest or bagge with *Egyptiacke*, powder of Mercury & such like, cleanse the wound, and cicatrize it.

In these sorts of tumors, diuers matter is oftentimes found, like as in Atheorema and Steotema : there is some of those tumors, that you would thinke them Carcinomatous. I remember once in Paris being called with the famous and learned mediciner D. Blackwood, to the reuerend father Iohn Beton Archbishop of Glasgow, who had one of those tumors on the ridge of his backe about the ferd or fift vertebrie, to the greatnes of a mans fist : it was extreame hard and dolorous, and so great at the roote that it could not be knit.

Doct. Black-  
wood,  
Archbishop  
of Glasgow.



Powder to  
correct the su-  
perfluous  
flesh.

I applyed all remedies to resoluē and mature, but nothing auailleth, so I was enforced to opē it with a Cauter, where I found in it contained a matter like cut stones, graine coales, but small quantity of liquide substance. I did euacuate the humoz with suppuratiues and deterliues, with grosse tents euery day applyed twice, with this remedie, Ierebinthin well washed in Aquauite, with a little honey of Koses mixed together: so cleansed the vlcer, consumed the bagge, correcteth superfluous flesh with powder of Allom and Mercurie, and ciccatrice the wound, and so the noble man recouereth his health, to his great contentment.

There are in the head tumors of the same nature, such as *testudo* and *calpa*, which sometime are without vlcer and corruption of the bone, and in that case are cured as the former, sometime they are with corruption of the bone *cranium*, and in that case the humoz must be euacuated and the exfoliation of the bone procured, as yē shall heare in the chap. of vlcers, with corruption of the bone: as for diuers other diseases of the head, haue your recourse to *Hernius*.

#### CHAP. IX.

Of the Eye, the proper instrument of the sight, and most noble of all the externall senses.

**A**mongst all the Senses, that of the sight hath been esteemed by the common consent of all the Philosophers, to be the most noble, perfect, and admirable: the excellencye whereof is shewed to vs many waies, like as by the diuersity of the objects which it represents, and by the operations which are spirituall: also by the particular object which is the



the sight, the which sight causeth vs to know more diuersity and difference of things, then any other sense : So Aristotle doth call it Sense, because by it all braue Sciences were inuented. It is composed with such excellency and good parts, that Plautin and Synecius doe call Nature a Magician, for hauing put in such a little part so many good graces. Orphe calleth them the mirrour of nature. Alexander the Peripateticke, calleth them the windowes of the soule, for by them is remarked all our passions, as loue, enuie, sadnesse, feare, hardnesse, pittie, reuenge, despaire, hope, health, sicknesse, life, and death. Blemor and Cyren mediciners, were of opinion that the soule was placed in the eye, for in them thou seest as in a mirrour all that is placed and hidde within them, and is giuen to guide and drawe vs to the knowledge of god in beholding his meruailous workes, as also to bee guiders to the whole body, and to contemplate high things, and are admonished of the place to which they ought to looke, according to that which Dauid saith, I lift mine eyes to thee that dwellest in the heauens. Vigo writeth, that the eyes of a dead virgin hath great vertue against enchantments and charmes. Hippocrates commaundeth vs, when we first visite the sicke, to cast our eye on the eye of the sicke, where shall be scene the strength or weaknesse of the animall faculties : if the eye be cleere and bright, there is good hope : if obscure and tenebrous, it doth prognosticate death. Likewise the excellency of it is known in the certitude of the actions, for no doubt it is the sense most assured, whereof commeth the olde prouerbe, that one witnesse which hath scene is better than ten which onely heard.

The Philosopher Thales saith, there is as much difference betwixt seeing and hearing, as betwixt truth and falshood. Anaxagoras esteemed so of that part, that he thought we were onely bozne to see. Galen Prince of phisicke, doth call it a diuine member, which nature hath placed in a hollow place, for which it is called by the Latines *Oculus* : it is so placed, that it should not be exposed to the hazard of a million of injuries.

Arist. Metaph.

Plautin.

Synecius.

Orphe.

Alex. peripat.

Blemor.

Cyren.

They are guiders to the whole body.

Psal. 123.

Thales.

Anaxagoras.

Galen.



injuries. They are fortified about with foure hard bones, for their better protection and decoration, as also to appeere more beautifull aboue them is the forehead, vnderneath the chaff-blade, on euery side the angles or corners with the eye lidds, called by the Latines *cilia a celare* to couer and guard the eye, as saith *Iodorus*. In case they should bee altered with ouer great light : they haue likewise muscles to giue voluntary mouement with sundry other parts, as you shall heare at length.

*Isto. li. 10. ca. 1*

Now seeing the excellency of the eye, is of so great importance and profit vnto vs, the skillfull Chyrurgion ought to take great care and diligence for the conseruation of the same, especially to know the temperature and composition of it : the nature of each part thereof, with their functions and offices, to what vse they serue : to the end hee may vse fit remedies for each party diseased, seeing it is holden for a *maxime* in medicine, that one cannot know what cometh contrary to nature in any part, except he will know first the nature of each part and things belonging thereto.

## CHAP. X.

### ¶ Of the description and Composition of the Eye.

**T**He eye which maketh man to see, is called of the Greeks *Ophthalmos* : it is placed in the highest part, to make vs contemplate high thinges and discern a farre off, also to serue for a watchman and guide that nothing hurt vs. It is of forme round or pyramidall in the inside, which forme is most capable and most easie to moue. It is of soft substance and double vsage, the one common to all creatures to guide them ; the other serueth onely for man, and maketh him

*Bartho. de proprietat. rerum.*



him to know God by visible things : they bee two in number, to the effect if one be toucht or hurt, the other may serue, as also maketh the sight more perfect to see diuers objects at once. The temperature is cold and weake ; it is very sensi-  
 ble, by reason of the great sympathy it hath with the braines : it is of sundry colours, which either proceedeth of the humors  
*Tunicke vna*, or of the spirits : it hath seauen muscles to make it moue and keepe firme. The most part of the Anatomists find onely six, which take their beginning at the circle *Orbita*, in the which the eye is placed ; the first, is scituated above the eye, to lift it straight vprward ; the second, is scituated beneath, and pulleth it down-ward ; the third, is scituated in the great corner of the eye, and turneth it towards the nose ; the fourth, is scituated in the little corner or canthus of the eye, and turneth it towards the eare or temple, and hauing accomplished their actions, pulleth it inward. The actions of the other two muscles which are obliques, is to turne the eye, not fully, but in halfe circle. The first, is scituated in the vpper part of the eye and the great corner, by a membaine, and draweth the eye towarde the nose ; the other is scituated vnderneath, and turneth the eye towards the eares. As concerning the tunicks or membaines of the eye, there is diuersity of opinions amongst the Anatomists. Hippocrates remarketh onely foure, Galen five, whose opinion Gulmio and Petrus Franco hath followed, and learnedly haue written of the eye. Some late Anatomists do make nine. Andreas de Loran, who is the most excellent Anatomist that hath written, doth remarke six. The vse of them is to inuolue and containe the thin humors together in their owne place. The first of them is called *Adnata* or white of the eye, it is strong & couereth the rest, & hath his beginning in the pericran and endeth in the circle *Iris*, which is of sundry coloures. The second membaine is called *Cornea*. because it is hard, cleere, & strong, like the horne of a lanthorne, and hath the beginning from the *dura mater*. It containeth the humor, and maketh the eye round, and serueth for a lanthorne

The temper-  
 ture of the eye  
 cold & weake

*Gal. lib. 10. de  
 visu part.*

Hippocrates.  
 Cal. n.  
 Gulmio.  
 Petrus Fran-  
 co.



Iris of sundry  
colours.

Three hu-  
mors of the  
eye.

The first hu-  
mor and vsage

The second  
humor and  
vsage.

thorne to the chryſtalline eye. The third is called *Uvea*, and is like the ſkinne of a vine berrie or grape being preſſed : it hath the beginning from *Pia mater*, which is the ſecond ſkinne that couereth the braines : it couereth all the eye, except only within, where it is placed in a little round hole, called the pupill or windy of the eye. It is of ſundry colours; without, it is blacke; within, blew and greene : it is ſoft, & preſerueth the chryſtalline humor from the hardnes of *cornea*, and doth reioyce the chryſtalline with the diuerſity of his colours. It retaineth the ſpirits that they doe not diſſipate, nourisheth the *cornea* and humors of the eye, for the which nature hath implanted it full of vaines and artiers. The fourth is called *Arnoides*, it is very white and delicate, like vnto the thinne ſtricken of an ynzoin or Spiders webbe : it doth inuolue the chryſtalline humor immediatly, & defendeth it. The fiſt is called *Retiformis*, it is enterlaced with innumerable little threads like a net, and commeth from the marrow of the nerue Opticke, as ſaith Loran. His office is to bring the animall ſpirit to the chryſtalline report, all the viſible things to the nerue Opticke, and carryeth the nourishment to the humor *Vitrei*. The ſixt and laſt is called *Vitrei*, becauſe it containeth and inuolueth the humor *Vitrei*, within theſe tunicks is contained the three humors. The firſt is called *Aqueus*, for the ſimilitude it hath with water : or like the white of an egge both in colour and ſubſtance, it is incloſed betwixt the humor chryſtalline & membzain *Cornea*, partly to impaſſe the great dyſneſſe that might happen vnto the chryſtalline humor, as alſo to defend the chryſtalline from the hardneſſe of the membzaines. The ſecond and chiefe principall inſtrument of the ſight is called criſtalline, and in Latine *Glacialis*, it is white and cleere like Criſtall glaſſe midway, ſolide, of figure round, ſomewhat preſſed before and behind, ſo is more firme and ſure, for being altogether round, it moveth over eaſie, and is not ſo ſtable : it is ſituated in the middeſt of the eye vpon the humor *Vitrei* and before it is the humor *Aqueus* : it is inuolued in the owne proper membzaine called



called *Arnoid*, not known by our ancients. The third and last humor is called *Vitreus*, because both in colour and substance it is like to melted glasse: the use of it is to prepare the aliment to the cristalline humor, and make the blood white, for if it were nourished with pure blood, it would be somewhat red in colour, it defends the cristalline from the hardness of the membranes, and retaineth the spirits. The eye is likewise endued with two paire of Nerves. The first of them is called *Opticæ* in the Greeke, and *Visio* in the Latine, which bringeth the spirit animal and interior sight to the cristalline: the nerves *Opticks* is thought by the old Arabians, to have their originall from the interior ventricill of the braines, and by the Greekes from the middelt of the lower part of the braines, the which the most part of all our Anatomists doe hold. Andreas de Loran approueth them to have their beginning from the posterior part of the braines, where the little and mickle braines doe meete called *Cerebrum* and *Cerebellum*, which opinion is most true, as I haue seene in the Schoole of the Chyrurgions in Paris by Master Soueran Pinio Doctor of Chyrurgerie, where hee did evidently demonstrate euery eye to haue one of those nerves pertaining to it: yet doth differ from other nerves, because they be more soft, full of holes and perosities, not *Cæue*, as thought Galen and Herophilus.

The third humor and vsage

Whence their originall is.

Master Soueran Pinio.

Those nerves and perosities doe serue to carry the visuall spirit to the eye from the braines, but befoze they come to the eyes, they be gathered together like the yron of a Mill, making one onely body, whereby the spirits and sight is carryed coniunctly to the middelt of the cristalline humor, which maketh one eye being closed, wee see as perfectly as with both. After this coniunction they doe diuide, and each of them passe through the holes of the head, and is seuerally implanted in either eye, and in the interior part of the nerve which is soft, and marowish, doth dilate it selfe, and maketh the tunicke reticular. The exterior part of the nerve endeth his course in the membrane *Cornea* and *Vnea*.

Why we see as well with one eye, as both.

The



Two paire of  
Nerues.

Fatnesse of  
the eye.

From the  
glands pro-  
ceed the teers.

The second paire of nerues are lesse, and goeth to the muscles of the eyes, to each eye one, and causeth them to moue, and sendeth little small threads to euery muscle. This paire hath his beginning and ending with the former. The eye hath likewise diuers little vaines and artiers, which bringeth nourishment and life to it, they proceed from the branches of the Jugulars and Carotides.] The eye hath also a fatnesse which goeth about it and holdeth it humide, and defendeth it from the cold, retaineth the naturall heat, which is the cause that it becommeth not cold. The eye hath also three kinels or glands, one aboue, another vnderneath, and the third in the great corner of the eye : The first two holdeth it moist and weake, and are like vnto water sponges, receiving the humors which commeth from the braines, that it fall not in ouer great abundance on the eye, from those glands proceedeth the teares when we wept either for ioye, sorrowe, weaknesse, or rubbing of the eye, as doe women when they would appeere to weepe for any cause. The third which is in the great corner of the eye, stayeth the excrements which commeth to fall on the Eye, so that those who haue those glands consumed, doe continually weepe, as you shall heare in the chapter of *Ophthalmion*.

#### CHAP. XI.

¶ A brieue rehearfall of such common maladies, as befall the whole Eye.

Having in the former Chapter, bræfly shewed the description and composition of the eye, so I shall now set downe such common diseases as vsually do happen in the whole eye, and euerie seuerall part therof, beginning first at such maladies as are common to the whole eye, which are  
divided



diuided into Similars, and Organickes : The Simi-  
 lars are in the temperature weake and dry, hote and cold, Similar parts.  
 either with matter or without: the Organickes consist in the Organicke parts.  
 euill confirmation, as greatnes, littlenes, or in scituation,  
 as when the Eye is ouer great and is called the ore Eye,  
 which being cast out from the circle, is not so quicke, nor the  
 motio so prompt, by reason the spirits are dissipate it is called  
*ex Ophthalmia* or *oculipromanentes* in latine : y greatnes doth  
 happen by the vice of the first confirmation, or by accident,  
 as by tumour of inflammation, or great defluxion : the littlenes  
 of the Eye caled *atrophia* or *macies oculi* cometh by nature,  
 and is called the pigs Eye, or pincking Eye: it cometh also by  
 accident as by dissipation of the naturall heat, caused either  
 by dolour, continuall feuer, great wayling, weeping, and  
 defluxions, so that the Eye is weakened and cannot draw  
 the nourishment, & so becometh atrofied and extenuate; or in  
 scituation as when it is out of the owne place, which may In scituation.  
 happen by cause externe as sayth Auicen, like as strokes,  
 falls, violent coughing, vomiting, blowing, and such like, or  
 by cause interne like as great fluxion which looseth all the  
 muscles of the Eye, or by inflammation or solution of  
 continuitie, as when the Eye is burst called in græke *Raxis*  
 and by the latins *Ruptio* : also by the confusion and mixtion  
 of the whole humours together. These be the maladies which  
 occupie the whole Eye: as for *Nictalopia*, *Niopiakis*, and *Am-*  
*blipia* they are not maladies of y Eye as some thinke, but  
 onely symptomes of the spirits and humours; as for the par-  
 ticular diseases of the Eye, they differ according to the parts,  
 as humours, tunicks, nerues, muscles : so first I shall begin  
 at humours as the most noble part of the Eye, the which  
 methode is followed by Galen. The humour Cristallin may Lib. de simpl.  
 suffer all sorts of diseases, but the most common is the in- causis.  
 temperature drie, or when it goeth out of the owne place; the  
 drie temprature is caused by the withering and drying of the  
 Cristallin called *Glaucoma*, and becometh all white. Hip- Glaucoma.  
 pocrates saith this hapneth oftneft to old people, and is for Hip. 3. aphor.  
 the



Simptomes  
of the cristalline  
Humor.

Simptomes  
of the humor  
*Vitree.*

Maladies of  
the three  
membranes  
of the Eye.

the most part incurable The Cristalline goeth diuers wayes out of the owne place, as to ether side, high, low, ouer-far downe or ouer eminent : if it be ouer-farre in, the person seeth nererhand ; if ouer farre out, he seeth not farre of ; if it turneth to either side, all the objects do appeare sidewayes ; if it goe vp or downe, all the objects will appeare double, of those some are curable, and some are not : some proceed of cause interne, or by inheritance, and some be contagious as saith Auicen. The humor *Aqueus* is sometimes ouer-much dried vp, as chanceth often in suffusions and depriving the sight wholly : if it be much diminished in quantitie, the Cristalline humor becometh drye, the *Vnea* becometh withered, & the *Cornea* abashed, as for the humor *vitree* our auntients haue not remembred any particular diseases, yet it is thought by some late writers, that it may indure the like diseases as the humor *Aqueus*. As concerning the membranes of the Eye, there is but thre of them, In which particular diseases are obserued, to wit, the coniunctiue or white of the Eye, *Cornea*. and *Vnea* ; the coniunctiue suffers thre sorts of maladies, to wit *Ophthalmia* whereof I shall speake in the proper Chapter, *Ungula* and *Con- tusion*. *Ungula* is called *Pterigium* which is a neruous flesh, that beginneth in the great corner of the Eye, and extendeth to the prunall, it is like the nayle of a mans hand, and happeneth after *Ophthalmies* euill cured : it is accompanied with prurit teares & rednes, which impasseth the sight of this disease ; there are thre kinds, Membraines, *Panniculous*, and *Adipus*, some haue it of inheritance, others by accident, when others whole ; it is contagious as saith *Auicen*, and goeth from one Eye to another, for the helpe whereof *Acius* doth counsell to consume it by cor- rasives : other olde Writers are of opinion to cure it with a neede and thred after the forme as you shal here in the chap- tre of *Fistula* intreating of *Carnis lachrymalium*. The third and last Maladie of the coniunctiue is contusion, which is called *Episphagma*, and is soide by Paulus and *Acius* to be



a rupture of the veins of the eye, which maketh the blood to disperse through the coniunctive or white of the eye, representing all the objects red, and proceeds either of cause externe as falls, strokes; or of cause interne as when the vaines are repleat with a tenous blood. The *Cornea* hath diuers Maladies, as *Pustules*, *Ulceres*, *Cankers*, *Cicatrices*, and *Ruptures*; the *Pustules* are blacke little blobbes called by the Arabs, *Bothor* and doe proceed of one subtil watric or bilious humoꝝ, of the which some are superficial, others profound, some of whytish colour, others blacke: of those sorts of vlcers, there are Seauen kindes counted by the Grekes and Arabians, of the which three be Interne, and Foure externe. The vlcers Cankerous are ingendered of a humoꝝ atrabilar accompanied with do-  
 lour. The cicatrice is a maladie of the *Cornea*, which maketh it white, it taketh away the light and colour. Rupture, is a breaking of the *cornea* which euer proceeds of causes externe. *Pnea* wherein is the hole called *Pzunall* or *Vuido* of the eye, is subiect to a particular disease called the dissent, which cometh when *cornea* is broken. The *Pzunall* hath three sorts of diseases, to wit, *Tabes*, *Suffusio*, and *Dilatatio*. *Tabes* is that which is called by the Grekes *Pthysis*, which is an extenuation of the *pzunall*, and is either naturall or accidentall: The naturall is proper for the sight: the accidentall is euer hurtfull, for the which you must giue good order to the cause, and in the meane time, foment the eyes with a sponge wet in pay milke or Euphrase water that is warme. If the eye be growen great through ouer great nutriture or abundance of the humoꝝs of y<sup>e</sup> head, or any particular affection; remove the cause by purging, bleeding, & good regimēt: thereafter applye to the eye Saffron and oyle mixed together, foment the eye with *Aqua marina*, or with water and salt: as for *Suffusio* and *Dilatatio*, you shall heare in their own place. The muscles of the eye are subiect to three principall maladies, to wit, *Distortio*, shaking, or great mouing and immobility. *Distortio* is called *Strabismus* or *Illofis* by Hippocra-

Pau. li. 3.

The diseases  
of *Cornea*.Vlcers Can-  
kerous.The diseases  
of *pzunall*.The maladies  
of the muscles



res, and proceed by the resolution of some muscle, and causeth the eye to move in divers fashions, in such sort that nothing is seen but the whyte of the eye. The shaking or moving of the eye is called *Hypos*, which is a defect in the muscles, which are so weakened that they cannot containe the eye. The immobility, called by Hippocrates *Pixis*, happeneth when the muscles have wholly toucht their action of moving, or by the obstruction of the nerue Opticke, which bringeth the movement. The Maladies of the nerue Opticke is Obstruction, Compression, Paralysie, and Ruption.

Obstruction. The Obstruction proceedeth sodainly of a cold thicke humour, which doth stoppe the nerue opticke. The Compression cometh by strokes, or when the nerue is shrunk by drynesse.

Paralysie. The Paralysie proceeds of a thin serous humour, which softteth and looseth the nerue, representing all the objects double, as sometime happeneth to people that are drunken.

Ruption. Ruption, is when the nerue is broken or dilacerate, which cometh by strokes, and maketh that the visibill spirit cannot passe. All the diseases of the nerue opticke make a common symptome, which is called by the Arabians *Gutta serena*, which is as saith *Aetius* a blindness without hurt, apperance, or marke in the eye. Those be the principall maladies which do occupie the eye, for y<sup>e</sup> which you shall heare principal rules in y<sup>e</sup> next chap. following for y<sup>e</sup> conseruatiō of the same, with a brieve rehearsall of such thinges as are profitable and hurtfull, in generall: with the cure of such particulars as are most common in this country. But, as for euery particular disease of the eye, eye-lids, and corners of the eye; because they be more than an hundred in number, so not meet in this place to make a description thereof, because that diuers approved authours haue written of the most part of them, both Greeces, Arabians, Latins, and others, whose helpe I haue vsed in this worke: so I doubt not but that the skilfull Chyrurgion will take aduise with them in that matter.

More than a  
100. diseases  
in the eye.



## [HAP. XII.]

Which containeth a regiment very exquisite  
for the conseruation of the sight, with  
*such things as are profitable, or hurtfull  
for the same.*

**S**uch people who haue their sight either diminished or  
grown weake, shall find in this chapter a short regiment,  
with such fit remedies as hath been written either by Greeks,  
Hebrewes, Arabians, or Latines, for the conseruation of  
the same : which regiment shall partly consist in good Dyet,  
Pharmacy, and Chyrurgerie.

The forme of Dyet hath been thought by our ancients the  
most noble part of all, in so much as it is a familiar friend to  
nature, being rightly vsed, and neither doth alter nor trou-  
ble the same in any sort. This dyet consisteth not onely in  
eating and drinking, as thinketh the common sort : but also  
in the administration of the six things, which the Medicioners  
doe call vnnaturals ; like as, the Ayre, Meate, Drinke,  
Sleeping, Waking, Motion, Rest, Euacuation, Repletion,  
with the Passions and Perturbations of the mind.

Dyet.

Wherin good  
dyet consisteth.

The Ayer which is the first, hath a mighty power in alte-  
ring and changing our bodies ; it passeth directly by the nose  
to the braines, by the mouth to the heart, by the passages of  
the heart and mouement of the artiers, through the whole  
body. It doth furnish nourishment to the spirits in such sort,  
that Hippocrates saith, of the constitution of the ayer depen-  
deth the good and euill disposition of our humors and spirits.  
The ayer must neither be ouer cold, hote, nor humide, but  
cleare, declynning to moderate heate and drynesse, taking al-  
wayes heed of the ardent heat of the Sun, and raynus of the  
Moone, and for the Cyrring, which is the dew that falleth  
after the euening : Also from cold, moistie, and rainie wea-

Ayer.



ther : good dry dwelling is meetest, and if it may not be had, the chamber where the diseased shall remaine must be helped with good fiers and perfumes, as did the old Arabians, of leaues of Cuphage, Fennell, Bergeline, of each one ounce, Aloes one dramme, Incence three drammes, mixe all together and make one perfume.

The South & North wind are enemies to the eyes. 3. *sec. apho.*

Colours.

Soft roasted eggs are good

Baked meat is not good.

As concerning the winds, the South and North winds are enemies to the eye, as sayth Hippocrates, The ayer which commeth from ditch waters, mosses and rotten carriages are euill, fire, reeke, dust, and blowing of Alchimie ; for the which, such as haue their eyes weake, should not blow at Alchimie in seeking out the Philosophers Stone, in case they lose both their eyes, & purse also : ouer great light is also noysome, as you shall heare in the chap. of Ophthalmia.

As concerning the colours, some are hurtfull, others not; the white colour dissipateth the spirits in drawing to it, and the blacke rendereth the spirits more grosse ; as for blew, violet, & green, they reioyce the sight ; amongst the which the saphier and emerald are profitable.

The second point consisteth in eating and drinking, the sicke must abstaine from all grosse, viscus, vaporous, salty, windy, sweet and pickling things that are full of excrements, taking heed to eat lesse at night, than at noone. As touching bread and flesh, they must be such (and so prepared) as you haue heard in the second chap. of the second booke. Egges new layd and soft, taken with pouder of Sugar, Cannall, and Cuphage, clarifie the sight ; but being fryed are noysome : Vexgis, Vinegar, & iuice of Limonds may be vled, Saffron, Cannell, Ginger, Pepper, Nutmegs, Hony, and oyle of Oliue, are not hurtfull ; all baked meat, milke, and all that commeth of it, is euill. As touching hearbs, some are approued for the sight, as Sage, Bergeline, Betonie, Rosemarie, Mint, Wimpernell, buddes of Asperge, Eye-bright, Succorie, Parsly, Carret rootes, and Capers. The Arabians recommend Rabets, and Turnips greatly, if there be mixed with them Finkell, and Annats, because they are windy.



windy. The hearbes which are hurtfull and forbidden, are Lettice, Anethe, Basilicke, Purpie, Porrhie, Cabbage, Colwort, Garlicke, Onyons, Beets, Spinage, Sybols, Radish, Parsnips, Olives, with all calve fruits, which are hurtfull to the sight, by reason of their great humiditie, boyled pynes may be vsed, or rosted Peares are verie good being taken with the powder of Eye-bright: it impasseth the fume to goe to the head, Finkell, or Anats, Comfits, Cotinacke, Figges, and Raysons may be vsed, and thus much concerning eating.

In drinke there are two things to be considered, the quality, and quantity. As for the quality, the great Mediciner Achigenes sayth, in all maladies of the eyes much drinke is hurtfull. And as touching the quantity, Aristotle in his Problemes sayth, that those that drinke water haue their sight very subtile: Yet Rasis and Auicen condemne the vsage of water, which opinion is agreable to companions that rather would lose their eyes, than want wine: such as may not passe without wine, may vse a small cleane wine not sharpe nor vaporous, that is mixed with water of Eye-bright and Fennell: In the vsage of it, take the flowers of Borage and Pimpernell, and put into a glasse, when you drinke the colours reioyeth the sight, and the hearbes by their vertue rebates the fume of the wine: Sweet and new wine is fumous, and strong wine lyeth long on the stomacke, sendeth vapours to the braines. There may be an artificiall wine, made for such as are diseased of their eyes, made of Eye-bright, which is much commended by those who haue written of the Eye, especially Arnoldus de villa noua, who affirmeth to haue healed an old man who had bene a long time blind, onely by vsing that wine a whole yere, called *Vinum Euphragiatum*, which is made by putting a quantity of the hearbe in new wine, let it remaine vntil the wine grow cleere and ready to drinke, and vse it. As for other compositions of Eye-bright with the mighty effects of it, are set downe length by the sayd Arnold in his booke *de Vino*.

Two things  
to be obser-  
ued in the  
drinke.

Archigenes.  
*Aristo. probl.*

Rasis.  
Auicen.

Eyebright.  
*Arnold. lib. de  
vino.*

*Arnol. de vino.*



Composition  
of Hydromel.

This hearbe is of temperature hote and dry, and may be put in the diseased his ordinary drinking wine, as I haue sayd of Wimpernell and Borage: and such as desire not wine, may vse Hydromell composed of this, take 15. pound of Fountaine water, 1. pound of fine hony, mixe all in one pot, adding therto a little Fennell and meases, of Eye-bright an handfull, tye all together with a thred and put in the pot, and let all seeth till the third part of the water be consumed: in seething be euer taking away the scumme of the hony. The Eye-bright may be used in Beere or Ale, being put in when it beginneth to worke, and let it remaine untill it haue left working.

As for Sleeping, Waking, Exercise, Repletion, Euacuation, with the Perturbations of the mind; I haue spoken at length in the second Booke of this worke. As concerning the second part, it consisteth in ordaining of remedies; forasmuch as the weaknesse of the sight cometh either by euill temperature of the braines, or euill disposition of the eye; therefore the expert Chyrurgion should euer haue regard to those two parts. If the braines be ouer humide, they must be dryed; and the eye weake, comforted.

Plato.

Hip. lib. de usu.

Plato doth admonish vs in one of his Dialogues, that we neuer dry vp the braines, neither fortifie the eye by externall remedies, except the head be first purged: and because it is vneasie to purge the head, except the whole body that sends the excrement be first purged, which must be done with such remedies as haue the vertue to euacuate the whole body generally, hauing alwayes some propriety with the eye.

Pilles for the  
head.

For this purpose the old Arabians recommend the pilles of *Agaricke*, *Lucis maioris* and *minoris*. For this, take three Drammes of Aloes, washed in Fennell or Eye-bright water, Cypzage 3. drams, Agaricke 1. dramme and an halfe, Rubarbe 1. dram, the barke of Birabotans, Citrius, rubbed in oyle of sweet Almonds 4. scrupl. Cynie well beaten 1. dram, Bastirke, Ginger, and Cannell, of each 1. scrupl. the Trolickes of Allardan, 5. gra. mix all these with iuyce



iuyce of Fennell and sirupe of Stecas, of the which you shall make a masse, and take a dramme thereof euery fourth night once : such as may not vse the pilles, may vse this sirupe Magistral, take Fennell 1. ounce, leaues of Eye-bright, Betonie, Fumetarie, Mercury, Succory, Germander, and Meruen, of each one pugill, Raysons, and Prunes, of each one a dusten, Fennell seed, and Annel-seeds 2. dram, Sage, Stecas, Euphrase, Rosemarie, of each one pugill, let all seeth in cleare water, in the expression adde vnto it 3. vnc. of Cy-  
 nie, and let it infuse warme in that decoction a certaine space, with the expression of one ounce of Agaricke, of Cloues one dram, or in stead thereof as much Cannall, let all seeth with a quantity of Sugar, to the consistance of a sirupe, aromati-  
 sed with halfe a dram of Nutmegs, and as much of pouder of *Diarrhonum* : if you would adde halfe an ounce of Ru-  
 barbe, it were so much the better. Of this sirupe you may take euery fourth night once, either with a little broth or de-  
 coction : capitall glitters are also much commended for di-  
 uers diseases of the head and eyes. Decoction sudoriphicke, which shall be made of *Salsa parila* skin, with Eye-bright and Fennell seed, It is very much commended for the con-  
 suming of the great humidity of the braines.

Sirupe magi-  
stral.

Glitters.

The body being so purged by vniuersall remedies, the braines may be euacuated by the nose and mouth, which are conduits ordinary constituted by nature to that vse. The ea-  
 rings draweth the humors to the eye, which is the part disea-  
 sed. If there be great defluxion on the eyes, you may put in your nose a spice of that bone which is found in the heart of an Ore, it hath the vertue to staye the fluxion : or you may apply on the forehead a cataplasme made of Beane flo-  
 wer, sodden in water and Vinegar.

Earrings.

To staye the  
fluxion of the  
eyes.

Hippocrates ordaineth defluxions of the eyes, to be diuer-  
 ted by the mouth. For this purpose take Raysons, and wet them with a drop of the spirit of Fennell, and chewe in the mouth, or rubbe the roose of the mouth with the essence of Fennell; It will drawe downe the humors that way: Sage,

6. epid. sect. 2.



Masticatories

or Peritar to cheke in the morning, were very good. The Masticatories are more to be appoyued than the Carings for sundry respects. These things being done, you shall vse conserues that haue the vertue to fortifie the sight : take the conserue made of the flowers of Cuphage, Betonie, and Rose-marie, of each one ounce, Teracke 3. Drams, conserue of Roses, halfe an ounce, pouder of Diazodum 1. Dram and a halfe, Balles 2. scrupl. Make an Opiat with sirupe of

Conserues for the sight.

the conserue of Cytrons, take a little of it each morning at your ryling. After your meat you shall vse a pouder digestiue made of Coziander, Fennell, red Roses, Corall, Perill, Cuphage, and Sugar rosat, put all in fine pouder, and vse of it a little after meat. There be also certaine external remedies which are vsed for the clarifying of the sight, of diuers sorts and diuersly composed ; but here I shall content me with some few which I haue oftentimes vsed. You shall wash your eyes euerie morning with this distilled water, take the crops of Fennell, Ruth, Cuphage, Meruen, Tormentill, Betonie, Roses, Pimpernell, Agramonie, Carbell, Slope, and Selydon, of each one a handfull, sheare all small and infuse them in white wine for the first time ; next in the water of a yong boy that is in good health ; the third time in womans milke : last of all in fine honie distilled, as in a Lynbeck, & keap it in a close glasse, and put it euerie morning (and at certaine other times) in your eyes : you may also wash your eyes with white wine, wherein hath been sodden Fennell, Eye-bright, Selydon, and a little Myrabolans : or this, take a pound and a halfe of white wine, as much Rose water, Tuthea as much, Beases halfe an ounce, put all in a well stopped glasse, and set it in the sun the space of twenty daies, remoue it euerie day once and vse it for your eyes. Unguents are much commended, amongst the which this is most soueraine, take two ounces of Swines grease that is very recent, scrape it in Rose water six houres, then wash it twelue times in white wine, thereafter adde to it an ounce of Tuthea that is well prepared and put in pouder, one scruple

Distilled water for the eyes.

Unguent for the eyes.



scruple of the Stone Hemotites well washed, Aloes washed and put in powder twelve gra. Pearles three gra. incorporate all with a little water of Fennell, and make an unguent thereof, of the which you shall put a little in the corners of your eye. There be diuers colours and pouders which may be vsed, in the which I haue not found such successe, as in *Aristotle in-structing A-* waters. As for Chyrurgerie which is the third point, it *lexander.* consisteth chieflie in applying and vsing the former remedies with blæding, cunning ventosing, applying of censurs or blood-suckers, cauters, frictions, baths, and such like, as you shall heare at length in the eight Booke following. These be the meanes by the which the sight may generallie bee conserued.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of the tumor in the Eye called *Ophthalmia* by the Grecians, and *Lippitudo* by the Latines.

**H**Auing in the foure precedent Chapters spoken of the Eye and the diseases which are generally incident therunto, with a bræse regiment for the conseruation of the sight: So now I shall intreate of some few diseases in particular, which I haue found the people in this country most subiect vnto, beginning at *Ophthalmia* which is an inflammation of the whole Eye, but chæfly of the membraine called conjunctiue, with great rednesse and dolour: The cause is either internall, or externall; the externall, are stroakes, heate, dust, wind, great cold, rubbing mothes in the Eye: The internall cause, is defluxion of humors, as also the vaines externall and internall of the head being replete, whereof proceedeth great fluxion, also the sanguine, cholericke,

Definition.  
Pa. li 3. ca. 22.  
Cause.



- Signes. lericke, phlegmaticke humour which ascendeth to the  
 heade, The signes are manifest, like as great inflammation,  
 readnes, heate of the Eyes, and temples, dolour, repletion  
 of the vaines, hardnes. This sickenes hath foure degrees  
 like as other tumors, and happeneth often to young chil-  
 dren and others who haue weake Eyes, which is the  
 cause that they are subiect to fluxion of humors. The  
 Iudgements. iudgements are; the matter is sometime hote, otherwhiles  
 colde, and those which happen in winter are worse then  
 in sommer, if they be neglected, and euill handled, there  
 insueth often euill accidents, as spots, rupture of the  
 Gord. li. citoto. cornea, and diuers others; if the dolour be vehement, it is  
 dangerous in feare of corruption, & corrosion of the cornea.  
 Cure. As for the cure, there are three things to be obserued, the  
 first is good dyet, eating little, and chiefly at night, abstaine  
 from all vapoious things and of euill digestion, such as  
 fishe, fruites, spices, salt, and humide things. Abide nei-  
 ther in great darkenes, nor in too much light; greate  
 light dissipateth the spirits, and sometime causeth blindness,  
 as I read of the souldiers of Zenophon who by going long  
 in the snow, became almost blind. Also Dionisius the ti-  
 rant of Sicill made his prisoners blind after this sort: first he  
 imprisoned them in a very darke place, then brought them  
 suddenly vnto great light, so made them all blind. Take  
 not much, and abstaine from the great passions and per-  
 turbations of the mind, from smoke, from dust, and blow-  
 ing of Alchamie, for it hurteth the Eye, and consumeth  
 the substance, and maketh men miserable both in body  
 and goods; hould vp thy head, abstaine from wine, women  
 and such like, as you may perceiue by these verses of the  
 learned Gordonius.

*Hæc oculis multum, sol, puluis, fumus, et æstus  
 Ventus, cum fletu, vina, Venusq; nocent.  
 Aeria ne mandas, nec quæ sunt plena vaporum.  
 Nec capas, lentes, allia, pæira, fabas.*



**W H E R E A S** you must abstaine from all Par-  
 cotickes except in violent dolours. The second inten-  
 tion consisteth in euacuating and euerting the humours  
 by pilles, glisters, blading of the vaine Cephalicke, ven-  
 tosing on the shoulders, frictions on the thighs, legges, *Hip. usu.*  
 and extremities, opening the vaines and artiers of the tem-  
 ples. The third intention is in topicall remedies, as co- *Topicall*  
 lours of diuers sorts according to the diuersitie of the degree *remidies.*  
 and time of the aposthume; as in the beginning of the infla-  
 mation, take Plantane water, and Rose water, of each  
 halfe an ounce, two whites of Egges, a litle Fennell  
 water and womans milke, the mustilages of Zpsilion  
 with a litle trossittes of Rasis *sine opio*, a litle Camphire,  
 put of those in the Eye: Also water of Ruth, veruin, *Cataplasim.*  
 Roses, and Celidon, and apply it often to the Eye; at *for the Eyes.*  
 night make a cataplasme of a roasted apple wrought with  
 womans milke, and a little rose water, put it betwixt two  
 peces of linnen cloth, and aply it to the Eye. or this reme-  
 die which I haue often proued, not only in Ophthalmia,  
 but also in diuers other maladies of the Eyes, take 2 ounces  
 of white wine, as much rose water, Cuprage halfe a crowne  
 waight, of Tuthia prepare asmuch, Aloes a little, three  
 or foure leaues of massie, put all in a biall and stoppe it  
 close, set it three weekes in the sunne, and instill thereof in  
 the Eyes, in the meane time vse implasters in the temples  
 of masticke *de bolo et contra rupturam* and such like, to stay  
 the fluxion: for the great dolour, the blood of a pigeon, *Iesus lib. 3.*  
 turtle, or hen, vnder the winges, and instill it in the Eye, also *de oculis.*  
 milke with the yolke of an egge and a little rose oyle may *Paul. lib. 7.*  
 be likewise applied. Likewise for the dolour of the Eye. *cap. 3.*  
 Chelmeteus counselleth to take a roasted apple, yolke of an *Chelmeteus.*  
 egge, rosewater & womans milke implaite in forme of Cata-  
 plasme, also a peece of white bread the thicknes of halfe an  
 ynch and breadth of twelue pence steeped in rose water,  
 and pappe milke, and apply betwixt two peces of cloth to the  
 Eye.



## CHAP. XIII.

**¶** Of the weeping Eye, called by the Latines  
*Fluxus oculi, or Delachrimatio.*

**Definition.** **O**phthalmion is a continuall flowing and falling downe  
of a thin watric humoz on the Eyes which sometimes  
**Cause** is hote, othertimes colde, it causeth aboundance of watric  
humozs in the head, chiefly such as haue very great heads.  
Also by feuer applying of sharp medicaments in the Eye,  
also great weakenes of the vertue retentrix and concoctrix  
**Signes.** or by some stroke in the kernell of the Eye; the signes  
are euident to the sight, like as rednes about the kernell  
of the Eye, with great heat: which sheweth that the de-  
struction cometh from the baynes of the Pericran. The iudg-  
**Iudgments.** ments, it hapneth to some by nature from their childhood,  
which hardly may be stayed, it is almost euer painfull  
with inflammation and bleare-eydnes, and is for the most  
part incurable, especially those who haue great heades or  
haue gotten streakes with losse of substance of the kernell  
of the Eye. The cure consisteth first, in good regiment  
and vsing of things of good digestion, that hath a dried  
**Cure.** vertue, abstaining from such thinges as ingender humi-  
ditie and vapors; euacuate the body with purgations, and  
**Mesius de** pilles. If there be plenitude, let blood the arme of the soze  
**egritud.** side, also the baynes and artiers of the temples, as shall  
**oculoru.** be thought expedient: Next vse frictions of the head  
**Albucasis.** and shoulders downward, application of cauters and ce-  
**lib. 2.** tongs to diuert the humoz, with an emplaster on the temples,  
**cap. 4. et. 5.** that hath the vertue to compell the humoz to fall downe,  
made thus, *Rec. sanguis draconis, boli armenici, masticeis,*  
*an, vnc. 1. misceantur cum albumine oui et aceto, fiat linamen-*  
*tum,* which you shall apply on the temples. Also the astrin-  
**Petrus Fran.** gent plaster set downe in the generall Chapter of wounds,  
**co. de Herneus.** intreating of the suture incarnatiue, with this oyle wzitten  
by Petrus Franco, *Rec. ceruci abluti, sarcocola nurna, a-*  
*cacia*



sacia, licei. olibani, an. drag. 2. margaritarium dragm. semis.  
 succi malipunici accosti dimidias quantum sufficit fiat coliri-  
 um, which you shall vse Morning and Euening. Rasis doth  
 counsell in the continuall flux of the kinnell of the Eye the Powder for  
 patient to bath euery morning fasting, and to apply this the Eye.  
 powder in the Eye, thus made, Rec. iuthia dragm. 10. coral. Rasis Mor.  
 li ruber mirobaloni, citrini fricati, aloes an. dragm. 2. piperis perti. Lib. 19.  
 dragm semis fiat ex his puluis which you shall put often in the  
 Eye: by the vsing of this powder, and the bath, Rasis doth  
 testifie to haue cured many.

## CAP. XII.

Of the fistula in the corner of the Eye, called  
 Aegilops in Greeke, and Fistula Lachrymalis  
 in Latine.

**A**egylops is a little tubercle or aposthume called by the *Definition:*  
 Arabians Garab, it doth occupy the great corner of the *Cels. li. 7. ca. 7.*  
 eye towards the nose; which being opened, there issueth out  
 a thinne virulent humo<sup>r</sup> or matter: it being ouer long in ope-  
 ning or negligently handled, becommeth fistulous in the flesh  
 with corruption in the bone. The Cause is euill humo<sup>r</sup>s from  
 the whole body, chiefly from the head, which not being hasti-  
 ly matured, acquireth a putrifaction, and bitternesse, which  
 doth corrode both flesh and bone, and maketh a cauetie wher-  
 in is contained a matter sometime like vnto milke, sume,  
 glutinous, or water, sometime of mid-way consistance,  
 which issueth either at the corner of the eye without, or at the  
 nose within. The Signes are evident to the sight, being  
 and payning the eye continually with inflammation, rednes,  
 and alteration of the bone, which may bee knowen by the  
 sound by which you may perceine an aspiration or hardnes.  
 It is sometime of a canckrous angry nature, & dangerous to  
 be dealt with in feare of hastie death. The prognosticks, all  
 those fistules are difficile to cure, both for the neeres to the  
 eye,

Cause.

Signes.



Ies. lib. de oculis.

Cure.

Tral. li. 2. ca. 8.

Enchylops.

Rol. li. 1. ca. 38.

Rasis morb. parti. li. 19.

eye, as also the flesh being consumed maketh a continuall weeping in such sort, that hardly can the vlcer consolidate, but causeth the bone to corrupt and putrifie, for the which the most part of all fistules in the eye are incurable, except onely by vsing of the Cauter actuall, as I haue often seen. The cure is first to purge the body if it be repleat, either of humors or blood: the humors must be cured by fit medicines, and the blood euacuated by the cephalicke vaine of that side the fistule is on. As for topicall remedies, I am not of opinion with some of our ancients, who did approve the vsage of reperussives, I counsaile rather resolatives and maturatives, making the ouerture so speedilie as may be; next cleanse the wound with some mundificatiue that is gentle, and wash it euery day with decoction of Celydon, Rutch, & Cleruin, with a little hony: also for this purpose you may vse Claret or white wine with hony, wash the wound and dry it gently. The which methode may be also vsed in Enchylops, which is an aposthume in the great corner of the eye, as for the cause, signes, and cure of it, they differ little from the other: if the fistule be with corruption of the bone, you shall first dilate gently the wound or vlcer to the ground, till such time as you perceiue the bone discovered, which shall be done with tents of Caddish, Gensian, or sponges prepared and wet in hony, thereafter vse this choller which is astringent and drying, set downe by Rasis, thus. *Rec. Aloes, Thuris, an. drag. 1. sarcocolla, sanguis draconis, balanstia, antimonia cruda, albuminis an. drag. 1. sem. æruginis quartani partem vnius drag. misceantur cum aqua euphragie fiat collerium.* The which you shall instill euerie morning three or foure droppes in the sore: thereafter let the patient lie two or three houres on the whole side, presse out the matter euery morning before you wash the vlcer, and dry it well before you apply the choller, and so continue this forme till such time as by pressing it, there issue no more matter; by this meanes the said Rasis affirmeth to haue cured many. Gordonius sets downe a potion which hath a mighty vertue for such pustules; if by these means you

profite



profit not as you would, ye must dilate y<sup>e</sup> wound as you haue heard, and apply an actual Cauter purposely made, according to the proportion of the wound and corrupt bone.

*Albuc. lib. 2.  
cap. 19.*

*Cauters actuals for the fistula in the eye.*





Albuc. lib. 2.  
cap. 17.

Cause.

Adamus Loni-  
erius.  
Cure.

Cels. l. 7. ca. 7.  
Albuc. lib. 2.  
cap. 16.

Hip. li. de visu

Be ware in using the cauter you touch no other part. After the cauter be vied, apply oyle of Roses, Rose water, Plane-  
tine, or Solanum, beaten with the white of an egge, let the  
patient lye with his head well high, then procure the fall of  
the scarre and corrupt bone, with fresh butter or common  
digestive made of Theribintin well waished, oyle of Egges,  
and a little Saffron, which you may vse while all bee well  
mundified, and the corrupt bone exfoliat, thereafter fill up  
the wound & consolidate the same, as other wounds. There  
is another kind of excrescence of flesh, which happeneth in the  
great corner of the eye, called in Greeke *Encanthus*, and by  
Auen *additio carnis lachrymalium*, which is an addition of  
flesh to that which groweth naturally. It proceedeth either  
of a melancholique humoz, much blood, or when the flesh gro-  
weth after the euill handling of some vlcers, which hath pro-  
ceeded, or by the remanent of a cataract which hath been left  
on beaten downe: There are two kinds of it, the one is ten-  
der, red coloured, which may be helped by drying medicines,  
as is at length set down by Auius: The other kind is more  
malicious, it groweth greater, and is taken away after this  
foyme: first, there must bee a needle with a strong thread  
past through the middest of it, then lift it vp and cut it with  
a sharpe sheare or bisterie, taking alwayes good heed you cut  
none of the naturall flesh: for if so be, it will procure a con-  
tinuall weeping, then after it is so cut, apply dry encolires and  
pouders to impash the growing of the flesh againe: then fol-  
low out the rest of the cure, as you haue heard in *Fistula la-  
chrymal*.

#### CHAP. XVI.

Of the little tumor which occupyeth the eye-  
lid, called *Pisthia* in Greeke, & *Hordelium* in Latin.

Definition.

**H**ordelium is a little hard tubercle in the vttermost part  
or border of the eye-lid where the haire doth grow, it is  
of



of forme like a Barlie corne, whereof it taketh the name. In vulgar language, the Staying : it cometh to maturation slowlie : it is oftentimes contained in a little membaine or bagge like Atheorema. If it be of long continuance, it groweth to such hardnesse, that scarcely it doth receaue any cure. As for the Cure, Galen, Musa, and others counsaile resolutiues to be vsed. I haue found nothing better than to open it with a bistorie or lancet as counsaileth Paulus, Cellus, & Arius, euacuate the humors, cleanse the soze with yolkes of egges and hony : thereafter a little of the colyre set downe by Rasis in the chapt. precedent, till it be whole. Sometime this tumor happeneth within the eye-lid, and is more round and mobile than the other. It is called *Grando* by the Latins, in the vulgar language, the Hailestone. In curing wherof, turne ouer the eye-lidde, make incision, and cure it as the former.

Staying.

Cure.  
Galen.  
Musa.  
Cellus.

## CHAP. XVII.

**O**f the haire which groweth in the inward side of the Eye-brees.

**T**hose superfluous hairens that molest and picke the inward side and borders of the eye-liddes, which are noysome to the eye, making it continually to water, it is called by the Grekes *Trichiasis*, and *oculorum a Pelis infusio* in Latine. The cause proceedeth of a quantitie of superfluous humidity from the head. The cure as counsaileth Rasis, is to plucke out those hairens by the roote, either with some instrument, emplaster of Masticke, or otherwise, wherof you will find infinite receites of the old writers. The haire being plucked out, you shall annoint the part with the head of a Frog, or scrapings of yron sodden in Vinegar, as counsaileth

Definition.

Cause.

Iesus li. de ocul.

Cure.

Rasis morb.  
part. li. 9. ca. 26



*Gord. tract. 3.* leth Gordon. I haue often vsed for this purpose Crocus Martis, sodden in strong Vinegar and annoynted the part :  
*Alexis li. de secretis.* or this set down by Alexis of Pimonth, for a rare secret, and learned by him of a noble Lady in Syria, which is excellent for the taking away of haire in any part ; take a piece of pure gold that is small and round like a Ring, somewhat crooked at the point, heat it hote in the fire, then rub the inward side of the eye-lidde gently where the haire do grow, then after annoynt the part with oyle of Roses, and Tiolets ; if need be, the next day doe the like : and if they yet continue,  
*Rasis loco cita.* doe the like, the gold maketh that no cicatrice remaine. Rasis doth counsaile the vsage of an hote yron or needle, and apply as the former. If after this they yet grow, you shall vse this linement set downe by Auicen ; which is made of Iusqueam, Opium, and Psilium, seeth them in strong vinegar, with Seruce of vines, and lead, of each a like quantity : incorporate all with a little Allom, and water of Iusqueam,  
*Cels. li. 7. ca. 7.* and annoynt the part. Gordon counsaileth onely the Iusqueam, Mandragour, and Opium. For this purpose some doe commend Opium, Mussilagis of Psilium, Seruce, lead, Litharge, powder of Margaritis, with a fewe of those little wormes that do shine in the night, and annoynt the part therewith.  
*Gord. part. 3.* Or this linement which I haue sometime vsed, take the iuice of Iusqueam, Sanguis draconis, Gumme, Arabicke, and Incense, of each six drams, Rozall water a little, incorporate all and make a linement, and annoynt the part therewith.  
*Linement for haire.*

## CHAP. XVIII.

¶ Of the enlarging of the pupill of the eye, called *Mydriasis*, and *Dilatatio Pupille* in Latine.

Definition.  
*Paul lib. 3.*  
*cap. 2.*

**M**Ydriasis is a dilating or enlarging of the pupill or aperture of the eye, which happeneth when the membrane  
 VUCA



Vnea is enlarged at the hole or windowe of the eye, and doth represent the objects more great, confused, and vnperfect, than they ought. The Signes, the sicke looketh faire vp with the eye in the owne colour: sometime the pupil appeareth to be changed out of the owne place, called by Arnoldus, Pupillæ è loco remotio. The dilatation happeneth sometime by the vice of the first confirmation, and seeth reasonable well; but being much dilated, it is incurable. The Cause of this disease, is either internal or externall: the internes are the humors which by little and little floweth from the head, and cause the Vnea to dilate, whereupon ensueth the dilatation of the pupil: it happeneth often after long diseases of the head, & in so much as may be, is helped by dyet & purgations. This happeneth often to yong childre after long sicknesses, who are onely cured by simple remedies, close keeping from cold and great light. The cause externe cometh of strokes or falls. The Cure consisteth much in good dyet, abstaining from all things that doe prouoke and carrie vapours to the head and hurt the eye. Also purgations and bleeding in the armes and corners of the eye, frictions and ventosing of y shoulders with scarrificatiõ, next instill in the eye the blood of a Chicken or Pigeon taken out of the vaine vnder the wing. Rasis doth counsaile to take the gall of a Kidde or Crane, and instill in the eye: which opinion Avicenna holdeth, adding to those galls Saffron, iuice of Lymons, Ammoniacke, hony, and Fennell water; thereafter vse this plaster to comfort made of Beane meale, Althea, Camomill sodden in Claret wine, and water: or a fomentation made of red Roses, Hyzles, Camomill, & Helilot, of each one handfull, seeth them in a little wine and Rose water, foment the eye with sponges.

Signes.

Arnoldus.

Cause.

Iudgements.

Iesus frilius hably lib. 2. de oculis.

Cure.

Blood of a Pigeon or Hen. Rasis lib. 9. morb. parti.



## CHAP. XIX.

Of the web in the Eye, called *Suffusio Cataracta* and *Hypochyma*.

Definition.

Haly Abbas.  
 Azararias.  
 Auicen.  
 Mezues.  
 Albucasis.

Cause.

Paul lib. 6.  
 cap. 21.

Gal loc.  
 affect. 3. cap. 1.

Rasis lib. 9.

Aetius serm.  
 7. cap. 31.

Auicen tertius  
 tertij cap. 19.

Judgments.

**S***uffusio* is a maladie called by the greekes *Hypochyma*; and by the Arabians *aqua* and *gutta*; in english, the Cataract or *Wey*, which is an obstruction of the prunell, by a gathering together of a thicke hardned or congealed humo<sup>r</sup> betwixt the memb<sup>r</sup>ain *Cornea* and humo<sup>r</sup> *Chrystallin*, directly vpon the prunall empashing the sight. There is diuersitie of opinions amongst the auncients, concerning this maladie. Haly Abbas, and Azararias saye, that this humo<sup>r</sup> is gathered betwixt the *Vnea* and *Chrystalline*. Auicen Mezues, and Albucasis, doe esteeme it to bee and remaine betwixt the *cornea* and *vnea*. I am of opinion, that it may remaine in all space that betwixt the *cornea* and *Chrystalline*, and doth mix it selfe with the humo<sup>r</sup> aqueus. The cause is, partly as you haue heard, in the definition; partly Strokes, and falles. Paullus Aegineta sayth, that the cause antecedent, proceedeth of coldnes & imbecilitie of the vituall spirits, specially in old people, and such as haue long sickness and vehement hote feuers, sometime by great vomiting, or traueling & iourneying: It may also proceed of vapours which assend from the stomacke, either by y<sup>e</sup> indigestion, repletion of euill humo<sup>r</sup>s, or vapo<sup>r</sup>s which assend from the stomake. This humo<sup>r</sup> is sent from the braines by the waynes and nerues to the part, or ingendereth in the part it selfe by the weaknes of the facultie *Concoctrix* and *Expultrix*. The Signes when it beginneth, the sicke doth imagine to see before his Eyes little things like flies or moates, like the dust of the sunne, threds of wole, haire, spiders webs, or as it were a circle about a candle when it is lighted, thinking one candle to be two. The iudgments, some are curable, others not, those which be curable are of the colour of rustey Iron, or white, tending to



to the colour of pearles, or of an ashye or green colour like a turkisse, or seawater. All these be good and fit to be couch-  
 ed being ripe, which you shall know thus; first steake the  
 whole Eye of the sicke, then rub the lid of the soze Eye gent-  
 ly with your finger, or thumb, turning it gentlie sometime  
 to one side, sometime to another, but beware in ouer much  
 rubbing, for y<sup>e</sup> troubleth the Eye. Then opning it suddenly, if  
 you perceiue the Cataract spread large & suddenly goe round  
 together as befoze, it is a token that it may be abated: those  
 which are incurable and not to be touched, are of the colour  
 of lead or chalke; Cytrons blacke or yeallow, they be all euil  
 and receiue no curation. The Cataract doth oftentimes take  
 the colour of that humo<sup>r</sup> it is made of, that, which after it be  
 rubbed, doth spread and goes not together againe, but with  
 great difficulty, hardly doth receiue any cure: that which com-  
 meth by strokes, fals, great sicknes & head-ach, are all incur-  
 able, and in those cases if it be taken down, the sicke seeth little  
 or nothing, by reason the humo<sup>r</sup>s and spirits are resolued:  
 Heere you must marke, that some Wayes bee sooner con-  
 firmed, then others: For some are formed in ten moneths,  
 others in five or six yeares, according to the temperature of  
 the person, and nature of the humo<sup>r</sup> whereof it is made: of  
 this diuers examples could be giuen, but for the present I  
 will onely recite two; The one of a seruant of my Lord of  
 Laudum, who had a Cataract five yeares on both his Eyes,  
 which when I did see, I caused him to stay one yeare there  
 longer till it became more ripe, then I did couch them both  
 and restored him to his sight. Likewise a Seruitour of the  
 Lord of Cra ggie Wallale, who had a Tay on his Eyes  
 the space of nine moneths or thereabouts, which was suf-  
 ficientlie ripe, so I did couch it, and restored him in like  
 manner to his sight. Sometimes the Cataract is accompanied  
 with obstruction of the Perue Opticke called *Gutta serena*:  
 this you shall know in demaunding of the patient, if he doe  
 see any shadow against the sunne or fyre: if hee doth see no-  
 thing, there is obstruction; and in that case the couching of  
 the

Cataracts  
incurable

Examples  
of confirmed  
cataracts.



the Cataract doth profit nothing : So it is the best not to  
deale with such Cases. The cure is either by Medicine, or  
Manuall operation : That which is confirmed medicine  
doth profit nothing. I haue oftentimes seen in Paris, & other  
parts, being in practise with learned Physicians, at sundry  
Patients, that all remedies that could be deuised for them,  
were long vsed, profiting nothing, but onely holding backe  
the ripening of the Day, which I did euer marke, and it was  
euer more hurtfull, then profitable to the sicke. Those  
which are taken in the begining may be helped by good forme  
of regiment, Purgations, Blisters, *erichnea* or *nasalea*, mas-  
ticatories, sternitories, colyzes, ventosies, setons, Cauters,  
censurs on the temples, vesicatories, bleeding of the arti-  
ers behind the eare, with diuers other medicaments which  
haue the vertue to discusse and resoluē, which are at length  
set downe by Avicen, Aetius, Rasis, Arculeus, Gordoni-  
us, Saporala, Marc. Catin, Galen, Paulus, Mezues, with  
sundry others, whose opinion I doubt not but the learned  
Physition and Chyrurgion will follow, such as are already  
formed, or yet in forming, and are incurable, either by Phi-  
sicke or manuall operation. Of the which I haue repeated  
diuers sorts which may be prolonged, and kept from grow-  
ing for a long time by the vsage of such medicines which are  
amplie prescribed by those learned Authoꝝ whome I haue  
rehearsed.

Helpes for the  
Cataract by  
Phisicke.

Gualter. bra.  
praxis medici-  
ne.

## CHAP. XX.

### Of the cure of the Cataract by manuall operation.

Auicenna tertius  
lib. 1. cap. 20.

**T**he Cataract being ripe, which you shall know by such  
signes as you haue heard ; the body must bee purged  
and

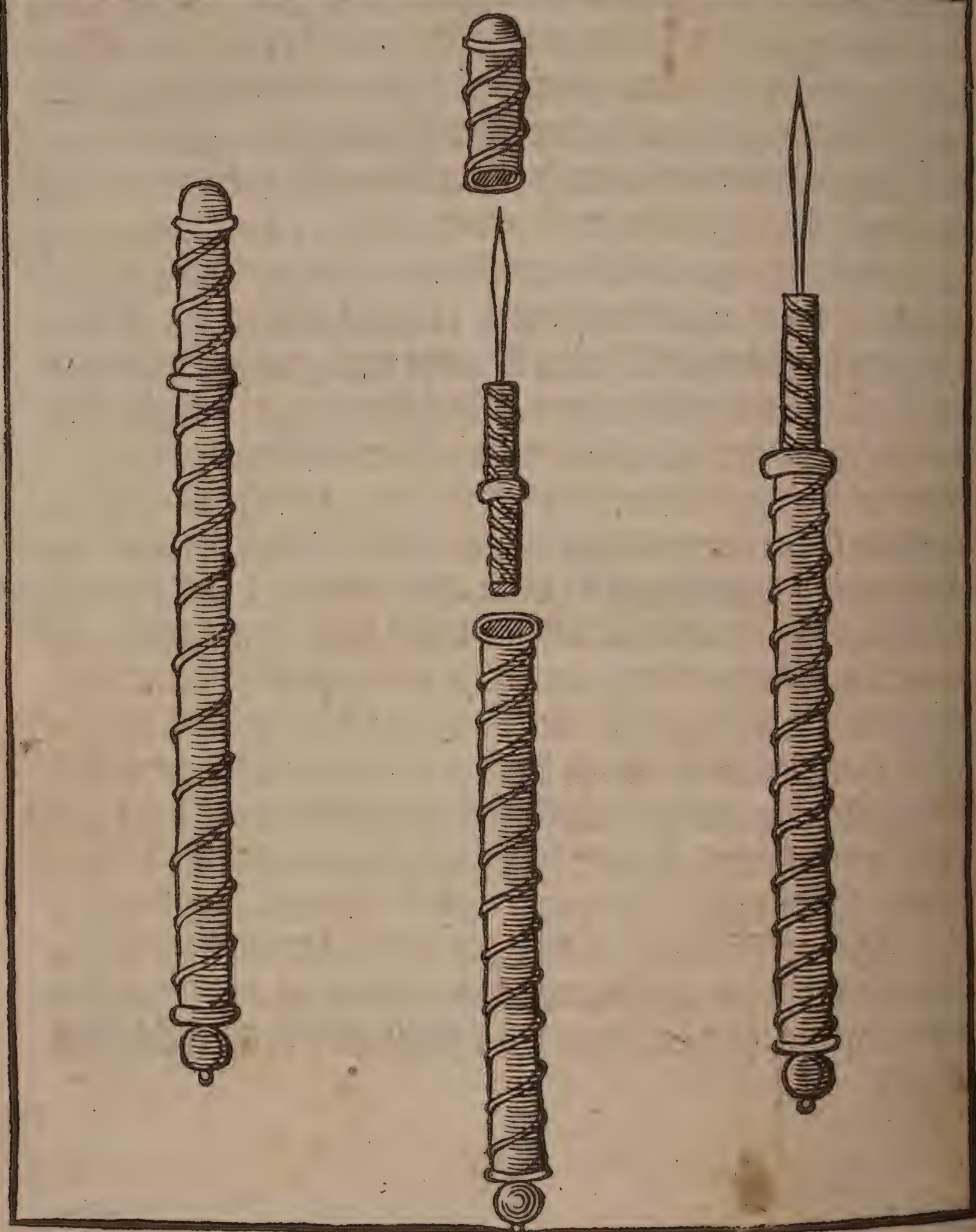


and prepared by medicines, sirups, and bleeding if neede require, then the sicke shall rest a day or two : in case the medicine doth prouoke vapours to ascend to the head, alter the body, and maketh dolour, then the time most proper must be chosen for the cure, which would bee in the Spring time or Temperate time for abating the Cataract. Sommer, or in other times for necessitie, the weather being temperate and drie, neither raynie, windy, ouer hote, nor cold, neither ouer light, nor obscure, the wayning of the Moone is most meete for diuers respects before the operation : The sicke must vse a straight dyet, eating little and drinke very weake two dayes before the cure : As also the whole time of the cure, then craue Gods blessing for his assistance as we should doe in all operations, which being done, we come to the manuell operation, which shall be metest in Goe to the operation in the morning. the morning about eight or nine of the clocke : the patient being weake, giue him a tolke of bread with small wine, or clean Ale, thereafter set him on a fourme or stoele in some light place, in such sort that his face be directly before the Chyrurgion, then one must stand behind him to hold his head fast and stable, and another must hold vp his eye-lidde with his thombe and finger, that the Chyrurgion may see the better, The manner of abating the Cataract. that being done, the Chyrurgion shall sit on the same fourme, or some other seat somewhat higher, directly against the sicke, and so neere, that the hands of the sicke may rest vpon the Chyrurgions thighes, then the Chyrurgion shall stabbe the Needle

Needles



# Needles to abate the Cataract.



The needle  
must bee  
smooth and  
hote.

often in some cloth to make it sound and hote, it must neither  
be rough nor cold to the membraines of the eye; then the ope-  
rator, or some young child who hath a sweet breath, shall  
chew Syonamon, Ginger, Cloves, or Fennell, and spit it  
out and breath three or foure times in the eye of the sicke, it  
being open; & that prepareth the eye, & maketh the Cataract  
more



more thin then he shall cause the sicke to close the whole eye, & hold it close, for if it moue, the soze moueth also, & hindreth greatly the operation. Next, the Chyrurgion shall cause the patient to open the soze eye, and turne it towards the nose: if it be the right eye, the Chyrurgion shall with his finger and thombe of the wrong hand vpon the eye, hold it stable and firme, which being done, the Chyrurgion shall thrust in the Needle, which must be sharpe pointed, a little lower then the middest of the eye, ouerthwart the membranous named Coniunctiua and Cornea, taking alwaies heed not to offend the vaines of the coniunctiue, let it goe towardes the side of the little corner which is neere the temples, directly to the foreside of the cataract, not aduancing ouer farre: some doe counsaile that needle be so conuayed, that it be the thicknes of two six pences from the blacke of the eye, so is it y easier to be chouched lowe, but it is difficiler to pierse: others passe the needle through the middest of the blacke of the eye, conuaying it besoze the Cataract till it come to the top of it, & taking good heede in picking of it, then by little and little turne the needle gently, untill such time as you couch it to the lowest part of the eye, and being there hold it downe a pretty space, then retire the Needle the way that it went in, if it doth rise againe as often chanceth, the dolour being ceased, passe the needle as besoze, but not at the same passage: apply suddenly your apparell, that the eye be neither too light, nor exposed to the eare, which shall be made of whites of egges beaten with Rose water and oyle, and putting cotton or soft caddis, and apply to the eye with a soft cloth wet in the same, and applye on both the eyes, with a restreintive on the forehead and other neere parts made of whites of egges, bol armoni, and sanguis draconis, let all lye for two or three dayes, if other accidents happen not: this forme must be continued for twelue or fiftene dayes, handle it euery day once keeping his bed, and mouing his head so little as may be, & his head must lie higher than the rest of his body: in all this time vse onely broths and other supping meates, abstaining from hard

The needle  
must bee  
sharpe pointed

Diuers formes  
of vsing the  
needle.

It must be  
handled euery  
day once.



Not for to  
mooue the  
teeth till the  
accidents be  
past.

The sick must  
be put to light  
by degrees.

*Cataracta Lac-*  
*tea.*

The cure of  
the *Cataracta*  
*lactea.*

hard meat, or any thing that mooues the teeth; the moouing of the teeth draineth the humors to the eye, and causeth the *Tay* to ascend againe, euer when you dresse the sick, keepe the windowes shut and the candle behind him, ouer great light troubleth the eye and dissipateth the spirits: this order you must obserue till the accidents bee past, then remove the apparell and wash the eye with *Rose*, *Fennell*, or *Euphrase* water, wipe them with a soft cleane cloth, then put a lighted candle before the sicke in a great chamber: cause him first to open one eye, but take heed that neither of the eyes be opened untill six or eight daies be passed. When the cure is perfected and the accidents going, he must yet for a space be kept quiet, holding a Greene cloth before his face, and vse conseruatours of Greene glasse: let him to light by little and little, for being ouer sone exposed to great light, it will be hurtfull. Here you must marke, that sometime in passing the needle some vaines or ariers are opened, so blood issueth which ioyneth with the humor aqueus, in such sort that you would thinke the eye to be lost, yet in three or foure dressings it becommeth well. This I thought good to shew that the yong Chyrurgion be not discouraged: there be some sort of *Tayes* which are so soft that they may not abide the needle, such are called *Cataracta Lactea* being like vnto milke both in colour and substance: in those sorts of *Tayes* the Chyrurgion must with his needle presse it on euery side, so the most grosse part will fall away and become lowe, the thinner part will consume in such sort, that oftentimes the sicke recouereth his health, as I haue sometimes scene: as for a number of other symptoms which happen in the cure of the *Cataract*, you shall take aduise with *Ralis*, *Iesus*, *Rondoletius*, *Petrus Franco*, *Iac. Guilmeau*, and diuers others.

### Chap. XXI. Of the dolour in the Eares.

*Barthol. de pro-*  
*prietatibus*;

**T**he Eare, which is the instrument of hearing, hath the name *Auris*, as *Haurio* to take, because it taketh the voice



voice and sound of things which are brought vnto it, and serueth man for many uses, yet is subiect to diuers diseases, as dolour, aposthume, inflammation, mozmes, vlcers, sounding or noise, deafnes, and sundrie others: The dolour of the eare happeneth many waies, as by cold, heat, or by both, by wormes, &c. Thicke and vapoꝝous humoꝝs which stop the passages, aposthumes, vlcers, crisis of feuers, and such like. Like as there is diuers causes of dolours, so there are diuers kinds. Galen maketh mention of fīue kinds. The signes are knowen by the temperature and wordes of the sicke, as heat, inflammation, distention, heauinesse, and so forth: the distention doth declare vapours or wind, the heauinesse declareth a grosse slimie humoꝝ. The Iudgements, if it happen either with vehement feuer, or in the crise of feuer, it is dangerous: if the dolour be in the cartilage or outwardly in any part of the eare, there is small danger; if within the conduit or hearing of the nerue auditour, it is perilous, and death often ensueth. The Cure consisteth, first in taking away the cause by purging the humoꝝ that offends, by bleeding of the cephalicke vaine and ventosing, if there be inflammation: next, in prescribing of dyet according to the nature of the pain, abstaining alwaies from vapoꝝous things. As for locall remedies, if the paine do proceed of cold, apply hote remedies without; as also instill within made of oyle of Rue, Lillies, & Cuphorbe: if it proceed of heat, apply outwardly, & instill within whites of egges, oyle of Roses, Wormewood, and pap milke: if dolour happeneth by inflammation, draw blood as counselleth Paulus, and foment with Rose oyle, or diachelium dissolved with oyle of Roses, and Anethum, as counsaileth Mezues. If the dolour cometh through wormes in the eares, you shall instill the iuice of Abscynth, Capers, Calaminth, Sentoꝝie, or figs: if it proceede of thicke grosse humoꝝs or vapours, you shall make a decoction of Cammimill and Anethum; receaue the fume of it by a pipe of white Iron or Brasse, otherwise instill iuice of Rue or water of milke distilled with a little Saffron.

Cause.

Diuers kinds  
of dolours in  
the eares.

Signes.

Pau. li 3. ca. 23

Iudgements.

Hip. 2. progn.  
text 15.Gal. 10 meth.  
cap. 7.

Cure.

Arculeus.

Auicen.

Dolour by  
wormes in  
the eares.

Chap.



*Chap. XXII. Of the tumors in the Eares.*

Cause.

Signes.  
Judgements.Yong childre  
dye of it.Cure.  
*Gord. part. 3.**Quers. opera  
medua.*

**T**heir cometh many grievous tumors in the eares, which sometimes possesse the whole eare, otherwhiles some part thereof. The Cause is an hote corrodng humoꝝ, descending from the nerues of the first coniugation, which are dispersed in the conduits of the eares by the dura matter: it doth proceed likewise of a vaporous spirit and cold thicke humoꝝ, which maketh difficulty of hearing, and sometime deafnes. The Signes are manifest. The Judgements, young people are more grievously tormented then old, and do often die befoꝛe it cometh to suppuration, and that within seauen daies, by reason of the great accidents, like as feuer, lightnes, and sounding. In old folkes it cometh often to suppuration, yet the dolour is very vehement by reason of the nerue: also by the membzains foꝛ the propinquitie with the bzaines, nature hath giuen it an exquisite feeling. The Cure consisteth in remedies vniuersall and particular: vniuersall, like as good dyet, abstaining from wine and all fume drinke, blæding in the cephalicke vaine, if age permit; also vsing of glisters, oꝛ some gentle medicines according to the humoꝝ, as you haue heard in Ophthaimia. As foꝛ particular remedies, they differ not much frõ others, except that wee vse no repercussiuës, neither any cold remedies, by reason of the nerue which is cold, deepe, and hollow: if the dolour be vehement with heate, vse oyle of Roses, Mirtills, and Sidoniorum, and a little vinegar mired all together, wherof you shall drop a little in the eare. Quersitanus doth much allow Cats water distilled, if it tend to suppuration, handle it as other aposthumes.

*Chap. XXIII. Of Vlcers in the Eares.*

Definition.

**T**he vlcers which happen in the eares, are nothing but a solution of continuity, with matter purulent either externally oꝛ internally, accompanied with dolour, feuer, and diuers



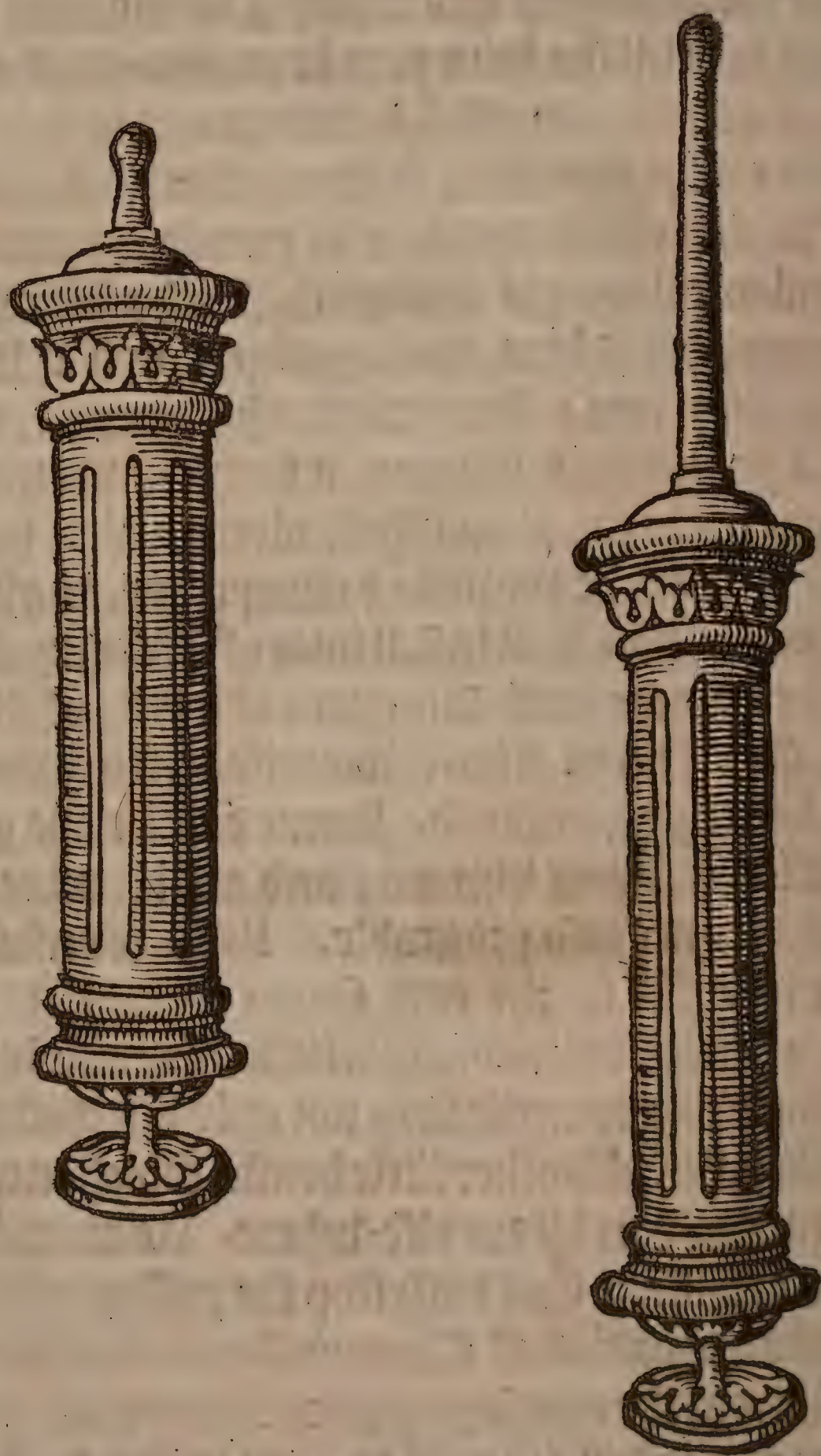
diuers other symptoms. The Cause of these humors doe  
 proceed of a corroding sharpe humor, strokes, falles, defluxion  
 of humors, aposthumes, or any other thing that hath the ver-  
 tue to putrefie & corrode. The signes are manifest. Auen- Cause.  
 Rasis, and Arculeus do say, if either humor sanguinolent, fe-  
 tide, or purulent matter issue out at the eare, it betokeneth  
 some vlcer, grosse humor, or fistule to be there. The Cure  
 doth first consist in good dyet, next in purging the vlcers : if  
 there be vlcers, you shall distill in the eare, oyle of egges, or  
 distilled water of Allom: or this which I do vse, take Leeks & Mez. de agri-  
 boyle them in oyle till the third part be consumed, the straine tud o.ulo.um.  
 them through a cloth, and instill it twice a day in the eare, let  
 the patient lie on the soze side, so the matter will auoide the  
 better. If with these vlcers there be purulency and rotten- Baccanel. li. i. i.  
 nes, you shall instill iuice of Abscynth, with a little honie or  
 iuice of Onions, Woodbine, Burla pastoris, oyle of Turpen-  
 tine, or bitter Almonds : some vse for this purpose, to instill Petrus Hispa-  
 the vrine of a young child warme, it hath the vertue to drie nus.  
 vp the humors in the eares ; of those vlcers Galen hath am-  
 ply spoken. If there be wormes or sheepe-lice, as often hap-  
 peneth in the eare, you shall instill iuice of Abscynth, Capers,  
 or a little Scammone with Vinegar ; also iuice of Abscynth,  
 Calaminth, Centozy, or Figs ; likewise a little wine wher-  
 in hath been boyled Harrubium. Some doe vse the gaule of  
 an Ore distilled in strong vinegar, and are layd hote in the  
 eare, Sternatories are also profitable. Rasis counsaileth for  
 this purpose to instill in the eare succus mentastri, or folia Celsi. li. 6.  
 persicorum, aut nuclea eorum, or a little Aloe dissolved with cap. 7. et 11.  
 water or vrine : this remedie doth not only kill these wormes  
 and sheepes-lice, but also other little beasts which enter in the  
 eare, or ingendereth in vlcers else-where. As touching that  
 grosse humor or passage that doth stop the passage of the eare,  
 you shall make a decoction of Camomill and Anathum, and  
 receiue the fume at the eare, by a pipe or instrument proper to  
 that effect, or else instill iuice of Rue or milke with a little  
 Saffron : it happeneth oftentimes that those little wormes,  
 sheepe-

Decoction for  
 the passage of  
 the eare.



theape-lice, or grosse humors remaineth in the eare, through the debility of nature, or otherwise; for the which I doe vse a Squirt or Siring of brasie or white yron called Pynclum,

*Sirniq, or Squirt for the eare,  
or hollow woundes.*



Gal. 2. ad glan. which hath a mighty vertue in drawing out of any thing that  
is



is inclosed in the eare, being properly made for that effect, as you see in this portraiture.

## CHAP. XXIIII.

¶ Of the tumor which commeth behind the eare called *Parotides*.

**L**ike as in the munctories of other noble parts of our body, nature hath likewise placed in the craige & rootes of the eares, which are the munctories of the braines, certaine little kernels or glands to receaue that matter or vapour venomous deposed by the braines called *Parotides*, which is an inflammation or aposthume of the glands behind the eare. Definition.  
The cause doth proceed of the abundance of pure hote blood, Cause.  
and then it ingendereth flegme with vehement dolour; some- Tra. li. 3. ca. 10.  
time it doth proceed of abundance of cholericke blood, and it doth ingender Eresipelas : sometime it proceedeth of the melancholicke blood, then the tumor is somewhat hard, not reddish without great paine : if it proceede of the pituitous humor, the tumor is somewhat pointed, white, not dolorous: sometime it doth proceede of an humor fallen from the head, because nature hath ordained those glands for that effect : as also because they are soft and cold, and the passages large, whereby the humor commeth : sometime the humor cometh from the whole body, like as in crisis of fevers : it may also proceed of any one of the foure humors, or of all being mixed together. The Signes are tumor, dolour, vehement feuer, pulsation, with such other signes, as you haue heard in Tumors. The Judgements, those which come by crisis without signe of maturation are euill, and going to the internal parts for the most part is mortal, as saith Auicenna: sometime it doth euanish away, and passe with the excrements, as I once obserued of a gentleman in Paris called M. Buchir, who had a Parotide readye to bee opened, the which in one night euanished away with the excrements, as was easilie perceined, and the purulent matter scene with the matter fecall,



- Cure.** call, and so becommeth whole. The Cure is first to vse gli-  
sters, and bleeding in the vaine cephalicke, remembryng if it  
proceed of Crise of feuer, you must not let blood in respect of  
weaknesse and imbecility of the sicke, by the sicknesse prece-  
dent : good dyet must be obserued, vsing things of good diges-  
tion and not vaporous, abstaining from all strong drinke.  
The particular remedies differ not from the cure of other a-  
posthumes, except that we vse no repercussives noz refrige-  
rants, but only maturatiues ; as this, take an handfull of  
Suruckes, Lillie roots halfe an handfull, roste them within  
a peece of wet paper vnder the hote embers, then adde vnto  
them two yolkes of egges, some Hogs grease, and de althea,  
beat all together in a morter, and apply it warme to the soze  
vpon a cloth : or this, take fine white flower two ounces,  
pouder of Lin-seede, and Fennigreeke, of each one ounce,  
Hogs grease 2 vnc. figs halfe an vnc. mixe all with a little  
decodion of Malloves, Althea, and flowers of Camomill,  
of all those make a cataplasme and apply as the former. If  
often doe vse in those tumors this which is maturatiue and  
anodine, and is made of the cromes of white bread, infused  
with milke, Lin-seede, and Fennigreeke, oyle of Lillies, Rose  
flowers, Camomill, and Helilot, of each so much as shall be  
expedient to make a plaister of good consistance, adding to it  
a little Saffron. If the tumor be slow in coming forth, you  
shall vse ventosies and medicaments, attractiues and ano-  
dines, with some degerents in the beginning, like as oyle of  
Lillies, Iris, Camomill, bitter Almonds, and apply on the  
part, with sheeps wooll : it is not best to abide the perfect sup-  
puration of this tumor, but so soone as may be, to open it and  
giue it aire, by which meanes the humor or venomous va-  
pour doth dissipate, so the colour dissipateth and nature much  
dischargeeth. It may be opened either with Cauter or Luncet,  
taking good heede of the nerue, vaine, & artier, whercof  
oftentimes cometh great accidents : after it be opened, you  
must vse suppuratiues, mundificatiues, incarnatiues, and  
desiccatiues, as you haue heard in other tumors.

Rozdo.meth.  
curand.morb.

Cataplasmes  
maturatiue.

Ætius ferm. 6.  
cap. 89.

Ventosies to  
be applyed in  
tumors.

Dodoneus.  
Chelmeus ca.



## (H A P. XXV.

¶ Of the tumor in the Nose called Sarcoma,  
Ofena, and Polypus.

**T**he Nose is a part of the body, by the which the braines doe discharge the excrements : in it happeneth diuers diseases, but chiefly three sorts, which do not much differ one from another. The first is called Sarcoma, which is a tumor or excrecence of flesh against nature. The second is called Ofena, which is a profound ulcer, euill saoured, and dangerous. The third is called Polypus which differeth not from Sarcoma, saue onely that it is not so bigge. Polypus is a tumor or excrecence of flesh, which proceedeth of the bone Methmoides, or y of the nose, and doth sticke fast to it: it groweth by little and little, yet in time it becommeth so great, that it filleth the whole conduit of the nose, sometime it hangeth downe to the lip, hindering the sicke to speake or breathe: sometime it groweth behinde in the hole where the aire commeth to the nose, in such bignes that it filleth and stoppeth the passage of the trache artier, putting the sicke in daunger of suffocation. The Cause is a corrupt thicke viscus humors, which commeth from the head to the nose : also wounds, and posthumies, or ulcers, which are accompanied with a sharpe bitter humor, and doe corrode the part where it is, and taketh roote. The Signes are manifest, as by the narration of the sicke, accompanied with rottennes, euill saoured, liue coloured, sometime hard, others soft. The Iudgements, that which is hard, blacke, dolorous, fetide, malignant, and cankerous, should not be touched, saue only in applying medicaments, refrigeratiues, desiccatiues, and mittigaters of dolour, hauing the vertue to impaish the growing of the disease, as in the chap. of Cancer you haue heard. That which is reddish and brownish with dolour, is difficile, and if it possesse both the sides of the nose, either the sicke doth suffocate

Constant Afr.  
fricanus.

Definition.

Pau. li. 6. ca. 26

Alb. li. 2. ca. 24

Rasis li. 9. ca. 30

Cause.

Haly Abbas

lib. 9.

Gal. decomp.

medic. ca. 3.

Brunus lib. 2.

cap 11.

Signes.

Iudgements.



Cure.

*Faxius lib. de  
meden morb.*

Politricon.

Langfrancus.

Guydo.

Rogerus.

Brunus.

Medicaments  
to consume  
the Polypus.

focate or sleepeth with open mouth. If the excrescence be soft  
 and without dolour, and taken in the beginning, it may bee  
 cured. The Cure is very difficile, as often I haue experi-  
 mented: and in the most part of those tumors, it were  
 better to vse such remedies as you haue heard, then to aduen-  
 ture any cure: alwaies in such as you find tractables, you  
 shall first vse a good regiment tending to sobriety; next, uni-  
 uersall remedies are to be followed, as purgations, bleeding,  
 and rubbing of the head, with such thinges as haue the ver-  
 tue to corroborate the braines, and drie the euill humors ther-  
 in contained. The particular remedies shall bee according  
 to the tumor, which sometimes is hard, otherwhiles soft,  
 such as is soft, white, and not dolorous, is taken away by in-  
 struments, as did some of our ancients most expert Chyrur-  
 gions, who did cut the Polypus all about at the roote, sauing  
 alwaies the cartilage thereafter, with a proper instrument  
 called by the Greeks Polytricon Patheon, did plucke it forth  
 at the roote, and cureth it as other blcers: others doe coun-  
 saile to make incision in the cartilage of the nose, thereafter  
 plucke it out by the roote, which being done, if there remaine  
 any of the roote, as often happeneth, it doth augment in such  
 sort, that better it had been not to bee medled with, then to  
 consume that which doth remaine, causticke pouders may be  
 vsed, like as flos æris and æs vltum mingled with a little ho-  
 ny, and applyed: likewise melted Cauters, Arsenicke, pou-  
 der of Antimonie, Calcantum, Mercurie, Squama æris,  
 oyle or powder of Vitreoll, Atramentum sutorum, strong  
 water, and such like, in the which you may wet tents of cot-  
 ton, and apply with honny or vnguent, Anodine, to such time  
 that the excrescence be consumed, vse alwaies defensives for  
 the inflammation, vnguent Pimpinolis, with a little Ba-  
 lust is good: some doe vse to consume the excrescence with  
 actuall Cauters, conuaying it in with a Canule or hollowe  
 instrument, to saue the other parts from the iniurie of the  
 hote Iron: some of those practickes, I haue seene and assai-  
 ed (but with small successe) except such as haue bene ta-  
 ken



ken in the beginning, and not malignant: hereof my advise is, that you tent not such cures, but rather use such remedies as have the vertue to hold it back, with this water to wash it.

*Rec. balustiorum corticis malorum granato an. lib. 1. galanga, cauda equina, lingua passerina, herniaria an. manipulos duos, radicis bistorta unc. 4 contundantur & simul distillantur, & fiat aqua;* With the which you shall often wash the vicer of the nose, if you should adde to it a little Allom, it were the better: if either of those tumors degender in Cancer, as often times happeneth, have your recourse to the chap. of Cancer.

Water for the Polypus and other vlcers in the nose.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the fluxion of blood at the Nose.

**F**Orasmuch as the blood is the treasure of life, so it is necessary if it flow excessively, that it be stayed by fit remedies, otherwise death ensueth. The Cause of this flux happeneth by opening of the mouth, of some vaines in the nose which happeneth either by cause externe or interne. The externall cause is stroke s, falls, vehement exercise, great heat, and such like. The cause interne proceedeth of too much blood, retention of the moneths, or by the acrimonie of the humors that floweth to those vaines, which doth corrode them: also crisis of fevers, frensies, plurisies, aposthumes of the liver or splene, sometime the flux happeneth without the crise, as from the liver, splene, or matrice, debility of the vertue re- tentrix. The Signes are euident to the sight, besides if it happen through aboundance of blood, there will be great pain in the head, rednesse in the eyes, much blood in the face; if it proceed from the liver or splene, you will know by the dolour of those parts, or from the matrice, you will know by retention of the moneths. The Judgements, if the flux proceed from the matrice, it will be difficile to cure & if it flow much, it is euill and dangerous, that Hydropisie will ensue: if it proceed by the debility of the brains, hardly doth it ever heale: if the colour of the blood be pale, liuide, Greene, or brownish,

Cause.

Flux of blood at the nose come of two causes.

Gord. part. 3.

Signes.

Judgements.

Gualte. Brant.



Cure.  
Ope the vain  
cephalicke.

*Pauli. 2. ca. 24.*

*Paul. loc. citato.*

Liquor to bee  
applyed for  
bleeding of  
the nose.

*Tra. li. 3. ca. 11.*

it is for the most part mortall : if it happeneth with sincops  
or cold of the extremities, it is also mortall ; all flux which  
commeth suddenly and by violence, is euill. The Cure is  
first in good dyet, vsing such thinges as are of good iuice and  
digestion, and haue the vertue to coole and make thicke blood;  
next, if there be plenitude, and age permit, you shall open the  
vaine cephalicke of the arme opposite ; next, vse frictions  
downeward to the inferiour parts, straight ligatours of the  
armes, thighs, testicles, and legges, to diuertise the blood,  
also ventosies, with scarrification on the shoulders : if it  
flowe from the right nostrill, applye ventosies on the li-  
uer, if from the left put the ventosie on the milt, if from both  
the passages of the nose, apply ventosies on both those parts :  
if it floweth in great aboundance, notwithstanding you shall  
let blood the cephalicke vaine on the same side, if strength per-  
mit : if it come from the matrice, you must prouoke the  
monethly courses. The topicall remedies shalbe in applica-  
tion of cold things to the head, temples, necke vaine, iugular,  
and other parts, from whence the cause doth proceed, which  
shall be made either of iuice or distilled waters of Surucks,  
Lettice, Plantane, Bursa pastoris, knot-grasse, Vinca per vit-  
ca, and such others of that quality, wet a linnen cloth in those  
waters or iuices, & apply to the foresayd parts and testicles:  
the like may be done with vinegar, also you may put in the  
nose this remedie which I do commonly vse, that is made of  
Egge-shelles, Breeth halfe an vnc. Gaules 2. drams, San-  
guis draconis, and Truboll, of each halfe an vnc. haire of  
belly of an old Hare small cut a little, mire all those together  
with vinegar, and whites of Eggs put ou tents and put vp in  
the nose, also apply onely vpon the nose, forehead, and tes-  
ticles, with a double cloth that hath been wet in vineger : al-  
so mans blood dyed in powder and put vppe into the nose,  
is very good : or this, take Truboll thre drams, Dragon  
blood, Frankinsence, Aloes, Basticke, of each 1. dramme,  
haire of the bellie of an old Hare small cut halfe a dram, put  
all those in small powder and blow vp into the nose, & make a  
tent



tent of cotton to hold it in. The common people doe onely vse for all fluxes of blood at the nose, Hoggs dirt put in cotton or a small linnen cloth applyed to the nose : also the smoke of it receaved by the nose, is good. Iohn Lebot approueth *John Lebot li. 1. of the coun- try farme.* the hearbe bis malua or Agrimonia to hold in the hand on that side the blood floweth at. As also he counsaileth to write on the forehead of him that bleedeth (with his owne blood) *consummatus est.* Hieronimus Cardanus who hath more curiously than diuinely written, doth counsaile in great fluxe of blood, to pronounce these words following, thrice ouer. *Cardanus cureth by words*  
*Sanguis mane in te sicut Christus fecit in se, Sanguis mane in tua vena sicut Christus in sua Pena. Sanguis mane fixus sicut Christus quando fuit crucifixus.* This forme of cure by words I do not alleage here so much, for any effect I look shal ensue thereupon, as for to content a number of ignorant, arrogant people, who neither will suffer paine, giue leisure, or reward more expences for their health, but do ignorantly vpon presumptiō, imagine that all diseases should bee helped at their pleasure : To such people and to none other, haue I set downe their remedies by words, which I hope in some measure shall satisfie them.

## Chap. XXVII. Of the lips and their diseases.

**T**He Lips which the Grækes do call Cheile, and the Latines Labra or Labia, are so called as sayth Isidorus, a lambendo to licke. *Isidorus.* Constantinus sayth, that the lippes doe *Constantinus.* beautifie the mouth, teeth, and gummes, and doe helpe the forming of the voice, with diuers other commodities, alwayes *Gal. li. 1. de usu partiū.* they are subiect to diuers diseases ; yet for the present I am *The lips beautify the mouth* only mindfull to speake of thre which are most common and may be helped, to wit, Palenesse or liuidity, Fissures, reeds or hacks, with the cut or rawing lip, called the bares lippe. The palenesse or liuidity, hapneth oftentimes by feare or sodaine commotion, which sodaine passion retyres the blood to the centre from whence it came ; which being past, and the



Cause of paleness in the lips.

Cure for the paleness of the lippes.

Cause & cure of hacked lips.

Gordon. part. 3  
cap. 19.

blood settled, the lips returne to their owne naturall. It happeneth also of the disease which is incident to women, called the pale-colours, and must bee cured by purgations, baths, decoctions, sirupes, aperetickes, and such others as shall be devised by the skillfull Physitian: sometime it doth proceed from the mouth of the stomacke, by the great communicatiō which is betwixt the stomacke and lippes by a membaine, as may bee perceined by the trembling of the lips in the time of vometting: that sort of palenes is helped by rubbing of it gently with a piece of sheepe-skinne that hath bene dyed red: or this, take red sandels confused and steeped three dayes in Aquavite or strong vinegar, boyle them all on a soking fire an houre with a little Allom and Gumme of Arabicke, then pass it and rubbe the lips therewith: some for this purpose do vse the rid of Spaine; there be diuers other remedies set downe for this purpose by Lebot. The hacks or rids of the lips, is a solution of continuitie in the tender flesh of the lip, which doth happen by causes externe and interne. The externes are hurts, cold, great heat, wind, dust, and such like. The internall cause is a sharpe salt humor that cometh from the bzaines, and corodeth the part: sometimes it happeneth by crise of feuers ascending from the stomacke, liuer, or all the body. The Cure, if it proceed of heat, you shall rubbe the vlcer with oyle of Roses, Violets, Capons grease, Mussilages of Dragagant extracted in Rose water, and anoynt the part, or take Gumme of Dragagan, Gumme Arabicke, Masticke, tempered with hony of Roses & anoynt the part: if the cause be interne, purge the body, and let blood the vaine of the lip, thereafter anoynt the part with whites of Egges and powder of Masticke: also oyle of Ware, or of Egges: or this pomade thus made, take halfe a pound of Harts or Goates grease, .i. ounce of Hogges grease, wash them well in white wine, thereafter expresse the grease from the wombe, then put to it one graine of Mardin, foure drammes of Cloues in fine powder, Putmegs halfe a dramme, two fine apples halfe confused, infuse all



all in Rose water a whole day, then boyle all in an earthen pot, and stirre it about with a speele of wood, untill such time that the Rose water bee exhale, then straine it through a strong cloth, and adde vnto it one ounce of oyle of sweet Almonds, with an ounce of white Ware, then melt all on the fire, then retire it and let it harden, thereafter wash it with Rose or Damaske water : if you would adde vnto it some red Cozall or Cinabir well beaten on a Marble stone, it will be more drying, and also giue it a reddish colour. I haue often vsed in those hackes, as also those of the handes or other parts, vnguent Roses, Mezues, with a little Ceruse, Camphier, Allom, or a little of the seed of Iusqueam in powder, or any one of those, or a little of each one mixed with the vnguent will suffice, being rubbed on three or foure times a day.

Pomade for  
hacked or sore  
lippes.

Vnguent for  
hacked lips.

### CHAP. XXVIII.

#### Of the Hare-shaw or clouen Lippe, called the Hares Lippe.

**T**he Hare-shaw, is a defectuositie of nature, which hap-  
peneth either by nature, or accident in the Lip, Care, or  
Rose : they or either of them are sometimes found clouen,  
or they come in the world : it is sometime little, otherwhiles  
so bigge, that you would imagine a peece taken out of it : such  
as are little clouen may be cured : if they be much rent, hard-  
ly do they receiue any cure; such as are in old people & of euill  
habitude, are very hardly cured. The Cure, it being either  
by nature or accident, nothing can be added to it, but may be  
ioyned together by a suter incarnatine, as you shall heare in  
the generall chapter of wounds. The forme of the cure is  
this, first purge the body if the person be of age, then dyet the  
patient the night before ; next, place him in a light part, then  
with your left hand lift vp the one side of the lip : then with a  
Sharpe

Definition.

Iudgements.

Cure.

Cels. l. 7. ca. 9.



How to cure the Hare-shaw  
 Sharpe bistoꝝ oꝝ launced curbe, cut the outward skinne till you come to the middelt of the sent, which being done, you shall lift vp the other side of the lip and doe the like, so both sides shall be altogether like vnto a great wound, let them bleed a little to discharge the part and auoyd inflammation, which being done, ioyne the sides together so iustly as you can, then thrust a needle through both the parts of the lip, taking a reasonable gripe, letting there the needle remaine: then turne y<sup>e</sup> thread about it after the forme you see aged women oꝝ Tayloꝝ doe, when they keepe the needle on their breast.

A needle to  
 be vsed for the  
 Hare-shaw.

*Protrature*



## Portraiture for a clouen Lip.

187



If the needle be too long, cut the end of it with Tenals incis-  
sues : if the clift be long, you may thrust two needles one  
aboue another : if by those meanes the sent doth not ioyne  
together, but be too straight, in that case you shall in each side  
a little from the sent, make a little incision circular in the out-  
ward skin, in forme of an halfe mone, so the side shall ioyne  
more



more easily : beware in vsing any violence, for the which you must consider before the operatiō, if the fenth be so large that it cannot ioyne easily, it must not be stretched to ioyne, least you make a greater deformitie, besides it will bee an hinderance to the speech : y<sup>e</sup> needle passed as is sayd, you shall put vpon y<sup>e</sup> wound an astringēt, with compres in Dreccate, y<sup>e</sup> emplaster of Betonica or such like : it doth cōmonly conglutinate in 8 or 10 days, after y<sup>e</sup> which time cut out the thred & plucke out the needle, correct y<sup>e</sup> superfluous flesh if any be, & induce the siccatrice. As touching the incisions which are made in forme of an halfe moone, handle them as simple woundes in the flesh. And as touching Clifts or fenths in the eares or nose, they be handled after the same forme.

Astringēt for  
the Harshaw.

### Chap. XXIX. *Of the mouth, tooth, & toothach.*

*Gal. i. 2 & ii  
de usu partū.*

Iliodorus.

Gregorie.

*Gal. i. de offib  
& ii. de usu  
partū.*

**T**HE Mouth, which is called in Greeke Stoma, and in Latine Os, is scituated nere the braines, like as all the instruments sensitives : it is the instrument of crying in beasts, and speaking in men, and is called by Iliodorus the messenger of the soule, for wee speake by the mouth that which before we conceiue in soule and thought. Gregorie sayth, that the mouth hath many keepers, to the end the soule and wit may deme and aduise first what to speake, before any thing be spoken : it serueth for many uses, and in it is contained many notable parts, but here I will onely touch such as I am mindfull to entreat of, like as the teeth, gummes, tongue, Vuula clap, or pap, Amygdals, beginning at the teeth, called by the Greekes Odontes, and in Latine Dentes. which are of the number of bones, and be in number thirty and two, to wit, eight called Incisores, because they cut the meat we eate, then followeth the foure called Canini, for the similitude they haue with hounds teeth: they be sharpe and round pointed, and breake the hard meat which the incisores cannot cut : the third sort is called Molares, and are in number twenty, & in some sewer, they do guide the meat after



after it bee broken by the other teeth, and serue for decoying the mouth, chew the meat, helpe the speech and pronounciation : also by them we may prognosticate long or short life, as witnesseth Hippocrates in his presages : and they be sub- *Hippo. in his Presages.* iect to diuers passions and diseases, as dolour, corruption, perforation, caue or holed, and diuers others, as you shall heare at length in the chapter following. As touching the tooth-ach or dolour of the teeth, I am not of opinion with some of our ancients, who thought the teeth to endure any dolour being a bone, and no bone hath any feeling. Aristotle sayth, *Arist. 1 & 3. de anima.* that neither bones nor nailes haue any feeling, they being a terrestrious matter : that dolour which grieues vs, is at the roote of the tooth, either in the nerue or ligament which com- *Cels. li. 6. ca. 9.* meth to it, and is most cruell of all paines. Galen saith, amongst all maladies and passions which are not mortall, that of the teeth is most painfull vnto man, for the proximity and communication that the nerue hath with the braines and membaines : thereof some haue beere of opinion, that there are wormes which do engender in the teeth, and cause great paine, perswading the common people to the same : by which opinion the common Barboe Chyrurgions doe commit great error in plucking out of innumerable teeth which might well serue. There are no wormes that procure this dolour, but onely corrosion of the nerue by the acrimonie of the hu- *Wormes are not ingendered in the teeth.* mor, as may be perceiued after the tooth is plucked out, and broken, y<sup>e</sup> end of the nerue which is inserted in it, is corroded and growing red, which nerue is subtile and delicate, that you would thinke it to moue : we see diuers who haue their teeth almost all consumed without any paine; others hauing only a little hole in the side of the teeth, haue intollerable paine, *Rondo. meth. curand. morb.* which cometh by the humor that corrodeeth the nerue. The Cause of the tooth-ach is externall and internall : externall is falles, hurts, great heat, cold, breaking of hard things, and too much curiositie in rubbing the gummies, and taking away the flesh at the roote of the teeth : as also in being too negligent in cleansing the teeth after meat, so the filth remaineth  
and



*Gal. de compo.  
med. per locos  
cap. 4.*

Signes.

*Gal. de compo.  
medi. &c.*

Judgements.

*Hip. 4. aph 53.*

*Hippo. in his  
Presages.  
Cure.*

and doth putrefie and corrode. The cause interne proceeds of humors, which hauing acrimonie and quality maligne, that commeth from the head as happeneth in Megrimis, which humor doth flow to the gummes and roots of the teeth: also rotten sharpe vapours ascending from the stomacke, and maketh corrosion of the teeth and nerue, by the which ensueth extreame paine; it may also proceed of any of the foure humors: aged people which are much subiect to defluxions of the lightis or braines, are much subiect therevnto. The signes are euident and may be knowen by the patient and assisters, as also by the cause: for if the humor doth proceede from the head or gummes to the nerue, there will be great dolour and heauines in the head, continuall rhume falling on the part, with great euacuation of flegme: if it bee of vapours which ascend from the stomacke, there will bee great heauines and dolour in the part: if the cause proceed of the foure humors or either of them, as sometimes happeneth, there will be rednesse, heat, corrosion, punction, hardnes, palenes, with great spitting. The Judgements, if the dolour of the teeth proceed from the gums, the dolour is not remoued by plucking forth of the tooth: if the paine proceed from the nerue or ligament, by remouing of y<sup>e</sup> tooth, the paine ceaseth, by reason the matter which did corrode the nerue, was retained by the tooth, and could not easily passe away: if the tooth be pale and blacke in feuers, it is an euill signe: if aride and drie like a peece of wood in hote feuers, it is mortall. The Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies: the generall shall first be in the forme of dyet, eschewing all thinges which may prouoke great heat or great cold, for they are both hurtfull: abstaine from all sharpe, soure, sweet, viscos, and vaporous thinges, and also milke: you shall vse thinges of easie digestion, abstaining from all exercise that may impasse the same: next, if there be plenitude of humors, purge the bodie, especially the head: if the euill proceed of heat and plenitude of blood, take blood of the cephalicke vaine, and apply ventosities on the shoulders with scarrification, open the Canules vnder



der the tongue, that of the lips, and rip the roote of the teeth, for that doth discharge the part. The particular remedies shall be according to the cause, as if it proceed of an hote humoꝝ, you shall retaine it in your mouth and wash it in Vinegar, wherein hath been boyled Iulqueam, Mandragar, heads of Poppie, Letice, and Endiue, annoynt externally with oyle of Roses, Poppy, Mandragour, apply to the soze tooth ʒ. Dram of Oppium dissolued with oyle of Roses, oꝝ Phylonium persicum: if it proceede of a cold humoꝝ, you shall wash your mouth and teeth with warme wine, wherein hath beene boyled Sage, Betonie, Hynt, Pariter, Calaminth, Fennell, Marrubium, and Tormentill, annoynt outwardly with oyle of Cammomill, Laurell, Lillies, Cinnaper, and Rue, apply a little platter of Masticke oꝝ Gumme, alemny on the arter of the temples, to intercept the humoꝝ, you shall also chewe in your mouth a little of the roote of Angelica, oꝝ a cloue of Girusell, and put a little of either of those to the tooth. I doe vse in those dolours, to apply externally the crummes of white bread boyled with milke, yolkes of egges, and fresh butter, adding thereto some Saffron, oyle of Camomill, and Lillies, apply it warme betwixt two linnen clothes vpon the swelling oꝝ soze; diuers other anodine cataplasmes and plasters may be vsed for this purpose.

*Iohannis Serapionis.*

*Pau. li. 3. ca. 26*

Annoint the tooth outwardly.

### CHAP. XXX.

Of the corrupted and hollow tooth, and the way to cure it.

**T**he tooth as I haue sayd, is subiect to diuers passions and grieues, wherein the hand of the skillfull Chyrurgion is required: like as corruption, perforation, holed, caruinous, gnashing oꝝ grinding, trembling, Stupiditie, leuerty oꝝ blacknes, and unstable, for the cure whereof you shall heare familiar remedies in few words. The Cause of corruption which happeneth in the teeth you haue heard in the last

*Tra. li. 3. ca. 13.*

Cause.



Cure.

Oyles and li-  
quors for the  
corrupt tooth.*Albuc. li. i. c. a.*  
21. & 22.Error by the  
Polican.

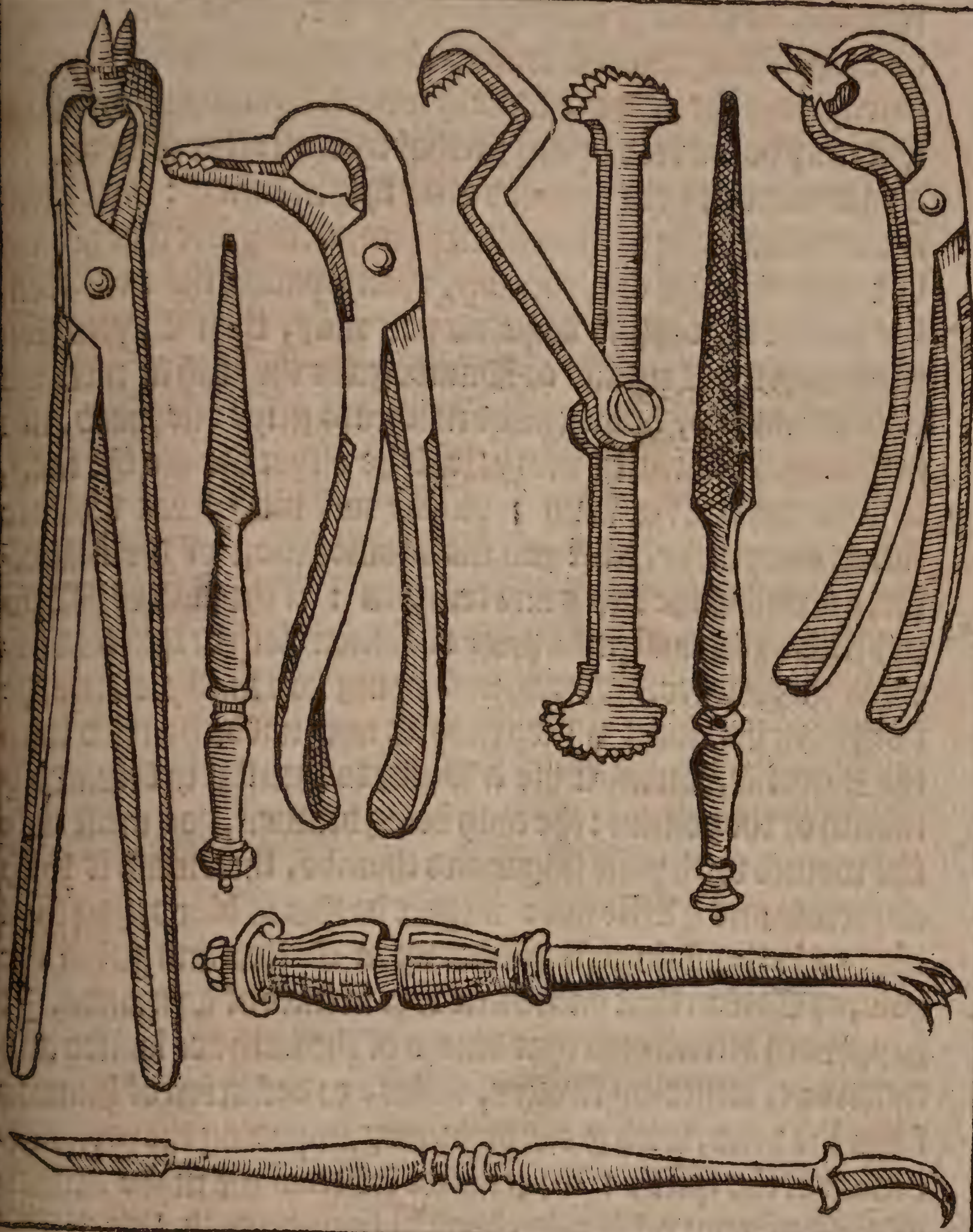
last Chapter. The Cure of corruption or perforation is, first in the forme of dyet, abstaining from milke, green fruit, all hard things, vomiting, and things of euill digestion: wash the mouth and corrupt tooth with Claret wine, wherein hath been boyled a little Tormentill, & Harrubium next, touch the part corrupt with a little Aquavite that is well rectified, Orég water or oyle of Vitreoll, Sage, Cloues, Sope, a little Cotton in either of those, and apply to the corrupt or hollowed tooth; beware the causticke oyle touch no other part: if by applying of either of these thinges you profit not, you must vse the actuall Cauter or hote yron, made according to the proportion of the corrupt part; for great personages we make those Cauters of gold or siluer, and applye burning hote, as the other, to the corrupt & hollow part: sometimes the corruption is in the side of the tooth, which by time might be corrupt in that case: you shall file away that which is spoiled, so y remainēt shall serue for your vse, the file is vsed in such teeth as are moze eminent than others, also in broken teeth which do hurt the tongue and lips: by vsing of those remedies, the corruption and paine ceaseth, except alwaies the tooth bee so corrupt, that the nerue bee corroded; and if so be, the best way is to plucke out the tooth, like as many new doe but vn- skilfully and ignozantly for euery small dolour or græse, e- uer perswading and affirming that to bee the most sure and soueraigne remedie, and oftentimes which is worst, they plucke out one or two of the hole teeth and leaueth the cor- rupt, as I haue sometime seen by the vnskillfull handling of that Instrument, which is made with three branches called the Polican:

*Instruments*



*Instruments to pull out, cutt, and file  
superfluous teeth.*

193



Whereby often ensueth such fluxe of blood, that some haue  
dyed, or at least very difficile to be stayed: such ignorants  
differ much from the opinion of our auncients, who did so  
esteem of their teeth, that they neuer drew them untill they  
were very loose, and almost fallen of themselves. In witnesse  
whereof, I haue read that in the Temple of Apollo their  
was



*Mesues de e-  
gritud. dent.*

*Pa.li. 6.ca.: 8.*

*Cels.li.7.ca.12*

*Alb.li.2.ca.33*

*The artificiall  
tooth.*

was a Turkishe or Dauier to plucke out teeth, made of lead, shewing vs that the teeth should not bee plucked out till they be very loose and almost waited: but if the teeth be outwardly corrupted, & the nerue corrodeith with extreame paine, y<sup>e</sup> hardly it may be suffered by any; in that case (all other remedies set a part) it must bee remoued after this manner: first scitu-  
ate the diseased in a conuenient place, in such sort that he may be lower than the Chyrurgion, than separate the flesh from the roote of the tooth so deepe as you may, then Chyrurgion shall with the Turkishe or Dauier gripe the tooth so nere the roote as may be, taking heede neither to gripe ouer hard, nor incline the Dauier too much, least he either breake the tooth, or iaine where it is fixed: plucke not with great violence nor at one plucke, least you make dislocation of the mandible, or trouble the eares and temples: if the tooth be hollow or brittle, you shall put a peece of linnen cloth or thin lead betwixt the Dauier and tooth, in so doing you shall preserve the tooth from breaking: such teeth as may not be handled with the Turkishe, you must vse a Pusar to thrust it in towards y<sup>e</sup> mouth or the polican: the tooth being drawen, you must close the wound with your finger and thombe, then wash it with Dreccate and a little salt: if there be flux of blood, you shall apply a little astringent powder vpon Cotton and put in the hole, or Cotton that hath bene wet in iuice of Lymonds. It happeneth oftentimes that diuers of the teeth are loined and fallen out, either by strokes, falles, or defluxion of humors from the head, with great deformity, impeding the pronounciation of the speech: for remedie whereof we make artificiall teeth of Quoy, Whales bone or hounds teeth, which shall be fastened by a wyze or threed of gold, passing the wyze or threed betwixt y<sup>e</sup> whole tooth on either side next adiacent, then put the artificiall tooth in the part, then knit the threed fast through about the ends of the threed, and cut it so nere as you can; if any portion rest vncut, passe it betwixt the whole tooth, that the tongue or lippes be not hurt by it. I am not mindfull to insist in this practicke as I might, because it is  
seldome



seldome practised. It happeneth sometimes that two teeth doe spring from one roote, which is a great deformity, and often offends the tongue within, or the lips, sometime one tooth is longer than the rest: for the cure of both, you shall cut them with *Penals incisives* made purposely for that use: sometime the teeth doe gnash and grinde by repletion of humors from the head, debility of the nerves which moueth the chafes, by wormes in the stomake, or intestines, or rotten humor in the stomacke, for the which purge the stomacke and head, rubbe the necke behind with the oyle of *Aspicke*, and *Camemill*: the teeth sometime doe tremble, chiefly the incisores which hath but one roote. The Cause proceedeth of ouer great fluxe of humiditie which falleth on the gums, as happeneth sometime to such as doe sweat of the french sickness, in the which the teeth not only trembling, but often fall out: for the remedie whereof, medicaments, astringents, and drying must be vsed, such as *Allom*, *Puts of Ciprus*, rootes of *Wistort*, red *Roses*, and such like, of the which you may make a decoction: also water wherein hote Steele hath bene quenched, called *Aqua ferrata*, rubbe the gums and rootes of the teeth therewith: you may also for this purpose vse a little *Allom* water, or a little salt that hath bene melted in the mouth: these things doe drie vp the humiditie, but you must beware in vsing ouer drye and astringent things, and such as doe breake the teeth, as *Putgals*, *Pomgranats*, and other of like quality. Sometime there happeneth a stupidity in the teeth, which doe proceed of some astringent or sharpe humor, either at the rootes of the teeth ascending from the stomacke: it happeneth also by imagination or apprehension, as when the sicke seeth another eat solner fruit, or any thing that is solner or sharpe tasted: for remedie whereof, keepe warme wine in the mouth with decoction of it, or with milke; eat *Almonds*, and rub the teeth with kernels of *com-mon Puts*.

*Pa.li.3.ca.26.*

*Alphon.ferrus Neopolitanus.*

*Paraloco ciat.*



## CHAP. XXXI.

¶ Shewing the way to helpe the mouldy, blacke, hollow, or euill saoured tooth.

Cure.

Liquors to  
make white  
teeth.

*Mc. ues. de e-  
gritud. dent.*

*Pa. li. 3. ca. 26.*

The tooth groweth blacke, mouldy, holloke, and euill saoured, either by rotten humors fallen from the braines, vapours ascending from the stomacke by receiuing the fume or vapour of quicke-siluer, sleeping with open mouth, or by not cleansing the mouth, tongue, teeth, halfe, and breast; in the morning, by spitting out of that which was collected in the night: For remedy wherof, you shall with a proper instrument of yron, rase and rubbe away such scurfes, mouldynesse, and filth which is about the teeth, thereafter wash the mouth and teeth within with wine, wherein hath bene boyled red Roses, and Marubium, then dye them well with a cloth; then to make them white, you must vse sharpe drying things which haue a vertue deterliue, for the which I doe vse y<sup>e</sup> oile of Vitreol Sulphure, strong water which the goldsmiths doe vse, wet a little sticke like a Goose quill in either of those liquors, and rubbe the teeth therewith twice or thrice, and they will become white, beware in touching the flesh about the rootes of the teeth, for these liquors doe corode the flesh; this being done, rubbe them with Rose water, the rootes of Aristoloea rotunda, or Aliea: If you like rather other remedies than chemicall oyles, vse either of these following: Take the roote of Aristoloea rotunda, and burne it with a little of Harts-horne, Masticke, Salt, and some hony, wrappe them within Sage leaues, and burne them to ashes, put all in fine powder and rubbe the teeth therewith, otherwise take white Corall, Marble, and burnt Salt, of each 2. Drams, Cloues 1. Dram, make of these a fine powder to rub the teeth: Or this, take the bone of Fish, Harts-horne and Barly flower, of each .j. Drams, Alope, *Aueron-  
zie*, *Aristoloea*, of each .j. Drams, shelles of Oysters and egges burnt, of each 1. Dram, put these in fine powder, and vse



vse as the former, or this which I doe euer vse; Take  
 white bread, Corall, Harts-horne, of each one dimid. vnc.  
 allom. i. dram. Sage and Roses of each one halfe handfull,  
 Oyster and Egge-shelles, of each one two handfull: put all  
 in fine powder, and vse it for the teeth: or this, Take 2.  
 ounces of the powder made of cannall, cloues, and mace, of  
 each one dim. drag. Calaminth, Aromaticke, coyle of Cy-  
 tron, and yrons of Florens, of each two scruple: incor-  
 porate all with fine hony and vinegar, and make a past in  
 forme of an opiate to rubbe the teeth morning and eue-  
 ning, then wash the teeth with claret wine, and rubb them  
 with a peece of fine Scarlet that hath bene died in graine,  
 and wet in Vinegar Squilliticke, or this, *Rec. Corallorum,*  
*rubrorum, Bole Armenici, Thyrrus, Margaritarum, Sanguis* *Fumanellus.*  
*Draconis, Corticis Cancrorum, ana pugil. i. Misce &*  
*fiat pulvis.* Or this, *Rec. Corallorum rubrorum, Ossium* *Pavus.*  
*Dactylorum Pumicis, Ossium cepia salis vsti; ana, quantum*  
*sufficit:* or this which was used by Messilina Augusta, *Messilina Au-*  
*prescribed by Scribonius Largus. Rec. Cornuum Cervi* *gusta.*  
*vstorum in ollam novam ad cinerem redactorum, vnc. i. Masti-*  
*cis, vnc. i. Salis Armoniaci, 6. Drach. Fiat Pulvis:* Also this  
 Lauement which comforteth the Braines, fortifieth the  
 teeth, and maketh the mouth smell well; first you shall  
 wash the mouth with vinegar, or wine, wherein hath  
 bene boyled Annyseeds and Cloues, then rub the teeth  
 with the leaues of Sage, shell the skins of Citron, and make  
 a subtle powder of cloues, Nutmegs, and iuyce of Florens  
 and rub the teeth: or this, which is most good for comfort-  
 ing the head, making the breath sweet, purgeth the gums,  
 and rotes of the teeth; take Vinegar, Squilliticke, wel wa-  
 ter, or fountaine water, dim. English pint, Rose-water,  
 Masticke, Bolarmeni, Dragon blood, and burnt Allom of  
 each dim. ounce, Cynamon, 4. dram. mixe and boile all  
 at one soking fire, a quarter of an houre, adding thereunto  
 4. ounces of purified hony, make a decoction to rubb and  
 wash the gummies besoze and after meat: the Vinegar  
 Squilli-



Squilliticke is good for the teeth and gums, it hath a mighty vertue to comfort the teeth, and tie the gummes: sometime there happeneth holes in the teeth without paine, and yet vnseemely, being commonly blacke, and filled with filth, which maketh euill smell; for remedy whereof, you shall take burnt Allom, Myrre, and Masticke, of each diuid. drag, incorporate all with white Virgine Mare, & fill vp the hole, or corroded part, the which you may take out, or put in at your pleasure. Those be the most common remedies which I haue ordinarily vsed and sene practised, so it may suffice in this place, by reason I am to entreate further in my Booke of the Infantment; besides there bee infinit good remedies set downe for this purpose by Vicerus Rundoletius, Alexis Bairus, Fumanellus, and diuers others, whose helps the skillfull Chirurgion may vse.

## CHAP. XXXII.

**¶** Of the superfluous flesh, which happeneth at the roote of the teeth, called Epaulis, and Paraulis.

Definition.

*Paulus Lib. 6.*

*cap. 27.*

*Bacca Lib. 2.*

*de Consen.*

*Med.*

*Cause.*

Signes.

**E**Paulis is thought by our Ancients to be a tumor, or Excrecence of flesh, that commeth at the rootes of the teeth, chiefly betwene the molares, it doth augment by little and little, and augmenteth sometimes to the bignesse of a hennes egge, accompanied with feuer and dolour: the cause proceedeth of a sanguine, cholericke, or a sharpe biting humor, which commeth from the head, also euill rotten vapours ascending from the stomacke, and corrodes the Gums as happeneth after rotten feuers, or euill vlcers in the mouth, chiefly, of such, who haue not bene well cured of the French sicknesse.

The Signes are manifest to the sight, accompanied with



with feuer and dolour, as saith A vicer.

The Judgements, it groweth to such greatnesse, that oftentimes it putteth the teeth out of their owne place, sometimes it possesseth both the iawes in such sort, that the sicke can neyther open nor close his mouth, sometimes it is dolourous, blacke, hard, and skirrous, and in that case you must beware to irritate, or vse causticke remedies, but onely medicaments refrigeratiues, desiccatiues, and mitigatiues of paine, as you haue heard in the Chapter of Schirre.

The Cure consisteth first in the euacuation of the euil, sharpe and rotten humour, then vse desiccatiues, and discutients, in the which if you profite not, you must apply causticke powders too, to consume the superfluous flesh: If it neither dissolue, nor can be consumed with powders, you shall vse incision; if the excressens be soft and tractable, cut away the most part of it, and consume the rest of it with powders, and produce the cicatrice with such gargarisms as you shall heare in the Chapter of Ulcers in the mouth: if it bee very bigge, and may not be taken away at the roote, yee shall knit the excressens with a strong threed, then tye it faster and faster every day, untill such time it be cut, and fall away of it selfe. I haue found this Ligatur more sure then cutting, neyther so much to be feared, for flux of bloud, or inflammation: that which doth remaine after the fall of the threed, you shall consume with powder of Mercurie, Allom, Vitreol, and such like: If it be residue, as oft happeneth, you shall knit it at the roote as before, and cauterize it with actuall cauter, oyle of vitreoll, water of separation vsed by the Gold-smithes, and such others of that nature. As touching Paraulis, it is an inflammation in some part of the gummies: for the which you must vse discutients, and if it dissolue not, but cometh to suppuration, it must be opened with diligence, for feare the gummise be corrupt, which if it so happen, touch the corrupt part gently with oyle of Vitreol, or strong wa-

Judgements.

Paulus Lib. 6.  
cap. 27.

Cure.

Albu. Lib. 2.  
cap. 28.

Paraulis.

Actius serm.  
8. cap. 24.Gal. de compo.  
medi. cap. 1.Auicenn. lib. 8.  
ca. 1.



ter. The forme of the opening must be with a Bistozz curb; making the ouerture reasonable bigge, thereafter wash the mouth with Claret wine wherein hath bene sodden Mar-  
rubium, then stay the flux of blood by such meanes as you  
haue heard in the Chapter of corrupt Teeth, cleansed with  
honic of Roses, strong wine, and Sartatolla, vse Gargari-  
ses, Detergiues, and desiccatiues, as you shall heare in the  
next Chapter.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

## Of Pustules and Vlcers in the mouth.

Definition.  
*Gal 6. Meth.*  
*cap. 4.*

**T**hose Pustules and Vlcers which oftentimes possesse  
the vpper parts of the mouth and gums, are named by  
the Greekes *Apthe*, and by Avicen *Altolla*, in vulgar the  
water Canker, and are of a white fierie qualitie, for the  
most part incident to young Children, sometime to those of  
elder age.

Cause.  
*Calen loco ci-  
tato.*  
*Avicen sexta  
tertiū, cap. 23.*

They doe procede either of corruption or acrimonie of  
the milke which the childre cannot digest; Also by corrupti-  
on of humors in the Purse. It happeneth to those of elder  
age, through abundance of vicious corrupt humors which  
flowe to the mouth; also by the acrimonie and bitternesse of  
the nourishment which we eate and drinke.

Signes.  
*Aetius. serm.*  
*8. ap. 29.*  
*Iudgementes.*  
*Pan us lib. 1.*  
*cap. 10.*

The Signes are euident to the sight, and are known  
by the colour. Those which doe procede of blood, the colour  
is red, hote, the part tumified; if it procede of flegme, the  
colour is white, with little dolour; if of choller, it is paine-  
full coloured, with some tumor, punction, and heat; if of  
Melancholie, the colour appeareth blackish which is worst  
of all; those which bee blacke and scurfie like the crust of  
bread, it sheweth great corruption and aduersion of humors,  
very dangerous, and for the most part deadly: those which  
bee red or white, are not malignant: such as are superficiall,  
are easilie cured, those which penetrate more profunditye  
are



are difficile.

The Cure consisteth in euacuating the euill humors which is the cause, then prescribe a dyet to the Nurse that is colde and humide, to correct the acrimonic of the milke, causing her to vse such things as the child cannot take, which

Cure.

*Leonel. Faven.  
de medendis  
mo. bis.*

shall be done by the aduice of the skilfull Physition, rub the childes mouth with iuice of Lettice : If those Vlcers bee very humide, take Myrthe, Put-gals, the barke of Incense, bruiſe all well together with a little redde Roses, and annoynt those Vlcers ; or else wash them with Wine, and a little powder of Galls, baſke of Granads, and a little Allom : If the Vlcers bee white, take Myrthe and Saffron, of each 1. drag. white Succorie 2. drag. beate all and apply on the Vlcers : If the Vlcers be blacke, touch them with a little Rose water, wherein hath been dissolved a little Eye Copris, called *Calcanthum* : for these vlcers I doe commonlie vse a lavenient which is made of Sage, Zeday, woodbine, Wimpernell, *Bursapastoris*, and Wyer leaues of each halfe a handfull, boyle all in running water, adding thereto honie of Roses, and boyle it till halfe be consumed, putting thereto a little Diameron, wash and rub the childes mouth twice or thrice a day therewith. I do also vse sometime for this purpose Plantine water, sirupe of Roses, with a little Romaine Vitreoll, and annoynt the vlcers gentiye therewith, with a small Linnen cloth or a piece of Scarlet, twice or thrice a day, with such other remedies as you shall heare in my Booke of Young Children.

*Mesues de  
egritudinibus  
Oris.*

As for the cure of those in elder age, after purgation be used according to the humor which demanes, you must let blood in the cephalicke vaine, those of the tongue and under the lippes, Wentosies on the shoulders, and Gargarises, such as this, take an handfull of Barbarie, Plantine, *Bursapastoris*, Roses, Violet, Chesbow, of each a certain quantitie, boyle all in water till the halfe be consumed, ad to it honie of roses, or sirupe of roses, with a little allom. If there be putrefaction, ad a little *Calcanthum*, or *Egiptiacke*; otherwise, vse

Cure.



use this, take decoction of Barly, Pimpernell, Plantane, Agrimonie, or Roses, of each foure ounces, make a decoction, in the which you shall dissolue honie of Roses, and Diameron, of each halfe an vnc. wash the Mouth and Ulcers therewith : the Ulcers then being so cleansed, wash them with stilled water, Plantane, or some Rose water, and Alom mingled together, with those wash the Mouth twice or thrice a day, by which meanes they will cicatrice and heale.

### CHAP. XXXIIII.

## Of the diseases and passions which befall the Tongue.

Definition.

Constantine.

Gal. li. xi. de  
usu partium.

Glē. 4. de sum.

**T**he Tongue, which is celled by the Grækes *Glotta*, in Latine *Lingua*, is the instrument of speaking and tasting, as saith Constantine. It is composed of an hollow and spongius flesh, to the end the saour and smell may passe and come the easier to the nerues which make the taste. It hath diuers nerues for feeling and mouing with diuers vains & artiers full of bloud, for which it is red coloured, and serueth for diuers vses ; as also subiect to diuers passions, as Tumors, inflammation, vlcers, Aposthumes, Purites, difficultie of speech, called *Difficultas loquendi* by the Latines, and by the Grækes *Mogilalos*, lispig in speech called by the Latines *Blesitas* and by the Grækes *Tranlotis*, which is when one cannot pronounce certaine letters in speaking, as K. and T. Stanting, called by the Latines *Balbuties*, and by the Grækes *Psellos* ; which is, when one cannot pronounce the wordes except they omitte some syllables. *Hesitantia lingua* called *Issenophania* in Græke, is when one cannot conioyne and assemble the wordes together : as for *Ranula*, you shall heare in the next Chapter; Ulcers you haue heard ; as for the Cure of the rest you shall heare in the Treatise entituled The poore mans guide Here I am onely mindfull to speake of those two which are most common



common and difficile to be suffered, to wit the retraction or shortning of the tongue called the *Phyllu*, and the tumor or excrescence vnder the roote of the tongue called *Ranunculus*. The retraction or tying of the tongue called by the Latines *Ligatio* or *Abbreniatio lingnae*, and by the Grekes *Anyglosson*, is when the ligament membranous of the tongue is shorter then it should be, either impeding the speech or pronunciation; the which happeneth by nature or by accident. By Nature as we see in young children; by accident as happeneth in woundes, vlcers, or hard Ciccatrices, in those parts: that which happeneth by nature diuers learned men haue diuerslye practised for the helpe thereof; amongst the which Avicen is of opinion to passe the needle and a strong thread vnder the sinowe or ligatour membranous or hard cicatrice, then tye it harder euerie day till it fall off it selfe, as you haue heard in the Chapter of *Paraulis*. Langfrancus counselleth to cauterize it with an actuall cauter, which opinion hath been followed by some. Although I doe not approue it, but haue euer followed the opinion of Albucasis, which is first to situate the child commodiously, then cause one to holde open his mouth, lifting vp his Tongue with the finger of your left hand, then cause one to holde his finger by the other side or roote of the Tongue, so you shall see perfectlye the ligament, then with your Bistorie, or sharpe Sissors make you incision ouerthwart the ligament membranous, in such sort that the tongue bee made free to moue voluntarilie, then rub it gentlie with a little Rose water euerie day twice or thrice as shall bee expedient, passe your finger softlie vpon the wound with a little hony or sirupe of drie Roses, that it growe not together againe: if your retraction procede of cicatrice, make your incision more large and consume the hardnesse of the cicatrice, then hold a roll of fine small cloath fast in y<sup>e</sup> wound for certain days, y<sup>e</sup> which may be wet in hony or sirupe of Rose, y<sup>e</sup> it do not consolidate ouersone; if there happen flux of blood as I haue often scene, you shall vse such remedies as is set downe in the Chap. of corrupt Teeth.

Paul. lib. 6.

cap. 29.

Cels. li. 7. ca. 12

Avicen.

Langfrancus.

Alb. li. 2. c. 34.

Alb. li. 2. c. 4.

Chap.



## CHAP. XXXV.

¶ Of the tumor vnder the tongue, called  
*Batrachus* in Greeke, and *Ranunculus*  
 in Latine.

## Definition.

*Paulus Lib. 3.*

*cap. 26.*

*Albu. l. b. 2.*

*cap. 35.*

*Aetius serm.*

*8. cap. 37.*

*Avicen.*

*Cause.*

*Paulus Lib. 3.*

*Ibid.*

*Avicen. tertia*

*terti. cap. 17.*

*Signes.*

*Avicen loco*

*citato.*

## Iudgements.

*Albi. loco*

*citato.*

*Brunus lib. 2.*

*cap. 3.*

*Raf. de morb.*

*part. lib. 2.*

*cap. 27.*

*Tract. 6. de*

*de cura.*

*Avicen sexta*

*terti. cap. 18.*

*Aetius loco*

*citato.*

**R**anunculus is a tumor on the vaines vnder the tong,  
 or an excrescens of flesh which impedeth the natu-  
 rall operation of the speech: it groweth sometime to such  
 bignesse, that you would thinke it an other tongue, it hap-  
 neth to young Children, as also to those of elder age, in  
 such sort, that the voyce sometime intercepteth. The  
 Cause of those tumors is a slimie pituitous, and viscous  
 humor, descending from the head: sometime it is no humor,  
 but excrescens of flesh, caused as other excrescences in o-  
 ther parts, the humor is for the most inuolued in a bagge,  
 or Chest like *Atheorema*, the which is both in colour and  
 consistence like the white of an egge.

The Signes are euident, and for the most part it is both  
 in colour and figure like vnto a frogge, called *Rana*, whereof  
 it taketh the name: it is accompanied with great tumor,  
 chiefly of the Veynes vnder the tongue.

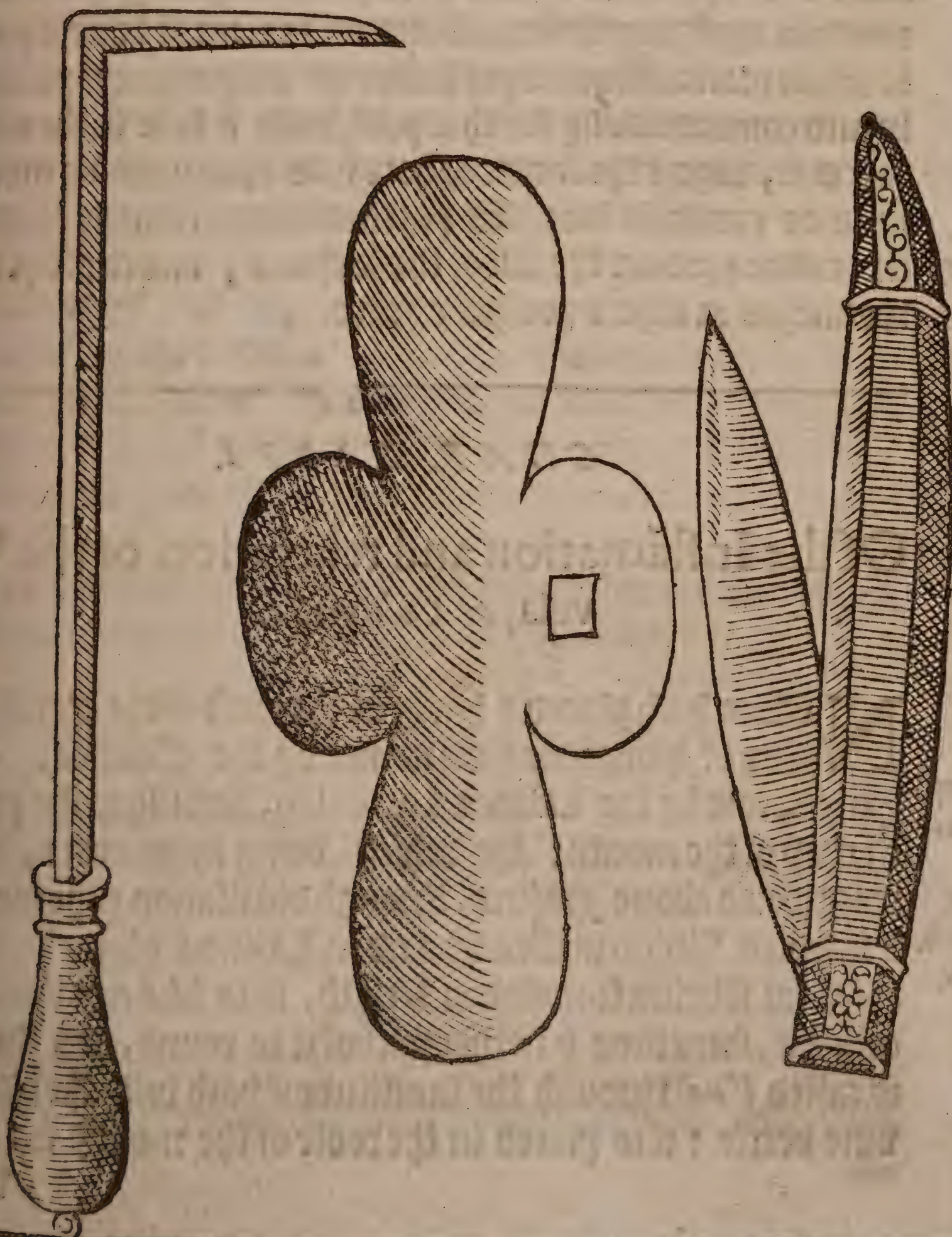
The Iudgements, it is sometimes so big, that the mouth  
 cannot containe it with the tongue, in such sort, that if hasty  
 remedy be not had, the sicke doth suffocate, and sometime in  
 opening of it, the sicke becommeth mad: if it be blacke, brow-  
 nish, hard, and insensible, touch it not, for it is cancerous.

The Cure, first consisteth in purging the head, and if it hap-  
 pen in yong Children, you must first assay Gargarismes resola-  
 tiues, incisives, and stiptikes, like as of *Origanum* barke  
 of the *Granad* dragagant, as vltum, and such like, also rub  
 it long with *Sal Armoniac* and *Galls*, or *Sal Armoniac*,  
*Florus æris*, with *Dragagant*: if by these meanes you  
 profite not, you must come to the manuell operation,  
 which



which is thus done, first place the sicke conveniently,  
then cause one to stand behind him, and one of his handes  
open his fore-head the other on his chin to hold it downe. &  
open the mouth, then the Chirurgion shall open the veines  
under the tongue with a launce, next open the tumor, eyther  
by bistorie, or cauteractuall. And

*Instruments to cauterize and open  
the ranula under the tongue.*





*Ætius serm. 8  
cap. 37.*

*Alphon. fer-  
reus Neopol-  
itanus li. de lig-  
no sancto.*

And euacuate the humors by degrees: next rubbe gently the soze with vinegar and hony, or wine and hony, clemme it with gargarises made of decoction of Barlie, Roses, Plantaine, and hony, or sirroppe of roses, as alicures: if any thing remaine eyther of humors or bagge, you shall consume it with Sal Amoniacke, Flos æris, and other Cozasives: sometimes the tumor is so malignant, that oftentimes we are constrained to apply actual cauters, or tents, and plumations, what in oyle of vitreol, or correcting the malignity, and impassing it to be residue, as sometime happeneth, yet not often, because the disease is not common. I haue sene of this disease for this thirtie yeare, in parts where I haue traueled: in applying the actuall cauter, you must haue a peece of white yron or siluer to put vnder the tongue, made purposely and commodiously for that part, with a hole in the midst of it, where the cauter or hote yron shall passe, by which meanes you shall saue the parts adiacent from the cauter, thereafter produce the fall of the Scharre, and cicatrize the wound, as in others you haue heard.

#### CHAP. XXXVI.

### Of the Inflammation and relaxation of the *V-vula*, or *Columella*.

*Ga. 6. de comp.  
med. per locos  
cap 3.*

*Rundo. meth.  
curan. morb.*

**N**ature hath placed & hung in the rooffe of the mouth a peece of spongiuous flesh named by the Grecks, Gargarion, and by the Latines Gurguleo, in vulgar the pape or chap of the mouth: the which being augmented, and lengthened aboue nature, through distillation of humors, it is called Schion in Greeke, and in Latine *Columella* and *Vua*, for it being tumified in length, it is like a pillar, or collume, sometime y nether part of it is round, and then it is called *Vua* through the similitude it hath with the blacke vine berrie: it is placed in the rooffe of the mouth for diuers



uers reasons ; First, it helpeth to pronounce the sound, and to speake cleare by diuiding of the aire which commeth from the lights, for the which it is called *Plectrum vocis* : Also that the Aire which commeth by the Mouth and Nose, en- treth not in the lights by the Trache-arter till the coldest of it be corrected, so that the lights be not offended by colde. Such as want the pappe or pellet, hath ordinarilie deformi- tie in speech with refrigeration of the loines : it doth impash that nether dust nor rhume enter in the trache arter with the ayre.

*Brunus lib.7.*

The Cause is either externall or internall : The In- ternall are hote humors which come from the head and cause inflammation, also vapours ascending from the sto- macke, as happeneth in rotten feauers, also abundance of blood. The Cause Externe, draking of strong wine, eating and drinking of bitter and sharpe meats colde, hastie exces- siue eating and drinking at vnaccustomed times.

Cause.

*Aetius serm.8. cap.40.*

The Signes are euident to the sight, by pressing downe of the tongue, accompanied with dolour, feauer, difficultie to swallowe the meate. The sicke thinketh euer to haue something in his mouth readie to goe ouer with great haste by the continuall distilling of the humor, impassing to sleepe but with open mouth ; Sometime it hangeth so long that it falleth on the tongue, and so grieueth the sicke, that some- time he is constrained to put his finger in his mouth to helpe the ouer-going of the meate, as saith Avicen.

Signes.

*Aetius serm.8. cap.45. Ga.6.de comp. med.cap.3.*

The Iudgements, sometime it groweth to such big- nesse that it filleth the throat, and causeth the sicke to suffo- cate, if it be not quicklie cut : If it be altogether cut or fall- away, the sicke altogether wareth sicke, or else speaketh so that he may not be understood, and that drinke which he ta- keth, doth for the most part auoide at the Nose, as I haue often scene. It happened to me at Paris to haue a Chanon of Saint Anton, who had a certaine disease in his mouth, by the which he lost the pellet of his mouth, whereby he be- came dum, and y<sup>e</sup> drinke which he euer drank, he did auoide the

Iudgements.

*Hippo. in his Prelages.*



Tra lib.

the most part of it at his Nose. Such as haue the pappe or pellet great, long, and tumified, haue their voice so broken, that hardlie can they be vnderstood or at the least doe speake through their Nose. That which is blacke, brownish, insensible, and dolorous, may not be touched, for either they become carsanomatous, or great flux of blood ensueth, so in that case it shall be best to applie remedies that haue the vertues to refresh and comfort the part, and pacifie the paine.

Cure.

Ro. li. ca. 17.

Rando. et. d.  
morb. c. ran.

Ce. l. 6 ca. 14

Lo. icerius de  
expl. morb.

The Cure consisteth in purgations and Glitters, bleeding of the cephalike vaines, armes and vaines vnder the tong, ventosing in the necke & shoulders, with scarrification, frictions, gargarises, deterfues, refrigeratiues, astrigents with good diet, tending to colde and drie, vsing meates of good digestion, abstaining from all strong drinke, washing of often the mouth with this gargarise made of Plantane, Barlie, *Bursa Pastoris* the barke of Pomgranet, seeth all in water and adde thereto a little siupe of Roses, of Violets, with some Gumme of Dragagant, and Sarcacoll; otherwise you may onelie vse to wash the mouth with Plantane, rose, Rose water, and a little Vinegar, hold a little of it in your mouth a prettie space; Allom water is also good for this purpose: Or this powder made of Allom Balust, *Terra Sigillita*, red Roses, and Sugar, make all in fine powder, and put in a little Instrument formed like a Spone, put it in your mouth in such sort that the pap dip in it and receaue the powder. After the same forme you may take braied Pepper and Salt mixt together. Also Salt dried, and put in a little pocket hote to the hole of the necke, some vse hote bread to put in the hole of the necke.

Cellus counselleth to take a powder made of Allom, *Squamme eris*, Gall, Myrthe, mixed with a little sad Claret wine and applie to it: sometime being tumified, it tendeth to suppuration; if so, it must be opened with a Lancet, and cure it with Gargarises, as other Ulcers in the mouth: If by neither of these remedies the griefe doth diminish and goe away, you must hazard either cutting, knitting,



ting or corrasines to consume it, otherwise the sicke doth oftentimes suffocate and die. The best remedie that I haue found in this, is, first to place the sicke in some light part, open his mouth and hold downe his tongue with a *Speculum oris*. therafter cut a little of it with sharpe sheares, then wash the mouth with Decrate or some astringent water mixed with sad Claret wine, and some astringent powder: if there be flux of blood, stay it by some causticke powder. Some for this purpose doe vse the ligatour as you haue heard in the chapter of Epaulis, the which is sometime dangerous for great flux of blood: others do approue actuall cauters which sometimes I haue scene vled in the great Hospitall of Paris, called Our Ladies Hospital, but with very euill successe; so by my aduise assay it not, in case thereby you incurre rather paine, than profit. I haue sometimes cauterized the Vvula with a little oyle of Vitreoll, strong water, or Cauter potentiall, put either of these in a little instrument, and let the end of pellet or Vvula trampe in it: so that which is superfluous shall consume and fall away, then wash your mouth with warme wine or decrate, and vse Gargarises, as is befoze mencioned.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 37  
Langfrancus.  
Ce s. li. 7. ca. 12

## CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the tumor or Aposthume of the Amigdals, called by the Greeks PARISCHYMIA, and by the Latines TONSILLAE.

Nature hath placed in the two sides of the Vvula, somewhat behinde, two little glands which are spongiuous, one on euery side to the greatnesse of an Almond, for the which they are called Amigdals: their office is, to receaue the humidite which distilled from the braines to the effect, the parts of the mouth may be humected and refreshed: as also the trache arter and tongue, in such sort that the tongue in speaking be not ouer drie, and empash the pronunciation.

Gal. 3. simpl.  
causis cap. 4. &  
2. de usu part.  
& apho. 26.  
lib. 3.



## Cause.

Ro'. li. 2. ca. 15  
Ga 6. de comp.  
med. per locos  
cap. 3.

## Signes

## Judgements.

Amen nona  
tertij cap. 15.  
Alb. li. 2. ca. 36

## Cure.

Ætius se. m. 8  
ca. 45.  
Ron. meth.  
cu. and. morb.  
Ce's. li. 6. ca. 10  
Pl. li. 6. ca. 30  
Hip. pro. 3. ca.  
6. text. 13.  
Mesues de e-  
gritud. guttur.

Ron. de curan.  
morb.

The Cause, is great aboumdance of viscus sharpe hu-  
miditie which commeth from the head, also drinking of  
strong and summe drinke, walking abroad morning and e-  
uening when the deay falleth, great aboumdance of bloud:  
it happeneth sometimes to Children through the bitternesse  
of milke.

The Signes, are euident to the sight, in pressing downe  
of the tongue. The Judgements, are dolour, feauer, ac-  
companied with such inflammation, that sometimes it stop-  
peth the passages of the meate and drinke, as also the respi-  
ration: so that the sicke can neither let ouer the meate, nor  
respire, but doth suffocate if hastie remedie bee not had, as  
saith *Albucaasis*.

The Cure, consisteth in good dyet, eating little, and of good  
digestion, abstaine from all strong drinke, vse Glisters, ble-  
ding the arme and vaines, vnder the tongue, ventosies, fric-  
tions, on the neck and shoulders, gargarises, refrigeratiues,  
and desiccatiues: If it aposthumate as often happeneth, it  
must be opened with a Lancet, if the tumor doth so aug-  
ment that the sicke bee in daunger to suffocate, you shall  
make incision in the trache arterie, after this forme: laye the  
sicke on his backe, thereafter lift vp the skinned of the trache  
arterie with thy hand, and cut it in length till the membrane  
be discouered, then make you incision with a bistorie in the  
sayd place, thereafter put in an hollow tent of silver, gold,  
or lead, with a broad head well tight, that it goe not to the  
lyghts: after the danger of suffocation be past, vse sumpes  
of hony and Roses to cleanse the wound, take out the tent  
and conglutinate the wound, and in all this time vse exte-  
rall medicaments about the necke made of Barly flower,  
Lin-seede, and Fenegreke, with such other thinges meete,  
according to the degree of the maladie: In this case I do  
often vse this remedie, which hath the vertue to close the  
lost parts, & dry vp the humor pituitous which is fallen on  
the part, and hath the vertue to soften the glands internes,  
and is thus made, *Ret. Nidi hirundinis unc. 3. pulueris na-*

CSMA



cum cypressi unc. i. Rosarum unc. i. semi. accipiantur cum oxymelate fiat cataplasma. This incision is very dangerous not being rightlie done, by reason of the fluxe of bloud, which often happeneth: Likewise for the nerves which passeth that waye. I cured an Apothecarie in Paris after this manner: some doe vse to knit these glands, as you haue heard in the chapter of Epaulis: others do consume them by actuell cauters, others pull them away by Crosetts and other instruments, either all whole or by peices, which from Albucasis alleadged to haue done to an old man, who had almost suffocated, but of the euent of the cure hee maketh no mention: sometime the tumor is malignant, which shall be known by the hardnesse, liuiditie, dolour, inequality, greatnesse at the roote, of the nature of Cancer, which must not be touched, but vse remedies palliatiues, as you haue heard in the chapter of Cancer.

Tralli. fol. 177

Pa. li. 6. ca. 30.

Alb. li. 2. ca. 36

Signes.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the tumor in the throat called by the Greekes SYNANCHIE, and by the Latines ANGINA, or STRANGVLATIO.

There chaunceth in the throat many grieuous sicknesses, but here onely I mind to speake of that which is most dangerous, called Angina, which is an aposthume or inflammation of the interior muscles of the throat, whereof there are foure kinds. The first, is great inflammation in the throat. The second, is an humor contained behinde y Amigdales, which sometime do hinder the swallowing of y meat, and oftentimes doth suffocate the sicke. The third, is great tumor and inflammation towards the chinne, both externally and internally. The fourth kind is, when the vertebries of the necke goeth out of their owne place, whereupon the tongue remoues from the proper scituation with great difficulty to breathing. The Cause of it, is either

Definition.

Hip. prog. &

comp. 34.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 27

Rol. li. 3. ca. 13

Difference,

Gordon. part.

4. cap. 1.

Aet. us. ferm. 8

cap. 47.

Trall. an. li. 4.

cap. 1.

Gal. aph. 4. co.

34. & li. 2. epi.

sect. 1.

Cause.

W 2

cold



P

*Gau. li. 3. ca. 27* cold ayre, vsage of colde drinke, with aboundance of colde  
*3 al. apb. 4. co.* weake humors and vapours, not onely of all the whole bo-  
*as. Al. sues de* dy, but of the head and parts neere to it. The Signes, are  
*gritnd. gutti.* difficulty of breathing, feuer, heate, inflammation, and do-  
 Signes  
 Indgements, low in the throat. The Judgements are these, if it come  
*Hyppo. presag.* suddainly through a feuer, without any outward appea-  
*Pau. li. c. 1. ca.* rance in the necke, it is mortall. This happeneth sildome  
*4. de morb. a-* to young children, except when the vertebres of the necke  
*cutis text. 30.* goe out of their place, and then they receaue no cure. The  
*Au. en non* Cure consisteth in Generall and Particular remedies: The  
*tertij cap. 9.* Generall, shall be in good forme of life in the six unnaturall  
*Gal. 3. pre li. 1.* things, eate and sleepe little, and drinke onely Tysan, vse  
 Cure.  
*Mesues de a-* oft Blisters, and purgations, pilles, bleed in the vaine Ce-  
*gritnd. guttur.* phalicke in both the armes, as also those vnder the tongue.  
*Ro. li. 2. ca. 15* The Particular remedies are frictions, ventosies, with  
*Rol. li. 1. ca. 15* scarification on the shoulders, with application of hote  
*Trallianus ib.* bread on the necke to diuert the humor, with this linement  
*Hip. 4. de vic-* (to rub on the necke) made of vnguent refrigerant Galeni,  
*tu in mor. au.* oyle of Cammonill, Violets, and Lillies, with a little hens  
*Pau. loco. itat.* grease, thereafter applie sheepes wool as it comes from the  
 sheepe. Gargarize the mouth with Plantaine water, Vine-  
 gar, and Whey; or with this which followeth made of  
 Barlie, Wimpernell, Caruell, of each a little, with all toge-  
 ther, and after the ebullition put to Diammon, and honie of  
 Roses. Alexis alleaged to haue cured it onely in three  
 houres, by applying one pound of *Aqua scabiosa*, with an  
 vnc. of *Aqua vine* mixed together. Paulus and Mesues  
 haue ordained diuers remedies for this purpose: alioth's  
 gargari me is good. Rec. *Aqua solani*, *Plantaginis*, *capri*  
*Pau. us ibid.* *folis an. lib. semi.* *Diameron vnc. 3.* fiat gargarise If the  
*Ron. de meth.* tumor turne to suppuration, vse this gargari me, take the  
*in and. morb.* roottes of Gallowes, Altea, Scordell, and Lint. ade, of  
 each one a little, boyled all in Cowes milke, putting thereto  
 a litle of the mullages of Bullion, which you shall hold a  
 certaine space in your mouth warme. The matter then  
 being come to mataritie, open it with a Launcet, then vse  
 this



this cleansing gargarisme made of decoction of Barly, ho- *Antoni. musa*  
ny, and sirupe of Roses, for a certaine space, holding it al- *cap. de sinant.*  
wayes warme in your mouth: it being cleansed, you shall  
adde to the foresayd decoction a little Allom, Balust, and *Cels. li. 1. ca. 4.*  
Myrhe: thereafter siccatize the wound, remembreing all *Jubertus de*  
this time to keepe good dyet, abstaine from women, and *pilorum affect.*  
take good hēde the matter take not course to the loynes,  
which is most dangerous. If it happen at any time that  
either a little bone, or any other like thing fall in the throat,  
you shall hold your mouth close together, and plucke by  
cold water at the nose, till such time it aboide at the mouth.  
By this remedie I haue seen sundry helped, who haue been  
troubled chiefly with fish bones: and further he may take  
aduice with *Albuca. lib. 2. cap. 38* & *Paul. li. 6 cap. 32.*

## CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the tumor in the Necke, called by the La-  
tines STRUMA or SCROPHULAE.

**S**Truma is an inflammation of bloud and pituite in the *Definition.*  
soft and glandulous parts, as vnder the iawes, armes, *Pa. li. 6. ca. 35.*  
at the rootes of the thighes, and in the paps. It is engende- *& li. 4. ca. 33.*  
red of a rotten thicke matter, and congealed blood. The *Rol. li. 2. ca. 12*  
Cause, is falles, strokes, or humors pituitous, mixed with *Gal 14. meth.*  
melancholie: also drinking of euill waters, whereof I saw *Cels. li. 5. ca. 28*  
many infected at the siege of Paris: also by reteniton of ex- *Cause.*  
crements of the braines, which should auoide by the mouth, *Vigo ca. de tu-*  
nose, eares, and eyes. This disease often happeneth to *mor. pituito.*  
young children, through their great gulositie and raritie of *Theodori. i. 2.*  
the skinne, for the which some call them Scrophulae, by the *Gordon. part.*  
similitude of a greedy beast, called Scrofa. The Signes are *1. cap. 85.*  
apparant to the sight: they are sometime few in number, *Arnald lib. 2.*  
otherwhiles many, and are couered with a membrane like *breviarij ca. 5.*  
*Signes.*  
Alheorema and Steotema. The Judgements, those which *A'pho. de ligno*  
are superficiall, mobile, and few in number, may resolute: *sancto lib. 2.*  
*Judgements,*



*Bart. Pallia.* such are stable, hard, and maligne, doe not resolue, or hardly receaue any cure : such as are great and neere the trahectier, are difficult in opening, by reason of the nerues occurrents, which being cut, the sicke either waxeth dumbe or becommeth hoarse like one that hath the cold : they are also difficile, being accompanied within vaines, for feare of flux of bloud.

Cure.  
*Scribonius*  
*Largus de*  
*compo. medi.*  
*Adamus Lonic-*  
*erius de expl.*  
*m. n. b.*  
Avicen.

*Brunus.*  
*Theodoric.*  
*Rundo. de cu-*  
*rand. morb.*

*Scribon. Lar-*  
*gus de compo.*  
*medica.*  
*Al. li. 2. ca. 4.*

The Cure consisteth in remedies vniuersals, and particulars, as in good regiment eate little and of light digestion, & abstaine from such thinges as engender grosse humors, purge often, blade in both thy armes, and haunt drye places, thy drinke shall be composed after this forme. Take *Scrophularia* 3. parts, *Scolopendula* 2. parts, *Pilosella* and *Brassica*, of each a little : the rootes of Reddish and *Aristolocia* a little, seeth them all in white wine, with a little hony, till it be halfe consumed, of this you shall vse 2. ounces in the morning, euery two dayes once. I haue vsed to diuers a decoction laratiue the space of 15. or 20. dayes : or therwise my confection set downe in the Poore mans Guide, whereof I found great helpe. The particular remedies are to annoynt the part with a little salt butter, fryed in a pan with a little Vinegar till it grow blacke : some vse the plaster of *Vigo* with *Mercurie*. *Brunus* and *Theodoricus* approue much a plaster made of *Ammoniacke*, and *Bdelium* resolued in vinegar. *Lebot* commendeth *Diatsealum*, *Magistrale*, and *Divinum*, mixed with quadruple mercurie. I commonly vse that cataplasme set downe in the Chapter of *Parischymia*. If it tend to suppuration you shall vse this, take the leaues and rootes of *Halloines*, *Lillies*, *Reddish*, *Turmericke*, *Agresus*, of each 2. ounces, leaues of *Camomillone* handfull, and make a decoction, whereunto you shall adde the flower of *Beanes*, *Lynt-seede*, and *Fenigreeke* an ounce, *Swines grease* that is fresh a pound, make a cataplasme, adde vnto it a little oyle of *Yrin*, and *Lillies*. This remedie hath the vertue both to digest and ripen: when it is opened, cure it as you haue heard in others. Some



Some old and new Practitioners in the cure of this, doe cut away all the glandes, taking heed of the nerves recurrents, which serve to the voice. Sometime children having scabs in their heads, the braines humide by wrong lying and taking cold in the night, have the glandes tumified. For remedye whereof, apply oyle of Camomill, Ani-seeds, and sweet Almonds, with a little Hens grease and butter. If the tumor be hote, adde to it oyle of Roses, and Violets: also rubbe it with fasting spittle till it grow hote. This disease is called the Kings Evil, which is alleadged by Frenchmen to be cured by their King after this forme; the diseased first is vielnd by the Chyrurgions, who findes it to bee the kirkells or Kings Evil, then the diseased is set on his knees, and presented to the King, who maketh a crosse on his forehead with his hand, saying, *Le roy te touche, Dieu te garrie*, which is to say, the King doth touch thee, God make thee whole.

*Rol. li. 2. ca. 12*

*Kings Evil.*

#### CHAP. XL.

Of the tumor in the necke or cragge, called  
BRVNCOCELI, or HERNIA GUTTURIS.

This tumor, which the Grecks call *Bruncon* and the Latines *Hernia gutturis*, and the Arabians *Botum*, is round and great, ingendered of the humor phlegmaticque, betwixt the frahe artier and the skinne: sometime it occupieth the most part of the crag, of the which there are divers kinds according to the matter contained therein, sometime like *Atheorema*, otherwiles like *Aneufisma*.

*Definition.*

*Pa. li. 6. ca. 33.*

*Rol. li. 2. ca. 14*

*Lonicerus de morb. expl.*

*Rol. li. 2. ca. 14.*

The Cause is not different from these that it is like unto, yet some are externall, and some internall, proceeding of a cold & humide ayre, drinking of euill water, as those who dwell in *Pimount*, and about the Alpes are much subiect, because the most part of their drinke is melted snow: it happeneth also by the retention of monethlie courses in women, and Hemorrhoides in men, with great replication of the melancholique

*Cause.*

*Chelmeus*

*ench. Ch. r.*

*Anna. lib. 2.*

*b. en. ar. ca. 4.*



Signes, lancholique humors in both sexes. The Signes are most evident to the sight

Judgements. The Judgements, those that come by nature are incurable, and those which are like unto *Aneufrisma* must not be touched, such as are very great accompanied with great vaines, are very dangerous, and in no wise to be touched, those which be tractable must be opened by cauter or lancet, eschewing alwaies the vaines.

*Pau. li. 6. ca. de  
hernia guttur.  
Alb. li. 2. ca. 44  
Theodo. lib. 3.  
cap. 31.*

Cure.

The Cure is, first to corroborate the head with powder cephaliques, thereafter apply unto the sore a cake of leade rubbed with quicke siluer, or the emplaster *de vigo* with Mercurie, rubbe it with thy hand till it grow red, before the application of the plaster, and vse such things as do prouoke spitting, for the which it shall be expedient to vse fire or fire graines of my Arabicke powder, holde thy bellie loose and keepe good dyet, bleed in both the armes, if the maladie in temperature of the person require. That kind of it which is like unto *Atheorema*, may be cured as you haue heard in that Chapter. As for the other kindes of it, if that auaille not, you shall haue recourse to my Booke of the disease of Women, by reason oftentimes it happeneth to them in time of their trauailing, by stopping of them to crye in the time of their extreame paine, the which Booke God willing shortly shall come to light.

*Br. li. 2. ca. 7.*

## CHAP. XLI.

### Of the tumor called *Aneufrisma*.

Definition.

*Gal. lib. 1. m.  
praeternatur.*

Cause.

*Pa. li. 6. ca. 37*

*Aneufrisma* is a tumor soft to touch, the which is engendered of bloud and spirit vnder the skin and muscles, which happeneth in diuers parts of the body, chiefly in the sides of the crag. The Cause is either dilatation, incision, or ruption of the arterie, which often chaunceth to Women in the time of their birth, to Trumpeters, Cryers, Watermen, and others, who vse violent labour, and great crying,



or other violence, by the which ſome of the artier doth dilate. The Signes, are tumor, impreſſing on with the finger, great pulſation. The tumor is of the ſame colour as the reſt of the ſkinne, ſoft to touch, yielding to the finger, by reaſon the blood and ſpirit retyzeth vnto the artiers and parts adiacent, and hauing remoued the finger, it preſently returneth with a noiſe or brute, by reaſon of the blood and ſpirit that returneth.

This happeneth when the Aneufriſme is done by anaſto- mies, that is, the artier be opened and cut: When the artier is riuen, as happeneth to women, and thoſe of great exerciſe, there iſſueth forth more aboundance of blood then ſpirit, and is more hard then the other, and maketh leſſe noiſe in the retyzing.

Thoſe which are ſuperficiall in the exterior parts, as the head, legs, and armes, may be knit, and are curable: thoſe which are profound and interior, in the breaſt, as often happeneth to thoſe who ſweat exceſſiuely of the venereal ſickneſſe, and otherwiſe: alſo thoſe in the necke vnder the armes and rootes of the thighes, and when there is great dilataion of the artiers, are not curable, but death enſueth within ſew dayes, or at the leaſt are very perillous, as ſaith Paulus: and if the tumor be opened, the patient dyeth preſently.

This happeneth oftentimes by the unſkilfulnes of ignorant Barbores and other abuſers, who meddle with this art, who ruine a number of people through their ignorance, as I haue often ſcene: ſuch ignorant doe eſteeme all tumors that are ſoft, ſhould bee opened as common Apoſthumes.

I remember in Paris in Anno. 1590. there happened ſuch a diſeaſe to a valiaunt Captaine (my great friend Captaine Tayle, who was one of the chiefeſt Captaines amongſt the Spaniards at Paris) on the right ſide of his cragge, for the which, I a Chyrurgion Maioꝝ to the regiment, was ſent for, and found it to bee an Aneufriſme, ſo not to bee touched; of the which opinion was my good friend

Signes.

Adam. Loni.  
de expl. morb.Gal. lib. tumor  
preter natur.  
cap. 11.

Iudgements.

Pau. li. 6. ca. 37



Adrew Scot. friend Andrew Scot, who was a great Practitioner at Paris for y<sup>e</sup> time, and wel exercised in the art of Chyrurgery, we did ordaine remedies to let the encrease of it, which receipt being sent to the Apothecary, who before had sene the sayd Captaine, did thinke it no meete medicine for an Aposthume

Errour committed by ignorant.

Remedies for the Aneufrisma

Cataplasmes for the superficial Aneufrisma.

(as he feared it:) so presently he sent for an ignorant Barber like unto himselfe, who did sweare unto the Captaine that they had salues and charmes for all sores, so without further tryall did open it with a Launcet to auoide the matter (as they thought) which being done, the spirit and blood came forth with such violence, that the Captaine dyed in fewe houers after. I doubt not but in these Countries diuers such errors are committed by ignorant's. I doe vse alwayes in such, chiefly in the necke, vnder the armes, and in the paps, these remedies which I haue prescribed to the Spaniard: that is, first to draw blood in both the armes, then apply on the tumor *cerat Galen* or *de bulle*, or this, *Rec. Pulveris subtilissimi, boli armenici, sanguis draconis, myrtillorum, lapidis calaminaris in aceto extincti, absinthii, an. unc. i. cum cerato refrigerantis Galeni quantum sufficit, fiat unguentum.* For the same purpose I vse a cake of Leade rubbed with quicke siluer. These things doe let the growing for a time, although it be neare the noble parts. If it happen in the extremities of the legs or armes, they may liue a long time by the vsage of the foresayd remedies. I knew a woman in Paris, who had a very great one in her thigh, and did liue ten yeares. If it be little and superficiall, I find nothing better then cataplasmes made of Claret wine, with croppes and leaues of Cyprus. When the artier had bene opened in the place of the baine, as sometime happeneth, I doe knit it after this forme; first makes incision in the skin long ways, then discovers the artier, then passeth a Curbit needle with a double thread vnder the sayd artier, two ynches about the incision or ruption thereof, then knits it with a double knot, bydes away the blood contained, so cures the wound.



*C A A P. XLII.*

## ¶ Of the Tumors or Aposthumes in the Pappes.

**T**he Pappes which are glandulous partes, partly ordained for the decoration, and partly to be answerable to the chambers of the matrix, and are ordained for the generation of milke, they are subiect to diuers diseases, as other parts of like substance.

Definition.  
*Gal lib. de vſu  
partium.*

The Cause, is such as you haue heard in other Aposthumes, also retention of the monethly courses, or abundance of thicke corrupt milke. The Signes, are such as you heard in others such like, as dolour, pricking, tension, rednesse, feuer, and diuers others.

Cause.

Signes.

The Cure consisteth in vniuersall and particular remedies, as purgations and bleeding, chiefly in the sauane baine, ventosing and frictions on the thigh, with sirupes and other conuenient remedies, for the prouocation of the moneths, as you shall heare at large in the Booke of Diseases of Women: vse good dyet tending to humidity.

Cure.

The particular remedies differ not from other aposthumes, saving that thou vse familiar and weake repercussives, because it is nere to the noble parts, in the beginning it shall be good to foment the pappe with hote water, Vinegar, and oyle of Roses: or this, take the flowers of Cammomill, Lint-seede, and Fenegreke, of each halfe a pound, the iuice of Malloves, Roses, and Plantane, of each 3. ounces, Vinegar 2. ounces, wet a cloth therein and lay to the soze: if it tend to maturation, take the crummes of white breade and beane meale, of each one halfe an ounce, flowers of Fenegreke as much, malloves, Althea and Lillie rootes, of each a little, seeth them in milke, putting thereto the yolke of an egge, fresh butter, and a little Saffron, make a cataplasme and apply: when it cometh to suppuration, open it

*Pa. li. 3. ca. 35.*



Gal. lib. de fas-  
cjs.  
Dido video in-  
terprete Flo-  
rentino.

it with a Cauter or Luncet, euacuate the humors, and cure it as other Aposthumes : vse a Bandage of three sheaves, as is set downe by Galen, to hold it vp, for great hanging downe maketh attraction of humors : Labour not with that arme of the soze side, for that maketh attraction of milke which letteth y healing of the soze: sometime womens paps doe growe very great not being soze, which is very vnseamly; for remedie whereof, Fallopius biddeth take the hearbe *Melisse*, bruiſe it and apply in forme of a plaister, which letteth the growing.

### CHAP. XLIII.

## ¶ Of the tumor in the Thorax, called the Plurisie.

Definition.

Arnald. lib. 4.

breniar. ca. 5.

Difference.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 32

Gordo. part. 4.

Auic. 13. ca.

de pluri.

Mejues de e-

gritud. pector.

Cause.

Æliusserm. 8.

cap. 68.

Auic. decima

ter. ij. ca. 15.

Gal. 4. locorum

affect. cap. 8.

Signes.

Gal. 5. lo. or.

affect. cap. 3.

Hippe. pred. et.

2. text. 60.

Rasis lib. 6. de

mor. par. ca. 58.

**P**lurisie, is an inflammation and tumor; or a masse of bloud, which turneth into a bilious matter, in diuers parts, but chiefly of the membranines and muscles, which knit and couer the ribbes, whereof there are two sorts, the false and true: the false, is outward in the muscles of the short ribbes; and the true, is that which happeneth in the membranines, which knitteth the ribbes.

The Cause, is externe, and interne: externe, is great heate or cold: the vsage of strong wine or very cold water, violent exercise, and cold ayre after great heat: the internal cause, is great repletion of all the former humors, but chiefly the bloud and choller, which maketh the most subtil part of the bloud ascend from the vaine caue, vnto the vaine *Affigos*, thereafter in the vaines and membranines intercostalles.

The Signes, are great dolour, from the shoulders vnto the neathermost ribbe, punction in the side, continuall feuer, difficulty of respyring, coughing, hard pulse, great alteration, with want of appetite, euill saoured breath, heauines, and ponderosity of the sides, great feuer chiefly in the night, little



little sleepe, some sweates which happen through the great paine.

The Judgements, these which cometh on the right side, are not so dangerous as on the left. If the spittle be blacke, liuide, and viscos, with continuall cough, vehement pain, long continuing, the urine be thicke, blew, or blacke, it is deadly: if the cough be very drye and cease not, it is an evil signe, but if the spittle be white, light and equall, with little cough, the patient sleeping well, having good appetite, and the urine red coloured, it is a good signe.

The Cure consisteth in uniuersall and particular remedies: uniuersalls, as glisters, bleeding in both the armes, chiefly in the side opposite to the soze, keeping good dyet, abstaining from strong drinke, Women, & perturbations of the mind.

The particular remedies shall be cataplasmes, liniments made of flowers, with Cammonill, Helilot, Aniseedes, Mint-seede, and Fenigrike, if the dolour be great and continue. *Fuchius* counsaileth frequent application of ventosies, with scarification of the part infected. If by any of these remedies y pain doth not cease, neither you perceiue any euacuation of the humors, by the mouth, urine, or fundament: It is to be suspected that it turn into *Empiem*, which is a collection of matter, betwixt the ribbes and the region of the lights or lungs, sometime with corruption of the part, for the which we make incision, for feare the lunges bee corrupted and become vicerod, then the incision shall either be made by Cauter or Launcet, but rather with the Cauter, for neither doth it close so soone, nor is so dolorous: the opening shall be best betwixt the third & fourth of the true ribs, beginning at the nethermost and count upwards, hold you six inches from the ridge of the backe. In making of your ouerture, which shall be either with Cauter potentiall, or Curbit bistory, till you come to the capacitie within the ribs: make your ouerture at great length, beginning aboue, and guiding the bistorie in buywaies, from the third ribbe to the fourth.

Judgements.

Æt us se. m. 8

ca. 6. &amp; aph.

10. 13. 22. 39.

Avice. lib. 4.

Gal. li. 5. meth.

cap. 7. &amp; 8.

Cure.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 3.

Gal 5. meth.

cap. 8.



Columbus.

Arnaldus.

fourth, escheiving the vaines, artiers, and nerues which are vnder the inferiour part of the ribbe: the cuerture being so duely made, euacuate the matter by degrais, and not all at one time, for feare you dissipate too much the spirits: put a tent into it with an emplaster of *Diacalcithios*, or *Benonica*, mixed in Claret wine. Sometimes there is a certain congealed water, gathered vnder the Sternum or brisket bone. For the Cure whereof, Columbus counselleth to trepan the Sternum; but I rather in that case approve the Cauter potentiall, as counselleth Arnaldus: make a good escharre, hold it long open.

This Cure is rare and seldome practised, yet after this methode I did cure one Iohn Buchan Maister of the song Schoole in Glasgowe, who was heavily grieved with a watie or congealed humoz collected vnder the sterne, of the which he was cured perfectly.

If you see tumor eminent in any place of the thorax, open it in the most conuenient place. Hippocrates doth counsell to discover the third ribbe, and boze it with a Trepan perforative to let out the humoz, then put an hollow tent either of Silver or Lead, and let not all the matter auoide at one time, but by little and little, and cure it as other Apothumes.

## CAAP. XLIIII.

**O**f the tumor in the Navill, called in Greeke *Axumphalon*, and in Latine *Eminentia Umbilici*, or *Hernia Umbilicalis*.

Constantine.

Loniccrus ex-  
pi. morb.

**T**he Navill is the middlemost part of the body, whereby the Childe is nourished in the Mothers wombe: it is composed of sinowes, vaines, and artiers, the which, when the Periton is dilated or rent, it doth swell and tumifie in such sort, that sometime it doth rive.

The



The Causes are diuers, like as by the dilation of Periton, whereby the intestine commeth forth, or by the blood which may flowe from the vaines and artiers: also by wind or water in that part, and by knitting of the nauill too short or too long after the birth: nere knitting, either slip peth, breaketh, or maketh conuulsion, and other grieuous diseases: by the too long knitting, it giueth place to the intestine or *Omentum*, whereby some blood, flesh, water, wind, or vapours, doe occupie the eminent part.

The Signes are knowne by diuersity of matter therein: as if the *Omentum*, the tumor is soft and the colour not different from the rest of flesh: if y<sup>e</sup> intestine, the tumor is soft, vnequal, & returneth into the capacity with a noise or bruite: if humilitie or vapours, the signes are as you haue heard in watric or windie tumors: if through blood, which happeneth by the ruption of some vaine or artier, the signes like vnto *Aneurysm*: if excrecence of flesh, the tumor is hard, and obeyeth not easily.

The Judgements are these, when the dilatation is great, it healeth not easily, and often riuet by some violence or great coughing.

The Cure is, first, in good regiment tending to sobriety, abstaining from all flatuous meates, and all such as engender crudities, from mowing, exercise, and such like. The particular remedies consists in emplasters astringent, or this emplaster set downe by Petrus Argilla: also fomentations, astringents, and bandages, chieflie in the beginning: if that helpe not, reduce the pudding and quasse, and cause the sicke to hold in his breath till you knit the production with a ligatour, then let it fall off it selfe, and produce the cicatrice. If it be rent by great violence or cough, and the intestine commeth forth, as happened to an honest Merchant in Paris, whome I cured after this manner: First, I enlarged the dilatation with a Launcet curbe, then reduced the intestine, and used the suto Pellito, as is set down in the generall chap. of wounds, & cured it as other wounds.



If there be wind or water in the place, you shall cure it after such forme, as you shall heare in the Chapter of woundes or watric hernes or ruptures.

## CHAP. XLV.

¶ Of the tumor in the bellie called  
Hydropsie.

## Definition.

Gal. l. 2. facul.

na. u. &amp; ca. 5.

li. 5. de lo. affe.

A. uer. 1. 4.

cap. 5.

Arnald. l. b. 2.

bren. ar. 1. a 40.

Difference,

Trall. an. li. 9.

cap. 123.

Ga. com. 2. in aph.

4. de morb.

acutis text. 3.

Cel. li. 3. ca. 21.

Pi. i. 6. ca. 50.

Roger. Cap. 45.

Cause.

Theod. part 6.

Ætius. ser. 10.

cap. 10.

Arculeus fa-

uonoro a.

Gal. 5. loco. af-

fect. cap. 7.

Gordon. part.

6. cap. 5.

Auen. tract.

4. ap. 4.

Gal. 5. loco. af-

fect. ca. ult.

lib. 3. cap. 29.

**H**ydropsie, is a Tumor against nature, ingendered of great quantity of water, Wind, or Flegme, which sometimes is dispersed through y<sup>e</sup> whole bodie, & is called vniuersall, other whiles in some part therof, and is called particular. It is most commonly in the capacity of the Venter, of the which there are three sorts, to wit, Ascites, Tympanites, and Anasarca. Ascites, is a maladie that caueth the bellie and legges to swell through a watry humor, the rest of the body is small and leane. Tympanites, is a maladie in the which is more flatuosity and lesse humor, and in touching soundeth like a Drumme. Anasarca, or Leucoacutis, is a disease wherewith the whole body, but chiefly the priue parts, are swollen with a pituitous humor, white and cleare, accompanied with feuer.

The Cause, is either externe, or interne: externe, as Crokes, falls, heate, fluxe of blood, or great and long running of the Hemorrhoides or moneths: also through disenterie and great vsage of humide meats, as soules, waterberries, euill water, and such like, whereof we had good proofe at the siege of Paris, also euill regiment. Plato sayth, that in the time of Appollo and Esculapius, neither Cancers, Hydropsie, nor many other diseases which now raigne, were knowne, the which wee may greatly attribute to their great sobriety. The cause interne, cometh chiefly by the vertue alteratrix & concoctrix of the liuer, and by Apoplexies of the liuer, passions of the stomacke, through the



vice of the vaines meseraicks, intestines, matrice, bladder, lights, melt, and kidneys.

The Judgements, all Hydropsies after hote fevers, or Judgements. happening in fevers are euill, and if through Aposthume of Tralli.lib. 4. the liuer, it receiueth no curation : if by vsing remedies the Hip. prog. 2. sicke groweth better, and within few daies euill againe, hee text. 2. healed not : if the diseased become laxatiue and haue no Gordo. part. 6. ease of his paine, or if the spittle, the breath, and excrements cap. 5. doth stinke and flower euill, they be all signes of death : if Al. li. 2. ca. 54 Hippo prefa. fluxe of the belly with difficulty of respiring, he dyeth within Hip. apho 35. three dayes : of all the three sorts ascites is the worst. Those & 43. & aph. 5. & 7. that are young, robust, and the noble parts not viciated, e. Trallian. lib. 9. specially the liuer, and may vse exercise, the humors not being putrified, may be cured.

Then for the Cure of such, there are three Intentions : Cure. The first, is in good dyet tending to heate and drye, of good Pau. li. 3. ca. 2. nourishment and light of digestion, little drinke or none at & li. 4. ca. 43. all if possible may be, and if the diseased may not passe without drinke, he may drinke a little cleane old wine. I knew a man that was cured by abstaining only from drinke halfe a yeare. Antonius Beneuenius reporteth that he knew men cured by abstaining from drinke one yeare, without vsing any other remedie. Let their bread be Barley wherein shall be mingled the powder of Wormewood, Aniseedes, Betonie, Calaminth, Calamus aromaticus, Succorie, and Fennell, which things may also be put in their pottage, Asles or Goates milke were good to be vsed. The second intention is done with fomentations, and vnguents resolutiues, as in Oedema you haue heard. The third intention, is to corroboreate the intemperie of the liuer, as is amply set downe by Albucasis. I did cure sundry at the siege of Paris, by a remedy which I brought from a Turke, who was bond-slave to Dondego de varro Viador, Generall of the Spanish regiment there, and is thus made, take a handfull of Fennell rootes, of Appium Rusticum & Eupatorium as much, Psendo masculam two handfulls, Petroselinum macedonicum one

De abditis  
morbor. causis.  
Tra. i. 9. ca. 2.

Avic. 10. 4. ca.  
3. tract. 2.  
Gal. 14. meth.

Gal. 7. aph. com-  
ment. 57. & 3.  
de temp cap. 3.  
Alb. lib. citato.  
Haly Abbas.  
Guydo.



one handfull, *Hepatica*, or *Herba Trinitatis* as much : of all those, take the branches and not the rootes, gathered drye in the Sunne, infuse all in eight English pynles of white wine, and let it seeth till thre pynles thereof be consumed in an earthen pot close couered, let not the ayre passe out of it: it being thoroughly boyled, straine it through a cleane cloth and giue it to the sicke to drinke alwaies, in so doing he will after thre dayes take a flux of vrine, which will continue fiftene or twenty dayes, in which time such as I haue handled were ordinarily whole. In all this time keepe them very warme, vse onely roasted meate of good iuice and light of digestion. Some in the sayd disease doe counsell to make incision, the which I haue often seene, but with euill successe, and not to be vsed, as being reiected by Trallianus, *Ra.li.9.ca.69.* *Al.li.1.ca.32.* *Tralli. Gordo.* *Cel.li.7.ca.15.* Gordonius, and others. The manner of the incision is this: the sicke must be commodiously placed, then the ouerture *Bru.li.2.ca.8.* must be made eyther with Bistory, Launcet, or Cauter, thre ynches vnder the nauill, towards the flanke on either side, eschewing the *Linea alba*, and extremities of the muscles of the epigaster, and the nerues and tendons of *Musculi erecti*, for in hurting of those, grieuous accidents may follow, as feuer, dolour, difficulty to consolidate the wound, sometimes death, as I haue ofte remarked in y<sup>e</sup> great Hospital of Paris, and other parts: the incision must be very little, taking good heed you picke nether vaine, artier, nor intestine, put a hollow tent in it, with a broad head made of Silver or Gold,



Instruments to incise the Hydropick  
with hollow tents of silver or lead,

227



evacuate the humors by little and little, stoppe the tent with  
a cloth or waterspunge after it be handled, and apply vpon  
it a plaster of *Diacalcithios* mixed in wine. Paulus coun- *Pa. li. 3. ca. 48*  
selleth, if the Hydropsie cometh from the intestines, to  
make the incision in the *Pauill*. There are many other *Cel. li. 3. ca. 21.*  
things which may be spoken of this matter, which I leaue  
to



to the learned Physitian being more phisicall than Chirurgi-  
call: yet by reason that sometimes it falleth vnder the Chy-  
rurgions handes, I thought good thus much to intreat of it.

## CHAP. XLVI.

¶ Of the Fistule in the Fundament,  
and the cure thereof.

Gal. de usu  
partium.

Definition.

Cause.

Signe.

Cel. li. 5. ca. 28  
lib. 7. cap. 4.  
& 30.

Theod. lib. 3.  
cap. 43.

Cure.  
Gordo. part. 1.  
cap. 7.

Bru. li. 2. ca. 16  
Ab. li. 2. ca. 80  
Guido tract. 4.  
de ulcerib.

**T**he Fundament, which is called in Latine *Anus*, in  
Greeke *Hydia*: it is that part whereby the excrements  
of the body are discharged, and is subject to indure thirteene  
grievous passions or diseases, to witte, *Fistula*, *Thymus*,  
*Candyloma*, *Atrices*, *Clauco*, *Ragades*, *Hemorrhoides*,  
*Dritus*, *Paralysis*, *Ficus*, *Prurites*, *Siccatrix*, *Apo-*  
*sthumes*, with diuers others, whereof *Vigo*, *Brunus*, and  
*Theodoricus*, haue spoken at length. *Fistula*, is a hard si-  
nuositie, from the which doth procede a humoꝝ or matter vi-  
rulent. The Cause is wounds and vlcers, euill cured, he-  
mozoydes interne, or some *Aposthumes* which haue proce-  
ded. The Signs are euident, & may be known by the sound,  
or seene by the *Speculum*, accompanied with dolour in those  
parts: flowing of a virulent humoꝝ, auoiding of Pus or  
matter purulent, with the excrements: Of those there are  
two kindes, the one is obscure, hidde within, without any  
appearance of orifice externally, but onely within the intes-  
tine called *Intestinum rectum*, or in the muscle *Sphincter*: the  
other kind which is manifest, is knowen to the sight being  
externe. In the cure, there is diuersity of opinions amongst  
the old wꝛiters, *Avicen*, *Gordon*, and some others, coun-  
sell onely to apply liniments, and other medicaments, with  
tents of Caddisse, and cleane clothes to hold it cleane: others  
are of opinion to vse manuell operation, which is done thre  
wayes, to wit, by *Cauter* actuall, incision, and ligature.  
*Albucasis*, *Brunus*, *Theodoricus*, and *Guido*, doe counsell  
to cut and consume the *Fistule* and callosity with actuall  
Cauters,



Cauters made and accomodated to the greatnes of the  
 Fistule. The Cauter consumeth the humiditie, stayeth the  
 flure of blood, but the forme is cruell, painefull, and vncer-  
 taine: there be others, who are of opinion to cut, make in-  
 cision, consume and take away the Fistula with a Bistory,  
 or other Instrument purposely made to that effect, and cut  
 all the inter-space betwixt the orifice and fundament, as  
 Paulus saith. This forme doe I not approue by reason of  
 the great flure of blood, which often happeneth, as I haue  
 sometime obserued: as also by cutting of the callosity of-  
 ten the fibres of the muscle *Sphincter* are consumed and cut  
 away, which causeth that the matter fecall is not so well re-  
 tained thereafter: so that at all times when the excrement  
 approached the port, the patient is ever forced to goe to stoule.  
 I haue found no forme so sure nor lesse painfull then the Li-  
 gatour, the which hath byn much approued by our ancients,  
 as Hippocrates, Celsus, Vigo, and others, and is now prac-  
 tised by the most skilfull.

*Alb. li. 1. ca. 36*

*Pa. li. 3. ca. 78.*

*Hip. li. de fistu.*

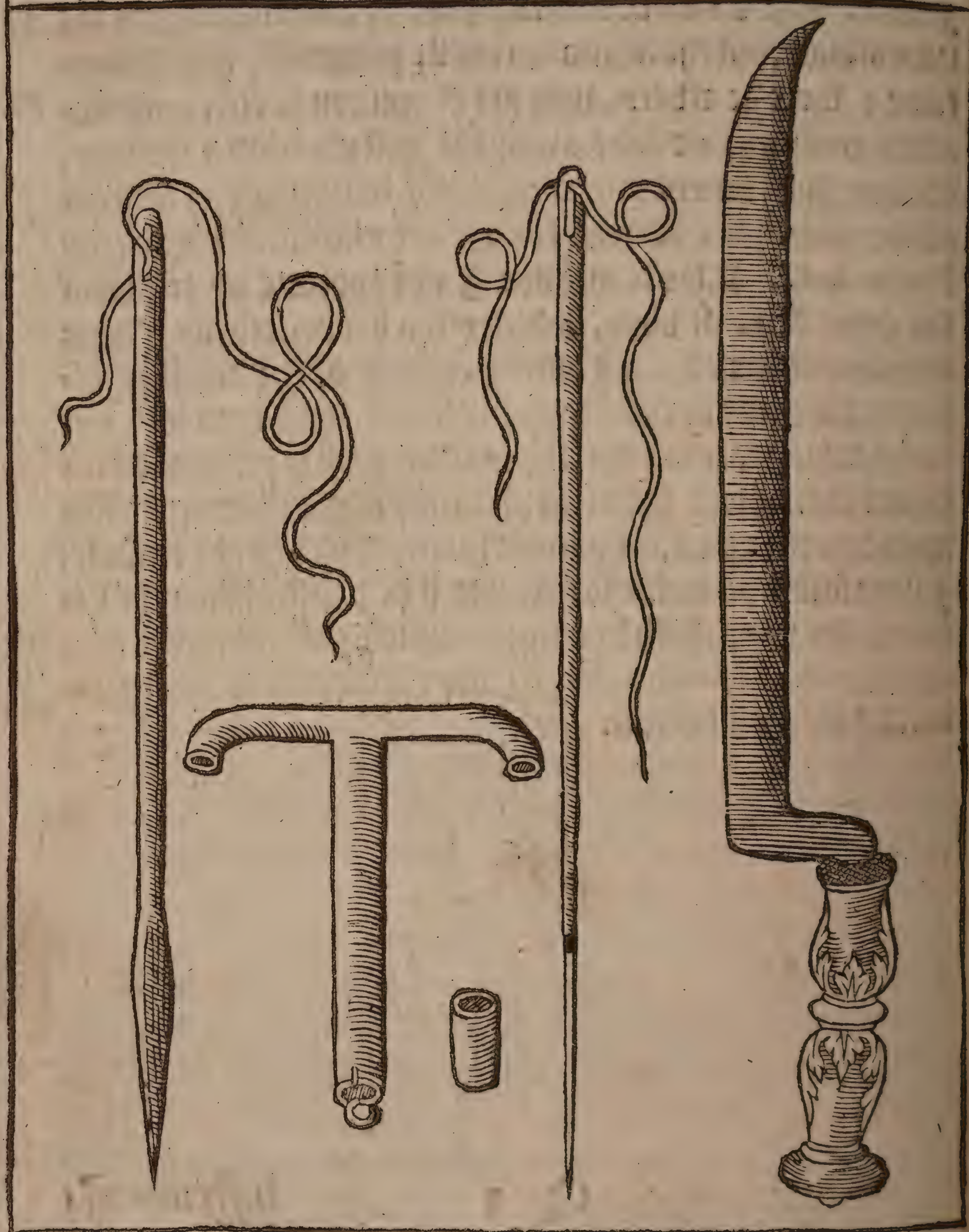
*V. gol. b. 4. de  
 ulcerib.*

Q 3

Instruments



*Instruments to cut and Knitt the fistula  
in the fundament,*



the forme whereof is this, the sicke must first be purged, and use a good dyet for a certaine space, especially in the night before the operation, which shall be about 8. or 9. of the clocke in the morning, then the patient shall stand vppon his side, bowing himselfe forward ouer, either vpon a bed or Chaire, holding his legs and knees asunder, and so continue till the operation



operation be done, then the Chyrurgion shall put his middle finger in the fundament of the patient, till he come to the upper part of the Fistula, the finger being first annoynted with oyle or butter, then with his other hand he shall passe a sound made in forme of a Needle Assetone, which must be made of Gold, Silver, or Lead: the Gold and Silver must be so tempered that it ply like Lead, yet hard and sharpe at the point, thread it with a thread of soure ply that is well rubbed with ware: some doe annoynt it gently with causticke oyle to make it cut the sooner: then passe the sayd Needle or sound in the orifice of Fistula, thrusting it forward untill the time you find it on the point of your middle finger, which is within the fundament. If there be any little membaine betwixt as often happeneth, thrust the Needle through the same, which being done, you must ply it with the point of the sayd finger: in thrusting it the one way, and conuaying it out by the fundament, then knit the thread with a running knot somewhat slacke, then tye it every day faster and faster till the inter-space be consumed. For this purpose doe I vse a little Instrument of silver, that is bolle or hollow within of two ynches broad, or thereabouts, with a little round ring on the end thereof, and the Ring must haue a rest that it goe not about, the thread must be tyed to the Ring and wound about euery day after it be past through the Instrument: by this meanes you shall doe the operation more cleanly and easier, than by onely tying of it: if the inter-space which you must cut be great and long, in such sort that sometimes the thread doth rotte, therefore you must tye a new thread to one of the ends of the former, and draw it through, and passe it through the Instrument, and tye it to the ring as before. If the Fistula be obscure and haue the orifice interne within the fundament which is more difficile than the former, you must with a *Speculum ani* gently dilate the fundament, till you perceiue the orifice, then passe your Needle or sound in the orifice as of before, thrusting it in the orifice almost through to the further side, so conuaying it downewardes

*Parre. lib. 12.  
cap. 23.*

A needle of  
Gold or Sil-  
ver for the  
Fistula.



till it come to the ground or bottome of the Fistula. This Sound which we use commonly in this kind of Fistula, is of Lead, so is not of force to pearce through the whole hyde, for the which we are constrained to make incision in the vnter side against the poynt of it, so passeth it through with the thread, and layes it to the ring through the Instrument as of before. This cure I did use at Paris to a Scottish gentleman called Crowneil David Boyd, who had the orifice of the Fistule interne so high vp, and the interspace was so great, that I was the space of eight weekes in consuming of it, and the Gentleman was made perfectly whole. Heare you must marke, that Fistules which are very high, are neither to bee cut nor knit, because the sicke shall euer be constrained to voyde his excrementes so soone as they approach to the part, for the which it were better to use remedies palliatives, then hazard any other cure.

## CHAP. XLVII.

## Of Thymus in the Fundament.

Definition.

**T**hymus is the worst kind of those five sorts of waters or little tubercles which happeneth in the fundament, it is called *Thymus*, because it is *Tuberculus*, and groweth like the flower of time.

Cause.

The Cause, is euill humors which doe come from the whole body, but chiefly *à ramus pinetico*, with the humor oftentimes there is a malignity.

Signes.

The Signes, are Ulcers, Tubercles, Fetide, auoyding a matter virulent, and are for the most part small at the roote.

Iudgements.

The Iudgements, in old people fore-comming, we doe attempt no more but onely palliatives, for oftentimes being not cunningly handled, or in people of euill temperature it becommeth carcinomatous, so the sicke dyeth miserably.

Cure.

The Cure, is to purge the body of the bitious sharpe humors,



more euery weeke or fortnight once, draw blood, keepe good dyet and rest, it were good to vse decoction of *Shina* and *al. a perilla* in the morning to prouoke sweat, as also at meals. If that humo<sup>r</sup> be retained and not purged away, it may ascend to the noble parts and suffocate the sicke; for the helpe whereof Hippocrates counselleth the cauter actnall to be vsed and alleaged to haue often procured the same with good successe. I haue oftentimes seene the cauter actuall vsed in the great Hospitall of Paris, but with small successe. When these excrescence or warts be but little and few in number. I haue sometimes consumed them with pouders, but such as are great and many in number, are to be knit with ligatures, as you haue heard in the chap. of *Paraulis*: if any thing rest after the ligatour, you shall consume it with causticke pouders, waters, and other medicaments. After which methode I did cure a singing Boy in Our Ladies Church at Paris, who was grieuonsly handled with a Thyme about the whole fundament the space of thre yeres, of the which I did heale him perfectly by the expectation of many.

## CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the tumors in the fundament called *Condiloma*, *Atrices*, and *Clausio*.

**C**ondiloma is a certaine excrescence of flesh hard, tuberculous and membrinous in the brims or borders of the fundament, sometimes accompanied with great humo<sup>r</sup>, tumor, and swelling, sometime not swelled and are called *Atrices*. The Cause is the weakenesse, softnesse, and low situation of the part, also defluxion of humors which become rotten, for the which it is hard of curation. The Signes are manifest to the sight, accompanied with great tumor and dolour. The Cure consisteth in good regiment of life, and rest, purging oft the body chiefly with Blisters, bleeding

Definition.

Cels. li. 6. ca. 8.

Agineta. ca. 8.

lb. 6.

Fernel. li. 5. de

simpt. cap. 11.

Gordo. part. 5.

rub. 3.

Cause.

Cels. loco citat.

Signes.

Cure.

Pa. li. 3. a. 5.



bleeding in the arme to diuert the humors & stop inflammation, vse vomitories & things to prouoke vrine. The topical remedies are to vse linemēts refrigeratiues in y<sup>e</sup> beginning of oyle of Roses, *Cydoniorū*, whites of eggs, thereafter vse remolliants and discutients, if it tend to suppuration, vse such remedies as you haue heard in others, putting thereto a little *Tapsus Barbatus*. It must be openned in some circular, to the end the matter be not long retained, which easily causeth *Fistula*. If the excrescence be great and hard, it must be consumed with causticke instruments, as counselleth *Celsus*.  
 Lib. 6. cap. 13. Sometime the fundament is closed, as once I saw in the country of *Picardy* of *France*, in the towne of *S. Quintin*,  
 Pau. li. 6. ca. 81 where I did bring a woman to bed with two children, y<sup>e</sup> one had an excrescence of flesh from the fundament, and did dye sone after it was borne, the other had a membaine which  
 Al. li. 2. ca. 79 did close the passage of the excrements, which I cut with a bistory and it healed very easily. This happeneth often to maydes in their natural conduits, for the which do the like,  
 Lib. 7. cap. 28. otherwise haue your recourse to *Celsus*, or to my Booke of the Infantment, where I haue amply entreated of that matter.

## CHAP. XLIX.

## Of the tumors in the fundament called Hemorrhoids, and Ragades.

## Definition.

Bru. li. 7. ca. 15

Ra. li. 9. ca. 80.

Al. li. 2. ca. 81.

Ro. li. 3. ca. 45.

**T**he Hemorrhoides are an inflammation of some one or more of the foure vaines which goe about the fundament, of which there are diuers kinds, as sayth *Fernelius*: some are interne which are not to be seen, others externe, some are swelled and doth auoyd no humor, but in tract of time retorne inwardly, sometime open and doe auoyd a boundance of melancholique blood which maketh great paine.

## Cause.

The Cause is great aboundance of melancholique, pituitous,



tous or bilious blood, great vsage of mordicant medicines.

The Signes ; if the humors be cold, the sicke feeleth great heauinesse, dolour, and trembling of the belly : if the humors be hote, there is great pulsation, euill colour of the face, and heauinesse of the eyes.

Gordo. part. 5.  
cap. 21.  
Signes.

The Iudgements ; the disease is dangerous and difficile, in respect of the great euacuation which oftentimes ensueth and causeth Hydropsie, euill colour, and weaknesse of the body, which do often end in *Fistula* : If they be suddenly stayed, they often doe ingender dangerous maladies, and sometimes death, by reason of the humors which taketh the course as to the liuer, or lights, as saith Barta Pallia. If they auoyde moderately it is good, and doth preserve the sicke from Melancolique, Leprosie, Strangurie, paine in the sides, and inflammation of the Lungs. The naturall course of them is, to auoide euery moneth once, or at least foure or five times a yeare.

Iudgements.  
Hip. i. de Hemor.  
Ra. li. 9. ca. 80

Barta Pallia.

The Cure is somewhat difficile, the part being sensible and cold, hauing no force of it selfe, as also being in the part easie to receaue fluxion of humors, and not easie to become vnto at all times : yet the cure (in so much as may bee) consisteth in good dyet, abstaining from all things of euill digestion, and which bred melancholie, next purge gently the body, bleed in the arme, if either they flow ouer moderately, or be painfull, also bleed the vaine Saphen : if they be tumified, apply an horse-leach called by the Latines *Sanguisuga*, and that of such quality, as you may perceiue in the 8. Treatise of this Booke, and vse some medicaments to make them fall away, and to ease the paine, as cataplasms, fomentations, halfe baths, or fassettes of Henbane, *Tapsus Barbatas*, Camomill, Violets, red Roses, Mallowes, Lintseed, all sodden in milke and applyed on the part : also you may apply the yolke of an egge, Oyle of Roses, Rosewater, and cream after the foresaid maner. Sometime I haue vsed with good successe Barly flower mixed with women or Goats milke, adding thereto a yolke of an egge, and a little

Hip. 6. epid.  
Cure.

Cel. li. 6. ca. 18

Fuch. lib. 3. de meden. morb.  
Baptista Montanus.

Roger. tract.

primo. ca. 92.

Ro. li. 3. ca. 45.



- a little Saffron, & apply it warme in forme of a cataplasme, with a band of three sheets. Some for this purpose vse hogges dung hote on the part for the appeasing of the paine, or this, take Sorrell, Violets, Henbane, of euery one a little, well rested vnder the ashes, thereafter beaten with a little hoggs grease and lay on the soze. If they annoyd immoderately, apply ventosies on the Shoulders, with astringent and corroborative plaisters, on the *os sacrum* and fundament made of
- Montanus.* *Sanguis draconis*, Masticke, Gallowes, with the haire of an Hare cut very small, with a little powder of Roset, mixe all together with the white of an egge, and apply to the soze.
- Pa. li. 6. ca. 79.* If the paine be vehement and interne, take a tent wet in the aforesayd remedies and put into it, or this vnguent composed of Rosat, Mesues, Cerat galen, and vnguent *commissa*, mixed together in a mortar of Lead. *Paulus* doth counsell, when there are diuers of those vaines, to leaue one open for a space, in case the humors take the course to some
- Lib. de Hemor.* noble part. *Hippocrates* sayth, in old hemorrhoides which haue long runne, if one be not left open, there will be danger of hydropsie and ptisicke. There are diuers other familiar remedies for this purpose, set downe by diuers old Writers.
- Ragadia.* *Ragadia* doth differ from Hemorrhoids, in so farre as they are certaine excoriations, vlcers, or fissures, in the vaines or fundament, and are dolorous without tumor.
- Pa. li. 3. ca. 59.* The Cause are strokes, falles, or some sharpe humor which
- Rol. d. lib. 3.* corrodeth these parts: for the cure whereof foment the part with warme wine which both comfort, next apply drying salues and vnguents made thus, *Rec. Lithargii aurci & argentei, cerussa lota, aloes lota, hyri bus masticeis, sarcocol- la, balbaustia, & boli armenician. vnc. sem. puluerefcuntur & aguentur cum vrguente comissa vel oleo rosa: make an vnguent, and annoynt the part therewith.*



## CHAP. L.

Of the tumor in the Intestine when it falleth  
out, called by the Latines *Exitus Longanonis*, or  
*Ani Procidencia*.

**E***xitus Longanonis* is the out-comming or turning ouer of the great intestine, which happeneth through the laceration of the muscle Sphincter, which maketh it to fall out and tumefie; it is common to yong children. The Cause is external, and internal: external, are falls and strokes, chiefly on the *Os sacrum*, sitting on cold stones, great pressing of the fundament, and Aposthumes which happen in those parts. The internal Cause, is great humidity which relaxeth the muscle, flure of the belly, and often pressing to go to stoule, chiefly in those who haue the dysentery. The Signes are apparant to the sight. The Cure shall be in generall and particular remedies. The Generall is good regiment of life, abstaining from much drinke, pottages, hearbs, frutes, and all meats that engender great humidity and rawenelle, vse gentle purgations that haue the vertue to purge the weake rawe humoz. Sometimes it is long out, exposed to the ayze and tumified, so loath to be reduced: for the which you must foment it a little space with warme milke. The particular remedies are to foment the part with Smiths water, and red wine, wherein shall be sodden red Roses, Hyztells, Centone, and Sheepeheards pursle, *Balust, rux Cap-essi*, Koch Allom, seth all together and foment the place: then annoynt it with oyle of Bayes, and Hyztells, and apply on it the pouder of Masticke, Myrhe, and Spits of Cyprus, thereafter cause the sicke to draue in his breath, so it shall be easily reduced; being put in, wet a cloth in the former fomentation and lay on it, then bynde it for a certaine space. In going to stoll beware in pressing too soze, neither go to any wet priuie, or any other part to expose you to

Definition.

Ra.li.9.ca.21.

Cause.

Gord.part.5.

Signes.

Cure.

Cel.li.7.ca.22.

Fauentinus de

pueror. morb.

Arnald. lib.2.

rewi.ca.24.



to the cold, but keepe you alwayes warme : if, for all this it heale not, haue your recourse to my booke of Infantment in the Chapter of the diseases of yong Children. As for Paralyisme in the fundament, it hath the like cause and cure as the former.

---

*CHAP. LI.*

Of the Periton, Epiplon, and Intestines.

**F**Orasmuch as in the tenne Chapters next following I mind to entreat of such diseases as most commonly fall in the Cods, for the which it shall be requisite to shew some what briefly of the composition, scituation, and Office of such parts as most commonly do cause certaine of these diseases, as also that the yong Chyrurgion may be the better instructed : For as sayth Galen, hard it is to cure any disease except first we know the nature and scituation of that part whereupon we worke, as also the cause of the disease; otherwise neither salue is able to prognosticate of the euent, nor cure the same. Therefore I intend to begin at that tunicke or membaine, which is the chiefe part whereof the three proper ruptures doe procede, and is called *Peritoneon* in Græke, and *Siphac* by the Arabians. It is subtil and strong, and furnisheth a membaine to all the parts contained in the inferiour wombe, for the which it is called *Peritoneos tunica seu membrana*, it is composed of two tunicks or membaynes, and serueth for sundry uses. First, it serueth to couer all the parts of the inferiour belly, to wit, vnder *Diaphragma* or *septum transversum* : it doth separate all those parts from the muscles of the Epigaster, it doth tye these parts together, and giueth a tunicke or skinne to each one, it helpeth the descending of the excrements : some Anatomists be of opinion, that it is pierced through in that part which is neare the *Anguina*, by the which passage the spermaticke vessels do descend to the testicles, also the intestines

*Gal.li.5.an.&  
5.de usu part.*

*Gal.li.4.de v.  
su partium.  
Diaphragma.*

*Gal.li.1.de se-  
mine & 6.de  
adm. anato.*



02 *Omentum* to the cuds. Next followeth that part which is called *Omentum* by the Latins, and *Epiplon* by the Greeks in Arabicke *Zirbus*. It is composed of two tunicks, which proceed from the *Periton* of diuers veines, arteries, & greace, it is extended vpon all the intestines, & helpeth their concoction being weake and debill, it preserueth the naturall heate in time of famine and hunger : it is tyed to the bottome of the stomake, and endeth at the *Os pubis*, sometimes it falleth in the *scrotum* as you shall heare in the proper Chapter. The Intestines 02 gouts, are called in Latine *Intestina*, and in Greeke *Entera* : they are composed of two proper tunicks, besides that which is taken of the *Periton*. The proper tunicke maketh the faculty expultrix more strong, as also preserueth the intestines from outward iniury ; the tunicke exterior is membranous, and the interior more flesh. The Intestines are six in number, to wit, three small to distribute the chile by the vaines Meseraickes to the vaine port and liuer, they haue some vertue concoctrix, as also expultrix to expell the excrements : the three grosse intestines are subiect to receaue the excrements, like as the bladder receaueth the vrine. The first of the three small intestines, is conuayed to the venter by the *Pilorus*, it is called *Ecphysis*, which is as if you would say beginner of the intestines : it is called *Duodenum* because it is two fingers in length, it goeth along the rigge backe, and giueth place to the vaine port, arteries, and nerues, and pores, which containeth the choller. The second Intestine, is called in Greeke *Mestis*, and in Latine *Ieiunum*, because it is euer emptie, it receaueth the chile from the stomake next *Ecphysis*, and distributeth it sodainly to the liuer, because of the multitude of the meseraicke vaines. The third small Intestine is called *Ilion*, because it is situated next these parts called *Ilia*, as also by reason of the *Iliacke* passion, in which happeneth in it : some do call it *Miserere mei*, 02 *volvulus*, when the sicke auoydeth the excrements at the mouth. It is reported by *Lonicerius*, that *Hippocrates* did dye of this disease. It maketh many

*Gal. 4. de usu part. & 6. de anat.*

*Gal. 4. & 5. de usu part. & 6. de ana. admin.*

*Gal. li. 6. Locor. affect.*

*Miserere mei. Hippo rates dyed of. Miserere mei. Lon. expl. mor. circum.*



Vasens lib. de  
anatom.

Gal. 3. 9. 26. de  
usu part. ium.

circumbolutions, to the end it may retaine the chile the longer, and maketh the better attraction of it to the mesaraticke vaines. The fourth and first of the great Intestines, is called *Cæcum*, because it hath entry and no issue that can be perceived: it is apt to receiue the excrements, and also the fecall matter in it is first formed: it is situate on the right flank called *Iliac*, vnder it is the right nere: it doth fall oftentimes in the *Scrotum*, and is called by the vulgar Chyrurgions *Sacculus* or *Monoculus*. The fift and second of the great intestines is called *Colon*, because it is greater and fletcher than any of the rest within, it is full of grease, it passeth from the right *Iliac* to the left and bottome of the stomake, that oftentimes it touched the liuer, and melt. Those who are vexed with the winde Chollique do often vomit, because it being tumified or swelled, doth presse or compresse the bottome of the ventricke. The first and last of the great Intestines, is called *Rectum*, it lyeth right aboue the *Os sacrum*, and is an ample receptacle of the excrements, it doth extend to the fundament or *Anus*, & is called by the Barbers *Longum*. it hath certaine volutions: In this Intestine is dispiersed a vaine, artier, and nerue of the first coniugation of the braines to giue feeling: in the end of this gut there is a muscle called *Sphincter* or *Closer* to close and hold the excrements, till nature be willing to discharge them: if it be either debilitate or hurt, Man is euer compelled to go to strole as you haue heard in *Fistula ani*.

#### CHAP. LII.

### Of the spermaticke Vessels and Stones.

Gal. 4. de usu  
partium.

The Vessels spermatickes are called in Latine *Vasa Seminalia* or *Seminalia*, they are long, large, and varituous, and are in number foure, to wit, two vaines, and two artiers: the right vaine cometh from the vaine caue, the left ofteneft from the vaine emulgent: the artiers proceed from the great artier called *Arteria aorta*,

their



Portraiture of the *Spermatique*  
Vessels and Stones.

241



their office is to carry the bloud and spirits to the testicles *Gal. li. de sem.*  
where they end, some doe call them *vasa preparantia*. The & 14. v. n. pa.  
Wayne goeth about the artier, but not right lyne as other  
parts doe, but in anfractuosities, like vnto a Woodbine or  
vine branch; in which anfractuosities or revolutions, the  
bloud and spirit is carryed to the stones, and is somewhat  
prepared,



prepared, before it enter in the sayd stones, where it taketh a more perfect concoction and becommeth white, thereafter it doth enter in the vessels ejaculatories which are named *Cel. li. 7. ca. 18.* spermaticke vessels or expellents : these doe take their beginning from the middest of the testicles, they rest and are holden up by the gland *Epididime* to goe aboue the *Os pubis*, they doe passe by the same way the vessels preparants descend, they doe end in the beginning of the necke of the bladder in 2. glands one in each side called prostrates, & by *Herophilus, admodos prostrates*, in the which glands the seede is more perfectly whitened and fined than it was in the stones, from whence it is sent to the canell of the wand when occasion doth offer ( but the seldomer the better : ) these two glands do serue to excitate and giue a dilatation to the act venarian, as alio to soften and humect the canall of the wand, and to make it more lubricke that the sperme may passe the more easily. The Stones are called *Testiculi* in Latine, and *Cel. li. 6. ca. 18.* in Greeke *Orschies*, and *Didymides* Gemells, according to *Herophilus*, they are of a glandulous substance, soft, whyte *Gal. lib. 14 de* coloured, round and caueynous. Their office is to boyle the *usu pa. & aph. 48. lib. 5.* seed, and make it apt for generation : they are hung without in the *Scrotum*, and each one hath one muscle called *Suspensor*, which commeth from the flankes, and giueth voluntary mouement to the said testicles : the right stone is more varicous, and hath more infirmities than the left, it is hotter for the proximity it hath with the liuer, and so hath the right part of the corner of the matrice, as you shall heare in the Booke of Infantment : each testicle hath two tuniques which couer them, the interne is more subtile, and is called by the Greekes *Eranthroides* : the externe is stronger and doth adheare to the interior which is called *Dartos*.

## CHAP. LIII.

## Of the tumor in the Cods.

**I**n the Cods are situate the stones, which are ordayned by nature for the generation of man, and are subiect to diuers



diuers sorts of tumors and inflammations. Sometime the stones doe swell and tumefie to the bignesse of a Goose egge, accompanied with great dolour, heat, and hardnesse. The Causes are either Internall, or Externall: the externall, are stroakes, falls, and application of such remedies which doe offend these parts: the internall cause, is defluxion of humors, which happeneth in the lower parts of our body, retention of a *Gonorrhoea* which is malignant: also when the seed is any wayes out of the owne domicile, and yet retained in the capacity, as happeneth sometime to yong men in the night, so waking at the discharge of that humor doth retayne it by force, which afterward doth rot and make defluxion on the stones as I haue often seen. The Signes are inflammation, dolour, hardnesse, heauinesse, which may easily be perceiued, great dolour of the masele *Suspensor*, which giueth voluntary remouement to the stones. The Iudgements, if such tumors be not swiftly cured, the tumor doth sometime become hard and skirrous, which cannot be cured but by amputation, the which I haue remarked within these 30. yeares. The Cure is Generall, and speciall; the generall, in good regiment of life, abstayning from strong drinke, eating little and of good digestion, with moderate exercise, and bleeding the vaine saphin, vsing of Glitters, and prouoke urine. The topicall remedies differ not from other tumors, sauing that we neither apply remolliants nor suppuratiues, without great consideration, but repercussives in the beginning, like as oyle of Roses, Vinegar, whites of egges, and such like: or this, take whyte bread, milke, whites of egges, oyle of Rose, a little Opium and Saffron, of this make a cataplasme or playster, and apply it to soze: if it serue not, vse this remedie that hath the vertue to repell and discusse the humor. *Rec. Radicum altheae, & lini an. vnc. 2. foliorum violarum, maluae, paritariae, plantaginis, hiosciam, an. man. 1. Cammomilli, Meleloti, Rosarum siccarum an. P. 1. coquantur in oximellate cum farinis fabarum & hordei an. vnc. sem.* If it turne to suppuration,

*Gal. lib de usu par. & artis med. cap. 9. Cause.*

*Langf. tract. 3.*

Signes.

Iudgements.

Cure.

*Barra Pallia. Gordo. part. 7. Opium cap. 6.*



doe as you haue heard in other Aposthumes, if by long delay the stone become altered, the best remedy is amputation: if vehement dolour as often happeneth, applye on the soze *Cassia fistula*, or new chesse with a little vinegar, which are things most anodine in such griefes: or this, take *Ceratium refrigerans galeni vnc. i. Pupillion 2. vnc. natriti vnc. dimid.* mixe altogether and app'ly on the soze.

### CHAP. LIIII.

## Of Hernies in generall, which happen in the Inguina or Cods.

*Gal. tumor. co-  
tra cap. 18.  
Aetius ser. 14.  
ca. 22. 23. 24.*

**L**Ike as in diuers parts of the body happeneth diuers diseases, so in those parts there happeneth eight sorts of maladies commonly called Ruptures or Hernies, and are diuided in properes and commons: the first of the properes is called *Bubonocoele* or *Hernia incompleta*, that is, when the intestine or *Omentum* remayneth in the Inguina. The second kind is called *Hernia* or *Ramex intestinalis*, which is, when the intestine falleth in the Cods. The third is called *Epiplocele* or *Hernia Zirbalis*, which is, when the call or *Omentum* falleth in the cods. The first of the commons is called *Hydrocele* or *Hernia aquosa*, which is a watry humor in the cods. The second is called *Physocoele* or *Hernia ventosa*, which is a vapour or wind in the cods. The third is called *Cirroccele* or *Hernia carnosa*, which is a schirreous or fleshy substance in the cods. The fourth is called *Cirroccele* or *Hernia varicosa*, which is when the vaines that nourish the stone, are dilated and full of melancholique blood. The fifth is called *Hernia humeralis*, which is when any defluxion of humors falleth on the cods. Of all those sorts of Hernies you shall heare in the seuerall Chapters ensuing.



doricus: Langfrancus by pontentiall cauter. Bernardus and Langfrancus.  
 Rogerius, by the inearing of the golden thred called *Punctus* Bernardus.  
*aureus*, which are all dangerous and uncertaine waies. Rodgerius.

## CHAP. LVI.

¶ Of the Herne intestinall, called by the  
 Greekes *Interoccele*.

**T**his kind of rupture is when the guts fall downe in the Definition.  
 cods, either through ruption or enlarging of y<sup>e</sup> Periton *Bac. li. 3. de cu-*  
 where the spermaticke vessels do passe, and where the mus- *rand. morb.*  
 cles *Cremastræ* doe end, and the membzaines *Dartos* and *Pa. ca. derami.*  
*Erethroides* begin, wherein the gut *Call* or both doth fall. *Fauentinus de*  
 The Causes are like vnto *Bubonocela*. The Signes is great- *med. morb.*  
 nesse, tumoz inequall, sometime hard by reason of the fecall *Pareus lib. 7.*  
 matter contained therein. The Judgements are those: there Cause.  
 is great inflammation, and the more you presse to reduction *Arcu. almanf.*  
 the inflammation oftener is the greater: so that sometimes *Ætius serm.*  
 it changeth the colour red or blew, which are euill and deadly *14. cap. 22.*  
 signes; sounding and auoyding the matter, are euill signes: *Signes.*  
 and if the intestine be not reduced, the patient dyeth, which *Judgements.*  
 happeneth through the narrownesse of the dilation. As for *Avic. 22 ca. 2.*  
 the Cure, first purge the body with purgations, iuleps, pills, *Ætius serm.*  
 glisters, and suchlike as shall be thought expedient by the *14. cap. 4.*  
 skillfull Physitian, which being done, you shall come to the *Ro. li. 3. ca. 39.*  
 vsage of topicall remedies, as first you shall rubbe the cods Cure.  
 and parts adiacent with oyle of Cammomill, and Lyllies,  
 also fomentations and cataplasmes, remolliants, which  
 shall be vsed for a space: thereafter lay the sicke on his backe  
 in such sort, that his arse be higher than his head, reducing  
 the intestine by little and little with your hand, pressing most  
 on the part where it descendeth. If the fecall matter let the  
 reduction of it, you must vse such remedie as is set downe in  
 the last chapter, with glisters to discharge the intestine. If  
 by those remedies the intestine do not reduce, but the matter



Avic. serm. 22.  
tract. 3.

Alfon. ser. li.  
de ligno sancti.  
Pa. li. 61. ca. 65

Cels. lib. 7.

Cusuerius. de  
morb. pueror.

fecall doe waxe hard with great dolour, you shall make incision in the vpper side of the codde, eschewing the Intestine. Thereafter put a little peice of wood vp by the production of the Periton, nere vnto the hole. Of dissent the peice of wood must be round on the oneside and flat on the other, whereon you shall make the rest of your incision, then rubbe the incised part and hole of dissent with a little oyle of Cammomill, or Lylies, which will make it lubricke, and cause it to reduce more easily. If then it reduce not, the Periton must be incised, and vse the cauter Gastroaphicke, and handle it as other wounds: this operation must not be vsed but in great necessity, and the sicke strong prognosticating of the daunger, *Ne sefellisse aut ignorasse videaris*: being reduced, it must with bandages and astringent fomentations be contained, with this emplayster vpon Leather. *Rec. Emplastri contra rupturam vnc. 1. Mastice vnc. 1. vnguenti comitissi desiccatiini rubei, an. vnc. sem. rapidis calaminaris in aceto extincti parum.* Or this, take Beane flower, and the barke of the Oke tree, *Sanguis Draconis*, powder of Sage, Rose, and Hyztilles, of euery one a little, seeth all in smiths water, putting thereto a little Hogs grease, and lay it on the place in forme of a plaister: instead whereof, you may vse *Emplastrum stricte cum paracelse*, and keepe the bed for the space of fortie dayes: also this emplaster written by George Cusuerus, which is *Rec. Vtriusq; consolida, lancea, plantaginis, Cariola, aresta, bouis vel cuada equina, sanguinaria pentaphilonis an. lib. sem. pullis gallarum arabicarum, boli armenici, sanguis draconis, ruberbarum, Glandium corticum medionorum, Castanea, Virga pastoris, Lenticula, Mastice, Myrthi, Mummia, an. drag. sem. Scuia hirsini, Olei Rosacei, an. lib. 1. Misceant, fiat vnguentum, & cum depositum fuerit ab igne, semper agitur cum spatula, donec fiat bene incorporatum, vsing in the meane time good dyet and of light digestion. Abstaine from strong drinke, weake, and windy meats, from hoystring, crying, or other violent motion, so farre as the patient may. In the meane time, keepe open wombe*



wombe, and lay in such sort, that the head and shoulders be lower then the hanches and fundament: by these meanes sundry do heale, when the dilatation or ruption is not great.

In great dilations and people of elder age, I find no remedy, save onely the bandage made of cloth with Cotton, Iron, or Steele, as shall be most meete: such people as doe ryde great horses and are armed, are much subiect to this disease, as I haue often seen amongst the French, Almaine, or Rylters horsemen: who for the most part haue their bandages of Iron, either for one side or for both.

In this disease there is great abuses committed by a number of vn-skillfull ignorant people, boyde of all good conscience and feare of God, who for euery simple kind of rupture, makes incision and cuts away the production of the Periton and Stone: if the dissent be on both sides, they cut off both the stones, which renders a man sterile, and causeth the haire of the beard to fall: and if yong ones bee cut on both sides, they haue no beard at all, besides they be euer feeble and small boyced like vnto women, as sayth Aristotle. Besides that, oftentimes in cutting the sicke dyeth, chiefly when the dilatation is great. Sometimes the Intestine sticketh to the Periton, which they knit altogether, and cuts away the production; after the which the sicke aboydeth y<sup>e</sup> excrements at the mouth, & dyeth most miserably. The stones are ordained by God for generation of mankind, and are called by Aristotle and Galen principall members. Hesiodorus and Constantinus say, who soeuer doe vse these members lewdly and wilfully in fleshly lyking, more than is graunted for lawfull generation, hee doth wrong to the Father of Lyght, and shall haue no company with the blessed, but on the contrary the paines of hell, as sayth Saint Ambrose. When seeing the woorthinesse of those parts, and the opinion which both the Diuines and others of the learned, is thought of them; What shall we y<sup>e</sup> are Christians thinke of those ignorants, who altogether cut away all those parts without hope of recovery,

and

Gord. Pau.  
Favent. Vigo.

Ro. li. 3. ca. 35.

Aristotle.

Rollan. lib 3.  
cap. 35. & 36.

Bartholom.

Gal. lib. 2. de  
dispo memb.  
Hesiodorus.  
Constantinus

Ambrose.



and that for a little piece of money. Such should be severely punished, and not to haue company with Christians. Yet perhaps some of these deceauers will say that I speake, for malice, because I cannot doe that operation : for answere to such, I haue often times seene that operation done, and haue diuers times done it my selfe, the which I doe now repent in committing such a haynous sinne. For satisfaction of malicious people, who perhaps may thinke as those deceauers doe, I will in few termes set downe the forme of that operation. First, the body must be purged, and bled if need require; the night before the worke, the patient must eate little : the next morning about 8. or 9. houres the sicke shall be layd vpon a board, in such sort, that his head and shoulders be lower then his body, so the Intestine shall reduce more easily, thereafter the sicke his legges and thighs must be tyed fast to the sayd fourme or table, as also his handes, then reduce the Intestine, *Omentum* or both, within the belly, which being done, some one shall hold fast his two fingers vpon the hole of discent, that it fall not, then the incisor shall stand at the side of the sicke, and gripe the stone of the soze side, betwene the thre foremost fingers of the left hand, put it vp almost to the hole of the discent, and make it appeare vpon the poynt of the middlest finger, holding it fast betwenn the other two fingers, then make your incision with a bistory or rasour vpon the stone that is two ynches large or thereabouts. Some doe vse to make this incision lower downe in the codde, next pull out the testicle and separate the *Didim* from the *Scrotum*, till such time as you come to the hole of discent, taking heed in ouer soze pulling, in case the nerues and muscles, *Cremastres*, receaue inflammation, or conuulsion, and death: being so conuayed neare the hole of discent, you must with a strong thread in foure folde well waxed, knit the production so fast as may be, to the end it let the filling from the testicle within an inch of that knot, cut off the production with the testicle, then make a little incision in the nether part of the *Scrotum*, that the

Haly Abbas.  
Rodgerius.  
Theodoricus  
*Al. li. 2. ca. 65*  
Brunus.  
Rollandus.



the matter may euacuate moze easily, the apply defensives, and astringents, stay the flux of blood by cauters actuals, as *Rollan. lib 3.* counsaileth *Rolandus*, then vse embrocations and *Compres-* *sis* in *Dreccate*, with digestiues and mundificatiues till the threed fall. Thereafter vse incarnatiues and conglutina- tiues, as in other wounds. If the Intestine or *Omentum* do fall in the inner side, doe the like. Some vse in place of this ligatour to see the production with a needle and threed, thereafter doth cauterize the seaming, which oftentimes for halt or other violence, doth either slip or breake, whereof come euill symptoms and often death.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the rupture called Epiplocele.

**E** *Piplocele* is a dissent of the *Caule* or *Omentum* in the *Cod* Definition. or *Inguina*. The Cause is not different from the pre- Cause. cedent, accompanied with much humidity in those parts. *Cel. l. 7. ca. 21.* The Signes are like the former, sauing that it is softer not Signes. dolorous, yet moze vneasie to reduce. The Cure is first in Cure. good dyet, purge the body and situate the sicke, as you haue heard in *Interocela*. Reduce the *Epiplon*, then keepe his bed George Pa- torius. for a time : in the which he shall vse fomentations astring- gent, with emplasters vpon Leather, made thus, take the playster called red desiccative, vnguent *cometissa*, and *con-* *trarupturam*, of each two vnc. powder of *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra sigillata*, Masticke, Myrtills, Thuris, Ruts of Cy- prous, and Pitch, of each a little whytes of Eggs, so many as will make all in forme of playster, of good consistance, re- moue it euery six dayes once, and continue the fomentation *Gordo. part. 7. cap. 7.* euer a little befoze the applying of the playster, this order *Vigo.* would be obserued a moneth or six weekes, in which time I haue often found good successe, specially in yong ones : if by those remedies you profit not, the bandage must euer be v- sed, otherwise that miserable remedy commonly practised *Roll. li. 3. ca. 35.* Charlitanes and quicke-siluers, as you haue heard in the last Chapter.



## CHAP. LVIII.

Of the watry Hernie, called Hydrocele, or  
*Hernia aquosa.*

## Definition.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 62.

Fu. li. 5. chir.

Al. li. 2. ca. 62.

Gal. lib. 3. de

simp. cau. ca. 2.

## Cause.

Etius serm.

4. cap. 22.

## Signes.

## Iudgements.

Bac. li. 3. de ra.

George Pic-  
torius.

Bac. lib. citato.

Fuch. li. 3. de

med. morb.

Faven. cap. de

hernia aquosa.

Pau. lib. citato.

Alb. lib. citato.

**T**he watry Hernie is a tumor in the Cods, which groweth by little and little sometime to a great bignesse in the Cod, or between the two membzaines which cover the Stones, called *Dartos* and *Erethroides*: sometime it is accompanied with the Gout, and is called *Hydrointerocoele*. The Cause is like as you haue heard in *Hydropsie*, and is an *Hydropsie* particular: sometime by strokes the vessels being rent, the bloud doth change into a watry humor. The Signes are, the tumor is clære, groweth long still in one estate, not painefull, heauy, sometime hard, and is known beholding the Cod between your eye and the candle: it is sometime inclosed in a membzaine, and appeareth to be a third testicle. The Iudgements, some resolue, oftentimes the intestines falleth with it, chiefly in the left side, by reason the melt, which is full of colde melancholique humor, that oftentimes corrupt the testicle. As for the cure of such, the sicke must be purged with fit medicines according to the nature of the humor, vse meane exercise, and meats that be hote and dry in small quantity, drinke little, and hold the belly loose, sleepe not much, vse diureticke things to prouoke vrine, and abstain from such things as prouoke wind. The particular remedies are in vsing of fomentations, as in *Hydropsie*, next an astringent plaister made of red desiccative, vnguent *Commetisse*, with the powder of *Lapis calaminaris*, extinguished in Vinegar, Dere, Balast, and Bolarmenie, Allom, Mustersed seed of *Euphorbe*, mixe all together with a little oyle of Cammomill, and lay on the soze. If those remedies suffice not, by reason of the great quantity of water, you must put a Seton through the lowest part of the Cobde, and draw it a little twice a day, till the humor be euacuated.



If the humoꝝ be in y<sup>e</sup> membzaines that couer y<sup>e</sup> stones, make incision in the side of y<sup>e</sup> Cod, eschewing the testicle, put in a tent and dresse it twice a day, keepe it open till the humoꝝ be euacuated, vse remedies anodines to appease the dolour, and ciccatrize it as other wounds. The li. 13. c. 36

## CHAP. LIX.

¶ Of the windie Hernie, called *Physoccele*, or  
*Pneumatoccele*.

**T**his Hernie is a collection of wind in the *Scrotum*, it causeth by an imbecillity of naturall heat in those parts, and ouer much phlegmaticke matter, with such other causes as you haue heard in windy aposthumes. The Signes, the tumoꝝ is somewhat hard, light, round, suddenly ingendered, possessing foꝝ the most part the whole *Scrotum* and wand, resisting to touch, cleere like vnto a bladder full of wind: the yard greater in one place then in an other. The Iudgements, if this vapour doth not dissipate, it causeth many evils: sometimes it doth possesse the whole body, and proceede often of matter venomous. The Cure shall be first in good dyet, as in *Oedema*, next applye on the place things resolatiues, as this fomentation in the beginning, thus made, *Rec. Origani, Calamintsi, Savina, Salvia, Betonica, Ruta, Cammomilla an. M. sem. Contundantur, & buliant in Posca, hoc est, in vini & aqua aequales partibus, ad consumptionem tertiae artis, si fomentatio sum spungis.* After the which annoynt the part with oyle of *Euphorbe* and *Sambucini*. Some allow the playster of *Vigo* with *Mercurie* or *Diapalma* mixed with wine: also the dregs of *Claret* wine boyled with bzanne, and lay it warme to the place: if the woundy tumoꝝ be with dolour and inflammation, you shall vse anodines and resolatiues, with such emplaiſter as hath the vertue to soften and resolute, and not vse infusion as some doe allowe.

Definition.

Cause.

Gal. li. 5. mor.

&amp; simp.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Pa. li. 6. ca. 64.

Cure.

Farr. de med.

morb. cap. de

hernia aquosa.

Vig. li. 3. ca. 4.

Al. li. 2. ca. 66.



## CHAP. LX.

## Of the Herne Carnosa, called Sarcocoele.

Definition. *Sarcocoele* is a tumor in the Codde, and sometime in the  
*Pa li. 6. ca. 63.* Sinembraine Dartos and Erethroides, chiefly about the  
*Faventin. de* Stones, like a schirrous tumor, accompanied with vaines  
*med. morb.* varicous. The Cause, is abundance of grosse humors in  
 Cause. those parts, which often corrupteth the testicle, and last de-  
*Al. li. 2. ca. 63.* gendereth into an hard flesh disposition. The Signes, are  
*Vig. li. 2. ca. 6.* Unequall tumor, hard, alwaies in one estate, dolorous, and  
 Signes. being touched (all which is in the testicle) doth moue. The  
*Guido part. 7.* Judgements, when it happeneth in yong ones, and handled  
 Judgements. in the beginning, sometime doth heale, but for common it is  
 Guido. most difficile, and of all the eight kinds is worst. If by fee-  
 ling of it at the vppermost part of the Dydim it seemeth vn-  
 naturall great, the tumor is incureable, and better not to  
*Gal. 14. meth.* touch it then to attempt any cure: if you find the Dydim  
*cap. 7.* small, there is some hope of cure, for the which wee must si-  
 Cure. tuate the sicke as you haue heard, next make the incision in  
*Vig. l. 2. ca. 38* the vpper part of the Cod, knit the Dydim and cauterize it,  
*Cel. li. 7. ca. 23.* as in *Interocoele* you haue heard, you must cut a little aboue  
*Theo. li. 3. c. 36* the excrescence, for often it is residue, if any portion remaine:  
*Gal. lococitat.* if it adheare to the Cod, separate it, and cut off the testicle  
*Arno. de villa* with the excrescence: if after the incision there commeth in-  
*noia. de ma'a* flammation and dolour, let the patient bleed, and rest 5 or 6.  
*complexione.* dayes, so leaue the cure to giue order to the accidents.  
*Petrus Fran-*  
*co de Herms.*

## CHAP. LXI.

## Of the Herne Varicous, called Cirsocele.

Definition. *Cirsocele* is a tumor and dilatation of the vaines that  
*Pa li. 6. ca. 64.* nourisheth the testicles, which with their membraines  
*Bac. de consen-* are full of melancholique blood. The Cause, is some grosse  
*su medic.* humor of melancholique blood gathered in the part, by reason  
 Cause. of



of the debility, lownesse of the part, and heauinesse of the humoꝝ. The Signes, is repletion of the vaines, which sometimes be few in number, otherwhiles many, and are wrapt together like vnto a vine branch, soft to touch, and returneth into the belly by pressing on the Dydim. The Judgements are, it is without dolour, most dangerous and difficile to be cured, as you shall heare in the varicies of the legges. The Cure, shall be first in purging the body of melancholy, and blood if neede be, next vse emplaysters and searats, as are at length set downe by *Vigolib. 2.* If by that you profit not, you must make incision in the *Scrotum* the breadth of 2 fingers, in the place of y<sup>e</sup> varice, thereafter passe two needles with double threed vnder the varice, one in the vpper part of the wound, another in the lower, leauing an ynch or thereby betwixt, then open the varice, and euacuate the humoꝝ contained. If there be diuers doe the like, which being done, knit fast the threed, and handle the wound as others, till the threeds fall. If the testicle be incised with many vaines, accompanied with dolour that it may not be handled, this way the Dydim must be cut, and procede in the cure as in the chapter precedent you haue heard.

*Gal. i. tumor.*  
Signes.

Judgements.  
*Gord. par. ca. 7*  
*Baccha. ib. 3.*

CHAP. LXII.

¶ Of the Hernies humerall.

**H***ernia humeralis* is an Aposthume and defluxion of humoꝝ in the cod or membrains that couer the testicles, or in their proper substance. The Cause is not different from other aposthumes, neither the Signes. The Judgements, such are long in healing, the part being cold and membranous, the tumor sometime suppureth, otherwhiles resolueth: If it continue long, it corrupteth the testicle. The Cure, the sicke shall be purged by Clusters or otherwise, bleede, rest, and weare a trusse to hold vp the testicles, and dresse it according to the nature of the humoꝝ and accidents, after.

Definition.

Cause.  
Signes.  
Judgements.

Cure.  
*Ro. li. 3. ca. 38.*



after the methode set downe in the generall Chapter of apoc-  
*Ro. li. 3. ca. 37.* *Humes.* If it tend to suppuration, make your incision in the  
 side of the Cod, as was shewed in *Hydrocele*, then cleanse  
 the vlcer and consolidate the wound. If there remaine hard-  
 nes, you shall (as counsaileth *A vices*) take branne or grate  
 wheate and boyle in *Orniell*, in the which hath been boyled  
 a little *Amoniacke* and apply it warme, and remoue it twice  
 euery day, and thus much touching the eight kinds of  
*Hernes.*

## CHAP. LXIII.

¶ Of the Bladder, and the diseases which  
 happen in it.

*Arist. 2. phis.*

*Hesiodorus.*

*Constantine.*

*Arist. li. 3. phis.*

*Gal. de facul.*

*natu. & 5. de*

*usu part.*

As much as euery Articen ought to consider the mat-  
 ter & forme of that he is to worke vpon: euen so ought we  
 to know that wherof we are to speake of, which is the blad-  
 der called *Cystis* in *Græke*, and *Vesica* in *Latine*. *Hesiodo-*  
*rus* and *Constantine* doe saye, that it hath that name for the  
 taking and receauing of the water. *Aristotle* sayth, that  
 euery beast that hath loynes, doth much thirst, and needeth  
 rather moist meat than dry, to such the bladder is needfull:  
 also those beasts which haue feathers and skaels, haue no  
 bladder, for in such the weake superfluity doth nourish the  
 skaels. The bladder is composed of two tunickes, the one  
 is proper to it selfe, the other it hath from the *Periton*: al-  
 so three kinds of fibres, which are *Rights*, *Obliques*, and  
*Transuersels*, with six great vessels set in the necke thereof,  
 to wit, three in each side, a vaine, from the vaine caue, to giue  
 nourishment, an artier, from the great artier, to giue life,  
 with a nerue to giue feeling. The bladder is situate in man  
 between the *Os pubis* and intestine, and in women betwene  
*Os pubis* and matric. It hath one muscle called *Sphincter*,  
 composed of *Fibris transuersis*, which serue for three vtilities:  
 the first is, that there remaine nothing in the conduit:  
 the



the second, it helpeth to close the mouth of the bladder; the third hasteneth the expulsion of the excrescence. The bladder is a part very worthy for many respects, yet subject to sundry griefes, like as vlcers, paralitie, the stone, carnosity, Aposthumes, cankers, fistules, and diuers others. In it all kind of vlcers do engender, as in other parts: of which, some happen within the capacity of body, others in the neck where the vrine doth passe. The Causes proceede of heate Cause.  
or inflammation in those parts by the acrimony of the humors, stone, sand, slyme, or sharpe humor which hath the vertue to excoziate & corode: also by some violent humor or gonorrhe, as you shall heare in my Booke of the Spanisch or French sicknesse. The Signes of those which is in the bot- Signes.  
tome of the bladder, is continuall dolour at the *Pænil* or *Os pubis*, aboundance of rotten matter which floweth: also many little pelliculs like threads of wooll, which euer comes with the water: if the vlcer be in the necke of the bladder, as often happeneth, the dolour is not great, except in the time of watermaking, and a little after, and the more sharpe and hote the water is, the greater is the payne, tension, or erection of the wand, auoyding a sanious matter, either with or after the water. The Judgements, all vlcers in the bot- Judgements.  
tome of the bladder, are either incureable, or at the least *Hip. li. 6. ca. 18* hardly do receaue any cure, being a part membranous, and some water euer remaining, which both doth augment the vlcer and impasse the conglutination. Of the which if the sicke become leane & atrofied, specially in the thighes, death doth hastily approach. Some vlcers do happen in y<sup>e</sup> necke of the bladder: of which, some are cureable, others very difficile, by reason of the continuall passage of the water. The Cure.  
Cure consisteth in generall and particular remedies, as in *Ran. de curan. morbis.* good forme of dyet, abstaining from things of euill digestion, and ingendereth wind, from all soure, sharpe, bitter, salt, and hote things, from wine and all such thinges as hath the vertue to make y<sup>e</sup> blood subtil, eat bread of good white wheate well baked, tender flesh, as Dutton, Meale, Kidde, fete of Calues,



Bolus.

Injection in  
the necke of  
the bladder.*Cōfilia Fernel.*Injection cal-  
led *Aqua celestis*.

Calves, or Hutton, yong foules, and such like brothes of  
fowles or Hutton, with Plumdamas, Letice, Purpie, and  
others of like quality, hold y<sup>e</sup> belly ever loose, either w<sup>th</sup> purga-  
tions, or Glisters, the glister may be thus made, take a  
shepes head, and seeth it till the flesh come from the bones,  
then seeth in that broth flowers of Cammomill, Belilot, and  
Ballowes, of each one handfull, take a pound of that deco-  
tion, with two yolkes of Egges, and some common oyle,  
and make a glister, which may be vsed either in the morn-  
ing or a little after supper. In like manner this Bolus may  
be vsed, every eight dayes once, made thus, take *Cassia fistu-  
la* recently drawen out of the Reed, 8. Drams, Rubarbe sub-  
tily puluerished, 2. Drams, the electuary of Dragagant, of  
the which you may make a Bolus, thereafter rest a day or  
two, then take Cerebinthin of Venice 3. Drams, that is  
well washed in water of Ciccozy, Rose, Pariter, or Scabis-  
ous, which may be taken in Boll with powder of Liccozyse,  
or dissolued with a yolke of an new layed egge, and white  
wine, or Cowes milke: then vse this injection thre or foure  
times a day, with a Serine thus composed, take red Roses,  
Plantine, Barlye, and Abscynth, of each a handfull, Sen-  
toie halfe a handfull, make a decoction to the quantity of  
a pound, in the which you shall dissolve 2. ounces of hony of  
Roses. After you haue vsed this a certaine time, you may  
vse this, dissolve in the former decoction Aloes 2. Drams,  
Myrhe 1. Dram, *Aristolocia rotunda* in powder, 1. Dram  
and a halfe, of the which you sh<sup>al</sup> make injection and vse  
thre or foure times a day: Then vse thinges to dry, con-  
glutinate, and pacifie paine, amongst the which I haue  
found great effects in this which I call *Aqua celestis*, and  
doe commonly vse it in such cases: the forme whereof is  
this, take a quantity of whites of egges, and beat them long  
in a Bason, then let th<sup>e</sup> stand a little till the water remaine  
at the ground, then mixe as much Plantine and Rose water,  
with a little Camphyer, and Trosciques of Rasi, or in place  
of these Trosciques, a little Lytharge of Gold, Ceruse, and  
a little



a little Bolarmenic, with a very small quantitie of greene Coppasse subtilly pulverished, passe it through a cloth and make your iniection, the which may be continued till the vicer be whole. If at any time the paine be sore, you shall make iniection with a little warme milke. As for Paralysis, or weakenesse in the necke of the bladder, you shall vse fomentations, nerals, emplaysters, and lineaments, which haue the vertue to corroborate and comfort. Also you may vse the balme of Iohn de Vyge, and Guydo *ad Paralyse*, Balme of Iohn de Vigo. with such other remedies as you shall heare in the generall chapter of Wounds, intreating of that matter. As touching the extraction of the stone, it requireth a long discourse, for the which I meane to deferre it to the Poore mans guyde. In the meane time the skillfull Chyrurgion may take aduice with Marianus Sanctus, Pareus, Petrus Franco, and diuers others, who haue learnedly written of that matter.

## CHAP. LXIIII.

**O**f the Wand or Yard, & certaine diseases incident to it.

**I**t is sayd by the learned Philosopher, that Man doth many wayes passe Women, but chiefly in one particular member, which is called by the Greekes *Caulos*, and by the Latines *Mentula*, or *Virga*, it is a part neruous, ligamentous, concaue, or fistulous, composed of a spungious flesh: It is situate on the necke of the bladder, and hath the originall from the *O. pubis*, in it is the conduit of the seede and vrine, vpon the which there is a concaue nerue, which being full of spirits or wind, doth make the erection of the wand, it hath vaines and artiers, with three muscles one on each side, and the third in the middelt, which do go to the middelt of the prepuice, and doth hold the wand straight after the erection in time of copulation: the toppe of it is euer of one bignesse, and is called by the Greekes *Balanus*, and by the

*Gal. li. 5. c. 16.  
de usu pa. 36.  
loc. affect. ca. 6.*

*Gal. 14. de usu  
partium.*



*Gal.lib.6.ca.6.* *loco. affect.* *Preputium* : in the which gland the nerue cauernous  
*h. de em.* *4. de usu par.* doth not enter, it hath a little skinne that couereth it called  
*h. de em.* *4. de usu par.* hath no name. The wand is one of the chiefe instruments  
that serueth for generation, and is subiect to diuers diseases,  
like as tumors, inflammation, Aposthumes, wounds, vl-  
cers, Cankers, and such like, for the which haue your re-  
course to the proper chapter intreating of those things. It  
is likewise subiect to carnosities, with certaine vlcers and o-  
ther affections, as you shall heare in the next chapter. The  
*Gal. li. de locis* carnositie or caruncle is an excrescence of superfluous flesh  
*affectis.* that groweth in diuers parts of the canell of the wand, and  
*Cause.* necke of the bladder, impassing the free passage of the seed in  
Man, and vyne in both sex. The Cause proceedeth by hote  
inflammation or vlcere in those parts; also by heat and acri-  
monie of the water, by sands, stone, rotten syne, or filthy  
humor, but oftentimes by a sharpe bitter humor which distil-  
leth from the glands prostates, which doth excoziate and coz-  
rode these parts. Sometime it doth proceed of a malignant  
rotten virulent humor, as you shall heare in the Booke of the  
*Signes.* French sicknesse. The Signes are known by the sound  
or Catheter; also by the difficulty and stopping of the wa-  
ter, which sometimes commeth forth like a small threed, o-  
therwhyles forked, with two branches, at times it doth  
issue, droppe, and droppe with such vehement dolour  
and presse, that oftentimes the excrements doe auoyde.  
*Judgements.* The Judgements, they neuer do heale of themselves, and  
are very difficile to be cured with medicaments, chiefly such  
*A/son. Ferrus.* as are old, callous, and hard. The Cure consisteth, first in  
purgations and bleeding, specially of the caruncle it selfe, the  
bleeding doth discharge it: also in y<sup>e</sup> vsage of things that haue  
the vertue to correct the acrimony or heat of the vyne; next,  
if it be hard and callous, you must vse fomentations, line-  
ments, cataplasmes, and plaisters to soften it, as you shall  
heare at length in my Booke of the French sicknesse. The  
fomentation or cataplasme may be made of Althea, Lettice,  
Wyone,



Wyone, Violets, and Paritare, Lyntseed, Fenegreke,  
 flowers of Cammomill, and Helilot, boyle all in water  
 or milke, and foment with sponges morning and evening:  
 that being done, dry the part and annoynt it with this line-  
 ment, made of *Axungia humana*, *unguenti de althea Agrip-  
 pa*, mixed with oyle of Cammomill and Lylies, using some-  
 time the plaster of *Vigo*, *sine Mercurio*. The caruncle be-  
 ing so softened and prepared, it must be corrected and taken  
 away with medicaments proper for that effect, as thus, take  
 the vnguent of *Rosatam*, *Mesues*, halfe an ounce, powder  
 of *Allumen vstum*, *Mercurie*, *Sauine*, and *Deer*, of each a  
 little, mixe all together and make an vnguent: also the  
 scumme of hony, being burnt and put in powder, and mixed  
 with a little Serote or oyle of *Wax*, doth in short time con-  
 sume the caruncle, being applyed thereto: Also *Pompholi-*  
*gas* well washed and mixed with a little *Sauine* and *Deer*  
 well puluerished, burnt shelles of Egges, *Antimony crudi*,  
 and *Album Ras*, well puluerished and mixed together: for  
 this purpose I commonly vse *Rosat Mesues*, with a little  
*Sublimie*, and doe apply it vppon a little *Wax* candle, to  
 the bignesse of a littlerush, which sometime must be inrolled  
 with a fine small linnen cloth, thereafter annoynt it with  
 the sayd vnguent: the cloth causeth the vnguent to adheare  
 better than the simple candle, till it come to y<sup>e</sup> place of excres-  
 cence or carnosity. I doe oftentimes vse in the place of this  
 candle a little tent made like vnto a point horne of fine lyn-  
 nen cloth, sewed with a needle and small threed, of the which  
 there must a portion remaine at the sayd tent, to pull it out  
 if need be. After it be thrust vnto the part affected, with a  
 long small sound of Silver: this tent doe I annoynt with  
 one of the foresayd vnguents, & do dresse it twice or thrice a  
 day. If the caruncle be painefull, I make the vnguent more  
 weake, in adding fewer of the powders, and sometimes vs-  
 ing iniections that haue the vertue to pacifie y<sup>e</sup> paine, which  
 sometime may be done with warme milke onely. This  
 methode doe I follow vntill the caruncle be consumed, ther-  
 after with drying vnguents and iniections I drye and sic-  
 catrize

Divers reme-  
 dies to con-  
 sume the Ca-  
 runcle.



catrixe these vlcers. For the which purpose I do commonly vse the water set downe in the last chapter called *Aqua celestis*; by these meanes I haue cured sundry: Diuers other remedies you may find in my Booke of the French sicknesse in the Chapter of Caruncle.

## CHAP. LXV.

## Of certaine other diseases of the Wand.

Phymosis.  
Ada. Loniceri.  
expl. morb.  
Signes.  
Al. li. 2. ca. 55.  
Haly Abbas.  
Cure.  
Cels. li. 7. ca. 25  
Pa. li. 6. ca. 51.

**B**ESIDES such diseases as you haue heard in the precedent Chapter, their happeneth likewise certaine other diseases, like as closing of the prepuce called *Phymosis*, retraction, or shortning of the ligament called *Caninum vinculum*, Warts, Tumors, Glandules, inuoluntary erection called *Priapismus*; Of y<sup>e</sup> which (all) I shal briefly speake, beginning at y<sup>e</sup> closing of the prepuce, which hapneth either by nature from the first confirmation, or by accident, like as siccatrixes of vlcers, of the prepuce that couereth the Wand head, when it is altogether closed, or at the least hath so little passage, that neither seede nor vyne can freely passe, nor the gland called *Balanus* be discovered. The Cure shall be to open and dilate the prepuce with the poynt of a sharpe chizell or bilbozie, then hold a tent of lead or tree in it for certaine dayes, that it conglutinate againe, annoynt alwayes the tent with oyle of sweet Almonds: sometime it happeneth that Children are bozne, and the fundament close, which likewise must be cut or rent with the fingers, such children are of short dayes. I haue sen the hole of the prepuce lower then the point of the gland, which made that the seed could not goe right to the matrice, neither the vyne abynde directly away, except the Wand had ben turned backward toward the belly part. For the Cure whereof I haue dilated or insisted that part, to the place where naturally it should be, and hold it dilated for a while, & cure it as other simple woundes: it happeneth also that sometimes the lyget called the byrdle of



of the wand is so shortned, that it maketh the wand to turne  
 backe and not straight, in such sort, as it were a convulsion:  
 the which impasseth the seed to goe rightly to the mother: for  
 the cure of this, the ligament must be cut as that of the tong *Tra. li. 9. ap. 3*  
 in yong children, and cure it as other simple wounds: some-  
 time betwixt the prepuce & *Balanus*, there are excrescences or  
 sundry warts which do proceed in hauing company with wo-  
 men in time of their moneths; for taking away wherof, you  
 must vse powder of Hauine, and Ocre, well dzyed and sub-  
 tilly puluerished. Sometime there happeneth little tumors  
 glandulous outwardly by the side of the prepuce, to the  
 bignesse of a Racket or Tennis ball, impassing in any sort  
 the company with women, such must be knit with a liga-  
 tour, as you haue heard in the Chapter of *Paraulis*. The  
 inuoluntary erection of the wand, called by the Latine *Pri-* *Pa. li. 6. ca. 59.*  
*apismus*, which is a disease contrary to *Satiriasis*: for *Sati-* *Pa. li. 3. ca. 56.*  
*rias* is a continuall erection of the wand with delight of con- *Tra. li. 9. ca. 10*  
 cupiscence: and *Priapismus* is an erection without appetite *Gal. li. 6. de*  
 or carnall lust. It doth proceed of wind or vaporous spirit in *male affect. loc.*  
 the nerue cauernous of the yarde, or by the dilatation of the *cap. 6.*  
 artiers therof. Also by lying on soft beds chiefly on the back,  
 eating and drinke of vaporous things. Also by thicknes  
 and closenesse of the pores; it is most dangerous if speedy  
 remedy be not had. For the Cure, purge, draw blood, ab-  
 staine from strong drinke, and all such things as engender  
 winds or vapours, annoynt the yarde and raynes with iuy-  
 ces of cold hearbs, cold lineaments made of *Cerat galen*, *sar-*  
*guis draconis*, *sempervivum*, vinegar, and such like: apply  
 to the loynes a cake of lead annoynted with quicke siluer,  
 foment the yarde with decoction of *Agnus castus*, *Roses*, *Ca-* *Gord. part. 7.*  
*momill*, *Peniroyall*, and *Helilot*, with such other remedies  
 as is set downe in the Chapter of windy tumors. Diuers  
 other remedies for this purpose, are set downe by *Galen* 14.  
*method. cap. 8. & 9. de compos. medicam. cap. 9. Aetius*  
*serm. 8. cap. 32. Avicen fol. 20. cap. 39. and diuers other*  
 old writers.

Cure.



## CHAP. LXVI.

Of the tumor in the Inguine or Liske,  
called *Bubo*.

Definition.

*Gal. li. 5. ca. 11.**& 2. ad glau.**& 3. meth.*

Cause.

Judgements.

*Gal. 13. meth.*

Cure.

**T**HIS word *Bubo*, is taken in this place for that tumor which is betwixt the thigh and the body, called in Latine *Inguen*; in the which place there is sundry little kernels or glands, which sometime do swell and tumifie. The Cause is a defluxion of humors in those parts, violent exercise, strokes, crysis of maladies, dolours, or ulcers in the thigh, legge, or foet. The Judgements, such as happen by crysis of sickness, are difficile, but if neither feuer, nor vapour venomous hath proceeded, it is more easie to be helped. As for the Cure, sometime it doth resolute, otherwhiles it suppureth, for the which follow that Cure which you haue heard in the Chapter of *Scrophule*, and other aposthumes which happen in parts glandulous. There be other certaine glands a little lower downe in the thigh, where ordinarily doth engender the Plague, wherof (God willing) you shall heare the Cure in the Booke of the Plague.

## CHAP. LXVII.

Of the tumor or paine in the Hanch or Hur-  
cle bone, called *Ciatiea*.

**T**HIS disease (which commonly doth possesse the ioynts, by the falling of some humor above nature betwixt the ioynt-bones) is called by the Latines *Morbus articularis*, and in vulgar the Gout, of the which there be diuers kinds and names according to the ioynt which is diseased, as for example: that which occupieth the Jawes, is called *Schizogomogra*: if in the Specke, it is called *Trachelagra*: in the Backe, it is called *Rachiragra*: that in the Shoulders is called *Omogra*: that in the Clauicles, is called *Cleragra*: that



that in y<sup>e</sup> elbow is called *Peithyagra*. that in the hands is called *Cheiragra*, that in the foote is called *Podagra*, and that in the Hanch is called *Ischias*, that in the knees is called *Gonagra*: here I shall content me onely to speake of the last two, because they bee most common, the others I leaue to the learned Physition, as matters more Physicall than Chyrurgicall. The disease which is called *Ciatica*, proceedeth partly by the vsage of such meats as ingendereth phlegmaticque humors, also a defluxion of a grosse coniealed humor, which possesseth the ioynt of y<sup>e</sup> hanch bone, which partly doth proceed for want of exercise, as also sometime by immoderate vsing of women, stopping of the hemorrhoides or monethly couries.

Aphor. 6. &  
com. 49.

Definition.  
Pa. 1. 3. ca. 77.  
Cause.

The Cure, is first in good dyet, vsing things of good and easie digestion, purging the grosse phlegmaticque humors by laxatiues and vomiters, letting blood of the Saphin vaine of the soze side, application of fomentations, apparitiues and resolutiues on the part, ventosies, with scarrifications, vesicatories good to breake the skinne, with such plaisters and linements that haue the vertue to heate and resolute: in the meane time keepe euer the belly loose, with moderate exercise. To some persons I haue vsed decoctions sudorifique made of *Gaiac* and *Salsaparilla*, morning and euening for a certaine time, which doth prouoke sweat: after the which the body being well dryed, I haue euer vsed this linement, to wit, *Rec. Arungia humana, anseris, Galina, medula cruris vituli, cerui & bovis, an. vnc. 2. olei vulpini, vn. 3 2. liquifant simul cum aqua salvia, chimiciue arthetice an. drag. 1. sem. olei de cera drag. 1. misce simul adde sub finem aqua vita vnc. sem. fiat linementum*, wherewith you shall annoynt the hanch, thigh, and leg, apply aboue it blacke sheepes wool, as it cometh from the sheepe: by the continuing of this certaine daies, I haue cured diuers: also oyle wherein frogs haue bene boyled till the flesh be separate from the bones, with the which oyle rubbe and annoynt the soze place, which is an excellent remedie, as sayth Mizaldus.

Cure.

Mizaldus.

To



To others in whome those remedies haue not profited, I haue applyed cauters either in the inside or outside of the leg vnder the knee, containing a bullet or pie therein for a time, till the humor did euacuate and the sicke become well: some doe vse to apply two or three cauters on the sore part, by the which meanes diuers times I haue found good successe. Sundry other remedies are set downe by the learned, but by these only haue I euer found best helpe.

*Ro. li. 4. ca. 12.*

*CHAP. LXVIII.*

**C** Of the tumor or paine in the knees.

*Gal. com. in apho. 74. li. 4. & 6. epid.*

Cause.

Signes.

Iudgements.

Hippo. prog.

*Cel. li. 4. ca. 23.*

Cure.

Avicen.

Henricus.

**T**he tumor or paine in the knee doth proceed either of congestion, defluxion of humors, or by strokes, falls, crysis of sicknesse, long trauell, ryding, heat, cold, or by long diseases. The Signes, are manifest. The Iudgements, such as happen after long sicknesse, are difficile and dangerous, or at the least long in healing: the legge and the thigh oftentimes become atrofied, extenuate, painefull, and dolorous, the humor being either hote or cold, sometime there is virulencie and malignity in the humor, which is vnder the little bone of the knee called *Rotula*, which sometime causeth the ioynt to disioyne, and the *Rotula* turn quite ouer, as once I did see at Paris. The Cure whereof did consist in vniuersall and particular remedies: the vniuersall shall be according to the quality of the humor, as is set downe in the generall chapter of Tumors. The topickall or particular remedies shall be in the blage of repercussives, discutients, and drying things, according to the nature of the part, which shall bee distinguished according to the degrees of the Apoplexie, as you haue heard in Phlegmon. If it tend to suppuration, beware to open it, it is forbidden by our auncients to make deepe incisions vnder the *Rotule* of the knee, because those parts are both sensible and painefull, and oftentimes euill accidents ensue; so you shall vse remedies corroboratiues,



roboratiues, and anodines, euacuating the matter, and siccatizing the wound, as you haue heard in others. Sometime the tumor is engendered of wind: if so be, you shall cure it as you haue heard in watry and windy Tumors.

## CHAP. LXIX.

Of the tumor in the vaines of the Legges,  
which is called *Varica*, and by the Greekes  
*Cirsos*.

**V***arix* is a dilatation of the vaine, greater than naturall Definition.  
it should be, which happeneth in diuers parts of the bo- *Pa.li.6.ca.82.*  
dy, as on the temples, bellie, vnder the nauill, on y<sup>e</sup> testicles *Lebot li. 3. of*  
and matrix, but chiefly in the legges, and happeneth some- *Ornament.*  
time in one vaine onely, otherwhiles in diuers together, *Lom. expl. ver.*  
tumified and full of a thicke burnt melancholicke bloud, let-  
ting the action of the place. The Cause, is abouondance of  
melancholous humor, retention of moneths in women, and  
hemorrhoides in both sexes, which dilateth the vaines, and  
sometime doth breake them, as happeneth sometime to wo-  
men in their trauell, the which I haue entreated at length  
in my Booke of the diseases of women. It proceedeth also  
of vehement exercise, as leaping, wrestling, carrying of  
great burdens, strokes, falles, torments, and too much stan-  
ding, great travelling on foote, and such like. The Signes  
are perceiued by the greatnes of the vaine, which common-  
ly are more tumified, and blacker then the naturall. The  
Iudgements, such as are interne are incurable, so not to be *Judgements.*  
touched, because it letteth the fluxion, so remaineth and go- *Gor. pa. 7. c. 20*  
oth to the noble parts, causeth great accidents, they enter-  
taine old vlcers, and letteth the cure of them. The Cure, is  
first in good dyet, abstaining from things that ingender me- *Cure.*  
lancholy: some do vse when the varices are little onely, to *Rasis lib. 9.*  
comfort the part that the humor descend not, neither be so  
easily receaued by the part: also to apply playsters aboue  
the

Cause.  
Avinzor.

Signes.

Rolandus.



*Pa. loco citato* the knee, to intercept the humor made of Bolarminte, *Terra sigillata*, Ruts of Cyprus, Gaules, *Hypocistis*, Incense, Dragagant, Barly, or Beane flower : also the plaister called *Contra rupturam* is very good, with the vsages of Krait bandages from the foot to the knee, sopped in sad Claret wine or some decoction astringent : let the sicke vse little trauell, hold vp the legs : if by those remedies the disease cure not,

*Cel. li. 7. ca. 31.* Some counsaile to incise them in diuers places, according to the circumbolutions, and let them bleed to the force of the sicke, then close them vp and bind the wound with a compress and band wet in Claret wine and water, and handle the wound as other bleedings : but before you bleed, you must foment the legge with hote water, to make the grosse thicke melancholicke blood become more thinne, as also to make the vaines more tumified, resting that day, and if they doe swell againe, doe the like within two or three dayes after, the place alwayes being first marked with a little ynke on the skin aboue the vaine, thereafter take vp the skin with thy hand to discover the vaine : make the incision in the middest thereof, then let the grip goe that the vaine may be scene ; then passe two needles as you haue heard in the herne varicous, let it bleed a quantity, tye it fast, let the threed fall off it selfe without drawing of it by force, & cure the wound as others. Some for this purpose doe vse the actvall cauter, whereof I haue found euill inconueniences to ensue, for the which I vse onely to apply a potentiall cauter aboue the skin in the varice, which doth not onely burne the skinne, but also the varice, which done I let the escharre to fall off it selfe, without any applying of medicament or instrument, saue onely a little fresh butter, vntill the escharre fall, and the vaine conglutinate of it selfe, as I haue often proued.

*Fuch. li. 7. de  
med. morb.  
cap. 8.  
Chē. li. 1. ca. 58*



## CHAP. LXX.

¶ Of the little tumor in the Legs, called  
*Dracunculus.*

**D***racunculus* is a tumor of extraordinary dolour that is bredde in the legs or armes, and is called *Draguncus*. Definition. Pa.li.4.ca.83. Ant.li.4.ca.28  
 Yet diuers Autho<sup>rs</sup> haue giuen it diuers names, as Avicen calleth it *Meden*, by the name of a Towne where it is most frequent. Albucasis calleth it *Vena cutilis*. Haly Abbas *Vena fumosa*. There is great difference touching the Cause and Cure of it. It chaunceth most commonly in the high parts of India and Egypt, and is not often seen among vs; yet somewhat I will say of it for the better instruction of the yong Chyrurgion. Judgements. Paulus and Avicen are of opinion, Pa.cap.citato. Ada.Lonicer. Soranus. Al.li.2.ca.92.  
 that in the place affected, the humor is like unto little wormes: sometimes great, otherwhiles small, chiefly in the parts musculous, as in the thighs, and legs, sometimes in childrens sides vnder the skinne, with manifest motion. Cause. Fauē. de puer. morbis ca.12. Monard. li.7.  
 The Cause is a sharpe mordicant humor, betwene the flesh and the skinne, which in time wareth hard like a nerue or tendon, and not a vegetable thing as some doe imagine: these kinds of tumors are thought to haue some venenosity with them, and is ingendered of an hote melancholy blood, and burnt phlegme, sent through the vaines to the exterior parts by the vertue expultrix. Signes.  
 The Signes, are vehement dolour, punction, tention, varicous, anfractuosities, feuer, hardnesse, round like nerues, and seeming to moue in touching as if it had life. The tumor is long, and stretched from one ioynt to another, as from the knee to the foote, from the shoulder to the elbowe, from that, to the part of the hand called the carpe, with such intollerable paine that hardly can be suffered. Cure. Rasis tract. 7. cap. 24.  
 The Cure, whether it be humor or animall vegetable, is to foment the place with milke wherein Camomill hath bene sodden, or a little Aloes dissolved, with some medicaments to appease the dolour, then to giue ayze either



either by cauter or by visicator : If it be not dolorous, and tend to suppuration, cure it as you haue heard in *Eresipilas* and *Phlegmon*, changing your remedies, according to the times of the tumor and humor predominant, as you haue heard in their proper Chapters.

## CHAP. LXXI.

Of the tumor in the Legges or armes, called by the Greekes *Elephantiasis particularis*.

Definition.

Gord part. 1.

Ar. 2. breui. cap. 46.

Cause.

Palmarius.

Constanti. As-  
fric. de Elephā.

Pauli. 4. ca. 1.

**T**his disease which is called *Elephantiasis*, if it be vniuersally through all the body, it is called *Leprosie*, and by the Arabians *Malum sanctæ manus*: but if it be particular, it occupieth onely one member, which spoyleth the forme, figure, and disposition thereof, and maketh it rough, scurffie, red, and vnequall, like the skinne of the Elephant, for the which it is called *Elephantiasis*: if it possesse the skinne and not the flesh, it is called *Morphea*. The Cause, commeth either from the Mothers wombe, and is called *Maladie hereditary*, or after we are borne. If in the Mothers wombe, the Child hath been conceaued in the time of monethly purgations, or else the Mother or Father hath bene elephanticke. It happeneth also after we are borne, and commeth either of the corruption of the ayre, by dwelling places nere vnto the Sea, which makes the humors more grosse and thicke: also by dwelling in hote countries, as in Spaine, Affricke, and in others, where many are infected; also in cold parts which thicken the humors. Likewise by great plenitude of the melancholique humor, or burnt chollier, retention of the hemorrhoides or monethly courses, defecation in the melt, vsage of melancholique meats that are hard of digestion, such as Swine, Goates, Hares, and diuer others: also by hauing companie with such as be Elephanticke, drinking after them, receauing their breath or sweat, the continuall vsage of milke, strong wines, drunkenness, gluttony,



gluttony, sadnesse, feare, melancholie, with all such things that thicken, heateth, or burneth the blood, or participates with a maligne quality. The Signes, is great tumor possessing the whole member or some part thereof, and doth augment by little and little, insensible, not dolorous, sometime inflamed, the eyes troubled, the breathe will savoured, the skinn rough, knotty, and vnequall, hard and scurfy: at last the body becommeth atrofied and leane, the bones tumified, the hands and fingers become swelled, and the feet deformed. The Iudgements, either being vniuersall or particular, it is incureable, yet some remedies palliatives may be vsed to let and stay the maladie for a time, chiefly by purging of the melancholique humor, bleeding, bathing, ventosing, prouoking of the hemorrhoides and the moneths, vsing good regiment in things that ingender good blood, abstayning from things of contrary quality, the which must be done by the aduise of the learned Physition, or by such as haue written of that subiect, like as Palmarius, Paulus, Fer- nelius in his Counsels cap. 68. & 69. Chelmeteus, Celsus, Pareus, Constantinus, Affricanus, with diuers others. If there be inflammation or heat, vse such remedies as are set downe in the chapter of Phlegmon. I haue knowne some infected with this malady, who did liue more than twenty yeares by vsing of good regiment.

Signes.

Pa. loco citato.

Iudgements.

Cure.

Cel. li. 3. ca. 25.

Fer. consil. cap. 68. &amp; 69.

## CHAP. LXXII.

Of the tumor which commeth in the extremities of the fingers, called *Paneris*, or *Paranochian*.

This hote tumor or Aposthume which doth possesse the extremities of the fingers, and roots of the nayles of the toes, is called by the Greekes *Paranochian*, and by the Latines *Reduvia*. The Cause, is melancholique humors, malignant, venomous, of a most hote nature which proceedeth from the bones, nerues, tendons, and membranous that

Definition.

Gor. pa. 1. c. 28

Theodo. lib. 3.

Pa. li. 3. ca. 81.

Cause.

Al. li. 2. ca. 89.

Vigo lib. 2.



Signes. that couer them. The Signes, are vehement dolour, the  
*cel. li 6. ca. 18.* which maketh the sicke almost beside himselfe, accompany-  
 ed with feuer, inflammation, and dolour, and other euill  
 symptoms, as in Carbuncle. Guydo and Vigo doe call  
 it a cruell, abhominable, and mortall disease, they report  
 to haue seene some grieuouly tormented, and dye thereof.  
 The Judgements, it is sometime blcered, auoyding a viru-  
 lent matter, and is very dangerous, and diuers times be-  
 fore there be any outward appearance on the flesh, it rotteth  
 both the bones, ligaments, and membzaines, so that there  
 is no remedy but amputation, in case it infect the rest. The  
 Cure; first, the sicke shall be purged, and bled in the arme  
 opposite, in the meane time vsing good regiment, abstaining  
 from strong drinke, as in Phlegmon. The topicall reme-  
 dies are diuersly set downe by the old writers: some coun-  
 saile repercussiuues, anodines, and suppuratiues: others,  
 for the greatnesse of the disease, counselleth not to abyde the  
 maturation, but presently to make incision on the side of the  
 ioynt affected: the length of the sayd ioynt penetrating to  
 the bone, to giue issue to that venome, which is commonly  
 betwene the periost and the bone, let it bleed till it stanch of  
 it selfe. Vigo counsayleth, to apply the actuall cauter, for  
 it hath a mighty vertue in correcting of the malignity and  
 venenosity which offend the nerue and bone, also doth pac-  
 fie the vehement paine, which being done, the blcer must be  
 clensted with *Egyptiacke* and *Aqua vite* mixed together, or  
 a little *Apostolorum*: In this case I neuer open it before it  
 come to maturitie, let it bleed, then wash it with *Aqua vite*,  
 well rectified, and mixed with a little *Theriacke* and *Hi-  
 thridacke*, thereafter I apply about the part a cataplasme of  
 the leaues of *Henbane*, and *Mandragora* roasted vnder the  
 ashes, & mixed with a little butter or Hogs grease, or in place  
 of it *Pupilion*, *Rosat Mesues*, oyle of *Roses* to appease the  
 dolour, with such other remedies as are set downe in the  
 Chapter of Carbuncle: Thereafter procure matter, muni-  
 fie the blcer, and siccatrize it as you haue heard in others.

Pterigmin



*Pterigminis* is an excrescence of fibres vnder the nayles of the fingers or toes, chiefly in the thumbe or great toe, it loseth the ioynt of the nayle, and maketh it to fall, sometime corrupteth and rotteth the bone; for the Cure you must vse such remedies, as in blcers, with corruption of the bone, yee haue heard.

## CHAP. LXXIII.

¶ Of the little excrescence which commeth commonly in the hands or other parts, called by the Latines *Veruca*, and by the Arabians *Botorala*, in vulgar Warts.

There happeneth oftentimes in the hands little excrescences or Warts of diuers formes, and are for the most part incommodious, painefull, vnseemly, impeding somewhat the action. They are of diuers kinds, which all or either of them doe infect the part where they are; they are ingendered of a melancholique pituitous blood. The Cure is diuers, according to the nature of the excrescence, some of them be knit, others be cut, some consumed with corrosiues; such as be small at the roote, may be knit with Horse haire, threed, or silke well waxed, and wet in strong water, or oyle of Sulphure, tyed euery day faster then other: the hard tying letteth the nourishment, and causeth it to fall more easily: such as be large at the roote may be cut with a Razor or sharpe sheeres, letting them bleed well, then apply a little powder of Bolarmenie, or *Terra sigillata*, with a little Allom water: such as be very hard without great feeling, may be consumed with oyle of Mytreoll, strong water, or powder of Arsenicke, then apply defensiues of Boll, with Rose and Plantine water, or Drecrate, others which be more tender and not dolorous may be consumed with the powder of Sauiue and Dere, well dzyed and subtilly puluerished, or with a little blacke Sope and Salt mixed together, others doe

I consume

Definition.

Col. li. 5. ca. 28.

Cause.

Pau. li. 4. ca. 15.

Cure.

Arnald. lib. 2.

brevi. cap. 45.

Bru. li. 2. ca. 14.

Gord. part. 1.

cap. 20.



*Rol. li. 3. ca. 33.* consume them with powder of *Asphodelorum* and *Hermos-*  
*Baptista porta.* *dats.* Baptista Porta doth much approve the head of an  
*Rossellus.* Cele, cut and rubbed with the blood thereof. Rossellus com-  
 mendeth the red Onyon well bruised with salt, and rub the  
 Warts therewith; also the powder made of hony, set down  
 in the Chapter of the Caruncle of y<sup>e</sup> Uland, otherwise you  
 may take Agrimony, a little Salt, Vinegar, and bruise all  
 together and annoynt the Warts; the Dregs or lees of wine  
 burnt, or the rotes of Dyffers doe the like.

## CHAP. LXXIIII.

¶ Of the tumor or vlcer in the Heeles, called  
*Mula, Kybes, or Chilblanes.*

*Paul. li. 3. ca. 79* **T**his tumor, little vlcer or excrescence, which oftentimes  
*Cel. li. 3. ca. 28.* happeneth in the hands and feete, chiefly in the heeles  
*Cause.* of young Children in the Winter season, are called by the  
 Grækes *Chimethla*, and by the Latines *Perniones*, are very  
 noysome, and doe commonly proceed of cold, vsing of strait  
 shoes, and filth on the feet and heeles. For the Cure where-  
*Cure.* of, Avicen counselleth to make embrocation with hote wa-  
*Avicen.* ter, or *Aqua marina*, which is water and Salt mixed toge-  
*Cels. loco citat.* ther, also a lauement made of powder of *Dzagagant*, with  
 oyle of *Masticke*, or you may make a linciment of *Goates*  
 grease, with a little powder of *Putgauer* es: otherwise, take  
 two ounces of the marrow of *Beats* fat, with halfe an ounce  
 of *Galbanum* mixed, and apply to the soze: in like manner  
 you may foment the soze with the decoction of the roote of  
*Siclamen*, or *Navets*; as also *Siclamen*, or *Raph rds*, rolled  
 vnder the ashes, and mixed with a little ware, and apply it  
 in forme of a playster or cataplasme: if the vlcer be large,  
 apply some gentle mundificative or *Apostolorum*, thereafter  
*Vnguentum album*, powder of *Masticke*, *Incense*, & *Myrhe*,  
 with a double cloth wet in warme Claret wyne, so hold it  
 warme.



## CHAP. LXXV.

¶ Of the little hard tumor in the feet, commonly called *Cornes*.

Those hard callous tumors which commonly possesse the toes and soales of the feet, but chiefly the ioynts and vnder the nayles, are call'd *Cornes*, and in Latine *Clavus*, of the which there are three kindes, to wit, *Corpus*, *Callus*, and *Clavus*. The Cause, is chiefly in wearing of strapte Shoes, superfluous excrements which cannot auoyde, so remayneth in the neruous part, and requireth a certaine hardnesse, according to the nature of the part where they are. The Signes are euident to the sight. The Judgements, is great dolour, with empassing to walke or trauell, they happen sometime after confusion. The Cure is, that those that are little and not deepe, may with a sharpe Wyre be cut at the roote ; but before they be cut, I vse to applye to the Corne a little piece of fresh Ueale of the bignesse of six pence, and tye it to the Corne a whole night, it doth mollifie it and maketh it more easie to be cut, which being done, I fill vp the hole with a little of that sand, which ordinarily doth rest in the bottome of the Chamber pot, it letteth the growing of it againe, being finely taken out at the roote. Lebot commendeth much the applying of a Cowes gaule, which maketh it to fall out at the roote : some after the Corne be softened, either by fomentation or piece of Ueale, doe apply powders made of the roote of *Arista* *bovis*, otherwise little rootes roasted vnder the ashes, and beaten with *Axunge* and apply it to the Corne, which maketh it to fall in three or foure dayes, then fill vp the hole with a little Ueale or greene Coprys, or a little of that sand which remayneth in the ground of the byrne. In cutting of it, goe not too deepe amongst the ligaments and tendons, for the great accidents that sometime doe follow, as inflammations,

Definition.  
Cel.li.5.ca.28.  
Difference.  
Pa.li.3.ca.30.  
Cause.

Signes.  
Judgements.

Cure.  
The.li.3.ca.39

Lebot of Ornament.

Pa.li.6.ca.87.



Petrus Baprus. mations, conbulsions, and gangrene, by the which some haue loosed their toes and fete, by cutting a part of it, the roote groweth more large ; so it is best to soment the part with water of Mallowes, and Althea, or water wherein Trypes haue bene sodden : thereafter vse Gumme, Ammoniacke, dissolued in *Aqua vita*, and lay on it : or this which I doe vse made of like quantity, of Turpentine, Ware, and Merdigrease, called *Erugo aris*, and apply on the part : also red Wax, *semper vivum* and a little *Erugo aris*, mingled together, and apply : and so we end this Booke, and shall follow out to entreate of Wounds.

THE





# THE SIXT BOOKE.

## *Of Wounds.*

*Which containeth XIII. Chapters ; whose Con-  
tents be these ; by PETER LOVVE  
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of Wounds in generall.  
2. Of the simple Wound in the flesh.  
3. Of the cōposed Wound, with losse of substance.  
4. Of the contused Wound.  
5. Of Wounds doone with Gunne shot.  
6. Of burning with Gunne-powder.  
7. Of Wounds in the vaines and artiers.  
8. Of Wounds in the nerves.  
9. Of Wounds by byting of venomous beasts.  
10. Of Wounds in the bones.  
11. Of Wounds in the head.  
12. Of Wounds in the Thorax.  
13. Of Wounds in the Belly.

### CHAP. I.

¶ Of the Causes, Signes prognosticke, and  
Cure of Wounds, in Generall.

Interloqvutors. *Peter, and Iohn.*



Ike as we have proceeded in the former Booke  
of Tumors, we shall follow out the same me-  
thode in Wounds, first demaunding of you  
what is a wound?

*Io. It is a solution of continuity, recent, Definition.  
bloody,*



*Gal. meth. 3.  
cap. 10.*

bloody, without putrefaction, either in the soft, hard, or organicke parts.

*Cel. li. 5. ca. 26.*

*Pet.* What is the cause of wounds?

*Gal. li. 2. de  
fracturis.*

*Cause.*

*Celsus ibidem.*

*Io.* The Causes are diuers, and do happen diuers waies, by the which the wound taketh diuers denominations, as if a wound be made by a thing sharpe pointed, as a Rapier, Launce, or Dart, it is called thrust or stobbe: if by a sword or any such thing that doe cut, it is called incision or cut: if of a heauy and blunt, as a stone, Bat, Clubbe, and such like, which are done by force and violence, breaking and contunding the flesh, it is called confusion.

*Signes.*

*Gal. de causis  
morbis ca. ult.*

*Celsus ibidem.*

*Difference.*

*Pet.* Which are the Signes of wounds?

*Io.* They be manifest, according to the Judgements and accidents that follow.

*Pet.* Which are the difference?

*Io.* Some are simple, others composed.

*Pet.* What is a simple wound?

*Hippo. sect. 6.  
apho. 18.*

*Io.* It is that wherein is no lacke of substance, and healeth by one way onely, as sayth Hippocrates.

*Pet.* What is a composed wound?

*Io.* It is that in the which there is losse of substance, and hath diuers intentions for the cure thereof.

*Pet.* Differ they no others waies?

*Io.* They differ also in this, that some doe heale easily, others are difficile, some be mortall, some without intemperie, some be little, others great, superficial, profound in the simple or similar parts; others in the instrumentall or organicke parts; some do happen in soft, others in hard parts.

*Pet.* Which are those that heale easily?

*Hip. 2. prædict.*

*Io.* Those which are in the flesh, without incision of vaines, artiers, nerues, and in bodies well disposed.

*Pet.* Which are dangerous?

*Cel. li. 3. ca. 26.*

*Hip. 6. sec. aph.*

*Paracel. chir.*

*magna.*

*Io.* All those which are interne in the membzaines of the bzaynes, in the loynes, in the bordes of Diaphragma, great intestines, and those that are in the ioynts; also wounds in the nerues which cause conuulsion, by reason of their



their communication of the braynes; those in the *Oesophag*, *Hip. li. de vut-*  
 vaine Jugulares, flanke, thighs, betwixt the fingers, and *nerib. capitis.*  
 such as are without tumor, all wounds in the head both  
 great and small, with such wounds as are deepe made ouer  
 thwart the muscles. *Hippo. lib. 5. apho. 66.*

*Pet.* Which are mortall?

*Ioh.* All those in the substance of the braynes, heart, li-  
 uer, middest of the lights, chest of the gall, middest of the  
 Diaphragma, stomacke, melt, kidneyes, small intestines, *Hip. aph. sect. 5.*  
 bladder, matrix, trache artier, and spynall medull; those *Gal. lib. 4. ca. 6.*  
 which are in the rotes of the emunctories of the noble parts, *Cel. li. 5. ca. 26.*  
 also in the vaine descending or ascending, vaine port, great *Bru. li. 1. chir. cap. 6.*  
 artier, or in the backe.

*Pet.* Which are the peculiar signes, whereby you know  
 those parts to be mortall?

*Ioh.* Euery one haue their owne particular signe, as if *Fillop. exposi. in lib. Hip. de vulnerib. capi. cap. 95. & 98.*  
 the braynes or membaines thereof be hurt, the bloud com-  
 meth forth by the nose and eares, with vomiting of choller,  
 auoyding of the excrements vnawares, the face groweth  
 ugly to the sight: the feeling and vnderstanding dull, with  
 conuulsion and rauing within three or foure dayes. I know  
 the Heart to be hurt, when there commeth forth quantity  
 of bloud, thicke and blacke, chiefly the right side being hurt;  
 if the left, the blood is more red and subtile, the pulse becom-  
 meth weake and variable, pale colour, with vniuersall  
 trembling, auoyding a cold euill sauoured sweat: the ex-  
 tremities wax cold, often sounding, and briefly death. I  
 know the Loynes to be hurt, when the sicke doth breath  
 with difficulty, voyding a spumous blood at the mouth and  
 wound, also when the sicke lyeth on the wound, speaketh  
 more freely then on the other side, with rauing, red colour,  
 and hote in the visage, sometimes auoyding quantity of  
 matter by the wound. The membranous part of the *Dia-*  
*phragma* being hurt, the flanke doth retyze with great  
 waight on the part, dolour in the ridge backe, difficulty to  
 breath, coughing with issue of a spumous blood at y wound.



*Cel. li. 5. ca. 26.* If the Liuer be hurt, there commeth out abundance of blood at the wound, the flankes retyze towards the backe, the colour like death, the eyes sincke in the head, want of rest, the vyne is bloody, the excrements purulent, the sicke commeth to lye on the belly, the dolour is ptycking, extending to the breastbone and ribbes, in respyring he draweth in his shoulders, and vomiteth choller. *Paulus Aegineta* reporteth, that one lobe of the liuer may be hurt, and yet death not follow of necessity. If the Spleen be hurt, the blood cometh forth blacke and thicke at the wound or left flank, which w<sup>th</sup> the stomacke waxeth hard, there is great drougt, dolour in the left side, also in the region of y<sup>e</sup> liuer: if the kidneys be hurt, y<sup>e</sup> dolor descendeth to y<sup>e</sup> root of the thigh & testicles, w<sup>th</sup> difficulty of vyne, pissing of blood, sometime the blood stayeth within, and the sicke becommeth all swollen, and so dyeth. If the orifice of the stomacke be hurt, there ensueth vomiting of choller, also of the meat and the drinke, the pulse groweth weake, extremities cold, often sweating. The intestine *Ieiunum* and stomacke being hurt, haue the same signes, *Pa. li. 6. ca. 48.* with the meat and drinke coming forth at the wound, the flank dolorous and hard, voyding choller at the mouth, *Cel. li. 5. ca. 26.* the spittle blew, and extremities ware cold. The Spynall medull being hurt, there happeneth conuulsion and Paralysisme, the feeling groweth remisse, the inferiour conduits *Hippo. sect. 6. aph. 28.* are relaxed, so that the vyne and excrements voydeth away vnawares. The Bladder being hurt, there is great dolour on the shere-bone and Ilya, pissing of blood, voyding of the vyne at the wound, vomiting of choller, coldnesse of extremities. If the Matric be hurt, the dolour doth communicate to the liskes, haunches, and thighs, the blood cometh forth partly by the wound, and partly by nature: some lose sence, reason, and speech, and haue the same accident as *Cel. li. 7. ca. 16.* those who are hurt in the heart. The Intestines being hurt there is great dolour, with continuall voyding of the excrements at the wounds.

*Pe.* What is to be considered in the Iudgemets of wounds?

*Ioh. First,*



*Ioh.* First, to know what part is hurt and the nature thereof, whether there be any hope of health, knowing the parts that are easie to heale, difficile, and mortall; also the place, action, substance, situation, the figure of the wound, actions that happen. The temperature, age, sex, region, season, and constitution of the time, wounds in the nerves, tendons, ioynts, and bones, without appearance of tumor or euill signes, and sheweth the humor to haue taken the course to the noble parts. Hippocrates sayth, if in the wound of the articles fluxe of the belly doth happen, it is euill, and for the most part mortall. Wounds with fracture behinde, are in danger of spasme, and such as are before are in danger of railing and frenzie. If conuulsion happen in a wound, chiefly after great inflammation, it is for the most part mortall, and sheweth that the parts neruous are hurt. Wounds in the head, if after ten dayes symptoms doe happen, it signifieth abcesse in the liuer, and great drought signifieth the same. Wounds with great losse of bloud, if conuulsion ensue, are dangerous; as also all thrusts in the nerves and tendons, and in voluntary vomiting of choller, or if the inflammation lasteth long, are all euill signes.

*Lib. de articulis.*

*Hippo. sect. 5. apho. 65.*

*Celsus ibidem.*

*Pet.* Vntill what time should wee stay our iudgement of wounds in the head?

*Ioh.* To fortie dayes, some late Writers till fiftene or twenty dayes, after which time, often feuers and other euill accidents, which chaunceth often in time of full Moone, in which time I did see sundry dye.

*Hip. li. de vult. nerib. capitis.*

*Pet.* What time of the yeare is most expedient for the curation of wounds?

*Cure.*

*Ioh.* The Spring time, the weather being neither hote nor cold: the Autume is worse, for the moistnesse of the ayre; also the Winter is enemy to all vlcers and wounds, in the membraynes and bones.

*Hip. li. de vlc. rib. & apho. sect. 5.*

*Pet.* How many poyntes are there to be obserued in the curation of wounds?

*Fillop. exposit. in lib. Hip. de vult. nerib. capi.*

*Ioh.* Five, in ordering of vniuersall remedies, with good regiment

*cap. 25.*

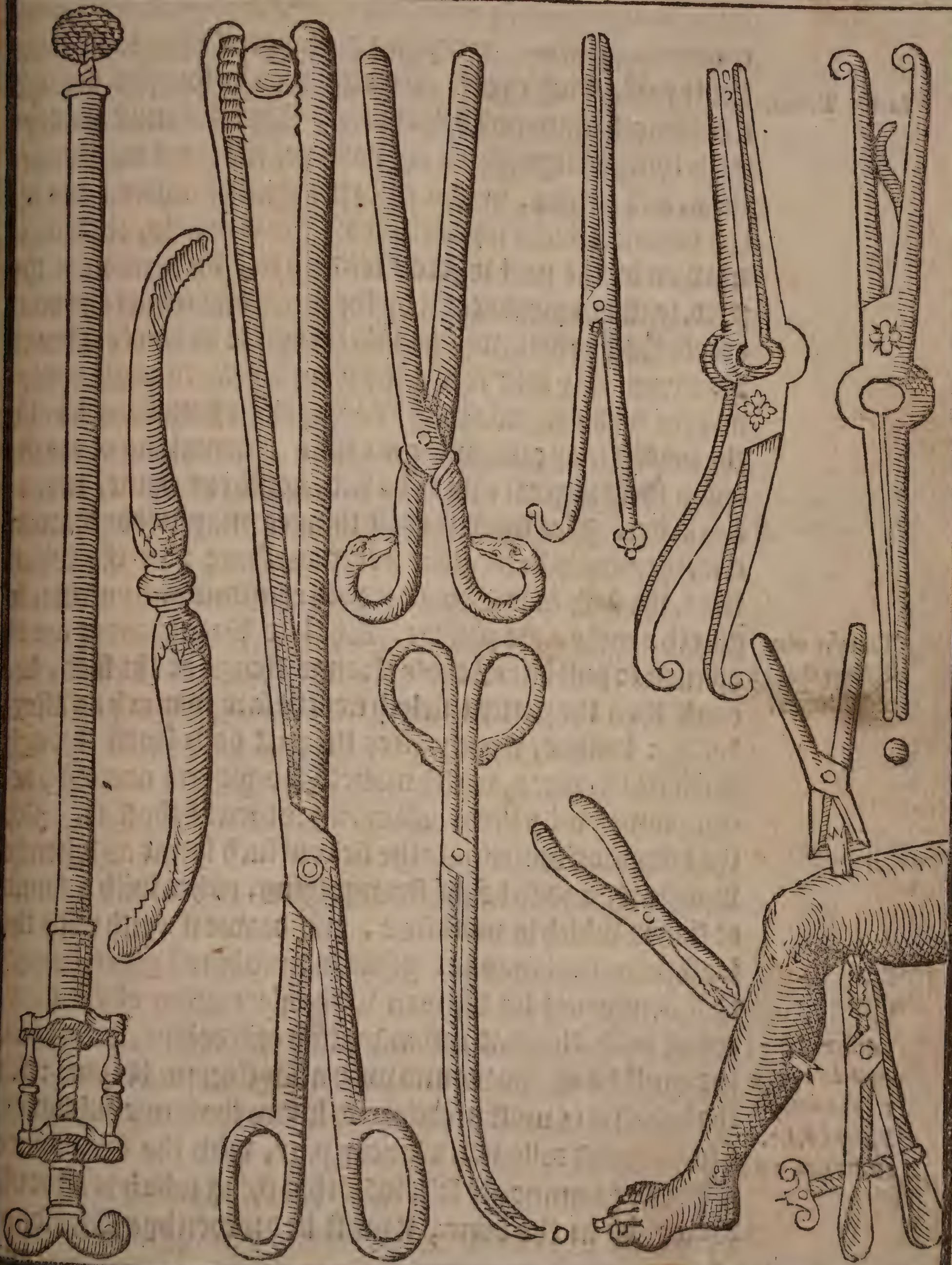


*Cels. l. b. 5. ca. 26. & 27.* regiment of life, and good ayre, which must be hote and temperate : the sicke must be nourished with little meat and of light digestion, somewhat refrigerative. If there be feare of feuer and inflammation, which is most to be feared before the seauenth day, for the which abstaine from wine and all strong drinke, except through losse of much bloud the heart be faint, suppelightly, and abstaine from women, and all violent passions of the mind. If great dolour, inflammation, or conuulsion happen, as in parts neruous and bare of flesh, let bloud, and vse light purgations, if the body be Cacochi-  
*Savona. cap. 4.* micke. In great wounds of the head, and such other times  
*l. de balneo.* as is not meet to giue potions at the mouth, as you shall per-  
*Gal. li. 4. meth. cap. 6.* ceue by the estate of the diseased, vse Glysters. The Se-  
*Phillip l. curat. cap. 26. & 27.* cond poynt, in taking away that which is noysome, as I-  
*Joh. de Vigo.* ron, Balls, any Stones, Wood, and such like, Cloth, peeces  
*& Guydo.* of bones, or congealed bloud.  
*Ro. li. 1. ca. 22.* Pet. By what meanes take you such things away?  
*Pa. li. 6. ca. 33.* Job. They shalbe taken away either by the part where  
*Oribasi. l. b. 7. cap. 17.* they enter, or parts whither they tend, which is done by  
*Cels. lib. 7. ca. 5.* diuers sorts of Instruments fit for that purpose:

*Instruments*



Instruments to drawe bullets, arrowes, and  
other strange things, from woundes.





Pli. li. 24. ca. 19

also by the helpe of those medicaments, *Radix pectinis vene-*  
*ris cum malva tusa, aristolocia, ammoniacum, cum melle ra-*  
*dis arundinis confusa melle mista alter si fructus, lacerti caput*  
*tritum & appositum*, excepting alwayes if they be in some

Iacob. Dinus.

noble part, in which case they are not to be touched, because  
 it hasteneth death and helpeth not. When we must consider  
 if the thing be superficiall not past, yet the great vaines, ar-  
 tiers, and nerves, in that case they shall be drawen out by  
 the wound: but if it passeth those great vessels, it shall be  
 drawen by the part where it tendeth to, by incision of the  
 part, least in drawing of it by the wound, you hurt and dilac-  
 erate those vessels, which thing is most to be feared in broad  
 Arrows. By this forme the wound healeth more easily,  
 and the medicaments may be applyed on both sides, as also  
 the matter may auoyde more easilie: in making of the in-  
 cision there is great care to be had, not to cut vaine, nerve,  
 nor artier. If at the first those thinges may not be drawen  
 out, they are to be let alone a certaine space: in the which  
 time, the flesh that is about it doth consume and putrifie, so  
 giueth a more easie passage. The late Practicioners are of  
 opinion to pull out all those strange things at the first, be-  
 cause then the patient feeleth not the soze so much as after-  
 ward: besides, shortly after the part doth swell through  
 fluxion of humors, which maketh the wound narrow, ac-  
 companied with great dolour, more then at the first. For  
 the extraction we scituate the sicke in such forme as when he  
 was hurt, and take the strange thing, either with a sound  
 or finger which is most sure, and drawe it forth with the  
 least paine that may be. If the wound be not great inough  
 that it may not be drawen with dilaceration of the flesh,

To take out  
 strange things  
 of Wounds.

Avicen lib. 3.  
 de dolore cavi-  
 tis ex confusio.  
 Fillip l. 10.  
 citato cap. 29.

which maketh great inflammation and dolour, in that case  
 we must dilate the wound with a Byllorie or Razor: for  
 the which it is most necessary to know the forme, substance,  
 situation and collection of euery part, with the symptomes  
 which doe commonly follow: if that thing which you would  
 draw, be in the bone, it must be drawen by a Tyresond,  
 and



and shaken a certaine time afoze, as counselleth *Rolandus lib. 1.* If the bone be much broken, we vse dilatation of the wound, both to draw those little bones more easily and consume the great: if without great paine the Bullet, Arrow, or other thing cannot be found, and the sicke feele no great harme thereof, it is best to let it alone, till such time it sheweth it selfe by the working and moving of nature. The third intention, we close the lips of the wound by bandages and sutures.

*Al. li. 2. ca. 25.*

*Pa. li. 6. ca. 83.*

*Pet.* What is Suture?

*Ioh.* It is a ioyning of the parts separated against the course of nature, which in great wounds is done by needle and thred, to the end the cicatrize be more sure: like as in great wounds of the thighes, legges, and armes, where there is great distance betwixt the borders or brimmes of the wound. If the part be altogether cut, and haue almost no hold whereby to receaue health, the suture availeth not: also if the borders of the wound be inflamed and tumified, no suture must be used till the inflammation be past, and the wound somewhat suppured: in doing whereof, it must neither be too slacke nor too straight.

*Ga. li. 3. meth. ca. ult. & com. in apho. 9.*

*Pet.* How many sorts of Sutures are there?

*Ioh.* Diuers, according to the diuersity of the wound, hurt part, or nature of the body, and are commonly referred to three, to wit, Incarnative, Retentive, and Conseruative.

*Pet.* After how many wayes doest thou vse the Incarnative?

*Ioh.* Fiue waies, first with a needle of reasonable length, sometimes curbed, triangular at the poynt, with a soft strong round thred, to the proportion of the wound and needle: also the needle case must be holden on the other side of the wound to hold it steady, that the first stich be in the outside of the wound, and hold the case on the hurt side, make your next stich on y<sup>e</sup> hurt side of the border, & the case on the whole side, beginning alwayes your stiches in the middle of

*Hippo. lib. 6. apho. 18.*



*Gal. li. 3. meth.*  
*cap. 4.*  
*Celsus. lib. 5.*  
*cap. 26. 27.*

of the wound, taking reasonable great Stitches in deepe wounds, and superficiall in small wounds, ioyning the lips of the wound euenly and closely together, so knit the thread and cut it neare the knot, then if need be put another Stitch interspace betwixt, obseruing alwayes that the Stitches be no neerer then an ynch one to another.

*Pet.* How is the second done?

*Cel. li. 7 ca. 15.*  
*Gal. 5. ca. 26.*

*Ioh.* Either with a needle or diuers together, as if the wound be great and deepe, and the thread not sufficient, we passe an other needle in the wound, as the president, yet not drawing it through, as doe women, when they sticke a needle in their sleeves, and turne the thread about it; and after this order, vse so many as shall be needfull, according to the greatnesse of the wound: and this kind of Suture we vse in clouen lippes, which shall be done in this manner. If it be not great, and much dilated, and the person neither too yong, nor too old, nor of euill habitude, we take the lippe and cut all the skin of the inner side of the cleft with an instrument, then we passe one needle as abouesayd, or two if need be, with an emplayster of Betonica, or such like, which doth conglutinate the lippe commonly in ten dayes, after which time cut the thread, and take out the needle, and induce the cicatrize, as in others: Doe the like in the eares, or nose, being so clouen.

*Pet.* How doest thou the third Suture Incarnatiue?

*Gal. 3. meth.*  
*cap. ult.*

*Ioh.* With long needles and strong thread, double, with an hard knot on the end, which we passe in diuers parts of the wound, leauing alwayes an ynch betwixt, then passe a little round piece of wood the greatnes of a small Goose quill, in each side of the wound vnder the thread, and presse the lippes of it gently together, and knit the thread with double knottes one after another, vntill all be knit, which is vsed in great deepe woundes, that the Stitches doe not breake or slippe.

*Pet.* How is the fourth Suture Incarnatiue done?

*Ioh.* By little peeces of Cloth, as the breadth of the wound,



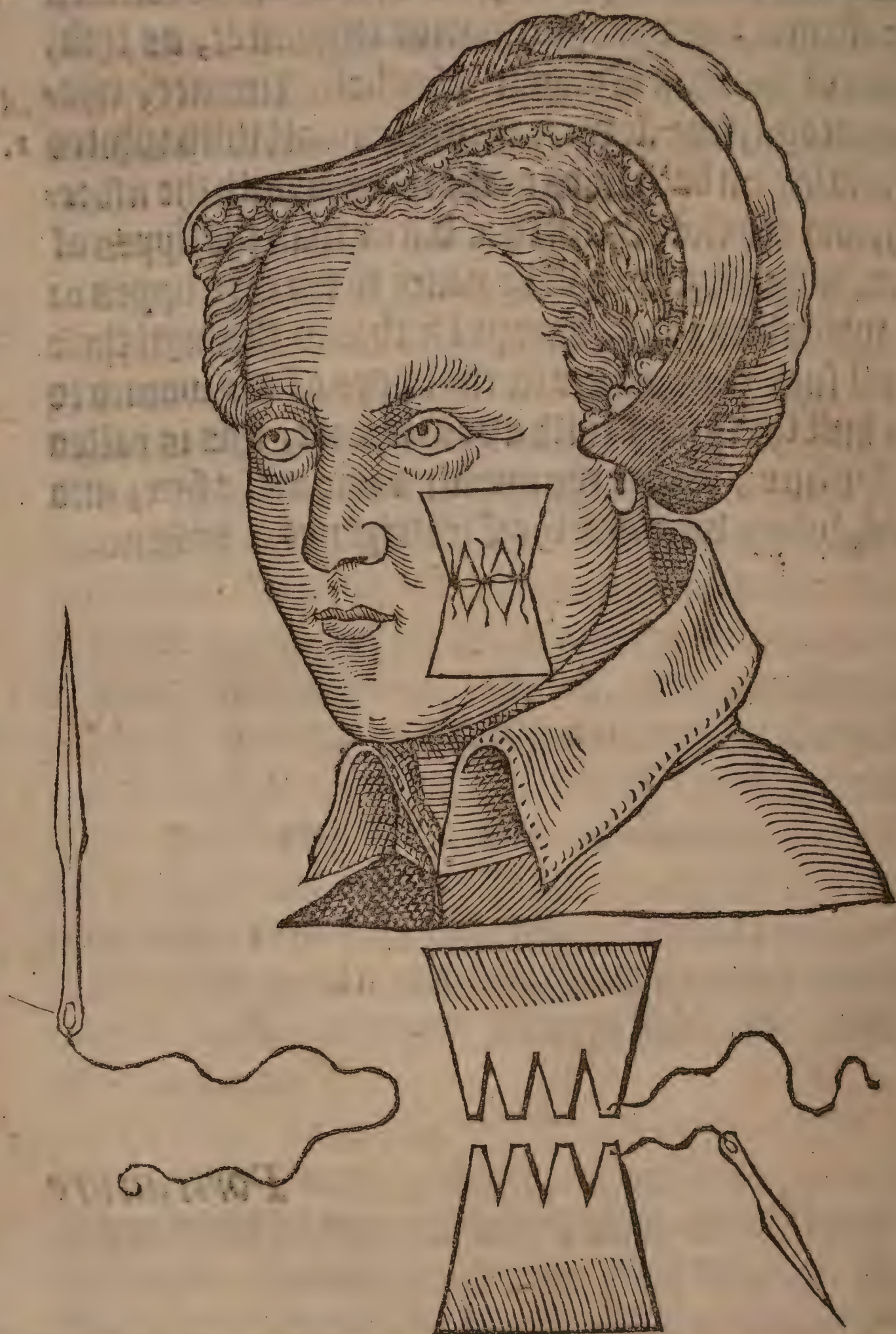
wound and place requireth, that is strong, with the seluedge cut in points like Arrowe heads, the rest shall bee couered with some astrigent and conglutinatiue emplaster, as this, take powder of Sanguie Dragon, Truboll, Incence, *Ma* *Avicen tract.* *1. cap. 8.* stickes, Socrocolla, fine flower, incorporate all with whites of Eggs, and lay on both sides of the wound with the aforesayd cloth, and the cloth be further backe than the lippes of the wound, so the poynts shall be neare to the sayd lippes or borders, which being fast, wee put a threed through these poyntes till such time as we see the lippes of the wound to close, and knit the threed with a double knot, this is called the dnye Suture, and is commonly done in the face, and such places, where we desire the Cicatrize not to be seene.



*Portraiture*



# Portraiture of a drie suture.



*Pet.* How doest thou the fist Suture Incarnative?

*Job.* With claspes of Iron sharpe poynted, and long, which take lippes of the wound being put together, and hold them so : this was vsed by some old practitioners, but at this present it is not in vse, as be dolorous, and exciteth inflammation and fluxion.

*Pet.* How



*Pet.* How is the second kind of Suture generall done?

2. Suture ge-

*Ioh.* It is done after the manner that the Glouers solve their gloues, but is neither sure nor profitable, for one point slipping, the rest slippe also. In like manner, the blood, which is retained, swelleth the part, and falleth amongst the muscles, which often doth rotte, and gangren the part: so it is better to knit the vaines and artiers, or cauterize them, which I haue done with good successe, and was vsed by our Ancients where there was great effusion of blood in the vaines and artiers, and now commonly vsed in the intestines, stomacke, and bladder, and such other membranous parts.

nerall called  
restreintine.

*Pet.* How is the third Suture generall doone?

3. Suture ge-

*Ioh.* As the rest, but not so hard, and is vsed to conserue the lippes of the wound being separated, and where there is great losse and dilaceration of flesh.

nerall called  
conservatiue.

*Pet.* What time appoint you to take away the poynts of your Sutures?

*Ioh.* According to the opinion of Vigo, in 6. or 8. dayes, yet in our ordinary practise we limit no time, for some conglutinate sooner than others, so when the part divided beginneth to conglutinate, assuredly we take out the stitches.

Vigo lib. 3.

*Pet.* Is there no other sort of Sutures commonly vsed?

*Ioh.* There is a kind which we vse in the belly, called *Gastrophie*, of the which diuers haue written in diuers manners, here I will set downe that which is sure and most easie in the wounds of the belly. First, if the guttes come forth, they must be put in their place, also the caule, first knitting and cutting away that which is altered, leaving the end of the ligatour out at the wound, that which falleth may be drawen out, then thou shalt cause one to take both sides of the wound in his hand, then he shall discover a little of the wound, so make the first stitch of the needle at the extremity of one side of the wound pearning the skinne and muscles, not touching the periton, thereafter put the needle in the other side through the periton, muscles, and skinne,

Gal. 6. meth.

cap. 4.

Albuc. lib. 2.

cap. 85.

Cels. lib. 5.



then make an other stitch, like to the first, not touching the periton, then make the fourth poynt like the second, passing periton, muscles, and skynne, so continue it till it be all sewed, taking the periton on the one side, and leaving it alwaies on the other. If the Epiplon be altered, cut it away, tye the rest in feare of fluxe of blood, hold forth the one end of the threed till it fall off it selfe.

*Pet.* What is bandage, or ligatour?

*Ligatour*  
which is the  
second helpe  
in cōioyning  
of wounds.

*Cels. li. 5. ca. 26*

*Orib. li. de fasc.*

*Fower points*  
in correcting  
accidents of  
wounds.

*Aposthume.*

*Hemeragie.*

*Ga. 3. de crisib.*

*Ioh.* It is a peece of cloth made long two or thre elles, and in breadth thre or foure inches, according to the member and hurt, the cloth must be soft, cleane without hem or seame, and moze slacke in wounds than in fractures, and of it there are diuers sorts; for some are to containe, as in simple wounds; some are to expell matter, as we see in caue wounds; some are defensives to stay fluxion; some to retaine the medicaments on the part, as in the throat and belly; some are mortificatiue, which we vse in legs or armes gangrened, to cut them off. The way how these bandages should be vsed, are after diuers manners, according as you shall heare in their proper places hereafter.

*Pet.* Which is the fourth poynt obserued in curing of Wounds?

*Ioh.* To giue order to the accidents, which are double, to wit proper, and accidentall.

*Pet.* Which are proper?

*Ioh.* Aposthume, Hemeragie, and Putrefaction.

*Pet.* What is Aposthume?

*Ioh.* I haue set downe the definition, signes, difference, and cure therof in the general chapter of Aposthumes.

*Pet.* What is Hemeragie?

*Ioh.* It is an issuing of the bloud in great abundance, the vaine or artier being cut, riuen, or corroded: there is another flux of blood, which sometime commeth at the nose, and chaunceth often in dayes criticke, which should not be stayed, unlesse it be excessive.

*Pet.* How should the excessive flux be stayed?

*Ioh.* By



*Io.* By thinges about and on the place, which coole, agglivate, and drie, by ligatours, cauters actuall, and such like, as I shall set downe in the Chapter of Wounds, with flux of blood.

*Pet.* What is Putrefaction?

*Io.* It is that which corrupteth and letteth the spirit and naturall heat in the member, where through it becommeth rotten and putrified.

Putrefaction.

*Pet.* What is the cause of this putrefaction?

*Io.* Either corruption of the spirit vitall, or else viscous and cold humors, which stop the passage of the vitall spirit, some are causes primitives as stroakes, confusion, straight binding, and such like.

*Pet.* Which are the accidentall causes?

*Io.* Euill complexion, feuer, dolour, spasme, paralysye, syncope, and alienation.

Symptomes  
accidentall.

*Pet.* What is euill complexion?

*Io.* It is an euill comixtion of the foure humors, when one raigneth more than another, as was sayd in the first Booke.

Evill comple-  
xion.

*Pet.* What is feuer?

*Io.* It is an extraordinary heat, beginning in the heart, sent through all the body with the spirit and blood, by the vaines and artiers.

Fever.

*Pet.* By what meanes is it cured?

*Io.* It is distinguished according to the time, cause, and nature, which points belong to the Phisition.

Cure.

*Pet.* What is Dolour?

*Io.* It is a feeling of a thing, which hath a contrary quality in our bodies.

Dolour.

*Pet.* What is the cause of dolour?

*Io.* Solution of continuity, or some sodaine alteration; the accidents which come of it, as also the cure, is set downe in the generall chapter of Tumors, yet wee will say somewhat of it at this present. All dolour maketh alteration of humors and blood, which maketh inflammation, for the

*Paul. li. 2. ca. 39*



which foment the place with oyle of Roses, with the white of an egge, if the dolour be great, stupifie the part with oyle of Poppie and Opium, with Mandrager, also the roote of Solanum brayed and put with the same, is good to mitigate the dolour, as sayth Galen : if it be not appeased by these remedies, it is signe that the nerues are hurt, for the which haue recourse to the wounds in the nerues.

*Spasme.*

*Pet.* What is Spasme?

*Ioh.* It is a malady in the nerues, making involuntary mouing, drawing the muscles and tendons towards their beginning, vneasie to relaxe.

*Pet.* What is the cause of spasme?

*Ioh.* Repletion, euacuation, and dolour.

*Hip. apho. li. 5.*

*Pet.* Is it dangerous?

*& 6. apho. 39.*

*& Gal. lib. de*

*sympto. causis.*

*Ioh.* Avicen saith, that all spasme confirmed in wounds is mortall, others are curable : that which chaunceth through thrusts in the nerues is euill. If it happen by great euacuation of bloud, it is mortall, as sayth Hippocrates, and better it is, that a feuer come in a conuulsion, then conuulsion in feuer : spasme after fevers, is mortall, as saith Hippocrates?

*Pet.* Which are the signes of spasme?

*Ioh.* Difficile mouing of the body, tentien of the necke, contraction of the lippes, affriccion of the iawes, peruercion of the eyes and face, which, if it take the course to the parts appoynted for respiration, it is lamentable, and the sicke shall soon dye, that which is confirmed, is incurable.

*Pet.* What is the cure of it?

*Ioh.* First, in good dyet, with dry ayre, moderate sleepe, open belly, eschewing the passions of the mind, vsing corroboratiues, we foment the part with Hydrick or Hydromell, sometime bathe with water wherein hath been sodden Mallowes, Althea, and Violets, extremities of Calues, Hutton, Goates, Lambes, and such like, with a certaine quantity of oyle : being taken out of the bath, rub the part with oyle of Violets, Sweet Almonds, Vennes grease, or Hutton,

*Cure.*



Gutton, also rubbe the necke, backe, and head, being rased, *Gal. 6. meth.*  
 with oyle of Lylies, Vulpinum, Turpentine *Phylosopho- cap 3.*  
*rum.* For the same purpose, dry perfumes are good; it shall *Gal. com. sp.*  
 be good sometime to draw bloud on the same side, if there be *17. lib. 5.*  
 plenitude with inflammation: if there be cacochymie, purge  
 the body of the humors which abound: if the cause come  
 of dolour, or some bite of a venomous beast, the dolour must  
 be appeased, and apply on the soze, Treacle and ventosies,  
 to draw out the venenosity.

*Pet.* What is Paralisie?

*Ioh.* It is a mollification, relaxation, or resolution of the  
 nerues, with priuation of the moving, whereof there is two  
 kinds, vniuersall and particular.

*Pet.* What is the vniuersall?

*Ioh.* It is that which occupieth all the body sauing the  
 head, and if it possesse the head also, it is called Apoplexie,  
 which is another kind.

*Pet.* What is the particular?

*Ioh.* It is that which possesseth one member onely, as the *Gal. 3. de locis*  
 hands, feet, tongue, legges, and such like. *affectis. ca. 10.*

*Pet.* Which are causes?

*Ioh.* Some are interne, and some externe. Interne, as  
 grosse humor, which moysten the nerues in the braines and  
 marrow, which let the vitall spirit to passe. Externe, are  
 wounds, incision, falls, strokes, contusion, aposthume, cold  
 bandage, all outward things that may let the animall spi-  
 rit to passe.

*Pet.* Is it curable?

*Ioh.* All paralyses are difficile, by reason the nerues are *Arnald. breui.*  
 destitute of their natural heat, which is the efficient cause of *lib. 1. cap. 24.*  
 curation, yet some are curable: when the nerue hath lost *Cure.*  
 the feeling and moving, it is called Apoplexie; when it com- *Gal. 2. de locis*  
 meth to one side, it is called Resolution of the part. *affectis.*

*Pet.* How is it cured?

*Ioh.* By vniuersall and particular remedies; vniuersall,  
 as purgations, Blisters, bleeding, good dyet, hote and drye;  
 particular



particular, as emplaisters, linements, ventosies, cataplasms, fomentations, also the balme of Guydo. who counselleth to apply ventosies in the beginning of the nerues. Togatius counselleth, a liquoz set downe in additionibus Petri apponensis descriptionis mesue, also to rubbe the necke, backe, and parts most offended, with *unguentum marciatum* or *agrippa*: Or this, which was shewed to me by my well experienced friend Maister William Clowes, Chyrurgion Ordinary to Quene Elizabeth of worthy memorie, and is thus, *Rec. Artimesia Rosarum damass an. M. 4. florum lavendula primula veris basiliconis, mentha maiorana an. M. 2. foliorum lauri abrotani, origani, cammomilla an. M. 1. absinthii, Rosmarini pulegei an. M. sem. bulleant simul omnia in suffi. quanti liqua deinde adde aqua composita vel malvosa lib. sem. fiat focus*, after the part be well dried, they shall use this linement, *Rec. Olei primula veris unc. 2. medulla tiliarum equi in aqua vite cocti unc. 3. olei castori unc. 1. olei pereonis unc. 1. sem. musci in oleo cammomilla dissoluti gra. 20. misceantur, & fiat linementum.*

Syncope.

*Paul. li. 1. ca. 37*

*& 38.*

*Gal. 12. meth.*

*cap. 5.*

*Pet.* What is Syncope?

*Io.* It is a suddaine fall and decay of all the whole forces of the body, and of all accidents it is the worst.

*Pet.* Which are the causes of it?

*Io.* Great euacuation of blood, intemperature of the noble parts, vehement passion of the spirit, feare, lacke of courage, rotten vapours, as happen in pestilent feuers, and all things that may intercept and destroy the vitall spirit.

Cure.

*Gal. 10. inge-*

*niosanit. ca. 5.*

*Gal. 12. meth.*

*cap. 4.*

*Pet.* What is the Cure?

*Ioh.* First, to encourage the sicke, speake little, giue him a little wine, cast water in his face, and hold vinegar at his nose: Draw his extremities, and chiefly the finger, and rub the part affected with this: *Rec. Olei costini, terebinthina an. unc. 2. misceantur & ungatur.* With this vnguent, *Rec. vnguenti marciati, vnguenti Agrippa an. unc. 1. sem. olei costini, & nardini & de piperibus an. drag. 1. sagapini, apopano-cis dissolutorum in vino an. drag. 2. cera parum, fiat vnguentum.*



*lum, quod uincatur nervorum origo?*

*Pet.* What is Alienation?

*Iob.* It is an inordinate perturbation of the mind, with diuersity of speech, whereof there are two kinds, proper, and accidentall: the proper, is that which we call madnesse: the accidentall, is that which we call raving, as chaunceth in *Gal. 9. meth. cap. 10.* hote feuers, and other maladies, wherein hote fumes ascend to the head, or by hote and cold ayre, as sayth Avicen, also by putrefaction and venenosity of our meat and drinke, and is cured by diuerting the fumes with frictions and ligatures of the extremities, vsing Glisters, and rubbing the head and necke with Drypodium, and diuers other thinges which may be prescribed by the learned Physicion.

*Pet.* What is the first thing to bee obserued in curing of Wounds?

*Iob.* To conserue the substance and the temperature of the hurt part, and consolidate the wound, which is done with unguents, emplaisters, tents, plumations, as ye shall heare in particular. *Things obserued in curing wounds.*

*Pet.* Tell mee some thing of Plumations, Tents and their vse?

*Iob.* Plumations are made of little peeces of cloth, the threads drawen out, or the peeces of cloth themselves, wool, or tow, the pith of Elder tree, the haire of a Hare, Gentian. Of these, some are round, some are triangulars and quadrangulars, the Ancients giue them diuers denominations, either of the matter they were composed of, or of their forme: some are applyed dry, others wet in diuers liquors, as whites of Egges, wine, vinegar, or oyle, according to the disposition of the part we apply them vnto. Sometime we apply many, otherwiles few, as the case requireth. The Tents are sometime made of cloth, otherwhiles of sponges or rootes of certaine Plants, Brasie, Lead, Silver: some caue within, others not; of length and greatnes according to the hurt; some are euen, others crooked, yet alwayes round, and are vsed for diuers causes, as when wounds are

*Gal. com. apbo. 31. & li. 2. de offic. medici.*

*Holle. li. 2. ca. 4. De materia chirurgica.*



*Cels. lib. 5.*

Consolidatio

to be amplyfied or cleansed, also in caue wounds with losse of substance, in contused woundes, altered by the ayre, also when the wound is afflicted with phlegmon or any other tumor against nature, also in wounds which come of byting, for such wounds haue some venenosity. In wounds with corruption of bone. In all other wounds we vse not these things, but induce the siccatrize and consolidate the wound.

*Pet.* What is Consolidation?

*Ioh.* It is that which hath force to ioyne, consolidate, and dry the wound, and maketh it like vnto the skin.

*Pet.* What is Skinne?

*Ioh.* It is nothing else, but the flesh made dry and hard by the worke of nature, and vertue of medicaments, and is like the other skinne, but not of the same nature in all points.

*Pet.* There are many other things, which may be spoken generally of Wounds, which (for want of time) wee will referre till our next meeting: against which time I will bring with me in writing, my opinion of Wounds in particular, aswell made by Gun shot, as otherwise; and then we will entreate of Vlcers after the same manner.

*Vulnera cur metuis? miles cur martis & ignis?*

*Omnis in his chartis tuta medela patet.*

## CHAP. II.

**C** Of the curation of Wounds, and first of the wound in the flesh without losse of substance.

**I** Haue spoken in the precedent Chapter, that wounds in the organicke parts receaue no curation; now according to your desire I will prosecute these which happen in similar or simple parts, beginning with the simple wounds in the flesh, which is without losse of substance, either with accidents or without. As for the causes, signes, and Judgements, you haue heard sufficiently in the precedent Chapter.



ter: but for the Cure, the simple wound in the flesh, healeth  
 by ioyning the lippes of it together and helpe of nature: yet  
 for the more assurance we vie to let it bleed a little, if it hath  
 not bled sufficiently already: next we dresse it with a cleane  
 cloth or soft sponge, then we close, and put on it the white  
 of an Egge with lynt, bind the wound, and stirre it not in  
 two or thre dayes; the white of the egge preserveth it from  
 inflammation, heat, dolour, and bleeding. If the wound  
 be great that it ioyneth not by the simple ligatur, we use a  
 future, with powders incarnative or reseruiues, composed  
 of *Sanguis draconis*, Thus, Masticke, Bolarmenie, wheat  
 flower, all mingled with whites of Egges, and a little oyle  
 of Roses, with lynt on it as before. Also a double cloth broa-  
 der than the wound, wet with oyle of Roses and vinegar,  
 bind it, and stirre it not for two or thre dayes, if accidents  
 doe not chance; and being remoued, wash it with warme  
 Claret wine, wetting plumations in the same wine, which  
 haue the vertue to drye and comfort. If the wound be deepe  
 and these remedies not sufficient, we make a liquoz of oyle  
 of Hypericon and Turpentine, with the yolke of an Egge,  
 or a little of my balme set downe in the Chapter of Gun-  
 shot. I vse, especially following the warres, this digestiue  
 made of yolkes of Egges hard roasted, and beaten with a  
 little oyle of Hypericon, Turpentine, and Myrhe, so this  
 keepes along time, and bringeth the wound to matter, the  
 which not auoyding for the scituation, which is to high, we  
 scituate the part in such sort, that the orifice is lowest, as for  
 example, if the wound be in the thigh, and there be a cavity  
 in the knee, we scituate the knee in such sort, that is much  
 higher than the thigh, if it auoyde not that time, and the ca-  
 uity be great, we make inciſion in the bottome of the caui-  
 tie, or cut it altogether. Thou mayest know which of those  
 issues is best by the greatnesse of the wound and nature of  
 the part, it shall be best to make it in the bottome of the ca-  
 uity, vsing a hollow tent in it to auoyde the matter. We  
 vse also a seton, which is a little cord or paxe of cloth, rolled  
 in

Cure.

Ga. 3. &amp; 4. me-

tho. cap. 10.

Hip. lib. de v. l.

&amp; Celsus li. 5.

cap. 26.

Gal. 3. Thera.

cap. 4. &amp; 3.

meth. cap. 10.

Gal. 4. meth.

cap. 4.

Gord. part. 1.

Holler de ma-  
ter. chirurgica.

Gal. li. 3. meth.

Cels. lib. ca. 26.

Brunus, Guy-  
do.



*Gal. 3. meth.* in forme of a cord, annoynted with some liquor mundificatiue, drawing it sometime from one issue to another, and so continuing till it be cleansed, dressing it twice a day, thereafter I vse some glutinatiue medicine, as you shall heare in the next Chapter.

## CHAP. III.

¶ Of the composed Wound with losse of Substance.

Definition.

Cure.

*Ga. li. 4. meth.*  
*Artis parue*  
*cap. 92.*

*Gal. li. 2. ca. 1.*  
*de compos. phar.*

**T**HE composed Wound is when there is losse of substance, to wit, skinn, flesh, and bones : for the Cure we vse two intentions, that is, reparation of the substance lost, and induction of the siccatrize : that which is lost, if the body be well disposed, it is repaired by nature onely, vsing in the meane time medicaments that are cleansing and drying. If the flesh renew not in his fashion, we vse medicaments sarcotickes, which shall be made of Iris of Florence, Thys, Masticke, Aloe, Colaphonie, Pix resnia, Farnia, Hordei, Orobi, Fenugreci, Lupinorum, Apopanax, Miriha, Sarcocolla and sanguinis draconis with unguentum aureum mesue. If the wound be deepe, mix some of these pouders with Wine, and wash the wound with Turpentine in forme of vnguent, and put it in the wound either with plumations or tents, dresse it twice a day in Sommer, and once in Winter, vsing an emplaster that dryeth and comforteth with bandages. In these wounds there are foure intentions to be obserued ; first, to ingender such substance as is lost ; secondly, to know the temperature of the body and hurt part, to the effect, we may iudge, whether the medicaments should be cold, hote, or drye ; thirdly, to know the accidents which happen to the soze ; fourthly, the region, ayze, and way of life. The wound being filled vp, we induce the siccatrize with epuloticke medicaments, as red Desiccative, Album Kasis, Cerusse, Plantine, also to wash the wound with

*Gal. meth. ca. 3*



with wine, wherein hath been sod Balust and Allom, or this  
 emplayster. *Rec. Tutia preparata, plumbi crudi, antimoni  
 crudi, corticis mali granati, balustorum, nucum gallarum, boli  
 armenici, sanguinis draconis an. drag. 1. accipiantur omnia si-  
 mul cum unguento epompholigos unc. 3. fiat magdaleon bone  
 consistentie, you shall find diuers other remedies set downe  
 by Holler. Take heede that the siccatrize bee neither high,  
 lowe, hard, soft, nor inequall; the high happeneth, when  
 it is not dried enough, and must be mended by scarrificati-  
 ons, medicaments, cataretickes, and corrosiues; the lowe,  
 contrarywise cometh through lacke of some peece of bone  
 or too much drying, and is helped onely by frictions; the  
 inequallity cometh through the poynts of the needles,  
 which hath bene ouer thicke and ill done, and is helped by  
 medicaments, emollients, discutients, and astringents.*

*Gal. 3. meth.  
cap. 5.*

*Lib. 2. de mate.  
chirurgic. ca. 4*

*Hippo. com. in  
apho. 45. lib. 6.*

*CHAP. II II.*

Of the contused Wound.

**T**he contused Wound, to the which chaunceth great ac-  
 cidents, according to the Instrument it is done with,  
 is a kind of solution of continuity, made with a bruise, and  
 is called by Gallen & some late writers *Echymosis*, in Graeke  
*Thesma*, and *Nygma*, in Latine *Attricis*, and *Contusio*; in  
 the which there is separation and dilaceration of the flesh  
 and muscles thereof, with great quantity of blood, and disse-  
 reth somewhat from attrition as sayth Avicen, for contusi-  
 on happeneth in the fleshy parts, and attrition is done in  
 the heads and ends of the muscles. The Signes are like  
 vnto other wounds, with inequallitie and roughnesse in the  
 flesh and skinne, diuersity of figure, according to the diuer-  
 sity of the cause, the part and parts about are blacke and li-  
 uide, by reason of the blood which is out of his place and re-  
 mayneth in these parts, and cannot be euacuated by sensible  
 or insensible transpiration, but by suppuration. The Judge-  
 ments

Definition.

*4. Theurapen-  
ticon. & com.  
in aph. 20. li. 6*

*Ga. li. 4. meth.  
cap. vlt.*

Signes.

Judgements.



Cure.

*H. p. li. de vlce.  
& vulne. api.  
Cels. li. 5. ca. 19*

Celsus, Pavlus

*Gal. de compos.  
medicamen. &  
Aetius lib. 5.*

ments, shall bee according to the greatnesse of the hurt, for great contusions are dangerous, for the corruption of the member, and consequently the body also. As for the Cure, there are foure intentions, first, to stay the flux, if the contusion be with wound, as oft happeneth; but if without wound chiefly in the head, I vse only oyle of Clove, or new Clove it selfe applyed in forme of playster: next to stay the fluxion of humors on the part by euacuation, as purgations, bleeding, ventosing, ligatures, frictions, good regiment in vnnaturall things: thirdly, in vsing particular remedies, first Digestiues, for such woundes must suddainly be brought to suppuration, for the which, vse this cataplasme of Mallowes, Violets, Althea sodden in fresh broth, putting to it a little Barly flower, Butter, Basilicon, and the yolkes of Egges, with a digestiue: Or this, take Clove, Turpentine, Calues grease, Goose grease, Hony, Myrre, oyle of Roses, mingle all together. To appease the dolour, vse oyle of Cammomill, Roses, Lylies, Myrtles, Dryopidin, and Bolarmenie. The fourth intention is, in correcting of the accidents, as dolour, Aposthume, Gangren, for which vse such remedies as you haue heard in the second Booke. The wound suppured, and the accidents corrected, it must be cleansed with hony of Roses, and Turpentine, Mandicatiue de appio Apostolorum, and such like, as you shall heare in the last Booke. Being cleansed, we vse incarnatiues, and desiccatiues, as was set downe in the former Chapter.

## CHAP. V.

## ¶ Of Wounds doone by Gun-shot.

*Anton. Ferrus  
de archib. vul.*

I Haue spoken of simple, compound, & confused wounds, now will I entreat of wounds with dilaceration and losse of soft and hard parts, and is made by diuers sorts of Instruments, as bullets of Lead, Iron, Steele, Brasse, Stones, and



and other such like matter in diuers figures, as round, triangular, quadrangular, pointed, flatte, little, and great, which sometime penetrate, sometime not, whereof our Ancients haue made no mention, except onely Celsus lib. 7. cap. 5. who telleth not with what Instrument they were shot with; therefore though some haue written of late, yet because they are of diuers opinions, and written in sundry languages, I will shew my opinion touching the same, not making any mention of others who haue written of the same. These kind of wounds are accompanied with tumour, dilaceration of flesh, vaines, artiers, nerues, tendons, ligaments, and boanes, superficial, profound; otherwhiles through the body, and according to the difference, the Chyrurgion must take his indication to diuersifie the remedy: in like manner, aposthume, dolour, corruption of the parts gangrened, and mortified through the great abundance of blood, dispersed betwixt the muscles: also for the dissipation of the naturall heate, sometime one onely accident, otherwhiles diuers together, for the which we vse two curatiue intentions, to wit, restitution of such things as are lost, and to conioyne the parts diuided. These wounds come indifferently to all parts of our body whereof there are diuers opinions; some thinke that there is venenosity in the powder, and burning in the bullet, which is false, for the things whereof the powder is ordinarily made, as Brimstone, Saltpetre, coales of diuers sorts of trees, Sulfur, Wine, and Aquavite, haue no venenosity in them; likewise there is no burning in the bullet, for if the bullet of lead being shot a great way, should burne, through heat would be melted it selfe. I haue cured diuers within these thirty yeares of diuers nations, which haue followed the warres in Fraunce, and other Cuntries, in the which I haue found no more difficulty then in other contused wounds: so I thinke these accidents come onely by confusion and dilaceration of the flesh, and not by any venenosity, or infection: yet there may besome extraordinary mixture

*Barthol. magi.  
de vuln. schlo-  
pitorū curati.*

*No burning  
in the Bullets.*



Cure.  
5. Intentions  
to draw balls.

*Gal. therapen.*  
Intentions to  
appease dolor.

in the powder, which causeth venome, for the which wee take some other indication, according to the thing. The Causes, Signes, Differences, and Judgements, are not much different from those of other wounds set downe, and sufficiently discoursed in the generall Chapter; as for the Cure there are five intentions; first, to drawe the ball; secondly, to appease the dolour; thirdly, to cause suppuration; fourthly, in mundifying generation of flesh and consolidation; fifthly, in correction of the accidents. As touching the first and second, to draw out the bullet and appease the dolour, I haue discoursed at length in the generall Chapter, neuertheless, because in these wounds there is vehement dolour, which weakeneth the sicke, hindereth nature, causeth fluxion, letteth suppuration, and consumeth the flesh which is confused; I will set downe things more particularly for the appeasing thereof, in changing the temperature of the whole body, in due vsage of the six vnnaturall things, by purgations, bleeding, and abstaining from things which cause dolour, as great tents, sections, straight bandages, wrong situation of the part, incision, vnlesse there be great neede. The topicall remedies, as cataplasmes with bread, milke, yolkes of egges, and a little Saffron, also Mallowes sodden and beaten with wheate flower, oyle of Roses, Hogs grease, and Saffron, are good: Or this, *Rec. Sanguis draconis, boli armenici an. vnc. i. pulueris rosarum & myrtilorum an. vnc. di. aceti vnc. i. abumina ouorum quatuor, olei rosacei quantum sufficit, fiat vnguentum.* If there be great heat, oyle of Roses, with whites of Egges and Vinegar, layd about, and on the part, is good. Also cerat Galen, or vnguent. rosat. mesues, with bol armenie, Sanguis draconis, powder of Roses, and Myrtles. If we feare inflammation, which oft changeth till the seauenth day, vse the same remedies and shift them twice or thrice a day. The tents shall be soft, wet in Turpentine, with a little oyle of Hypericon & Aquavite, according to the nature of the part, and vse this remedie hot, and continue it till the inflammation be past, let the sicke eat  
and



and drinke little, that he ingender no superfluities. *Avicen* counselleth to giue meate to the sicke onely for sustentation of nature, abstayning from wine, for it is enimie to all wounds, drinke sodden water with Sugar, or Honey, or ptylane, till the inflammation be past, keepe rest and quietnesse, abstayning from all actions of the spirit, watching, & women, according to the disposition and nature of the hurt. The third intention consisteth in medicaments suppurations, which must bee done with speed, to the end, they be lesse subiect to inflammation, vsing remedies which are of quality hote and dry, with vertue to correct the putrefaction, and let the Gangren and mortification of the part: there are of diuers formes; the simples are made of oyle of Hypericon, yolke of Egges, Lynth-seede, Lillies, Turpentine, Myrhe, and such like: *Dr this, Rec. Terebinthine unc. 2. corticis thuris drag. 1. mastichis drag. 3. olei hypericonis, & rosarum an. parum, vitellum vnus omnia fac medicamentum. Dr this, which I most commonly vse of Hypericon, Turpentine, and yolkes of Egges, or my balme which is excellent in all kinds of wounds, made thus, Rec. summmitatum & florum scrophularie & hypericonis an. quantum volueris, officoglossi, vel herbe carpentariorum & consolida regis an. quantum volueris, terebinthina veneta, quantum sufficit, macerentur in sufficienti quantitate olei hypericonis, insolentur omnia in sole calidissimo spatio 40. dierum in vase plumbeo, vel vitreo duplicato, postea fiat fortis expressio, seruetur liquor pro balsamo.* The fourth intention is to mundifie and regenerate that which is lost, which must be done with things that haue little or no mordication, or sharpenesse, according to the nature of the part, as this, take sirupe of Roses, Violets, Fumetarie, Wormelwoode, Honie of Roses, vnguent de apio, apostolorum fuscum, egyptiacum: *Dr this, take Turpentine, honie of Roses, Iris of Florence, Barly flower, Succiapij, of each a little, and make an vnguent. If there be great putrefaction, and the matter in great abundance, vse this. Rec. Terebinthine unc. 4. vitellorum onerum unc. 2. vnguenti egyptiaci drag. 1.*

*Hippo. lib. 5.*

*aph. 17.*

*3. Intention.*

*Hip li. de vlce.*

*section. 7.*

*4. Intention.*



drag. i. fiat mixtio. The wound being mundified & voided of all superfluitie, we vse for the regeneratiō of flesh, *unguentum aureum*, *basilicon minus*, emplast *de betonica*, *diapalma*, *tetra*, *pharmacum*, *gratia dei*, *oleum mastichini* & *absinthij*, mixe therewith a little flower of *Carley*, *Lupines*, and *Drob*, with *Myrre*, *Gastike*, and *Aloes*. Sometime we vse in these sortes of wounds, a certaine drinke called *potio vulner. curat.* *nerar*, wherewith wee wash the wound, and is thus made,

*Rec. consolida maioris* & *meia*, *serpentaria*, *lingua canis ceruina*, *herbe Roberti*, *glycirizc*, *pimpinella*, *artemisia*, *scabiosa*, *plantaginis*, *aristolochia*, *agrimonia*, *betonica*, *pedis columbini*, *capilli veneris*, *centauria maioris*, & *minoris*, *gaiaci*, *salis pabelle*, *millefolij*, *baccharum lauri*, *eupatorium*, *abscinthium*, *rom. ierosolimum*, *millefolium*, *arnoglossa*, *cande equina*, tops of *Colwort*, *reddish*, *siccorie*, *horse hooſe*, of which, all or some make a decoction in water and aromatize it with *Cinamond*, *Honey* or *Sugar*, drinke of it twice or thrise a day as it is needefull, and also thou maist wash the wound, putting thereto a little honye of roses or sirope of roses. The wound being filled with flesh, it must be dried with medicaments *epupoloticks* which by their astringtion and drying do harden the flesh, and make a substance like to skinn, as *unguentum deficcatorium rubeum*, *diapompholigos*, *album rasis*, *diacalcitios*, *triapharmacum*, *cerusse de minio*, mixing therewith *galbanum*, *acasia*, *sarcocollaplumbum* & *as vstum*, *allumen*, *calx lota*, and such like. The first intention is in correcting the accidents, which are diuers and great, for some come by accidents, or some are sharpe feeling of the part hurt, as *dolour*, *inflammation*, *convulsion*, *feuer*, and such like, some come through violence of the bullet, as *extinction* of the naturall heat of the part, *hemoragie*, *dilaceration*, *confusion* of the nerues, *fractures* of the bones, and some by the ignorance of the *Chyrurgion*; for the which cause he must be diligent, to stop such accidents, and if they happen, to helpe them with speed.

3. Intention.



CHAP. VI.

Of burning with Gun-powder.

I happeneth oftentimes in Armes that men are nere  
 shot, & sometimes in handling of powder, or by syzing of  
 flasks which often chanceth, by the which ensueth great ac-  
 cidents; in so much that the affected part by the violence of  
 the fire is altogether destitute of the proper humidity, and  
 dryeth up in such sort, that it maketh an escharre in the  
 skin and flesh, chiefly if the shot or powder be nere unto the  
 part. As for the Cure of the which, the Chyrurgion should  
 with all possible diligence remove the intemperature which  
 chiefly consisteth in the softning of the escharre, and may be  
 done two wayes; the one, by topicall remedies and Dige-  
 stives, which doeth not too much heat, nor hath the vertue  
 to inflame. The other is done with such medicaments as  
 have the vertue to pacifie the paine and preserve from putre-  
 faction; such medicaments must be applied about the wound  
 and on the escharre with Cotton, Lint, or pieces of cloth  
 frampled in those medicaments made of two yolkes of eggs,  
 beaten with oyle of Roses, some Barly flower, and a little  
 Bolarmenie. It shall be necessary to put a double linnen  
 cloth about the wound, sopt in oyle of Roses, and yolkes of  
 egges beaten together, take not away the escharre with vio-  
 lence, but let it fall off it selfe, which done and the paine pa-  
 cified, you shall mundifie, cleanse, incarnate, and siccatrize  
 the wound, as in others you have heard: for this purpose  
 I have often used this unguent, which doth heale without  
 any marke, as thus. *Rec. Albumen ovorum numero duo tui  
 alexandrin; calceis vine novies lota vnc. 2. cere recentis, vnc. 1.  
 misceantur cum oleo rosaceo, quantum sufficit, fiat unguentum.*  
 Or this, which I did learne of an old Parisian priest, who  
 vaunteth himselfe to be very expert in healing any kind of  
 burning by this liquoz; take fire or eight peats soet, bruisse  
 them

Cure.  
 Paul. lib. 4. cap.  
 Rel. lib. 4. ca.  
 13. 18.

Alphonse.  
 forrus.

Guerfil. de  
 vul. filopeto.



them well, and boyle them in water till they be all consumed, then take the grease of them and put in a glasse in the Sunne, or before the fire in winter, powre out the water if any be, couer it close and keepe it, of the which you shall put vpon a linnen cloth, and apply to the soze. Remoue not the cloth vntill it be whole, but only annoynt it euer being drye with a Gose quill, so it shall bee whole in short space without marke: Some doe vse for this purpose oyle of Linget or small water, also sheepes dunge fryed with hogs grease till it be dissolued, adding thereto a little veriuice, passe it through a cloth and annoynt the burnt part.

### CHAP. VII.

#### Of Wounds in the vaines and artiers.

*Bru. li. i ca. 12*

*Gal. 5. metho.*

*cap. 2. & 12.*

*metho. cap. 7.*

*Signes.*

*Gal. 5 me. ca. 7*

*Judgements.*

*Hip. aphor. f. 3.*

*lib. 5. & lib. 7.*

*apho. 9.*

*Cure.*

*Gui. tract. 3.*

*cap.*

Having spoken of the wounds in the flesh, in like manner you shall heare of them in the vaines and artiers, either with losse of substance, or without losse, which are accompanied with great flux of blood, which happeneth when the orifice of the vaine is opened, and is done by incision and imbecility of the veines, abundance of blood, or some sharpe quality, and when their tunicks are diuided, confused, and pearced, or else when the blood goeth through the veines, as the sweat through the skinne, the tunicks and membranes are diuided by some externall cause, as confusion, ryding, shooting, falles in diuers manners. The Signes are these, if the fluxe be of the artier, or vaine; of the artier, the blood cometh leaping out subtilly red and hote. If it be more grosse, blacke, and thicke, and not leaping, it proceedeth of the vaines, as saith Avicenna. The Judgements are, if the blood come out in great abundance it is dangerous, chiefly when there is either conuulsion, skinne, sounding, beitching, or raving; if it be not stilled, it causeth death, because it is the treasure of life. As for the Cure, there are two intentions, the first to stay the blood, the second to con-  
limate the wound:



wound : the blood is stayed by filling up the wound with dry lint, and above it an astringent or cloth wet in vinegar; if that stay it not, remove the lint often and wet it in Vinegar, which stancheth it much : For these things cold and mordicant, stay fluxe of blood in the wounds : or make this medicament of *belarmerie sanguis draconis, thuris, aloes*, of each like quantity, mixe them with the white of an egge and the haire of an old Hare cut small, thereafter bind it reasonable straight, wetting the bands, clothes, and all about it in oxycrate, touch it not in foure dayes, in touching remove all very softly, if it sticke to, humect it with oyle, whites of Egges, or wine. Some to stay blood, put this powder, in the wound, which I haue sometime vsed, viz. mans blood dyed with burnt cloth, wherewith thou shalt fill the wound full; some apply ventosies, frictions, ligatures, on y<sup>e</sup> parts opposite, some hold their thumbe long on y<sup>e</sup> mouth of the vaine, which is a good remedie, for the blood coniealeth in the vaine and so stancheth. If for all these remedies it stancheth it not, we apply on the vaine or arter a little lint wet in vinegar with a little powder of Vitreoll, other wise we knit them as was taught in the Chapter of Aneurisme : if that cannot bee done, we cauterize them with hote Irons, taking heed to touch the parts neruous. Shelande counselleth the gumme *Lemnum* sodden in Rhenish wine, which hath many vertues, for it digesteth, mundifieth, incarnateth, and is good in wounds of the head, as saith Matheolus. If none of these stanch flux of blood, especially in the vaines iugulars, I haue sometimes applyed a little astringent the breadth of the wound, and holden my finger a day or two upon it, by which meanes I haue cured diuers: if it be in the matrix, intestines, or bladder, it shall be stayed by injections of iuyce of Plantaine, or some astringent powders infused in astringent decoction, and such like; the blood being stayed, the wound is healed as others, having regard to the part, for as the vaine is more drye than the flesh, and more soft, than the arter, so it must haue contrary remedies : in like

Ga. lib. 5. me.  
libo. cap. 2.

Hip. apho. 20.

lib. 5.

Ga. 5. me. ca. 4.

Auc. tract. 20.

cap. 18.

Gal. principio  
locorum affec-  
torum. cap. 7.

Shelande.

Albucasis.

Matheolus.



manner the wound in the arter is harder to be healed, than that in the vaine. Sometime there commeth such fluxe of bloud at the nose, that it is hard to staunch, for the which take an ounce of Boll, the Barke of Pomgranet tree, Wallust, and galles, of each three Drammes, seed of white Poppie two Drams, incorporate all together with the white of an Egge and Vineger, and applye on the temples and nose, if by this the violent flux doe not stay, take foure graines of my *Requies*, which infallibly stayeth all fluxes; otherwise follow forth such things as are set downe in the Chapter of flux of bloud at the nose.

## CHAP. VIII.

## ¶ Of wounds in the Nerues, Tendons, and Ligaments.

Lanfrancus.

Chira. parua.

Causes.

Signes.

Gal. metho. 4.

cap. 6 &amp; 6.

lib. 2.

Iudgements.

Bruus. lib. 1.

Chirur. cap. 5.

Gal. 6. theorr.

Cuttes and thrusts in the nerues chance in diuers parts of our bodie, and in diuers manners according to the instrument it is done with, some are simple, others composed superficial, profound, according to the diuersity, of the which we must diuersifie the remedy. The Causes ye haue heard in the generall Chapter. The Signes are known by offending of the mouing and feeling, and by the vehement dolour, which causeth fluxion, feuer, spaine, raving, inflammation and fluxion on the nerues. The Iudgements are, that all wounds in the parts neruous are dangerous, for the great communication they haue with the braines, and the nerue halfe cut, is more dangerous and dolorous, than if it were all cut, which if so be the action of the member doth decay or at the least some part thereof: also wounds in the ioynts are for the most part mortall, because of the Aponeurasis, of the Tendons and membaines that they are covered and knit with; so euill accidents doe happen, chiefly being profound. As for the Cure, if the body be full of humors, purge and let bloud, with quiet lying and strict dyet, if the



if the nerue be thrust, beware of putting to it any medicines  
 conglutinatiues, but first of all some gentle remedies to ap-  
 pease the dolour, hold the wound open: if it be narrow and  
 deepe, incise it that the matter may passe more easily, then  
 put in the wound a medicament that heateth and dryeth, to  
 wit, oyle of Hypericon, Turpentine of Venice, Aquamits,  
 and a little Cuphorbe, some put to the Turpentine and oyle  
 of Hypericon, a little quicke sulphure, rubbe the about with  
 oyle of Sage, Turpentine, and Annieseds, which must be  
 reiterated twice or thrice euery day. If there be putrefacti-  
 on or inflammation, vse a cataplasme made of Barly meale,  
 Lyncsed, Oreb sodden in Sapa, Vinegar, or Drimell:  
 sometimes commeth picking of the nerue in the armes by  
 bleeding, for the which vse this set downe by Mesues. Take  
 two ounces of oyle of Oliue, of salt two ounces, seeth them  
 together, and put to it oyle of Turpentine, and put it hotte  
 in the wound: if dolour happen, it shall be appeased as ye  
 haue heard in the generall Chapter: if conuulsion, rubbe  
 the head, necke, backe, and vnder the armes, with oyle of  
 Lillies, Bayes, *costini et lumbricorum*, Hennes grease,  
 Calues marrowes, vnguent de albea: if the nerue be cut  
 in length and appeareth to the sight, abstaine from all sharpe  
 remedies, as Cuphorbe, vse *Diapampholigos* dissolved in  
 oyle of Roses. Also this remedy of bonie dissolved in oyle  
 of Roses, Ware, a little Turpentine, all which remedies  
 must be applyed warme. If there bee much matter in the  
 wound, dresse it softly with bombast, or washed with sweet  
 wine, and lay on it the emplayster *Triapharmacor* or *Enea-*  
*pharmacor*. If the nerue be cut ouerthwart, there is great  
 danger of conuulsion and inflammation, for the fibres which  
 are cut, communicate with the vncut. For the Cure of the  
 which, rest, keepe drye, and draw blood, with such other re-  
 medies as ye haue heard. If the nerue be contused, and the  
 skinne also, and vlcered, it requireth a medicament drying,  
 and binding the parts disioyned, made of Drimell, flower  
 of Beanes and Oreb sodden together, putting thereto a little

*Rol lib. 3. ca. 5.**Paul. li. 4. ca. 5.**Gal. meth. 6.**Gal. cap. 6. de**comp. medic.**Etius lib. 4.**cap. 27.**Gal. 6. meth.**cap. 2. & 3.**Mesues de e-**gritudi. lib. 6.**cap. 3.**Gal. 6. meth.**cap. 2.**Hippo. lib. 5.**apho. 18.**Gal. 6. meth.**cap. 3.*



*Gal. 6. meth.  
cap. 4.  
Gal. de comp.  
Phar. lib. 3.  
cap. 4. & 9.*

flower of Gruy, also to rubbe the part with oyle of Roses, and the white of an egge, thereafter soment the wound with warme wine. If the nerue be contused without offence of the skinne, rubbe it with oyle of Camomill, Iris, and Rue. If the tendons be hurt, which is a substance mixed with nerues and ligaments, they haue the same cure that nerues haue, but the medicament must be more strong and dry. If y<sup>e</sup> ligaments be hurt, which are like the nerues & tendons, it requireth a stronger medicament, for they haue little feeling, not communicating with the braines, they proceed from the bone, and goe to the bone, so any medicament drying may be vsed without offence: thereafter fill vp the flesh, and consolidate the wound, as others.

#### CHAP. IX.

### ¶ Of wounds which happen by byting of venomous Beasts.

*Cels. li. 5. ca. 27  
Pau. li. 5. ca. 8.*

*Signes.  
Iudgements.*

*Cel. ibid.*

*Pli. lib. 23. ca. 1*

*Arnald. lib. 3.*

*brevi. cap. 13.*

**S**eeing wee haue spoken sufficiently of most parte of woundes done by instrumentes and things inanimate, now it resteth to speake of those which are done by liuing creatures, as men, horses, oxen, swine, bees, apes, serpents, and diuers others, the which are not without venom. The Signes are euident: the Iudgements are, that those which are venomous, are most dangerous, for if good order be not taken, they goe to noble partes, so that death doth ensue: Paulus Aegineta reporteth that mans biting when hee is fasting in the morning, is very venomous. Gordonius lib. 5. cap. 25. 26. &c. saith, that the biting of a madde dogge is most dangerous, for albeit the sicke feele not much in the beginning, yet after a moneth or a yeare it doth appeare, for in that time it seeketh the heart, being of nature and qualitie to seeke the destruction thereof. I knew a boy in London bitten with a madde dogge, and being well sixe weekes dyed afterwarde. Antonius Beneuenius counselleth to take



take treacle with wine and minister to such as are bitten, or hurt by venomous beasts, also the hearb *Beonica* bruised and put on the wound, in like manner it shall be good to apply ventosies with scarifications, also sucking with the mouth by medicaments attractiues, by cauters and such like. If the wound be little, we wash it with orycrate warme, after the ventosies are taken away, it shall be good to open little dogges, cattles, or fowles and lay on it, sometime to apply cauters actuals, to consume all that which is affected. If the beast be very venomous, salte or bzyne with a little Honie, in the which nepeta hath bene sodden, is very good. And likewise the treacle of Andromach applied in forme of a plaister. Of this, *Rec. picis nigrae, axuu- Pa li. 5. ca. 27*  
*gia veruicina, olei antiqui an. partem vnā galbani onc. i. fiat Gal. 13. theraz.*  
*unguentum* : the vngent of Diuus is good for all woundes *cap. 6*  
both venomous and not venomous, in al this time we must *Dios. li. 8. ca. 14*  
comfort the noble partes, giue drincks of triacle and mithri- *Theodo. lib. 2.*  
date, and let not the sicke sleepe. If the venom be dispersed *cap. 19.*  
thzough the body, vse purging, vomiting and blæding, also *Ætius lib. 4.*  
prouocation of sweate and bzyne. The venom by these *Serm. 1. ap. 10*  
meanes being taken away, procede in the cure, as is sayd *Pau. li. 5. ca. 5.*  
in other woundes. As for the stinge of the bee you shall presently pull it out, thereafter rub the part with the iuyce of Malloves.

CHAP. X.

¶ Of Wounds in the bones.

HAuing spoken of woundes in the flesh, vaines artiers, nerues, ligaments and tendons, now we will intreat of those which happen in the bones, which is an incision done by some instrument that cutteth, thrusteth or breake-  
keth, sometime superficiall, otherwiles thzough the substance thereof. The Iudgements as saith Hippocrates, if Crisipelas doe happen in a bone vncovered, it is an euill  
*Definition.*  
*Gal. 6. therap.*  
*Iudgements.*



*Fillop. expo. in librum.* *Hip. de vul. Lib. 1. cap. 16.* *Lib. 9. sue medicine.* *Cure.* *Aui. lib. 9. suae medicine.*

signe : if the great bones bee hurt, as the thigh, legge, or arme, it is without all question very dangerous, if by the stroke of instrument any peice of boane bee separated, thou must by fitte medicamentes helpe the separation, and not draw it by force, for that causeth great accidentes, as fistules, feuers, syncope, conuulsion as saith Auicen. The Cure is not different from the curation of other woundes, if the bone be broken or cutte, it must be bound and dressed as yee shall heare in the Chapter of fractures. If it be discovered, we put on it, as counselleth Auicen, the powder of myrrhe, which causeth the flesh to grow on it, then vse incarnatiues, desiccatiues, & cicatrize the wound as others.

## CHAP. XI.

## Of Wounds in the head.

Definition.  
*Hip. de vulne. Capitis.*

Cause.  
Iudgements.  
Signes.

**H**ere it shall be necessarie to vnderstand, that in our bodies there are three noble parts, whereby wee are gouerned, and without them can doe nothing, as the braines, the heart, and the liuer, for the which three parts nature hath ordained for euery one a seuerall domicill, as the head for the braines, the thorax or breast for the heart, and the inferior venter for the liuer, the which three domicilles being wounded, there must some other particularities be obserued for curation thereof, then ye haue heard. Therefore we will discourse of them seuerally, and first of the head. The head, wherein are contained the braines, is subiect to solution of continuitie which sometime is simple, otherwhiles composed with fracture of the crane, some penetraeth the membaines, other the proper substance of the braines, the Cause and Iudgements are, as ye haue heard in the Chapter generall of Woundes. The Signes of the simple are as in others: the signes of fractures mostall in the skull, are feuer before 12. dayes in Winter, and 7. daies in Sommer, euill colour of the wound, liuide, little quantitie of



of matter, the skinnē drie and aride, the tongue blacke, a  
voiding vnauaires of excrements and water, the sicke ra  
ueth, pustules in the tongue, conuulsion in the parte oppo  
site, some fall into apoplexie, and death followeth. The  
signes of healing of fractures in the head, if after the head be  
trepaned, or the bone cut out by stroke or otherwise, the  
membaine called dura mater, being of naturall colour and  
mouing, the flesh that groweth, be red, the sicke removing  
well his necke and iawes, all these are good signes; other  
wise not. The simple wound is cured as others: the  
composed with fracture and other accidents is cured after  
diuers manners, according to the diuersitie of the fracture,  
as ye shall heare. The bone is sometime broken superfici  
ally, otherwhiles to the middelt, and sometime thorough  
both the tables, offending the membaines that couer the  
baines; of the which fractures there are five kinds, the first  
is called fissure or cleft, which shalbe knowne by incision of  
flesh to the pan in forme of S. Georges crosse, then separate  
the crane from the pericrane, put in lint or caddie to dilate  
the wound, to the end the trepan or other instrument touch  
not the flesh: if in cutting any veine or arter it bleede, it  
must be knit. Thou shalt know the cleft by rubbing on it  
with thy nayle, which if you suspect to be in both the tables,  
cause the sicke to holde his mouth and eyes close, holding in  
his breath, and if there issue out humiditie by the cleft, be as  
sured that both the tables be riuen, for the which we must  
eyther with trepan, tongin, or other instrument cut the bone  
to dura mater, taking away the least you can of the said bone  
as counselleth Celsus, giuing onely issue to the bloud and  
matter containd in the place. The second kind of fracture  
is called confusion, which is oftentimes so great, that it se  
parateth the crane from the flesh, for the remedies whereof  
we vse iectiōs to euacuate the bloud, yet applying no hu  
mide remedies which are contrarie to the bone of the head:  
sometime the cranium is pressed in by the stroke, cheifly in  
children, that haue the bone yet soft, which sometime rise of  
themselves,

Cure.

*Rol. li. 1. ca. 2.**Hip. lib. de.**vulneribus.**capitis.**S. Georges.**crosse.**Phillip expo.**in lib. Hip. de**vulne capitis.**cap. 23.**Langfrancus,**chirurg. parua.**cap. 8.*



Celsus.

Captaine  
Mutio.

Astonishment.

themselves, if not we apply ventosies and cause the sicke to hold in his breath to make it rise, emplasters which haue the force to draw. If for all this, it doth not rise, incise the flesh and apply a firefound, if that be not sufficient, apply a trepan, then an eleuator. The third kind, is pressing downe of cranium which cometh by the weight of the instrument it is done with, or else with a fall from some high place and is reduced as the precedent, if it be pressed downe by peeces, it must be lifted with the eleuator or pincetts meete to draw these peeces, without the membzaines, apply not the trepan if the bones be altogether broken. The fourth kind, is called incision in the bone, whereof there are diuers kinds according to the diuersity of the instrument, according to the which wee must diuert the remedies: if it chance the flesh and bone be all cut, thou shalt by the counsell of Celsus, euacuat the blood if any be, cleanse & dresse well the wound, close the bone with the flesh, sow vp the wound, leauing a space for the tent to euacuat the matter in both sides. The fift kind of fracture, is called counterclift, that is, when the cleft of the bone is in the part opposite to the soze, and of all fractures this is the worst, and deceaueth most the Chirurgion, for in it there is no signe but coniecture, and by feeling of the hurt man, in oft putting his hand on the place, and if he got the stroke with violence, falling after he got it, and did vomit, notwithstanding there be no cleft where he got the stroke. I haue knowne sundry dye in this case, chiefly at the battle of Sandlis in Fraunce a valiant Captaine of Paris, who had a stroke on the right parietary, who notwithstanding of all handling by skilfull Chyrurgions dyed within 20. dayes, at which time his *Cranium* was opened, and there was found great quantity of blood vnder the left parietarie, with a cleft in the same. There is another kind of maladie, called commotion or astonishment of the bzaines, the which causeth the same accidents, as the fracture of the *Cranium*, and is caused by falls from high places, strokes, shot of bullets, launces, or by the sound of a Cannon shot,



or with the hand, as sayth Hippocrates speaking of a man, who gaue a yong woman in playing, a little blowe on the *Sepi demorū.*  
*os bregma*, who incontinent tooke a feauer and conuulsion,  
 voyded humors by the care, and so dyed.

We must vnderstand that any violent stroke may affo-  
 nish the head, and be occasion to breake vaines and artiers,  
 not onely of those which passe betwene the sutors, but also  
 those betwene the tables, for the suspension of *dura mater*;  
 of the which commeth great flux of blood, which runneth be-  
 twixt the bone and membaines, or betwixt the membaine  
 and baines, which afterwards doth rot and cause many ac-  
 cidents, as dimnesse of sight, vomiting of choller, which *Divers simp-*  
 chanceth by reason of the nerues of the first coniugation, that *tomes.*  
 hath connerion with the stomacke; in like manner inflam-  
 mation of the membaines, which communicate to all the  
 body, and causeth feuer, raving, aposthume, corruption in  
 the braynes, and death. The wounds of the head must in  
 no wise be neglected, albeit they be but small, for oftentimes  
 in little wounds come great accidents, and especially in bo-  
 dyes euill disposed. The Cure hereof consisteth, first in ab-  
 stayning from wine and strong drinke, vsing Rysan, or *Cure.*  
 sodden water with a little sirupe of Tyoletts, or Acetose, cal- *Hip. li. de vul.*  
 led *potus diuinus*, so continue till the accidents be past, let the *cap. 2.*  
 sicke eatte little and of good digestion, as Capons, Chickens,  
 Pigeons, Meale, Butten, and such like, vsing a straight  
 dyet till the accidents be past: in the meane time he may vse  
 Comfits of Carue, conserue of Roses, for such things keepe  
 the vapours from ascending to the head, the ayre must ney-  
 ther be hot nor cold, sleepe moderately, and purge gently  
 with Glysters, bleede in the cephalicke vaine, according to  
 the accidents. Parey telleth of a man, from whome hee *Pareys.*  
 drew 100. saucers of blood in fower dayes, who thereby  
 was cured, and otherwise had dyed. Shaue the head and *Shaue the*  
 apply Cataplasmes of flower of Beanes, and Drimell, *head.*  
 with the oyle of Roses, and such like, that are somewhat  
 cold and humide, vse frictions and ligatores on the extremi-  
 ties,



ties, ventosies on the shoulders, sometime to open the vaine *puppis frontis sub lingua*, and the arter on the temples. Ab-  
 staine in the sicknesse and long after from women and per-  
 turbations of the mind. The perticular is thus, first wee  
 consider if the bone be broken, that must be trepained, con-  
 ged, or lifted, for the doing whereof, the place must first be  
 incised as ye haue heard; yet it is not needfull to trepaine  
 in all fractures and clefts, for sometimes the first table is of-  
 fended, yet not penetrating to the duploy, otherwhiles the  
 duploy confused, the second table whole, sometimes the bro-  
 ken bone is a little lifted, so that the matter contained hath  
 place to passe, and therefore it is not needfull to trepan. If  
 any peece of bone do fall on the *dura mater*, it must be drawn  
 by fit instruments, the Trepan is good, when the clefts are  
 so little that the matter cannot euacuate, yet it is not meete  
 to trepaine in all fractures as ye haue heard, not to discover  
 the braines, without necessity & good iudgement, so that the  
 yong Chirurgion may not so hastily, as in time past, trepan  
 for euery simple fracture: I will shewe when trepaning  
 should be vsed, for what cause, and in what places, also the  
 way to trepane well. First the Chirurgion shall well con-  
 sider the stroake and symptoms, if it be little and the vaine  
 betwixt the two tables, or those that hold by the *dura mater*  
 with the crane be offended, and the blood fallen on the mem-  
 braine, then the trepan must be vsed to withdraw that mat-  
 ter, which otherwise would cause death, sometime it must  
 be vsed for the out-taking of the little bones that picke the  
 membraine, also that moze commodiously we may apply our  
 remedies: In all these things Hippocrates counselleth to  
 trepan. When the fracture is in the first table, wee vse the  
 trepan exfoliative to giue issue to the blood which is betwixt  
 the tables. The time we should trepan is two or three daies  
 at the furthest after the hurt, long delay causeth defluxion of  
 humors on the *dura mater*, which putrifieth and causeth in-  
 flammation, so incontinent after we haue perceiued the of-  
 fence of the crane, and that the membraines suffer, which  
 is

*Fillop. exposit.*  
*in lib. H.p. de*  
*vulner. capitis*  
*cap. 17. & 28.*

*Hip. de locis in*  
*homine.*

*Hip. de locis in*  
*homine.*

*Hip. Cel. Avi.*



is known by the sond or finger, wee should trepane in the beginning: yet some doe stay untill the 7. 10. or 14. day, which is dangerous, for the which cause be advised in iudging therein. Then we must know what places may indure the trepan, and which not, for to auoyde diuers accidents, considering first if the bone bee broken and separated in diuers peeces, which if it be, the peeces must be lifted by fit instruments, and not by the Trepan. In like manner wee must not trepan on the fractures, for that cutteth the vains, artiers, and filaments, which passe betwixne the pericrane and *dura mater*, and cause great dolour and hemeragie of bloud: for the which cause, if occasion constrain vs to trepane in those parts, we apply the trepan on both sides of the suture, for the auoyding of the aforesayd accidents, as also for euacuation of the humors contained. The Trepan in like sort must not be applyed on the open of the head in young Children, being yet soft and not solide, nor on the temples, for the muscles tempoꝛall, where there is abundance of artiers, membzaines, and nerues, whereof commeth great fluxe of blood, feuer, conuulsion, with other euill accidents, yet if fracture doth chaunce in those parts, we apply the trepan a little aboue the sayd muscle tempoꝛall. Wee must not trepane on the boane *Petrosa*, which is vnder the sayd muscle, nor on the boane of the eyes, because there is great cavity, full of ayre and humidity, ordained by nature to prepare the ayre that goeth to the braines. And these are the places which we should eschew in applying the trepan, yet I haue seene some trepanned in these places, and healed, but not without great hazard. The way to trepane is thus: First scituate the head of the hurtin good scituation, and holden by some body that it doe not wagge, close his eares with Cotton, haue a good fire, least the cold ayre enter on the membzaines, which may make putrefaction, then the Trepan perforatiue shall be applyed,

*Hip. de vul. capitis. 3.*

*Hip. de fract. capitis.*

*A Trepan*



*A Trepan, with other Instruments for the head.*





to make a hole for the piramide of the great Trepan, next apply the whole Trepan with the piramide, turning it about softly, till thou hast made away with the teeth of the Trepan, then take out the piramide, otherwise it shall passe and offend the membraines, continue in turning softly the Trepan, sometime to lift it, to put off the sawinges of the bone, and when thou art at the duploy, which shall be perceyued by the outcoming of the bloud, you shall consider if it be needefull to passe further, as y<sup>e</sup> have heard, take good heed in trepanning of the second table, lifting oft the Trepan and sounding if it be neere cut, if it be more cutte on the one side then on the other, presse the Trepan on the thickest part, and in this take good heed, for often in cutting the one before the other, thou scratchest the *dura mater*. which causeth inflammation and death: being almost cutte, assay with the eluator to draw it without violence, if there be much of the sawings on the *dura mater*, take them out. This I thought good to aduertise the young Chirurgion touching this operation, which being done, thou perceyuest if the membrane be inflamed or in any wise altered as oft happeneth, and is most dangerous, for which we giue glisters, drawe bloud, and vse fomentations on the place of anodynes and repercussives. If there bee alteration, make a medicine of honie of Roses, sirrope of Wormewood, aquavite, with a little aloes and myrre, some adde to it a little white wine. If there bee great putrefaction, put thereto a little Egiptiac: if there bee neither inflammation nor alteration, it shall suffice onely a little aquavite with honie of Roses, so continuing till the membraines be mundified, applying alwayes the medicines hotte, and cure it afterwarde as other Wounds. Use alwayes aswell in this, as all woundes of the head, the emplaster beneticum, prescribed in The poore mans Guide, and also the emplaster of betonica, or diacalcios malared with wine. There is great Judgiment to be used in doing this operation, and few there are founde that do it well. Many I have seene of late learned

*Filop. exposit.  
Li. hip. de vul.  
capi. cap. 36.  
Celsus.*

*Filop. lib. cir.  
10. ap. 39. &  
91. & 92.*



learned and expert men, & heard of diuers to my great ioy & comfort, among which M. George Baker sometime Chirurgeon ordinarie to that worthy Prince Queene Elizabeth: and now to his most sacred maiestie a man of great learning and experience most fortunate and dexter in this operation, like as in all other operations of Chirurgery: God increase the number of such in this kingdome.

*CHAP. XII.*

**¶** Of wounds in the thorax.

Definition.

*Rol. li. 3. cap. 25.*

Cause.  
Signes.

Cure.

**T**he Thorax which is domicill to the heart and lights, suffereth solution of continuity in diuers manners, whereof some are externe and doe not penetrate, others penetrate to some of the partes containned therein, as the heart, lights, mediastin & diaphragma, some passe through out, of the which some are curable, some incurable, and some mortall, as y<sup>e</sup> haue heard in the Chapter Generall, as also the Causes and Signes. Those which penetrate at the backe are more dangerous, then at the interior part, because of the vaines, artiers, nerues, and such like. The Cure consisteth in good dyet in the fixe vnnaturall things, purgation, letting of blood according to the temperature of the body, time, and Region. Those which doe not penetrate, differ nothing from the generall of other simple woundes, sauing onely in binding, which must be incarnative, sometime narrow, otherwhiles broad according to the difference and scituation of the wound. Touching those which penetrate, there is great diuersitie of opinion in the cure, some are of the opinion to consolidate the wound as soone as may be to hinder the externe ayre to hurt the parts vitall, others giue counsell to holde them open, and in case the issue be not large enough, to dilate it, and make it larger, that if there be any bloud or other thing in the capacitie, it may aboide, but which of these wayes ought to be followed, the iudgement



ment of the expert Chirurgion is to be required : knowing first, if it doth penetrate, which shall be done in closing his mouth and nose, and then holding a candle to the wound, if the ayre commeth forth, it is sure that it penetrates ; if there be blood in y<sup>e</sup> capacitie, you shall know by y<sup>e</sup> ponderosite of y<sup>e</sup> diaphragma, accompanied with dolor, feuer and vomiting; if any cheise part be offended, ye shall know by the signes set downe in the Chapter Generall. If neither blood be shed, *Signes of the wound penetrate* nor any part offended, ye shall conglutinate the wounde, putting no tent therein, vsing onely a little of my balme set downe in the Chapter of Gunshot, in the meane time vse one potion vulnerat in such as doth penetrate. If there be any little thing left in the wounde, nature will easily discharge it, for (as saith Galen) it doth expell not onely that which offendeth, through the pannickles, but also through *Com. 7. apho.* the middest of the bones. Those which penetrate with effusion of blood on the diaphragma and are not mortall, must be tented with a thread at the tent, to the end that if it goe in, it may be drawn out again, cause the sicke to lie on the soze side, chiefly when you dresse him, that the blood and matter may issue at the wounde, vsing alwaies iniections of barley, pimpernell, pilosell, buglose, scrofularie, cheruill, all sodden in water, putting thereto a little honie or sirrope of roses, with a little white wine for a certaine time. Sometime the blood cannot euacuate by the wound, it being higher then the diaphragma, which causeth difficultye of respiring, for the which make an issne, as ye haue heard in *Empiema*, to euacuate the humoz contained ; if the putrefaction be great, mixe with the foresaid iniection a little egipciac, the wound being mundified, with this or such like, thou shalt vse this iniection, which is somewhat desiccative.

*Rec. rosarum, balaustiorum, mirtilorum an. onc. 1. mirabolani, citreiani. onc. 2 mellis rosati parum, coquantur in aqua plantaginis, ad consumptionem tertiae partis :* With this thou shalt walsh the wound, twice aday.



If the body be of an euill temperature, or that the nether part of the lights be hurt, it stayeth not quickly, but will voyde much; then we must vse a tent of Lead or Siluer, that is hollow within, that the matter may euacuate, we vse also this decoction to drinke in the morning, fasting foure howers after. Take Scabius, Buglosse, orange, Bim-pernell, Aristolochia, Agrimonie, Betonie, pilosell, an *M. seunarum munditarum, seminis hipericonis, & cardui benedicti an. unc 1 fl. rum trium cordialium an. P. 1. coquantur in aqua, adde in sine vni albi parum. siropi rosati, & cinamomi an. unc 2.* vsing on the wound the emplaster *Diacalciteos* maledixed in wine. If notwithstanding these remedies, it remaineth long in healing, and doth degender in fistull: for the curation of the which, haue recourse to the Booke of Ulcers and Chapter of Fistula.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of Wounds in the bellie.

Cause.  
Signes  
Iudgements.

Paul. lib. 6.  
cap. 52.

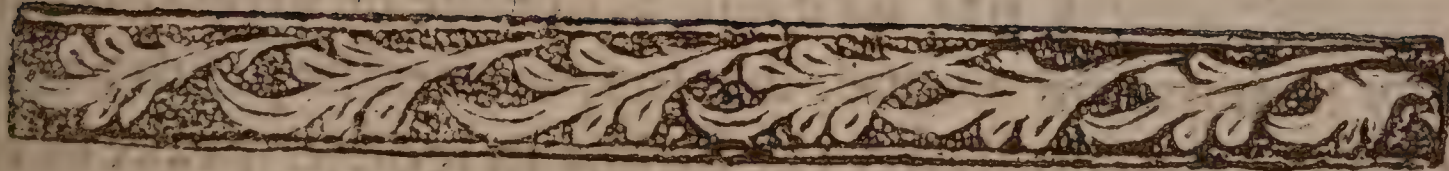
The inferiour bellie, wherein the Liuer with the Kidneys and Spleen are inclosed, is often wounded in diuers manners, some penetrates, and some not; offending the parts contained, as the stomacke, Liuer, Spleen, Kidneyes, gut, vaines, artiers, the epiplon and vnters, or some other parts: The Causes, Signes, & Iudgements whereof, we haue heard in the generall Chapter. The Iudgements, those that doe not penetrate, are cured like other simple wounds: those which penetrate into the capacity, requite another manner of cure. Wounds in the side, in the oblique muscles are not so dangerous, as those in the transversall, because that the periton is vneasie to sowe specially in *musculo recto* which descendeth from the breast to o. pubis. A little wounds in those places are more difficill, than those that are more ample, in them if the guts come out, they tumifie, and so are vneasie to put in againe: for the which vse such




such remedies as ye haue heard in *Axvmpalon*, vsing the  
 suture *Gastroaphicke*; if the guts be pearced, they must  
 be sewed with suture pellito; (as was shewed in y<sup>e</sup> generall  
 Chapter) and cast on the wound the powder of Aloes, Mir,  
 Pasticke, and Boll, and reduce it softly into the own place,  
 vsing an emplaster retentive and agglutinative. *Albu. lib. 2. cap. 45.*  
*Hip. apho. 58. sect. 6.* If the  
*Ingenium* be cut, it is impossible or most difficult to heale, by  
 reason of the great vaines contained therein, if any of the  
 guts haue changed colour, there is no hope. If the *Caule*  
 or *Omentum* be altered, it must be knit and reduced, as yee  
 haue heard in the generall Chapter. In all wounds in the  
 bellie vse Blisters and injections, astringents, and deter-  
 siues, chiefly if the great intestine, matrix, or blad-  
 der be hurt. And so we end this Booke of  
 Wounds, and shall follow out that  
 of Ulcers after the same  
 manner.

Y 2

THE







# THE SEVENTH BOOKE; Of Ulcers.

Which containeth X. Chapters ; whose Contents  
bee these ; by PETER LOVVE  
*Scottishman.*

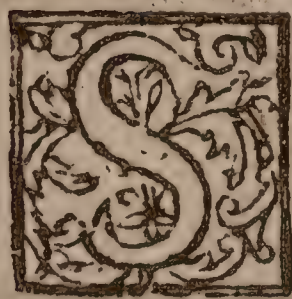
- Chap. 1. Of Vlcers in generall.  
2. Of Vlcers sanious, and their curation.  
3. Of the Vlcer Virulent.  
4. Of the Vlcer profound and Cavernous.  
5. Of the Vlcer Sordide and Putride.  
6. Of Vlcers difficile to cure.  
7. Of Vlcers with corruption of the Bones.  
8. Of Vlcers Cancrous.  
9. Of Fistula.  
10. Of Burnings.

## CHAP. I.

### ¶ Of Vlcers in generall.

Interloqvitors. *Peter, and Iohn.*

*Pet.*



Seeing wee haue amply spoken of Tumors  
and Wounds and of their Definition,  
Cause, Signes, and Cure ; so in like man-  
ner wee will proceede in Vlcers, seeing

Definition.

*Gal. de. can. ar-  
tis. cap. 6.*

many tumors and wounds doe suppure and degender in vl-  
cers, so it is needfull after the Booke hereof, to speake of vl-  
cers, and first I demaund what is an Vlcer?

*Ioh.* It is a solution of continuity made by erosion in di-  
uers parts of the body, out of the which proceedeth a matter  
purulent,



purulent, which hindereth the consolidation thereof.

*Pet.* Are they not different?

*Ioh.* Some differ in nature, in substance, in quantity, *fig.* Difference of  
figure, and accidents. *ulcers.*

*Pet.* How differ they in nature and substance?

*Ioh.* Some are simple in the flesh without any other in-  
disposition, as sayth Galen; others are composed with one, *Tang. lib. 3.*  
or more maladies, as vlcers with intempercy, corruption of *Gal. lib. 2. mor.*  
the bone, Aposthume, nodosity, and diuers other accidents.

*Pet.* How differ they in figure and quantity?

*Ioh.* Some are round, long, profound, superficial, great,  
and small.

*Pet.* How differ they by accidents?

*Ioh.* Some are putride, dolorous, fistulous, cancrus,  
some are inueterate, some recent, some in one member, some  
in other places.

*Pet.* How many causes are there of vlcers?

*Ioh.* Three; primitive, antecedent, and coniunct.

*Pet.* Which are the primitives?

*Ioh.* Contusion, scratching, heats, application of sharpe  
medicaments, corrosion, great cold that extinguisheth the  
naturall heat, chiefly in the extremities.

*Pet.* Which are the causes antecedent?

*Ioh.* Euill humors in the body, which come of euill nour- *Gal de causis*  
riture, or euill disposition of the body, or some part thereof, *morb. ca. 10.*  
chiefly the Liuer, ventricle, and Spleen. *Cap. 4. met.*

*Pet.* How are those humors causes of Vlcers?

*Ioh.* Partly by their euill quality, partly through aboun-  
dance of them doe spoyle, open and corrode the most debill  
parts of our body, not hauing force to resist such malignity,  
and so causeth vlcers.

*Pet.* Which are the coniunct causes?

*Ioh.* The foresayd humors coniointed in the parts vlcera-  
red, as also all other violent things that haue force to vlcera-  
rate the same part.

*Pet.* Which are the Signes?



Signes.

*Ioh.* They are euident; or are in the body, & are knowne by the dolor, nature, or the place, accidents and excrements, and such as you shall heare in the sixe kinds of proper vlcers.

*Gal. com. 3. apho. & lib. 1.**de officina.**medic. 8. 3.**de locis affectis.**is.*

Difference.

*Pet.* Which are those sixe kinds of vlcers?

*Ioh.* The first is sanious, 2. virulent, 3. filthy, 4. cancrus, 5. putride or stinking, 6. corrosiue or rotten away.

*Pet.* Haue they no other names?

*Ioh.* They haue five other names, and first by the humors, secondly by y<sup>e</sup> matter, that commeth from them, thirdly of the accidents, fourthly of the sickness, fifthly by comparing them to the similitude of beasts.

*Pet.* How take they their names by the humors?

*Ioh.* Some are of the Phlegmatick humor, and are called Phlegmaticks, some by the bloud, and are called sanguinis, be the chollos, chollosicke, and by melancholy, melancholick.

*Pet.* How take they the names of the matter?

*Ioh.* Of the great abundance of sany or humidity, it is called vlcer sanious, of the pus, purulent, of the sordidities, it is called sordide, of the virulence, it is called virulent.

*Pet.* How take they their names of the accidents?

*Ioh.* Of the hardnes called callositie it is hard and callous, of the cauters it is called cauernous, of the fistule, it is called fistulas, of the putrifaction putride, of the corrosion or malignitie of the matter, corrosiue, of the cankers or hardnes turned ouer it, called cancrus, of the dolor, dolorous, of aposthume, aposthumus. In all vlcers where any of these raygne, they heale not, till they be taken away.

*Pet.* What is callositie?

*Ioh.* It is a dry flesh without dolor, because it hath no vaine, to make it humide, nor nerue to giue it feeling.

*Pet.* How is that called, which commonly commeth from vlcers?

*Ioh.* It is called sanie or matter.

*Pet.* What is Sanie?

*Ioh.* It



*Ioh.* It is a corruption of the part, in which nature cannot digest, and make it to nourish the same.

*Pet.* How many sortes of sanie is there?

*Ioh.* Two, to wit, that which is commendable, as it ought to be, and that which is not.

*Pet.* Which is commendable?

*Ioh.* It is that which is white, light, equall in consistence, neither thick, thin, nor euill tasted.

*Pet.* Which is not commendable, or euill sanie?

*Ioh.* It is a corruption of the instrument, much altered through vnnaturall heate, and according to that alteration it produceth euill sanie.

*Pet.* What call you Pus?

*Ioh.* It is a kinde of sanie made of the nouriture and superfluitie of the member, tending to corruption by the alteration of the naturall heate and debilitie of the member, out of the which cometh a matter called *virus & sordities*.

*Pet.* What is virus?

*Ioh.* It is that which is ingendred of the most subtil & hotte parte of the pituitous humo?, which nature cannot digest for the great abundance thereof; of which Guido alleged 4. kinds, cold and hote, redde and watry.

*Pet.* What is it thou callest sordities?

*Ioh.* It is a grosse matter, ingendred of grosse humo?es. *Gal. lib. 3. mo?*

*Pet.* What callest thou durities, or hardnesse? *Gal. 3. metho.*

*Ioh.* It is a thing hard and solide, not easie to be corrupted, which may come of three causes, that is, great heate, congelation, repletion. *cap. 4. 6. & 7.*

*Pet.* What callest thou fistula?

*Ioh.* It is a profound vlcere, hauing the entry, hard, narrow, deepe, cauerous, from the which proceedeth a matter virulent. *Gal. lib. de tumoribus contra naturam.*

*Pet.* What is putrefaction?

*Ioh.* It is a change of the substance of our whole body, or of some part thereof, through an vnnaturall heate.

*Pet.* What is the cause of putrefaction in our bodies?



*Ioh.* It cometh, either that the spirit animal is corrupted, or cannot goe to the parte, for colde, heate, apostume, pustules, vlcers ambulatiues, venomous; also putting of oyles and such like in deepe vlcers, do corrupt the flesh, also too much vsing of refrigeratiues in hotte apostumes, and ligatores which intercept the spirite.

Three sortes  
of putrefaction.

*Pet.* How many sortes of Putrefactions are there?

*Ioh.* Thre; to wit, Gangren, Estachiles, and Histiomen.

*Pet.* What is Gangren?

*Ioh.* It is a putrefaction of the parte hauing yet feeling, and differeth in that from others.

*Pet.* What is Estachiles?

*Ioh.* It is a putrefaction of the member, or parte thereof, without feeling, corrupting both flesh and bone.

*Pet.* What is Histiomen?

*Ioh.* It is a whole corruption of the member, eating and consuming the whole body away.

*Pet.* What is Corrosion?

*Ioh.* It is a consumption of the flesh, through the bitterness and sharpnesse of the humors.

*Pet.* What are the causes of Corrosion?

*Ioh.* The malignitie of the flesh, the humor chollerick, phlegmatick, salt admired.

*Pet.* What callest thou Cancer?

*Ioh.* It is a malady of a matter colde and drie, being hot by putrefaction, hardnes, and other signes, as ye haue hard in his proper Chapter.

*Pet.* What are the Iudgements?

Iudgements.

*Hip. 6. lib. 45. aph.*

*Ioh.* There are diuers, according to the accidents that fall; and first, that vlcers remaining a yeare or more vncured, make the bone vnder them altered and rottten, and when such vlcers are whole, there remaineth a cauitie in the part vlcered: all vlcers that are euill coloured blacke are esteemed malignes; if any vlcer being filled vp and ready to cicatrize, begin sodainely to runne againe without manifest



manifest cause, it is in danger to become fistulous. *Hipocrates* saith, that vlcers which haue no haire about them, are *Hip. 6. lib. apho. 4.* vncasie to heale and cicatrize; also those vlcers which come by reason of some maladie, as hidropsie, and cachexie, are hard to heale. *Hipocrates* saith also, if any man haue an vlcet, whether it be come to him befoze his sickenesse, or in the sickenesse, and the sicke dye, that vlcet shall be befoze hee die, drie, blew, or pale. The same *Hippocrates* saith also, that those who haue vlcers accompanied with tumor, doe neither fall in convulsion, raving, nor frensie, but if the tumor, goe away without manifest cause, and if the vlcet be in the backe, the sicke falleth in spasme: if befoze in the bodie, in raving and frensie: if in the thorax befoze he falleth in empiem and plurisie, all vlcers accompanied with varices, or intemperie, and those also that haue the sides hard, are difficile to heale: all vlcers in the extremities of the muscles of the legges and armes, are difficile and dangerous: as also those, which penetrate in the body: such vlcers as chaunce in the extremities of the bodie, as in the fete, or handes, make oft phlegmons, or other tumors against nature, and in crisis of a maladie, are difficile.

*Pet.* Which are those which are of easie curation?

*Ioh.* Those which happen in bodie of good complexion, and in the which none of the foresaid accidents doe happen.

Cure.

*Pet.* Which are the chiefe causes that hinder the healing of vlcers?

*Ioh.* According to Galen, the chiefe cause is want of good bloud to engender flesh, or else that it is euill either by quantitie or quality of it selfe, also dolour, intemperie apostume, contusion, *Erisipelas*, *Echimois*, the south wind which is hote, humide and putrefactive enemy to al wounds and vlcers as saith *Guido*, also superfluous flesh, hardnes, callosity of the sides, corruption of the bone, varices, hemeragie of bloud: also roundnesse in figure, for the which *Hippocrates* counselleth, if the vlcet bee round, to put on it an other forme. Imbecillitie of the part vlceted, indisposition of the lyuer

*Celsus lib. 7. cap. 3. 4. meth. cap. 5. & 2. Alex. apho. pro 199. lib. 1. & com in apho. 8. lib. 6.*



*Gal. lib. 5. metho.  
tho cap. 10.*

*Par. 4. cap. 40.  
41. & 42.*

*Gal. 4. metho.  
cap. 1.*

lyuer or milke, retention of the monethly course in women, and of the hemorrhoides, and also the applying of medicines vnnecte for such vlcers. Many ignorant Barbers faile here, in, thinking one kind of emplaster to be good for all sores, in the which they are deceiued : for he that would cure vlcers, must first take away the cause, as also the impediments and accidents, otherwise hee trauaileth in vaine, as saith Paulus, for the per surmance whereof, we must ordaine first good dyet, secondly take away the cause antecedent, to witte, the humors which fallēt, which shall be done by purging, bleeding, according to the cause and the parte : thirdly correct and heale the accidentes and indispositions which accompanie the vlcer : these things done, hee may come to the curation hereof, as shall be particularly set downe of euery kinde of vlcer, in his proper place.

## CHAP. II.

### Of Vlcers fanions and the Curation thereof.

*Gal. 4. me. ca. 1.*

Cure.

**A**S in the former Chapter I haue spoken of vlcers in generall, of their difference, cause, signes, iudgements, and cure, so now I will particularly intreat of them. All Vlcers are either simple or composed with some other maladie : the simple Vlcer requireth onely desiccation, those which are composed, and ioyned with some other accident, except those accidents be taken away cannot heale, for the cure of the which, there are foure Intentions : first in the way of life, which shall be according to the strength of the sicke, nature of the maladie, and abundance of the humors in the bodie, as if the humors be hotte and sharpe, we ordaine colde things. The second Intention is, in diuerting and intercepting the matter antecedent, which is done by purgations and bleeding if the strength permit, also by frictions,



ons, ligatoꝝ, application of emplaſters, that haue the force  
 to repell the matter. The third Intention is in correcting *Gal. lib. 3. ca. 8*  
 the accidents ioyned with the vlcꝛ, as dolour, tumor, con- *& com. in aph.*  
 fuſion, excreſcence of the fleſh, calloſitie of the lippes, rot, *31. cap. 7.*  
 tennelle, of the boane, varice and wormes. Fiſt then, wee  
 muſt labour to take away the intemperie, which ſhall bee  
 knowne by the colour of the member, by the touching and  
 feeling of the patient, which ſometime is hotte, ſometime  
 colde, which if it be drye, we remedy it by purgation and  
 blæding, alſo if neede be, ſoment the place with hotte water:  
 till it grow redde, as counſelleth Galen: thereafter uſe this  
 vnguent made of mallowes, ſodden in water with a little  
 hogges greaſe and honie mixed with nutritum, ceratum,  
 galeny roſatum, populeon, incorporate with plantaine wa-  
 ter, moꝝrell and houſlecke. If the Intemperie be humyde, *Gal. lib. 2. cap.*  
 uſe vnguents that drye, as pompholigos, de plumbo, ce- *10. & com. in*  
 ruſa, allom water, vnguent baſilicon, citrinum, fuſcum de *aph. 8.*  
 althea: oꝛ this ſomentation of claret wine, in the which  
 hath bene ſodden Roſes, betonie, wormewood, roch allom.  
 If the Intemperie bee colde, we ſoment the parte onely with  
 wine, wherein wormewood hath bene ſodden, hyſſope, ca-  
 lamint, roſemary, vnguent baſilicon, and de althea. If the  
 Intemperie be hotte, we remedy it by water of plantaine, ſo-  
 lanum, houſlecke, oꝛ vnguentum rubrificum, cum campho-  
 ra, oꝛ cerat galen: if there be dolour with vlcꝛ, which  
 cometh of intemperie, eroſion, of a ſubtil humor oꝛ ſolu-  
 tion of continuity, oꝛ plenitude of groſſe humors, oꝛ a flatus  
 ous ſpuite, foꝛ the which take vnguent populeon, oyle of  
 yolkes of egges, vnguentum album camphozatum, with  
 other ſuch as are in tumors, if the dolour be vehement, wee  
 make a cataplaſme narotick of barley flower, oyle of roſes,  
 henbane, mandrager, poppie, all ſodden in milke. If the *Gal. 3. me. cap.*  
 dolour be accompanied with tumor, fiſt loke to the cauſe of *3. & 5.*  
 it, thereafter, oꝛdayne the dyet ſtraight and colde, blæding,  
 purging, according to the nature of the humor, with ſuch  
 particular remedies, as ye haue heard in tumors; The ex-  
 creſcence



*Lib. 5. meth.  
cap.*

*Gal. 4. metho.  
cap. 2.*

*Pau. lib. 4. cap.  
42.*

*Ga. 5. me. cap.  
13. & 3. met.  
ca. 3.  
Pau. lib. 4. ca.  
55.*

cence of the flesh shall be taken away with cauters, razors, sheeres, powder of mercurie, burnt allom, *astrum, squama, aris, unguentum egyptiacum, apostolorum, vitrioli romani.* The hardnes is cured by Remollients and Resolvents, as goose, henns, ducke, and calves grease, oyle of Lillies, *lumbicorum, vulpium, muscilaginis* of albea, and fenigreci, *basilicon, diachilon magnum de muscilaginibus*, thereafter scarifie as counselleth Aulien, then put powder of mercurie or cut it with a Rasor to the soft part. If the vlcer become blacke and red, scarifie it, and lette it bleede well and apply things drying. If it be accompanied with varice, it must be taken away as ye haue heard in the Chapter of varix. If there be rottennes in the bone, ye shall haue recourse to the proper Chapter. If there be wormes in the vlcer, we must consume the rottennes and humiditie they are ingendred of, and kill them also, with the decoction of wormewood, Agrimony, marubium, Centory, Calamint, which is good to wash the vlcers also in the eares, fasting spittle is good for vlcers in the eares, and other parts as saith Archigenes, and Theodoricus, and make the Cicatrize well saoured, with the foresaid decoction wash the vlcers, as also with oyle of wormewood, the powder Aloes, mixed with the oyle of Absinthe and a little ware is very good. Millefolium taken the weight of one drame in white wine killeth y<sup>e</sup> worms in the belly also. The fourth intencion consisteth in healing of the places vlcered, which shall bee done in taking away the impediments, as ye haue heard thereafter, cicatrize the vlcer with such things as are set downe for the consolidation of wounds.

### CHAP. III.

#### ¶ Of vlcers virulent and corrosiue.

**H**ere ye shall heare of those two vlcers which are not much different: those vlcers which haue certaine virulencie



lencie and venenositie are called virulent, but after the bit-  
 ternes augment and corrode the flesh and maketh it  
 greater it is called corrosive, or eating blcer, if it eate much  
 of the flesh not going deepe, it is called ambulatiue, if yet it  
 both augment it becommeth in cancer or lupus as yee shall  
 heare. The cause of these vlcers are euill bilions, humors,  
 sharp and biting, the which get some malignity, venenosity  
 by there aduotion, and happen oft after Herpes or wounds  
 that haue bene irritated by sharpe and biting medicamēts.  
 The Cure is first in the manner of life, according to the dis-  
 position of the body and humors that raigne, next in purging  
 partly for the euacuation of such sharpe humors, thirdly in  
 applying fit medicines on the blcer, as if it be very humide,  
 the medicaments must be more drying and like to the part,  
 as this, take water of allom or plantyne, decoction of cypres,  
 Mirabalon, bark of Pomgarnet, and such like. If there  
 be great heate in the place, coole it by refrigeratiues, and de-  
 sicatiues, Gnydo for such vlcers vseth a cake of lead rubbed  
 with quicksiluer, *unguentum pompholigos, de minio, or de  
 plumbo, unguentum rubrum cum camphera*, take any of these  
 mixed with a little *crebia preparate, plumbi, vsti, ceruse, lote,*  
 beaten in a mortar of lead, with water of plantine, a little  
*terra sigillata*, with a little oyle of Roses, make an vnguent.  
 If the malignitie be great in the body, drye and consume  
 these humors, with cauters actuall, powder of mercurie  
 mixed with vnguent rosat, till such time the malice be con-  
 sumed, thereafter wash it with the decoction aboue specifi-  
 ed. If by all these remedies we profit not, or if the patient  
 may not suffer the actuall cauter either through feare or  
 tenderneffe, we vse the *thochisces* of diandron de musa ar-  
 nie, *copperous*, vsing alwaies defensives to repercute the flux-  
 ion, which may come through the violence of these remedies.  
 If these be not sufficient, Auicen counselleth to cut the mem-  
 ber infected and blcered.

Definition.

Paul. lib 4.

cap 41.

Lan. cap 11.

Causes.

Lib. 4. meth.

cap. 4.

Cure.

Gal. 12. meth.

Gal. li. 5. meth.

cap. 10.



## CHAP. IIII.

¶ Of the vicer profound and  
Cavernous.

Definition.

Cause.

Signes.

*Gal. ad. gl. ca.  
8. & li. tumo.  
cōtra naturā.*

Cure.

*Gal. 3. meth.  
cap. 8. & 9.  
& lib. 4. ca. 7.  
& 2. ad. glau.  
cap. 8**Paul. lib. 4. ca.  
4.*

**T**he vicer cavernous hath the orifice streight and the bottom broad, many cavernes some right, some oblique with diuers fractuositie without hardnes and callosity, and so differ from fistules. The cause of such vicers is apostumes wounds euill healed, in the which the matter hath bene long retayned, and the orifice higher then the bottom, as ye haue heard, the party debilitated, so causeth defluxion of superfluous humors, not onely of the part but of all the body. Thou shalt knowe these cavernes by the sound, either of lead, silver, or a wax candle, and humor therein contained by the injection if it be white and cerusse, it is cold, if it be subtile and reddish, the matter is hote, those that are easie to heale haue little matter with deminution of dolour and humor. The cure of such vicers consisteth first in the way of life, with remedies, according to the qualitie of the humor and nature of the part vicered, as also the situation, the dolour, intemperie and other accidents, that entertaine the vicer. As for the topicall remedies if the orifice be in commodious situation, that the matter may euacuate, by unguents, emplasters, mundificatiues, desiccatiues, with ligatures, coppresses, fomentations and injections of red wine, if the orifice be high, and the bottom low, the member must be situate in such fashion that the nethermost part be as ye haue heard in wounds cavernous. If by the situation, the matter doth not euacuate or if it be in such places, that it cannot be so situated, then make an insicion from the crifice to the bottom with marte instruments, thereafter appease the dolour, and flux of blood; if it be in such parts that this insicion be not sauely done, then make an issue in the bottom, and put a seton as in wounds cavernous, or a tent with



with some fit medicine, that mundifieth as ye haue heard in *Toga. li. 3. cap.*  
tumors, or this *Rec. mellis lib. 2. viridis aris 5. olei rosari lib. 17.*

*I. aristolachia longe, alluminiis ceruse an unc. 1 fiat unguen-*  
tum or wash with wine and honie called *mulsam*. If the  
humor bee sanguinolent and euill sauoured, wash the vlcere  
with *Orymell*, Allom water or honie, *aqua marin*, with a  
little egyptiac. A bucrasis, counselleth to dissolue egyptiac *Albu. lib. 2.*  
with hyzomell, which mundifieth and correcteth the malignitie. *46*  
If the matter be subtil and watry, take barley, agri-  
monie, centaury, wormwood, and seeth in honey and vineger,  
it being cleansed vse this incarnatiue & glutinatiue, take the  
rootes of Iris, Plantaine, Agrimony sodden in water and *Lib. meth. 3.*  
honey. Auicenn counselleth the *emplastrum catholicum* & cen-  
torium which is of a merueilous effect in this, put also in the  
*emplastrum de minio. die calcis* or *nigrum*, composed with  
galles, honie powder of Iris, aloes, myrthe, and such like.  
To at, setteth a marueilous good medicine to conglutinate  
vicers made thus, *Rec. decoctionis hordei lib. 1 mellis rasata*  
*unc. 3. sacrocalle drag. 2. mirra thuris an drag. 1. vini odoriferi*  
*unc. 3 bulliani ad consumptionem tertiae partis addendo alce- pa-*  
*ram*, straine this and put it on and in the vicers and bind it  
vpward, thist it once a day, till the vlcere be whole vsing al-  
wayes the emplaster of Diapalma, mixed in Claret wine,  
fementation with wine, copresse, and bandage, wret in the  
same.

## CHAP. V.

## Of the filthy &amp; rotten vlcere.

These vicers which are accompanied with abundance  
of matter thick, tough, and euill colored are called by *Definition.*  
Gualdo and other sordids and filthy, if they augment, rot, *Gual. trac. 4.*  
and mortifie the flesh, vlcered, boyding a matter euill sau- *de. vlcerib.*  
ored and cadaverous, they are called vicers putrids. If the  
malignitie and rottennes becommeth in gangren it is called  
vicer



Causes.

ulcer gangrenos The cause is abundance of grosse humors, proceeding of an aduction and ebullition of blood, for the which they become venenous and maligne as caunceth after carbuncles, anthrax, tumors and wounds, euill dressed. The

Cure.

Paul. lib. 4. ca.  
45.

Gal. 3. meth.  
cap. 6. & 7.

Gui. lrac. 4.  
Haly abbas.

Lib 7. apho. 9<sup>r</sup>

Cure of them consisteth, in regiment as ye haue heard in the Chapter of carbuncle, the vsing of the decoction gatac is good to drye vp the humors, and encuat them by sweating. Auicen commendeth much purging of the bodie to discharge the part of these euill humors, by medicines mundificatiues, like as humiditie by drying medicines, by ventosies, scarifications, horseleaches, epithems. Topicall remedies are first to wash the place with hydromell and aqua marina, apostolicon or egyptiac and put on the vlcere, applying on it an emplayster de bolo, with cloth wet in oricrate. If the matter gender in corruption, wash it with oricrate, water of cinders or white sope, with this emplayster made of saltfish, flower of aristolochia longa and oroby, sodden in wine and out on the soze. If this be not sufficient, take this medicament, which is greatly approved by Auicen, *quod recepit dragaganti rubri dicti auripigment. onc. i. calcis vine alluminis corticis mali punicis singulorum unc. 6. thuris galarum singulorum unc. di. cera & olei an. quantum suff. cit. fiat unguentum*, with defensives of bol. If for all this, the vlcere augment and grow worse, we vse more strong remedies to consume the putrefaction, as cauters actuals, razors, or other medicaments that haue vertue to make a scale, according to the saying of Hippocrates, that which healeth not by medicaments, it healeth eyther by iron or ster, which shall be continued tyll ye come to the good flesh, and shall be knowne by the colour. Arsenick or vitriol roman is good to seperate the rotten from the whole, being mixed with aquavite, honie and egyptiac. If by all these remedies ye profit not, but that the euill doth augment, the parte must be cut off, for the safety of the rest, as councelleth Celsus.



## CHAP. VI.

¶ Of the Vlcers difficile to heale,  
called Cacoethie and Chironia.

**Y**e haue heard, that some vlcers are easie, some hard, and some indifferent, but those vlcers which heale not after all things duely vseo, are called Cacoethick, or malignes, and long in healing, and by Galen, dispuetic. The Cause is, the euill temperature of the bodie, as, if the humors be vitiated, called by the greekes cachochemie, or if there be abundance of humors, called by the greekes plethorie, they must also be euacuated, the callositie or intemperie in the part must be taken away. The signes are, the diuturnitie of the vlcer, the indisposition and malice of the humor, the hardnes and callositie of the lippes tumified, there cometh Sanie in quantitie, but thin, euill sauoured, little doleour, sometime healeth, and oft openeth vp againe, chiefly in the feet and legges. As for the Cure, ye must take away the cause, and reduce the parte to the naturall, otherwise it is impossible to heale it. If there be plentitude, cachochemie, intemperie, eyther of all the bodie, or some parte interne, as the lyuer, the mylke, the stomake, or else the parte vlcered about it, vice in the humor, or some varic, roundnesse and hardnesse of the vlcer: first ye must purge the body, as ye shall finde expedient, blede if cause require, vse good dyet, eate things that ingender good humors, vsing decoction of Salsaparilla, made thus. Take Salsaparilla vnc. 4 guiac vnc. i di. macerentur per noctem in lib. 8. aqua purissima bulliant. to igne, ad consumptionem medie partis, addendo in fine, saniculae l. ss., pilosella, pimpinella, quinque nerui garophillate, consolidate maioris & minoris capillorum omnium an. m. di. glicerize rase vnc. di. fiat decoctio, capiat summo mane & sudet. & a prandio vnc. 4. sine sudore & a iij. horis si voluerit. This is a most excellent helpe for all vlcers. If the fault be in the

Z

lyuer,

Definition.

Cause.

Paul. ib. 4. ca. 46.

Signes.

Cure.

Gal. 4. melk. ap. 5.

Ga. 4. me. ca. 2. &amp; 4.



*Hip. lib. de. vl-  
cerib.* liuer, milke, or stomacke, corroborate these parts by aduise of the learned Physitian; if the fault be in the part vlcered, eyther being tumified with varix, or other accidents, it shall be corrected as in vlcers sanious, as also if it be round. If the salt be in the humors which occupie the vlcer, they must be euacuated. All vlcers which are difficile to cicatrize, must haue the bloud about them euacuated, either by scarifications, or horseleaches, and washing it with allom water, and such as ye haue heard in vlcers putride. If the part about the vlcer be blacke, liuide or redde, scarifie it, and euacuate well the bloud, applying a drye sponge, with medicaments defensives, as in vlcers sanious. If the lippes of the vlcer be callous, hard, and liuide, it must be consumed with medicaments, if not that way, we cut the hardnes to the quicke flesh, and let it blade well to diuertize the fluxion, and intercept the cause of the hardnesse. These things all obserued, thou shalt followe out the rest of the cure, as is set downe in the simple vlcer.

*Celsus lib. 5.  
cap. 26.  
Hip. lib. de.  
viceribus.  
Ga. 4. me. ca. 2.*

*CHAP. VII.*

**¶** Of vlcer with corruption of the boane.

*Definition.*

*Hip. lib. 6.  
aphor. 45.*

*Signes*

**T**Here are some vlcers, which after they are healed and cicatrized a certaine space, become tumified and suppure and renue the vlcer againe, which chaunceth when the vlcer hath bene long in healing, maligne, fistulous, gangrenous and cancerous, by the defluxion of the humor in the proper substance of the boane, as we see in the virulence of the venereal sicknesse, or other humor malignant, the which consumeth the periost, rotteth the boane, if they continue ayre thereby, and consumeth the bloud, which is the proper nouriture thereof, also application of oyle, or things vnctious on the boane, which corrodeth. This corruption commeth by degrees: first by coming fat, through the humor

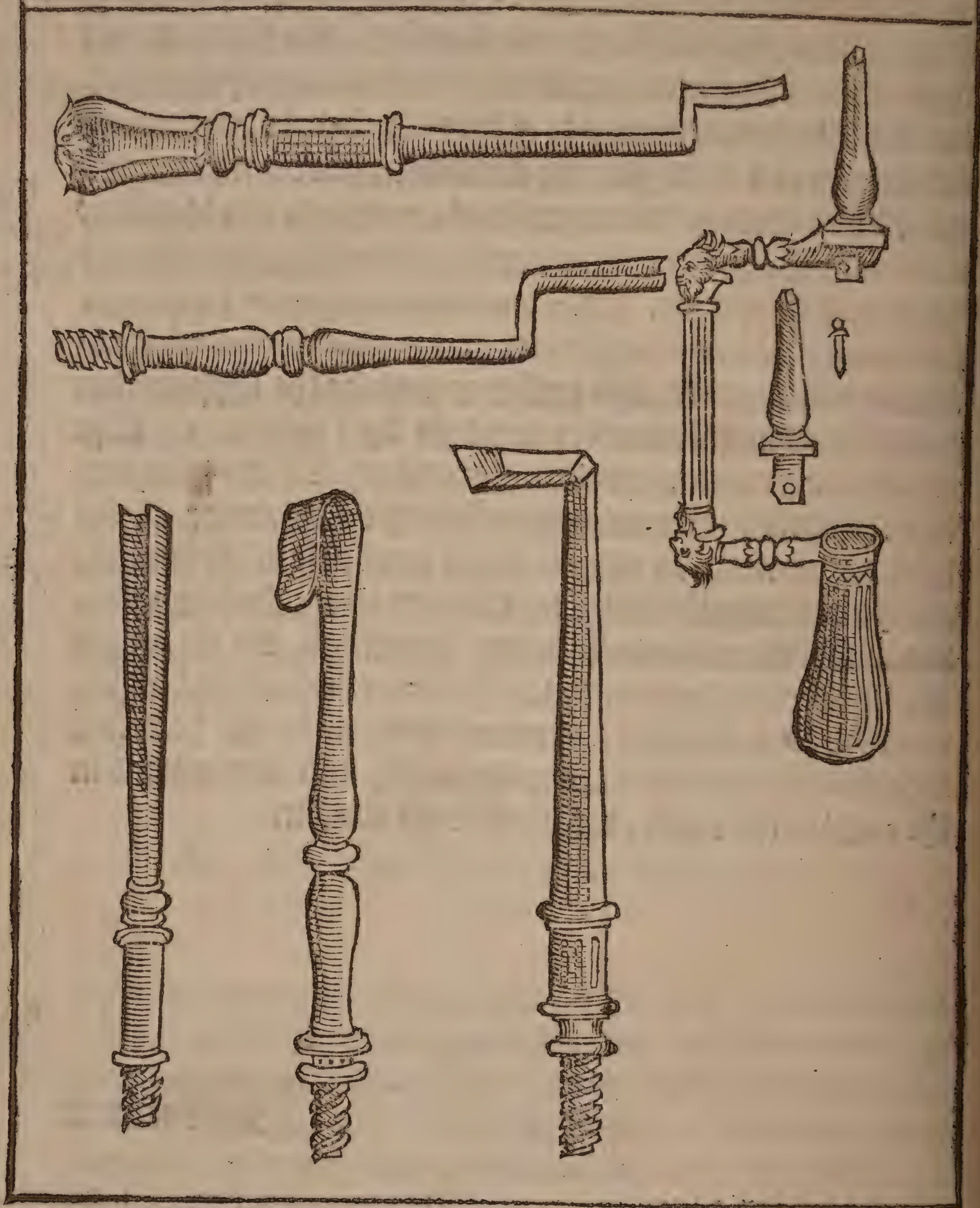


Of Vlcers with corruption in the bone. *Lib. V I.* 339

humor which is soaked in it; next, either blacke or rotten, and *Celsus. lib. 8. cap. 2.* is knowne by the matter that commeth from it, which is viscous, thin, subtil, black, and stinking, also great store of spongyous flesh, the corruption is also knowne by the sight, not being white as it ought, also by the sounde, not equall but knotty and soft. For the Curation, after remedies vniuersall, let there be used a good diet, purging, and blæding, and vsing this potio in the morning, not eating foure hours afore, nor thre after. *Cure. Celsus. lib. 8. cap. 2.* *Rec. hordei mundi partes. 3. gentiana partes. 2. centaurea minoris parte 1. coquantur in vino albo,* putting to a little gaiac, this potion is good for the suppuration of the bones as is learnedly written by Togatious. The particular remedies are of thre kinds, that is, rougins causers, potentiall and actuell, before the application of the which, wee must be assured what quantitie of the boane is altered, then incise the vlcer, discover that which is offended, and if the rottennesse be but superficiall, we vse rougin till we perceiue the blond, which sheweth it not to be altered. The bone which is nere consumed, as in the head and such places as be nere the noble parts, and ioyntes and in the ridge of the backe, we vse also the rougin. *Celsus. lib. 8. cap. 2.*



*Instruments to separate and take away  
rotten and consumed bones.*



With this powder of the roots of *aristolochia*, *iris*, *plurentia*,  
*corticis pini*, *thuris*, *aloes*, *floris*, *eris*, an. partes aequales, stamp  
 them in aquavite and drye them in an oven, which shall be  
 done twice or thrise, and lay these powders on the bone,  
 with the en-plaster *diacalciteos* or *betonica* : ye may also  
 mixe these powders with a little honey or *aurum*. If these  
 things



things be not sufficient, and the alteration be greater, we use cauters potentiall, or oyle of vitriol, oyle of cloves, mercurie, camphire, sulphure, salis, antimonie, incense and such like. But if the rottennesse be great, fat and vntious, we apply Cauters actually once or twice, to separate the whole from that which is rotten, persunding till the outmost of the altered bone, which ye shall know, when ther cometh no more humiditie: if you continue them longer, you consume the humiditie naturall, which should ingender flesh betwixt the rotten and the whole bone, for the which haue good Judgement. This remedie hath vertue to corroboreate and comforte the parte, and dryeth and consumeth the euill humors, and helpeth the separation of the bone, the which being perceiued, shake it by little and little, and draw it not by force: if it be drawne before the fleshe be growne on the whole bone, the ayre will alter it. Of this remedie cometh no dolour, if ye touch nothing but the bone, after the Causers are applyed, we use oyle of roses, with whites of egges for the first two dayes, then mixe whites of egges and fresh Butter with Honye, thereafter some mundificatiue till the bone be exfoliated, then use the powder aboue written mixed with honie to incarnate and cicatrize, thereafter console the vicer, in place of the bone which is lost, there ingendereth a hard substance, or callositie which serueth in steade of the bone. If the rottennesse come to the marrow, and the bone be all corrupted, there is no remedie but amputation, except in the head, haunch, and rigge backe, in the which we use remedie spalliatives as ye haue heard.

*Gul. lib. 4.  
de vicerib.*

*Albu. lib. 2.*

### CHAP. VIII.

#### Of the vlcers Cancrous, and their Curation.

**H**aving intreated heretofore of Cancer in generall, here we will speake of the ulcered, which as saith Guyde, *Definition.* is an vicer round, horrible, having the lippes thick, harde, inequall,



*Paul. lib. 3 ca*  
*67.*

Cause.

Signes.  
*Actius. lib. 4.*  
*cap. 43.*

Cure.  
*Guy. tract. 4.*  
*de. ulcerib.*

*Gal. 2. ad. gla.*  
*cap. 10.*

*Hip. 6. apho. 1.*

*Gal. 14. metho.*  
*cap. 10.*

inequall, sordide, turned ouer, cauernous, euill sauoured, of colour liuide and obscure, accompanied with many vains full of Melancholick bloud, boyding a matter virulent, sanious, worse then the venom of beasts, subtil, watry, black or red. It is so called for two causes as saith Auicen, the one because it cleaueth so fast to the part, as Cancer to that which it taketh hold of, the other because it hath vaines about, like the feete of the cancer. The cause, cometh of the cancer vnulcered, and vlcers euill cured, and by the humors Melancholick which come from all the partes of the bodye, which do putrifie and heate, so acquire a sharpnes and venenositie, and breede cancer. The Signes are these, the cancer vlcered is still redde, caue to the profound of the member casting a virulent matter in great abundance, pricking dolor, and irriteth by the applycation of remedies, and operation manuell, so not to be touched, and therefore called, *Noli me tangere*. The Cure generall consisteth in purgation and dyet, as in tumors cancrous, Guydo commendeth a potion made of capillars, *herbi Rebeti, scrofularia, contruadi*, Treacle and methydate are good, for they cause venom to come out in the skinne. The particular is, if it be in such a place that it may not be taken away with the braunches, it shall be done by incision, cauterization, or corrosion, and that the bloud be all well exprimed out of the vaines, thereafter cauterize it with such as haue force to consume the euill humor, *quoniam in extremis morbis, extrema sunt adhibenda remedia*. The arsenic sublimat is excellent, for it mortifieth in one day cancers, fistules, and other strang maladies: apply defensives and anodins: produce the fall of the scale as in the vlcer precedent. When ye perceiue that there is neither stinck nor virulencie, but good flesh, heale it as other vlcers. If it be in any part that it may not be thus handled, or the patient will not, or that it is vncureable, vse palliative remedies, the which consist cheifly in good diet, abstayning from things contrary, vsing nourishing things, thereafter euacuation, generall purgations, bleeding, applying



ing on the part medicaments corroboratiues, liniments and  
refrenants to diuert the fluxion, with other proper medi-  
cines, as this : take the iuyce of *scabius* & *solani* an. vnc. 2.  
*plumbi vstiloti*, *unguenti phompholigos* an. vne di. *unguenti al-*  
*bi* vnc. 2. *diacalciteos* vnc. di. *oleum emphacinu* parum agiten-  
tur in mortario plumbeo. There are diuers other proper medi-  
caments for this effect, as *succus solani*, *spuma argenti*, *cerusa*  
*olei*, an. partes equales contundantur & agitentur in mortario  
plumbeo, donec habeant colorem plumbi. When there is great  
doulour seeth althea in Wine and honey putting thereto a lit-  
tle oyle of Roses to make a cataplasme, also wash the vlcer  
with wine, wherein *rapsus barbatus* and *carduus benedict-*  
*us* hath been sodden. There are diuers vnguents and lini-  
ments set downe afore in the tumors Cancrous.

CHAP. IX.

¶ Of the vlcer fistulous.

**F**istula is an vlcer deepe, straight, round, cauernous with  
great hardnes and callositie, from whence proceedeth an  
humor virulent. *Paulus Aegineta*, saith it is a sinnosity cal-  
lous not doulourous in diuers parts of the bodie chiefly af-  
ter apostumes not well cured and hemorroides which  
haue run long, as also apostumes hemoroidall. Of it there  
are diuers sorts. The causes are, as in vlcers cauernous,  
but the humor which proceedeth from it, is worse coming  
of an euill phlegmatick melancholick and adust, humor cau-  
sing a bitterness and venenositie. The signes are knowne  
be the sound, and by the humor that commeth out which is  
virulent, stinking, not doulourous, except it be neare the  
nerue. Galen calleth it a sitting because it is caue within,  
*Paulus* compareth it to the reede, that haue caulties as also  
*Aerius*. The Iudgements some heale easily, some are long  
in healing, and some are vncureable. Fistules with many  
cauernes are difficile as saith *Celsus*, those that are nere to

Definition.  
*Gal. li. tumor.*  
*contra. natu.*  
*ram.*

*Paul. lib. 4. cap.*  
*49.*  
*Cel. lib. 7. ca. 4.*

Cause.

*Guliel. de. falsi.*  
*ecto.*

Signes.  
*Aet. us lib. 6.*  
*Gal. lib. contra*  
*naturam.*

Iudgements.

*Celsus. ibid.*



Paulus. lib. 6.  
cap. 78.

Arnold. de vil-  
la noua.

Difference.

Celsus. lib. 5.

cap. 28.

Cure.

Pau. lib. 6. cap.  
77. & hip. lib.  
de. locis in ho-  
mine.

any noble parte as in the thorax, also in the bladder, matric, and intestines are all perillous and mortall, those in the ribs backe, ioynts are suspect, and of difficill curation. Fistules in the Fundament, which haue the orifice interioz, are hard to heale; all Fistules in bodies euill disposed, are of long curation. There are diuers sorts of fistules, for some are superficiall, others do penetrate, some oberthwart, some right, soe simple, others composed with one or moe sinuosities, some end in the flesh, some in the bones, and some in the cartilages. As for the cure, we must first consider by the Iudgement and sound, the deepenes and cauernosities, if it be cal- lous, and endeth eyther in tendons, cartilages or bones, or penetrateth within, all which things considered, we ordain the way of life, and purge the body according to the nature of the humors, thereafter corroborate the parts interne with this potion, which hath oft bene experimented by old au- thors. *Rec. hordei mundi scrofuralie an. partem vnā agrimo- nie, centaurie, plantaginis minoris an. partes duas, aristolochie partem di. foliorum olue, filopendula an. partes duas, scindan- tur omnia minutim pisentur bulliant in vino albo cum parum succari.* Of this decoction ye shall take a draught euery morn- ing 4 houres afore meate. The particular remedies consist in 4. things, first to dilate the orifice, if it be streight, which shall be done by tents of gentian, bryony, spong prepared, ciclamin, if the fistule doth penetrate deepe, tie a thread to the tent; the orifice being dilated, we come to the second point to take away the callositie, which is done either by incision, cau- terization, or by remedies causticks and corrosiues, or to cut it with sheres or rasor, or with such remedies, as ye haue heard in vlcers cauernous. If it be profound and in such pla- ces wher it may be knit, we put a needle with a strōg thread through it, and knit the thread euery day more and more till it be consumed as ye heard in the fistula of the fundamēt. If it end in the bone & it be filled, it must be discovered, and handled as ye haue heard in the proper Chapter. If it end in the tendons, or membranes, it is dolourous and the mat- ter



ter sanious and clammye ; if one the vaine or arter, ye shal perceiue blood. All these things considered, if the callositie cannot be taken away by manuell operation, apply medicaments caustick, as counsel our annicients, like as *trochisces de aphrodellis* or powder of mercury, *auripigmentum* or white sope, or a tent couered with arsnick, or with strong water, or steepe any of them with vinegar and distill in the wound, that is good: where there are many cavitie, so that liquo goeth through all, let it remayne two dayes, putting about it refrigeratiues and repercussives, some cauterize the with cauter actuall. Thereafter apply on it to appease the dolour, & to cause the scale to fall, oyle of roses, with whites of eggs, as ye shall finde in the poore mans guide, till the great heat be past, and the scale fallen, and that the fistule voideth matter commendable, which is a signe, that the caule is abolished. The 3. point consisteth in medicaments mundificatiues and incarnatiues, as ye haue heard in vicer cauernous The 4. point consisteth in sacotices, or cicatrisants, as ye haue heard before. If the fistule be incurable, penetrating to a part principall, or such other as ye haue heard, as also if in curing of it, there come a more dangerous accident, as in the fundament happeneth voluntary eiection of the matter fecall or conuulsion, in such wee should not seeke the perfect cure, but vse palliatiues and purgations, of the humors pituitous, and melancholick, mundificatiues to mundifie the euill flesh and matter in the wound, thereafter desiccatiues, as *diachilon ireatum*, *desiccatorium rubeum*, *diapalma*, and such like, which is the generall cure of fistules. As concerning the cure of fistules as in the fundament, which is done by manual operations, you haue heard in the 46. Chapter of particular Tumors.

Causticks to  
consume the  
calositie.



## CHAP. X.

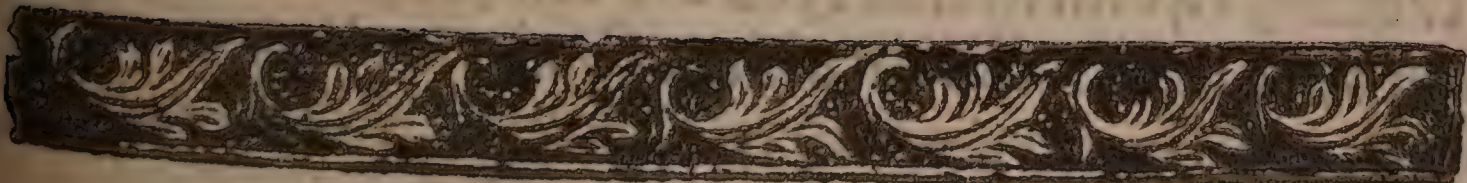
¶ Of Burning by fier, hote oyle, water,  
and other liquorsCure of bur-  
ning by fier.Topicall reme-  
dies.Superficial.  
burning.Medicaments  
for burning.

**B**ecause oftentimes by Burning, and violent heates, happen diuers times great inflammations, blcers dolorous with many euill symptoms, and oftentimes of difficile curation, for the which I will shew the way to Cure, such blcers in diuers parts of our bodye. Such as are superficiall are subiect to inflammation, such as as be profound to excoriation and exulceration: the meaner sort haue onely little blisters on the skinne: in all which is colour, rednes, oꝝ dure and such like, all eident and apparant to the sight: the Cure is, if the combustion be great in ordering the way of life tending to tenuitie, next in vsage of vniuersall remedies according to the humoꝝ which rayne, the topicall remedies are diuers according to the diuersitie of the accidēts. Aristotle counselleth in burnings done by great heate, to holde the burnt place to the fier by the which meanes the one heate draweth out the other, for this purpose whites of eggs, oyle of Roses, rose water is good to be vsed: those pustules which are superficiall, accompanied with inflammation and colour, must be cured with things that refresh, as whites of egges, water, vinegar, Houflick, Lettice, Sorrell, Plantaine, Henbane, *solanum*, Roses, oꝝ the waters of those things, and applyed to the place with a cloth wette therein, in like manner Allom, ceruse dissolued in Campher water is good: these things haue the vertue to pacifie the paine and inflammation and heale small burnings: ye may also for this purpose take the blades of Leekes, oꝝ Onions peeled well beaten with salt, oꝝ Lettice, with salt and apply to the burnt part, which hath a maruelous vertue in healing: the rootes of Lillics, fryed in oyle of Roses, oꝝ the leaues scodden are also good: for this purpose some doe vse to apply the inner part of a rotten apple in forme of a cataplasme which is also good, if



if the blisters be very great open them, if there be vlceration  
 vse remedies, lenitiues and desiccatiues made of 3 ounces of *For vlceratio.*  
 nuttes, waxe one ounce and a halfe, mix them together and  
 walsh them in Plantine water, and lay on it also sodden  
 Leakes in wine, or the iuce of them with *unguent rosat*, is  
 good: if the soze neede mundifying take turpentine well wash *Mundificatiue*  
 ed in decoction of barley, a little sirrope of Roses, with Aloes, *for burning.*  
 and barlye meale, the soze being mundified cicatrize it with  
*unguent papuleon*, *diapompholigos album*, *rasis de minio* or *di-*  
*acalcitheos*, mixed in red wine or dissolued, wet a cloth ther-  
 in and lay vpon the soze. The foresaide remedies must be  
 softly applyed and seldome handled, oft handling doth irre-  
 rate and cause fluxion for the wich I haue set downe a re-  
 medie in the Chapter of burning by Gunpowder which doth  
 cure all kinds of burning in short time with one plaster on-  
 lie. This remedie following is verye easie to be had, and  
 doth heale without any marke, which is thus, take the bark  
 of the Elmetree keepe it one night in water and take it out  
 the next morning, then you shall perceiue a glutinous mat-  
 ter on the inner side of it, which you shal take of, and  
 annoint the soze therewith, with a gosse quill,  
 this healeth perfectly in short  
 space, and so I end this  
 Booke of Ulcers.

The





# THE EIGHT BOOKE.

*Of Bones, and certaine diseases in-  
cident to them;*

*Which containeth V. Chapters ; whose Contents  
bee these ; by PETER LOVVE  
Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of the number of bones in mans body.  
2. Of Fractures in generall.  
3. Of the curation of fractures.  
4. Of dislocation in generall.  
5. Of the embalming of dead corps.

## CHAP. I.

**C** Of the number of bones in mans body.

*Interloqvutors. Peter, and Iohn.*

*Pet.* **H**AVING heretofore breifly set downe such sort  
of maladies which happen commonly in the  
soft parts; so now wee will follow out to intreat of those  
which happen in the hard & solide parts, as the bones : but  
for the better instruction of thee & al young Chirurgiōs, be-  
fore I enter in fractures, it shal be expedient to speake some-  
what briefly of the number of the bones in mans bodie :  
Then, what are the number of them reckoned by the most  
part of Anatomists?

*Ioh.* In that there is diuersitie of opinions ; some of them  
reckoning 246. in number, as are comprehēded vnder these  
verses, by the learned mediciner Gualterus Riff.

*Addes quater denis bis centum sena q̃ habebis,  
Quem scis multiplici conditus esse semel:*

*Portraiture*



pointed ordained to breake our meate, and are called *canini*, they be neare the nerves that passe by the eyes, and in pulling out of them do often times endaunger the eye, for the which they are called by the bulgar people the eye teeth, they doe give young ones in there breeding, then folloeth two which are most great and broad, ordained to bruise & grind that meat which wee haue taken, for the which they are called molares and doth compleat the 66 bones of the head.

Eie teeth doe  
griue young  
children.

*Pet.* Seeing you haue verie particularly descriced the bones of the head, I would in like manner that you should describe vnto me the number of the bones in the thorax?

*Ioh.* The part which by the Anatomist is called thorax 66 bones in  
or costlet contained from the first verteber of the neck vnto the thorax.  
as *axis*, and is composed of 66. bones, and are thus diuved  
in the 7 vertibres of the neck, 12 in the back, 5 in the lungs,  
6. in the *os Sacrum*, 4 in the *os Coxis*, which maketh 34. with  
24. ribbes, deuied in 14 trewe ribbes, called *coste verae*,  
which are tied to the sternon or breast bone, and ten called  
*Nothi*, which are lowest and tyed to no part. The sterne or  
breast bone, which is composed of three and by some curious  
Anatomists, of seauen bones in young ones, it is cartilagi-  
nous moze soft and spongiuous noz the rest, in such sort that  
if any vlcer do happen in it, it endureth a whole age as saith  
Hippocrates, and 1. in the heart which is cartilaginous, 2.  
*claviculs*, and 2. of the shoulder or spalds, called *omoplate*.

*Pet.* Seeing you haue described those bones, wherein the three noble parts are contained, in like manner I would craue of you the number of the bones of the extremities, which vphold and defend the rest, of the bodye, and first to describe in. how many bones the armes and hands are composed of?

*Ioh.* They are composed of 60. bones, besides the *sesmoi-  
de*, which are thirty in each arme and thus diuved, first  
the great bone in the arme called *brachium*, 2. vnder the arme  
the one called *cubitus*, and the other *radius*, the hands which  
is Instrument of Instruments as sayth Aristotle, apt to  
take



3 in each fin-  
ger.

take, receaue, and hold, is composed of 27. bones in each hand, viz. the Carpe called *Brachiale* his 8 hard bones, & are ioyned to the arme: the *Metacarpe* called *postbrachiale*, of 4 bones, and are ioyned to the fingers, with five fingers, whereof each one hath three bones, which maketh in number 50.

*Pet.* In how many bones is that part which vpholdeth the body composed of?

66 bones in  
the legges.

52 bones in  
the feete.

*Ioh.* The legges which are Instruments motiues, are composed of 66 bones, which maketh 22 in each one, and are thus diuided, the heinch bone which is composed of three, the one called *Ilium*, the other *Isthion*, and the third *Pubis*. & the great bone in the thigh called *Femur*, with that of the knee called *rotula*; 2 in the leg, the bigge one called *Tibia*, or great focill, the lesser called *Vlna* or little focill, with the feete which are composed of 52 bones, besides the *sesmoide*. which is 26 in each foot, thus diuidded; the vpper part of the foot called the tars is conioyned to the legge, it is hard and solide but without spongiuous, and is composed of seauen bones, of the which three are nameles, but are called by some Anatomists *Calcoides*: the other foure haue names, whereof the one is called *Calcaneum*: the second *astragal*: the third *nauicula*: and the fourth *Siboide*: the metatars is composed of 5 bones, which be hard without, and cane within, full of marrow with 14. in y toes: to wit, three in each one of foure, and two in the little toe. There is found in the ioynts of fingers and toes, certaine little hard bones, called *Sesmoide*, yet not reckoned by many of the Anatomists by reason of the vncertainie of their number, which is sometime ten, twelue, fiftene, eightene, the most part which I did obserue ever either in reading of any number of Anatomists, that haue written, as also in diuers sections, which I haue seen, was 15. their vse is to fortifie the ioynts of the fingers and toes, and to preserve them from going out of their owne place.



## ¶ Of Fractures in generall.

*Pos.* **L**Ike as in euery generall Chapter of the former Booke, I haue demaunded of you somewhat generally of that matter whereof I was to entreat of; the which methode I am now mindfull to prosecute, and because that all bones which are offended are either vitiated, remooued, out of their owne place, bruised, or broken; for the which I will first demaund of you what is a Fracture?

*Ioh.* It is a generall diuision, detision, or solution of continuity of the bone, called in Græke *Catagma*, of the which there be seauen differences, and according to their effects haue diuers denominations, as for example: when the bones are broken in the middest ouerthwart, it is called by the Grækes *Agma*, and by the Latines *Ruptura transversalis*, or *virgalis*. The second kind is done according to the length of the bone, yet not separating altogether one part from another, but onely rent: such kind of fracture is called by the Grækes *Chidasedum*, and by the Latines *Fractura linealis*. The third kind hath the name according to the forme, or by the similitude of certaine fruits, peeces of woode, stalkes of Colwozte broken: such kind of fracture is called by the Grækes *Caule dum*, which is when the bone is not soundly broken, but lifteth in diuers peeces, called by the Latines *Astales*. The fourth kind is called by the Grækes *Raphanidum*, which is when the bone is smoothly broken like a raphard, and is called by the Latines *Fractura raphanalis* or *Arundinalis*. The fift kind is when the bone is broken in diuers peeces, bruised, and crashed like a pet, called by the Latines *Quassatio*, and by the Grækes *Apagma*: such kind of fracture happeneth often in Wounds done by Gunshot. Like as the sixt kind called by the Latines *Rimularis*, and by the Grækes *Alphitidon* or *Carpedone*, which is, when the bone is subtilly broken, and of all kind of fractures those

Com: in aph: 23, lib: 1, de articulis, & com. 1. lib. 1. de fracturis. Paulus lib: 6, cap: 89. Com: in aph: 9, lib: 2, de fra. & cap: 6. de const. artis, & cap. 10. de morb. causis.



be most dangerous and often deadly, chiefly in the ioynts and neere thereunto. The sequenth kind is, when a little part of the bone is superficially separated like unto a little spelch or sclat, called by the Greekes *Apotrasis* or *Asopape*, the Arabians doe call it *Alcasin*, and the Latines *Refractio* or *Precisio*. There be diuers other differences of fractures mentioned by the Greekes, yet little spoken of by Hippocrates or Galen; and by reason I find them of small importance, I will for this present omit them, although some of the learned hath made some mention.

Paulus lib. 6. *Pet.* Is there no other difference mentioned by our  
cap. 89. Ancients?

Gal. lib. 6. *Ioh.* I find that Galen hath somewhat spoken of two  
meth. cap. 5. differences of fractures, the one made ouerthwart, the other  
Cels. lib. 8. ca. along the bone like a peece of clouen wood. And Celsus spea-  
7, 8, 9, 10. keth of a third kind which is oblique; in the which fracture  
the poynts of the bone enter into the flesh, and doth procure  
great dolour.

*Pet.* Are all Fractures simples, or composed?

*Ioh:* Some are simple, other composed with wounds, inflammation, gangren, vlcers, dolours, and such like.

*Pet:* Differ they not after no other manner?

Pau. ibide. *Ioh:* They doe differ according to the part where the fracture is, as in the head, nose, backe, legges, armes, fingers, and such like.

*Pet:* Which be the causes of Fractures?

Haly Abbas *Ioh:* Haly Abbas and Galen doe say, that all outward  
serm. 8. things that haue force to bzuise, bzeake, cut, or cleaue, are  
Gal. lib. 2. de sufficient to cause fracture.  
fract: & com.

9. apho: *Pet:* Which be the signes of Fractures?

Celsus lib. 8. *Ioh:* Avicen, Rasis, and Celsus do say, that by the sight  
cap. 10. and feeling of the part with the hand, thou shalt easilie per-  
Avic: tract: 2: ceau inequality: as also feele a noyse or bzuise in the hand,  
cap: 1. ling of it with dolour on the part.

Galen 6, *Pet:* Which are the iudgements of Fractures?  
meth: & com:

in apho: 6, lib: *Ioh:* All fractures in hard and dry bones as in old people,  
2, cap: 3. are



are moze difficile and are longer in healing, then such as are soft and humide, as in yong people. Auicen saith, that fractures in chollerique and old people are very difficile, and in very old people be very impossible: all fractures in the ribs ioyned with inflammation and spitting of bloud, are most dangerous.

Com: in aph: 42, lib: 1, de fracturis.

Paulus lib. 6.

cap. 110.

Hip: lib: de fracturis.

Gal. lib. 6:

meth: ca. 5. &

apho. 48, li. 2,

de fracturis.

Roland: lib: 3.

*Pet:* Which be the fractures that are easiest to be cured, and which are most difficile and dangerous?

*Ioh:* All fractures in the ribs which are simple, also such as be in the middelt of the armes, legges, and fingers, and made ouerthwart, are not dangerous; but to the contrary, all fractures neere the ioynnts & in the heads of the bones are difficile, and the motion afterwards not good, and those which presse inward are worse than those which goe out. All fractures in the head how little so euer they be, are dangerous: all fractures where they are many broken peeces, are dangerous: those with wound are difficile, because the bandage cannot be done without dislour of the wound. Cel. sus saith, that fractures in the thigh are euill, because the member remaineth often shorter: all those that are eminent and haue much marrow, are dangerous.

Cel: lib: 8.

cap. 10.

Cel. li. 8, c. 10

Hip de fractur:

cap: Hip: ibid.

*Pet:* Are all fractures healed in a certaine space?

*Ioh:* Some are longer in healing, some shorter, according to the greatnes, hardnes, and drynesse, fractures in the head are healed in 35. dayes, in the thigh in 45. dayes, in the legs and armes in 40. dayes, the nose in 16. dayes, the ribbes in 20. dayes, in the talues, the shoulde, clauicles, hands, feet, are healed in 20. dayes, in the hanch and point of the shoulde in 40. dayes, and likewise in other places, according to the nature of the bone, the age, the ayre and time of the yeare, and constitution of the body, the dyet medicaments and gouernment of the sicke, which things duly done doe shorten the time of the cure. The defect of the aliment viscus is helped by fomenting with hote water, the oft handling and shifting it doth prolong the time, as also straight ligatours, so indeed there is no time limited, but

Hip: ap: 6. & 8

& li. 2. de frac.

Athor: 65:

Cel: li. 8, ca: 7.

Avic: tract: 2:

cap: 9.

Paulus lib: 6,

cap: 89.



Com.aph. 4. 2. Some are longer, some shorter time in healing, as we see by  
& li. 1. de frac. daily experience.

*CHAP. III.*

**¶** Of curation of Fractures in generall.

Albuc. lib. 3. **I**n the precedent Chapter ye haue heard what fracture is,  
with the causes, signes, and Judgements; now remaineth the cure, for the which ye must consider, first if there be  
inflammation, to deferre the reduction till it be past, for to e-  
uoyd great accidents, then wee must haue a quantity of  
whites of Egges, and oyle of Roses, beaten together with  
Gal. 6, meth: Compresses, bands, ferules, machins, lacs, oricrate, and  
cap: 5. men to helpe you, with other things necessary for the pur-  
Theod. lib. 2. pose: hauing all these in readinesse, there remaineth yet fīue  
Soranus. points, the first is in extension of the member, which is done  
by laying it on a bench or other place proper, the sicke being  
Bru: li. 1. c. 18. well scituated, there must be two persons to hold the member  
fractured, the one at y<sup>e</sup> nether part, the other at y<sup>e</sup> upper part,  
of the which one draweth vp, another down to make the ex-  
tension; if the hands be not sufficient to doe this, wee take  
Gal. cap: 12. cords, or strong cloth and bind fast the member one to the  
constit artis. upper part, another to the nether, which shall be drawne by  
two men contrary, as ye haue heard. For the same purpose  
you may vse glossocomes, if great force be needfull, beware  
Hip. lib: 1. de of extention, chiefly in dry bodies, for feare of dolour, feuer,  
fractu: com, and conuulsion. The second intention, after the extention  
apho: 12. & lib: 1. de artic: is made, thou shalt take the member softly with thy hands,  
& 6, met: c. 52 and reduce the bones in scituation naturall, then loose the  
Cel. li. 8, c. 10 machins that the muscles may goe to their owne naturall.  
Hip: aph: 21. & The third intention is to bind it well, and to hold it in the  
li: 1. de fract. same estate vnmouing, which is done by medicaments and  
Aph: 6, & li. bandage, we apply for the first time an emplaster astringent  
2. de officina. or defensiuē made of Wol, drie flower, whites of Egges, and  
medic & li. 1. oyle of Roses, it shall be best to rub the member with  
de fracturis. cerat

*Galen*



Galen, oyle of Roses, Myrtill, or Masticke, before the application of the astringent, the cloth must be wet in oricrate and the bands also. Thereafter bind the member, of the which our ancients vsed only two kinds, to wit, the vnder band which Hippocrates calleth *Hypodesmedy*, and the vpper band which he calleth *Hypodemos*. The nether band is divided into 2. or 3. the first is short beginning right on the fracture wearing vpperward towards the knee; if the fracture be in the legge, the volutions must bee close together, this kind of bandage letteth the fluxion on the member hurt. The second band which must be longer, shall beginne in the same fashion, making two or thre circumvolutions on the fracture, conducing downward, this bandage maketh expression of the bloud which was fallen on the fracture, let the volutions bee further asunder, being lowe yee shall weare vp againe, and end at the other ioynt. The third band shall beginne at the nether ioynt and passe vpperward on the fracture to the other ioynt, and there end with the rest: the band must be of cleane cloth thin, soft, without seame or hem, of length according to the member, and the breadth of 3. or 4. fingers, reasonable strong, that they bee neither too straight nor too slacke bound, the straight maketh dolour and inflammation and letteth the vitall spirit, likewise the too loose binding, holdeth the bones together, so there must be mediocritie in that matter. The band being gouerned in such fashion, you must consider that the legs, thighs, and armes are smaller in the nether parts than the higher, therefore wee must put double clothes to the proportion of the member, to make the small parts equall with the rest, and also that our splents that are made of Cards, Wood, or white Iron, be holden faster by the vpper band. There must be thre splents made hollow, the first which is biggest shall embrace all the vnder part of the fracture as fundament, the other two shall be put on both sides a little space one from another; these thre splents being placed on the vnder band doe hold them fast, and also keepeth the bone

Aph. 12. & 27  
lib. 3. de offici-  
cina medici.

Com. aph. 13  
& li. 1. de frac.  
Cel. lib. 8.  
cap. 10.

Gal. 5. de offi.  
medic. & Cel.  
lib. citato.

Hip: apli: 19,  
& 26. lib. 2. de  
offici. medi. &  
com. aph. 21.  
& li. 1. fractu.  
& com. 36. 1.  
de fracturis.

Aph. 41. li. 1.  
de fracturis.

Hip: lib: 1. de  
fracturis,



Aph. 1. & 2. &  
lib. 3. de offi-  
cina medici.

Cels. lib. 8. ca.  
10. & Hip. li.  
1. de fracturis.

Lib. 6. meth.  
cap. 5.

Aph. 39. & li.  
1. de fractu. &  
apho. 4. ibidē.

Hip. apho. 45.  
& 46. & lib. 1.  
de fracturis.

Paulus lib. 9.  
cap. 89.

steady from moving, they must not be put to asoze the seauenth day, also they must be narrow at the lower end according to the member, broad and strong on the place fractured, with a little Cotton or Wooll. Our ordinary practise is to vse them the first day, if there be no inflammation, and being done, we apply the two vpper bands on them, called *Epidescmons*, the first shall beginne in the inner side of the nether ioynt, and turne vppward to the vpper part of the member. The second shall beginne in the vppermost part, in the outside, turning inwards, so the one shall goe contrary to the other in forme of S. Andrews Crosse, as sayth Celsus. The member bound in this fashion and scituated according to the scituation of the vaines, artiers, nerues, and muscles, as saith Galen; the next we must take a napkin and sowe a little straw in euery end of it, sowe it together and lay the member in the middle of it: some for this purpose do vse a little box of six pence the length of the member, bind it with little cords or ribban, scituate it right, soft, and high, so continue it thre dayes, if no accidents happen, renew it againe in thre dayes, but if the fracture be simple, we remoue it not befoze the seauenth day, or longer. The seauenth day past, renew it euery 7. day, or 12. or 20. day if other accidents doe not happen as sayth Hippocrates, vse defensives in the superiour parts, at least in the beginning, also soment it with warme water for that reuoketh the bloud, comfoteth the part, and humecteth it with a pleasant humiditie. The fourth precept is in generation of callosity, first they shall eat meat of good suck, to ingender good bloud, yet somewhat straight, till the 10. day be past abstaine from strong drinke, for in that time the inflammation and feuer do passe, eate Meale, Button, and Kidde, vse medicaments emplastricks that heate moderately, also an emplaster or cataplasme of whites of Egges, fine flower, and Roses, till the 20. or 25. day be past; in all the time of the cure after the 10. day be past, the nourishment must be enlarged, because the generation of flesh cannot be done but by things of good



good nourishment, but the Caule which is named by the Latines *Callus*, and by the Greekes *Porosfarcoides*, by the Arabians *Arosbon*, may bee made by it selfe without any helpe, chiefly in humide and viscos persons, as in young people and childzen; but those of elder age which are of a more hard and dry constitution, the union or Caule of the bone cannot bee made but by the helpe of some glutinous substance, which doth gripe the broken bone in such sort, that being dried, hardly can it be separated in those, this Caule is ingendered of the part most viscos and grosse of the nourishment of the bone: like as euery part doth draw the owne proper nourishment, euen so the bone doth draw the part most viscos of the aliment, for the which the nourishment ought to be such as hath the vertue to engender y<sup>e</sup> caule chiefly in old people; thou maist know whe<sup>r</sup> y<sup>e</sup> caule is making, if in tying the first band it seeme bloody & not wounded, it sheweth the caule to be making, the to fortifie y<sup>e</sup> same we vse euery thre dayes to wash the member with decoction of Roses, and molle of the Dake tree, putting thereto a little *Oxycrosum* or *de althea*, if in this time it itch, as often happeneth, foment it with water and salt, and vse fomentation of hote water, and emplaisters of pitch to reuoke and draw the aliment to breed the Caule. If the Caule bee too great, we bind a cake of Lead on it or some medicament that digesteth, as counselleth Galen; all emplasticke substance Lib. 6. meth. healeth moderately. The fift precept in correction of cap. 5. the accidents, for sometime there is wound with the fracture, and then it must be banded more slacke, vsing more bands and no splents, also more straight dyet. If either Phlegmon, Contusion, or Gangren, cure them as yee haue heard Celsus lib. 8. in their proper Chapters. If they be not proportionably, it cap. 10. must be amended by breaking of it, which must be done afore it be hard, otherwise it breaketh in some other part: to do the same, it must be fomented the space of 15. days with Hennes, Goose, or Cockes grease, fomentations and cataplasmes that haue force to soften the Caule, as this; take



Avicen.  
Guydo.  
Brunns, Albu.

unguent *de althea* and *agrippa*, of each *unc. se. olei Camome-  
lini*, Lillies, and Laurell, *axungia gallinae anseris*, and fresh  
butter, of euery one onc. i. with a little *Waxe*, so being sof-  
tened it separateth easily, sometime it requireth a little force  
to doe it. Avicen and Guydo write in diuers manners to  
doe this, which I counsell no man to try, for better it is to  
suffer a little deformity of a part, then losse of the whole bo-  
dy, to wit, death, which often happeneth. As for the cua-  
ration of Fractures in the head, looke *Hippoc. de vulneribus  
capitis*, & *Galen 6. meth. cap. 6.* & *Celsus lib. 8. cap. 3. & 4.*  
& *Paulus libro sexto, cap. 90.*

#### CHAP. IIII.

### Of Dislocations in generall.

*Pet.* Like as we haue done in Fractures, so wee will fol-  
low out in Dislocations: but for the better vnder-  
standing thereof, I would know of you after how many fa-  
shions the bones are ioyned together, before wee come to  
the definition of the disease?

*Ioh.* All bones are ioyned generally two waies, to wit,  
by *Artichron*, that is, by Articulation, and by *Symphisin*, that  
is, by naturall Union.

*Pet.* How many sorts are there of Articulation?

*Ioh.* There are two, to wit, *Diarthrosis*, that is, coniu-  
ction with mouement manifest to the sight, as the legges,  
armes, feete, and hands: *Synarthrosis*, is mouing more  
obscure to be perceaued, as the teeth, the sutors of the head.

*Pet.* How many sorts are there of manifest moouings?

*Ioh.* Three, to wit, *Enarthrosin*, that is, when there is a  
great cauitie, that receiueth a long roundnesse, as the thigh  
with the haunch: The second is *Arthrodia*, that is, when  
a superficiall cavity receiueth a little superficiall head of a  
bone, as the arme and shoulder with the onieplat: The  
third is *Ginglimus*, that is, when the bones receaue one an-  
other,



other, as in the connexion of the knee, and the cubitus with the arme.

*Pet.* How many sorts are there of obscure moouings?

*Ioh.* Galen sayth that there are three, to wit, *Suture*, as *Lib. de ossib.* the sutures of the head: the second is called *Gomphosis*, that is, when the boane is infixed in like a nayle, as the teeth in the iawne bone: the 3. is called *Harmonia*, as the nose with the head, the bones of the face which are ioyned together like a lyue.

*Pet.* You haue spoke sufficiently of Articulation, now tell me of naturall Vnion, and how many wayes it is done?

*Ioh.* Two wayes, either without mediation, but by succession of time groweth together, as the nether iaw-bone, which manifestly is distinguished in childezen; or else by mediation, and is done three wayes, to wit, the Cartilage, as the bone *pubis*: secondly, by the nerue or tendon, as the *Sternon*, and as *Ilium* are ioyned together: thirdly, by flesh, as the teeth are fastened.

*Pet.* What is Dislocation?

*Ioh.* It is an out-going of the bone out of the naturall seat, which letteth the moouing.

*Paulus lib: 6,  
cap: 3.  
Bru, li. i. c. 20*

*Pet.* How many differences are there of Dislocation?

*Ioh.* Three, of the which the first is called Complete, when the bone is altogether out of the place: the second is Incomplete, when the bone is not altogether, but a little out: the third is Distortion, Elongation or Peruersion of the ligament.

*Pet.* How many wayes is Dislocation complete done?

*Ioh.* foure wayes, before, behind, or outward, and inward, some vp, some downe, but not oft scene.

*Cel: li: 8. ca: 5  
& cap. 11.  
Gal. cō. apho.  
51. li. 3. de fra.  
& aph: 1. li: 4.  
de articulis,*

*Pet.* How many differences hath Incomplete?

It hath three, the first, that the ligament in the ioynt and about it is relaxed, as chanceth in the haunch: the second, when the ligament is forced by great violence, as the legge or foote in making a wrong or crooked stepp: the third is, when by little and little the ligament relaxeth and bringeth the



the bone after it, as chanceth in the backe.

*Pet.* How many differences hath the third, which is called Distortion?

*Ioh.* No difference, but onely the bone is made longer from the other.

*Pet.* Which are the causes of luxation?

*Cause.*

*Ioh.* Two; to wit, Externe and Interne.

*Pet.* Which are the Externe?

*Gal. de causis*

*morb. ca. 2.*

*& artis par. ca. 58 com. aph. 26. & lib. 1. de articulis.*

*Cel. lib. 8. ca. 11. com. aph. 1. lib. 11. de officin. medic. & com. 55. li. 3. de fracturis.*

*Ioh.* Falls or strokes, and too violent extending of the

member violently against the figure naturall.

*Pet.* Which are the Interne?

*Ioh.* Great aboundance of humors pituitous, gathered in

the ioynture, which humecteth the ligaments, and maketh

them soft and humide, so the bone goeth out, or by the ex-

tenuation of the muscles about the ioynture.

*Pet.* How know you Dislocation?

*Ioh.* By the extraordinary tumor of the place, by the

emptinesse of the place where the bone was, by the priva-

tion of the moving, accompanied with dolor.

*Pet.* By what iudgement or signe know you those that

are easie, and those that are difficile, and those which are in-

curable and mortall?

*Judgement.*

*Ioh.* I iudge by the kind and diuersity of the Dislocation

and body, as for example, the knee is easie to goe forth and

to goe in, also the finger, in like manner members leane,

and where the nerues & ligaments haue store of humidity

and moysture, the arme difficile to goe forth, and hard to

put in againe : and in grosse, fatte, and tender people, those

with fracture and apostume are euill to heale ; those are

very difficile that haue the sides broken ; those which haue

beene long out, are almost impossible to be reduced ; the two

uppermost vertebres of the necke being out, letteth the re-

spiration, and so the party dyeth within the space of 3. days.

*Cure.*

*Pet.* What methode vse you for the cure hereof?

*Ioh.* The methode generall for all Dislocations hath 4.

Intentions : the first is, to put the bone in his owne proper

place,



place, the extention of the member first made, with hands  
or Machins : the second intention is, to continue it in the  
place by good medicaments and bandages, as in Fractures:  
the third is, to put the member in right scituation : the  
fourth, to giue order to the accidents, as by good dyet, pur-  
ging, and bleeding if need be, and reduce the Dislocation be-  
fore the inflammation be come, otherwise stay till it be past:  
when it is nere whole, or the accidents past, we shall vse  
things to corroboreate and comfort the part with certaine  
simples sodde in wine, next, the emplaster *Oxicrosium*, or  
*ad Fracturas*.

Celsus lib: 8.

cap: 11.

Hipp:apho:4.

lib:4.de artic.

*Pet.* If the Dislocation chance with Fracture, what is to  
be done?

Alb:li:3.ca:1.

Pau:lib:6.ca:

12,13,4,15.

*Ioh.* First, reduce the Dislocation, next, the Fracture if  
it be possible, some reduce, the Fracture, next the Dislocati-  
on, it being reduced and the Dislocation simple, foment  
with oyle of Roses, whites of Egges, and cloth wet in ori-  
crate, with splints, putting it in good figure, with as little  
paine as may be. It must not be stirred till the 7. day, ex-  
cept inflammation or some euill accident doe fall, at which  
time foment it with hote water, thereafter the astringent  
as in Fractures, keepe good dyet, eat little for 4. or 6. days,  
till the inflammation be past. If the luxation be ioyned with  
a wound, first haue care of the wound with lenitiue medi-  
cines, next, giue order to the Dislocation : but if the dislo-  
cation and fracture do both possesse one part and at one time,  
first the dislocation must be reduced, next the fracture, as is  
more at large set downe by Guydo and Tangat. If the dislo-  
cation happen by causes externe, as by aboundance of hu-  
mors which loseth the ligaments, we must vse astringent  
and drying medicines. If it be accompanied with dolour  
and inflammation, it must be cured as I haue sayd before. If  
there be feuer, vse good dyet, purgations, and bleeding, in  
the end of the cure we corroboreate the part with decoction of  
Roses, and Wormewood in wine, thereafter the emplaster  
*Oxicrosium*, or *ad fracturas ossium*, till the end of the cure.

Guy: 2. doct:

cap: 1.

Hip: aph: 65,

lib: 4, de arti:

Hip:lib:citato

Cel:li:8.com:

in aph: 23.li:1

de artic: ca:6.

& lib:3.meth:

Paulus lib: 6,

cap: 22.

Guydo.

Tangatius.

Cel: lib: 8.



## ¶ Of embalming the dead corps.

How to pre-  
serue the dead  
corpes.

Scythians.

Jo. 19. 39.

Christ embal-  
med.

Gen. 50. 2.  
Iacob embal-  
med.

Herodotus.

Gen. 51.  
Ioseph em-  
balmed.

**H**aving in all this worke endeauoured my selfe by all possible means, to cure and preserue the health of man euen from his birth: so now it behoueth to shew the forme and methode how to preserue the diseased or dead body euen to the graue, in such sort that the yong Chirurgian may bee the better experienced in all things which concerne the humane body, aswell dead, as liuing: and that according to that ancient vse and custome which euer hath bene vsed by the godly in all ages, as euidently appeareth by the Scriptures, as also by prophane Histories, which make mention that there was neuer a Nation so barbarous, not the very Scythians but haue euer had such care of the buriall and embalming of their Parents and friends, which was meruailous. The which forme hath euer continued to this day, as well by Christians as Infidels, whereof diuers examples may be alleadged as well in the new as in the old Testament. I read in the 19. of Iohn how Nicodemus brought Myrre and Aloes mixed together, about the waight of 100. pound, and annointed the body of our blessed Saviour Iesus Christ, then wrapped him in Linnen cloaths, thereafter buried him as was the order of the Iewes, to bury their dead. Also I read in the 50. chap of the 1. Booke of Moyse called Genesis, how Ioseph commanded his seruants who were Chyrurgians to embalm his Father for the space of forty daies, till hee was carryed from the land of Egypt to the land of Canaan, where hee was buried in a double caue which Abraham had bought for a buriall place. Herodotus reporteth, that the custome of the Iewes was most commonly to embalm them for keeping 40. or 60. dayes. Also in the last Chap. of Genesis, that Ioseph himselfe was embalmed, put in a chest and carried to Egypt. As touching other Histories, diuers Authours might be here alleadged,



leadged, but for the present we shall content vs with a few.

Cyrus King of Persia, commanded that his body should bee well bowelled, but that no Sepulchre be made for him but the earth which produceth grasse and flowers; neuerthelesse

Cyrus king of Persia embalmed.

Diodorus maketh mentiō of the costly erection of the tombs builded by Semiramis Quēene of most excellent memozie, who builded Babilon, subdued Ethiopia, and made warre in India, wherein was engraued these words,

Diodorus.

What King shall euer haue need  
of money, wealth, or treasure,  
Let him plucke by this Tombe with speed,  
and take thereof at pleasure.

Darius King of Persia reading those wordes, caused the said Sepulchre to be opened, wherein hee found these other verses engrauen,

Darius.

Unlesse thou haddest bene a King,  
conetous of money, insatiable, and desirous,  
Thou wouldest neuer haue vndone, broken, and violate,  
The graues of them that were extinct by fate.

Auroniū Sabellicus doth write, that Sertorius passing through Barbarie found a Sepulchre in a Citie called Tigena, which was 40. cubites of length, wherein was richly embalmed the body of Anthius, who was a man of meruailous strength, with whome Hercules did wraastle, hee was before the incarnation of Christ 1588. The sayd Sertorius commanded that the said Sepulchre should be moze richly reedified then it was before, albeit he should haue dishonoured himselfe by violating so notable a monument, as Plutarch reporteth. There be diuers other learned men, who haue written sundry Testimonies of the richly embalming of the Jewes, which are not necessary to be spoken of for the present; here I onely intend to shew the yong Chirurgian briefly the forme of embalming in our time, which must be done after this manner. First, the dead corps must be layd on a table vpon a cleane Linnen cloth on the backe, then make your incision from the Clauicul vnto the os pubis,

Sertorius.

Anthius embalmed.

Plutarch.

Forme of embalming.

then



Embalme the  
heart.

Aromaticall  
powder.

Oyntment of  
the bodie.

then lift vp the Sternon with the muscles of the inferiour belly, taking forth all that is therein contained : as also the baines after the skull be opened by the sawe, all those must be presently buried, except onely the heart, which may be embalmed with the body or alone, and put in a box of Lead or otherwise, as shall be thought expedient by their friends, which done, wash the body with Aquavite and Wine, then make deepe and long scarrifications on the armes, backe, langes, legges, thighs, and buttockes, chiefly in those parts where the great baines and artiers be, to the end the bloud may auoyd the better, which otherwise might engender corruption, which done wash the three venters and incised parts with Aquavite, spirit of wine, and strong Vineger, wherein hath bene sodden Abscynth, Allom, Collosynth, Aloe, and Salt, then dry all those parts diligently with a water sponge, or otherwise ; then you shall haue those powders in a readines, which commonly are made of Roses, Cammomill, Cumin, Helilot, Mynt, wormewood, balme, Sage, Lavender, Rosemarie, Laurell, Mariolyn, Time, Cypzus, of each a certaine quantity, all dried and put in powder, Gentian, Iris of Florence, Calamus Aromatick, Nutmegs, Cloues, Cinamon, Pepper, Beniamin, Aloes, and Myrre, of each a small quantity, beat all in grosse powder, and fill vp the belly and skull therewith ; as also whole incisions and sowe them vp close againe with a needle and thread, thereafter annoynt the whole corps with Turpentine mixed with oyle of Cammomill, or some Aromaticall oyles that be extracted by quinticens, then couer ouer the whole body with the foresaid powders, thereafter wraппe it in a Searecloth, which shall be thus made, take 4. pound of Wax, Rosat 2. pound, thepes grease 1. pound, Resini pini 1. lib. dimid. olei Petri, or Spice, so much as shall be requisite, mixing therewith some Colophon, Masticke, Storax and Gumme Arabicke : The cloth must be wet in that composition, and refreshed a little, then inuolue the corps in it, which done, tye it fast with small cords in all parts, then



then couer it with Linnen cloth, or for persons of higher dignity take layre or camerige. In all the time of this worke we vse to burne in the chamber Benjamin, or other odoriferous things: others to make a pleasant sauour, vse a candle of Benjamin, Muske, Storax, Ladan, charcole, Cloues, skin of the Pomgranet, red of Roses, of each a little quantity, put all in fine powder and mixe with Gumme of Dragagant, whereof you shall make your candle, dreye them slowly, which you shall burne in the chamber during all the time of your operation. Some common people for bowelling vse a few of the most common of those hearbs with vnquenched Lyme, the ashes of the stalkes of Beanes, and of the Oake tree, wash the body with Vinegar and stiffe vp with those powders, then inuolue the corps in a common Seare-cloth, tye it with small cords as the former, put it in a close chest of Lead or timber. This is the forme to preserve either the dead corps aboue or beneath the earth: but if any would haue them to continue embalmed, for to endure 100. or 120. yeares, you shall find a perfect way to doe the same in my

What should  
be burned in  
the chamber.

Embalming  
of common  
people.

Booke called The poore mans

Guyde.

The





# THE NINTH BOOKE, *Of Bleeding;*

And diuers other operations of Chyrurgerys  
*which containeth XXXIII. Chapters; Whose Comments*  
bee these ; by PETER LOVVE  
*Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of bleeding, and such things as should be obserued therein.  
2. Of such rules as should be obserued in bleeding.  
3. Of the 17. vaines of the head, the way to open them, and their effects.  
4. Of the scituation of the 3. vaines in the arme, the way to open them, and their effects.  
5. Of the 3. vaines in the hands, their scituation, way to open them, and their effects.  
6. Of the 4. vaines in the fundament, and their effects.  
7. Of the 4. vaines in the legges, their scituation, & effects.  
8. Of things that ought to be considered to blood well.  
9. Of things to be considered after the vaine be opened.  
10. Of Arterietomie or incision of the artier.  
11. Of boxing and ventosing.  
12. Of things requisite before the applying of ventosies.  
13. Of the way of applying ventosies.  
14. Of bloud-suckers or horseleaches, and their effects.  
15. Of the Seton, the qualities thereof, & way to apply it.  
16. Of the actuall and Potentiall cauters, & their composition.  
17. Of Cauter potentiall, and their composition.  
18. Of the caution in applying the cauters.  
19. Of the way to apply cauters.  
20. Of Baths, and their effects.  
21. Of certaine cautions before bathing.  
22. Of things to be obserued before the entrie to the bath.  
23. Of Frictions, and the effects thereof.



## CHAP. I.

¶ Of Blooding, and the things therein  
to bee obserued.



Blooding, which the Greekes call  
*Phlebotomia*, and the Latines *Ve-*  
*na sectio*, is an incision of the vaine  
artificially done, either to retaine, Gal. aph. 2.  
diuert, or euacuate blood, and other com. 17.  
humors contained within the bo-  
die; for the which Avicen doth Avicen.  
terme it *vniversalis euacuationem*,  
and that for diuers reasons; first,

because it doth take away aboundance of humors which of-  
ten are contained in the vaines aboue measure; next, it doth  
euacuate both good and euill humors, which are contained  
with the blood through the whole body aboue, and is a thing  
most necessary to be knowen by all Chyrurgians, not onely  
for the healing of maladies, but also for the conseruation of  
our bodies from sickness, and sometime both for healing and  
preseruing; for the which it is most necessary that the Chyr-  
rurgian should know the number of the vaines and their  
true scituation, to the end he take not one for another: for  
sometimes the scituation is variable, and imparts not ac-  
customed, very difficile to be opened. The Chyrurgian  
must also know the way to open them, with such things as  
should be obserued before and after blooding, with the effects  
following thereupon, which be diuers, reckoned by the lear-  
ned, of the which Saturne maketh some mention in these  
verses,

*Exhilarat tristes, iratos placet, amantes,*

*Ne sint amantes, Phlebotomia facit.*

Which is to say, It maketh glad the pensive, and mittigates  
the

Iohan. Baptis.  
Suf. de sang.  
missendi. rati.

Hipp. com. in  
aph. 25. ca. 47



the wrathfull, it impedeth lust, and such as are sicke from being madde, especially by letting blood of the Cephalicke vaine. There be diuers particular commodities which doe proceed of bleeding sayth Galen, and diuers other learned Writers : first, it quickeneth the spirit, and purgeth the braines, helpeth the memory, and maketh the senses more subtile, clarifieth and sharpeneth the sight, voyce, and wit, heateth the marrow, and wasteth such superfluous humors which make the marrow in the bones to be cold, it purifieth the whole senses, & remoueth those fumes which ascend to the head and trouble the senses ; it stayeth vomiting, and lax, as sayth Avicen, for it draweth the humor from the center, to the circumference ; it profiteth much against immoderate waking, for it taketh away humors, from the which diuers sharpe vapours ascend to the head and stayeth sleepe : it remoueth heavines, dulnesse, and sluggishnes of the body, helpeth difficulty of hearing, by taking away such humors as doe prouoke thicke vaporous spirits, and send to the head and passages of the eares the same : it refresheth the pores and strength of the body, helpeth digestion, euacuath euill blood, and is a naturall euacuation of all the whole humors of our bodie, by the which infinite maladies are cured, those be the commodities for the most part which doe ensue of bleeding, and are set downe by Saturne in these verses.

Auic 4. prim.  
cap. 4.

Iohannes  
Baptista.

Sus. lib. de  
sang. missio.  
Hip. aph. 22.  
Gualter. Riff.

Heliogabalus  
serm. 9. par. 2.

*Lumina clarificat, singulat Phlebotomia,  
Mentes, & cerebrum, callidas facit esse medullas,  
Viscera purgabit, stomachum, ventremq; coerces,  
Puros dat sensus, dat somnum, tædia tollit,  
Auditus, vocem, vires, producit & auget.*

Seeing the commodities of this remedy is so worthy and necessary for mans health, how iustly may we blame those malicious ignorant that condemne the same, contrary to the opinion of the most learned, and against all reason and experience? Now it followeth to know the number of the vaines which ordinarily are opened by the learned, for curing



Of rules to be obserued in bleeding. *Lib. IX. 371*

ring of maladies, which be 41. in number, viz. 17. in y head, 6. in the armes, which is three in each one, 6. in the hands, 4. in the fundament, which is two in each side; 8. in the legs, the which vaines must be opened diuersly, the great ones are opened long wayes, the little ones ouerthwart; that which is in the tip of the nose, is opened by pricking of it, not lifting the skinne. As touching the particular opening of e- uery vaine and the commodities following therebpon, you shall heare in the Chapter following, particularly.

CHAP. II.

¶ Of such rules as should be obserued  
in bleeding.

Sometime the blood is vsed for the preservation of the bo-  
dy from sicknesse, as you haue heard, yet not commonly  
vsed in children afore 14. yeares of age, except in great ne-  
cessity, neither in old people after 80. yeares, because the a-  
bundance of blood at that time is not great, nor the forces  
strong: but for the healing of diseases which is the second  
commoditie of bleeding, we doe let blood both yong and old  
people, and sometime rather the old than the yong, for some-  
time one of 60. will better endure bleeding then one of 20.  
and a child of two yeres old sometime will endure bleeding  
twise in one day, and one of thirty, three or foure times in  
a day, as I sometime remarke it. Secondly, wee must  
weigh the strength of the sicke, for in strong people wee let  
blood largely, those that are weake and extenuate, not so  
much, although Galen, Celsus, and others, counsell in behe-  
ment dolours and carbuncles, to draw blood, *vsq. ad animæ*  
*defectum*, of the which often come great accidents, so not to  
be vsed so largely: if the blood be euill and corrupt, you  
must take aduise with the learned Physition for the remedy  
thereof. Hurnius and Galen doe counsell, if the blood bee  
euil and corrupt to draw it by little and little, and so procure  
good

Rasis.

Auenzo. li. 7.  
cap. 3.

Galē, Celsus.  
Hip. li. 1. aph.  
Pau. li. 6. c. 40

Hurni. praxis  
medici.  
Gal. li. 4 cap.  
10. meth.



Tral. li. 9. c. 2.

Gal. de sang.  
missione.Langfrancus.  
Gal. lib. de  
arthridide.Hip. 7. aph.  
Oribasius.  
Arnaldus.Gal. de cura.  
ratio. per fan.  
missio. cap. 21  
6. meth. ca. 5.Constantinus  
Africanus.Gal 4. aph. 10  
aph. & de cu-  
rat. per fangu.  
missio. ca. 10.

good bloud by degrees instead thereof, which must bee done by good nourishment. If the body be of good habitude, well nourished, and the vaines tumified and full of bloud, you may draw more largely then of others, which are of a weaker and worse temperance: such as are trained up in hote Countries, nourished with hote meates, doe better endure bleeding then those in cold Countries, and they haue their bloud more hote, so are more subiect to hote apostumes and feuers. The other cause of blooding, which is vsed for the preservation of health, should not bee done in Winter nor Sommer, but in the Spring-time, when many diseases are cured, and must be done in the morning before the day grow hote, but that blooding which is vsed for the healing of sicknesses, may be done at all times and at all houres, according to the symptomes that happen to the diseased; such as are ordinarily accustomed to let bloud either when the hemorroides or monethly courses are retained, or to prevent great maladies, are let blood in diuers parts according to the cause, sometimes in the armes, otherwhiles in the legges or feet, as shall be found expedient. The excellent Astrologians are of opinion that the Starres, Planets, and Signes, haue great power in mans body, and doe thinke that euery humoz of mans body is gouerned by certaine of those signes, as the sanguine by Taurus, Virgo, and Capricorne; the Phlegmaticke humoz by Aries, and Sagittarius; the chollericke by Cancer, and Pisces; the melancholicke by Libra. and Aquarius; and according to their opinion with some Physicians as Constantinus, Africanus, bloud must not be let of that part where they alleadge the signe to be: which signe is not was not obserued of y<sup>e</sup> most learned Physicians and Chyrurgions: like as Hippocrates, Galen, Oribasius, Sardinus, Aetius, Paulus, Rasis, Avicen, Haly Abbas, and diuers others, Latines, Greekes, and Arabians; for when the body is grievously oppressed with maladie and grieve, we doe not nor must not stay for the course of celestiall signes, either to purge or let bloud, except onely in the

criticke



Of things to be obserued in blooding. *Lib. IX.* 373

criticke or iudgement day, which is called by the Latins *dies*  
*decretory*, in the which in either sicke or hurt people happen oftentimes great mutations or presages of life or death, which is very needfull to be remarked by all Chyrurgions. The criticke day doth often happen after the beginning of the sickness, the 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 14, 17, 21, or 28. Day: in which dayes, neither medicines nor bleedings should be ministred, neither any naturall nor voluntarie euacuation be stopt; like as fluxe of the belly, blood at the nose, vrine, sweat, vomiting, fluxe of the hemorrhoides or moneths, in women, but gently to entertaine the same. Some there be who follow the opinion of the Egyptians in obseruing of dayes which are inuented by them, and are called *dies Aegyptiaci*, who were of opinion, if any had fallen sicke or been hurt in such dayes, they should hardly haue escaped: the which appeares to me to be fabulous. Neuerthelesse according as they haue written I will repeat them, and are these: the 1, and 7, of Ian: the 3, and 4, of Feb: the 1, and 4, of March: the 8, and 10, of Aprill: the 3, and 7, of May: the 10, and 15, of June: the 10, and 13, of Iuly: the 1 and 2, of August: the 3, and 10, of Sept: the 3, and 10, of Octob: the 3, and 5, of Nouem: with the 7, and 10, of December. The excellent and learned Mathematicians doe say, that there is three certain daies that should be obserued by Chyrurgions not to let blood, to wit, the first of August, the 4, of September, the 11. of March. As likewise the 10 of August, the 1 of December, and the 6. of Aprill, are obserued by some Philosophers to be very perillous to surfeit much in eating and drinking, for in them men may incur dangerous sicknesses and often death. I read in an old Philosopher Arabian, a man of diuers rare obseruations, who did remarke 3. Mondays in the yere to be most vnfortunate, either to let blood or beginne any notable worke, viz. the first Monday of Aprill the which day Cain was borne and his brother Abell slaine. The second is the first Monday of August, the which day Sodome and Gomorra were con-  
founded;

Auic 4. prim.  
cap: de phleb.

Hip. aph: 21.  
Henricus  
Rantzovius.

Gal. lib. 1. ad  
glaucon.

Philos. Arab.

Three most  
vnfortunate  
dayes.



Herode did  
kill the chil-  
dren.

Fortunate  
daies recko-  
ned by the A-  
strologians.

founded. The third is the last Monday of December, the which day Iudas Icarior was borne, who betrayed our Sauiour Iesus Christ to the Iewes : these three Mondays with the Innocents day, by diuers of the learned are reputed to be most vnfortunate of all daies, and ought to be eschewed by all men for the great mishaps which often doe happen in them ; and thus much concerning the opinion of our ancients of daies. So in like manner I will repeat vnto you certaine daies which be obserued by some old writers, chiefly the curious Astrologians, who did alleadge that there were 28. daies in the yeare which were reuealed by the Angell to good Ioseph, which euerhaue been remarked to bee very fortunate daies, either to purge, let blood, cure wounds, vse merchandize, sow seed, plant trees, build houses, or taking iourneys in long or short voyages, in fighting or giuing of battaile or skirmishing : they do also alleadge y<sup>e</sup> children who were borne in any of those daies could neuer be poore, and all children who were put to the Schooles or Colleges in those daies, should become great Schollers, and those who were put to any craft or trade in such daies, without doubt should become a perfect artificer and rich, and such as were put to trade of merchandise should become most wealthy Marchants. The daies be these, the 3. and 13. of Janu : the 5. and 28. of Feb : the 3. 22. and 30. of March : the 5. 22. and 29. of Aprill : the 4. and 28. of May : the 3. and 8. of Iune : the 12. 13. and 15. of Iuly : the 12. of August : the 1. 7. 24. and 28. of Sept : the 4. and 15. of Octob : the 13. and 19. of Nouem : the 23. and 26. of Decemb : and thus much concerning the daies which are by the most curious sort of the learned remarked to be good, and euill. But to returne to the Mediciners whose rules are more sure, and should rather be followed : There are some who doe precisely obserue the course of the Moone, except for some reasonable cause, and doe obserue the new Moone rather then the old, which ought to be considered by reason of some other euacuation, for the which old women must be let blood



Of things to be obserued in blooding. *Lib. IX.* 375

blood in the old of the Moone, and yong women in the new,  
as noteth Gordonius, in these wordes.

*Luna vetus veteres, Iuvenes noua Luna requirit.*

If he whome we would let blood be constipat, giue him a  
glister remollient, or some *Cassia Manna*, or some other gen-  
tle purgation : yet in some cases we let blood without any  
purgings, proceeding as in Pleurisies, inflammation of the  
lungs, apoplexies, squinnarres, suffocations, fluxe of blood  
at the nose, and in such persons who abound in blood, and  
not of euill humors ; also in women with child, especially  
if they grow heauie, flipperie and ouer-charged with aboun-  
dance of blood : also such as haue had great falls from high  
places, w<sup>ch</sup> such as by any accident are become dumbe, such  
persons we let blood in both the armes largely : further  
we must consider if the meate he eateth be digested, and if  
the blood bee grosse vse frictions to subtilize it and make it  
runne : if any great and long maladie hath proceeded, or  
great euacuation either of the hemorrhoides or monethlie  
course, fluxe of the bellie or vomiting, bathing, cold regions  
or complexions in people ouer old or euer young, long wa-  
king, or great vsing of women: in those cases bleeding shold  
be deferred except for great occasions, and then it must bee  
moderately done: those lets or impediments are set downe  
by Saturne in these verses.

Gal.li. 10. de  
comp. medic.  
secund. loc.  
cap: 2.  
Auic. 4. prim.  
cap: 4.

Langfrancus.

Roge. de phle-  
botom. venar.

*Frigida natura, & frigens regio, dolor ingens  
Balnea, post coitum, minor aetas atq<sup>ue</sup> senilis  
Morbus prolixus, repletio, & estas  
Si fragilis vel subtilis sensus stomachi sit  
Et fastidit tibi non sunt Phlebotomandi.*

Also such as be let blood should haue his mind so much as  
can be free of all passions, chiefly feare which retyreth the  
blood to the center of the body ; if he feare fainting, he must



eate an egge before, or a toft in wine and lye on his bed, beware to fleep immediately thereafter for diuers respects, as faith Saturne in these verses.

*Sanguine substracto sex horis est vigilandum  
Ne somni fumus ladat tibi sensile corpus  
Ne nervum ladas, non sit tibi plagaprofunda  
Sanguine purgatus ne carpas protinus escas.*

After the bleeding keepe dyet for a day or two, eating things of light digestion, abstaine from Milke, all salt meat, cold drinke and ayre, vse moderate exercise.

---

*CHAP. III.*

**I** Of the scituation of the 17. vaines in the head, the way to open them, and their effects,

*Portraiture*



*Portraiture of the Vaines which Chyrurgions  
doe comonly open.*



The



Vaines in the  
head that be  
opened.

Alb. li 2. c. 95.

**T**he vaines which be the proper receptacles of the blood, are diuersly dispersed through the whole body of man, carrying the same to euery part thereof, which often be opened for letting of blood; of y<sup>e</sup> which we are to speake at this present, and first of those in the head which commonly be opened: the first is called *vena frontis, preparata & directa*, and proceedeth of the Jugular intern, situated in the middelt of the forehead, for the opening of the which, thou must bind the neck with a napkin till the vaine appeare, doing the like in all other vaines of the head, next draw the Lancet on the vaine, and open it aslope, take heed you goe not too deepe for feare of the Pericran,



Lancets



Lancets and flambets to let blood.

379



It is good for all inveterate dolours of the head, chiefly the Hip. 5. aph. 68 hinder part of the head, for all diseases of the face, and inflammation of the eyes, frensie : this kind of bleeding doth direct or turne, & plucke backe the blood the contrary way, and is called by the Latines *Revulsio*, and by the Grækes *Antispasms*, it hath been used by our Ancients for a souveraine remedy



Auic 2. primi.

Gal. li. de cu-  
rat. per san.

millionem ca.

16. &amp; lib. artis

med. cap: 95.

Baptista Suf.

lib. de sangui.

missione.

Alb. li. 2. c. 95.

Alb. li. 2. c. 95

Hip. lib. de  
Aera & aqua.

Avicen.

Haly Abbas.

Albuc. ibid.

remedy, as witnesseth Avicen, and diuers others of the learned, who did open the basilicke vaine of the right arme for a Pleurisie on the left side. Hippocrates and Galen do counsel to let blood of the basilicke vaine of the same side where the pleurisie or paine is, the which opinion is much disputed among the Physicians, who for the most part do agree to let blood the arme opposite for diuerting great fluxes of blood. I my selfe doe euer let blood the part opposite for any paine or griefe, by the which I haue euer found great helpe. The Second vaine of the head is called *vena puppis*, scituate in the hinder part of the head, and is opened as the former, which is good for dolours of the head and sleepinesse. The third is called *temporalis acheris*, or *sterilis*, and hath the origin from the Jugulars, scituate on the temples, and hath many branches, it is opened for the migrom, dolours of the eares, Ophthalmie, and watering of the eyes. The fourth is called *auricular*, scituate behind the eares, and must be opened as the others, the haire being shaven, & the part rubbed with a rough cloth till the vaine appeare: the opening of it is good for deafnesse, paine in the eares, old catarres, hemicranes, all vlcers maligns: but if they bee cut wholly, they make a man to be sterile, as saith Hippocrates, which thing was practised amongst the Scythians to make men effeminate and serue them like women. The Fifth is called *Ocular*, and proceedeth of the Jugulars internes, scituate betwixt the eyes and the nose: in opening of the which you must not goe too deepe, in case you hurt the muscle that moueth the eye, by the which oftentimes it draweth the eye aside, and sometime the wound becommeth fistulous: all the vaines of the head should be opened with flambets, especially in such as are not skilfull, for feare of not going too deepe, the opening of this is good for maladies of the face, affections of the eyes, eye-lids, and scabs. The sixth is called *Nasall*, scituate on the tippe of the nose betwixt the cartilages: in opening of it go deepe with the Lancet, it is good for heauinesse of the head, fluxions on the eyes, and all rednesse



nesse of the face, yet not commonly vsed, neither was opened by Galen nor any of the Grækes. The 7. is called *Labier*, scituate in the inner side of the lippe: the opening of it is good for corruption of the gummes, fissures in the lips, vlters in the gummes and nose. The 8. is called *Ranall*, vnder the tongue, and proceedeth of the Jugular interne, it is opened ouerthwart, not going deepe in feare to make the tongue immobile, because there the nerue motiue is neare vnto those vaines: it is good for the scinancy inflammation of the Amigdals, *Abula*, and other affections or aposthumes of the mouth and throat, as also for such as become dumbe and lose their speech any wayes. The 9. is the Jugular, and taketh his originall from the vaine caue ascendent: it is good for the scinancy, inflammation of the halfe, Suffocation, fluxion on throat, Leprosie, melancholique Maladies, maligne and corrodent vlters, Hemicrane, and Rhume. Remember that all the vaines of the head must be opened as the rest. Avicenna is of the opinion, that if vaines of the head being opened, letteth generation, because of the animall spirits which dissipe, the which opinion is refuted by diuers of the learned and daily experienced.

Albuc. ibid.

Haly Abbas.

Roge. lib. de  
phlebotoma  
venarum.

## CHAP. IIII.

Of the scituation of the three Vaines in the arme, the way to open them, and their effects.

The first of three vaines in the arme is called *cephalica*, *spatulina*, *capitalis*, or *humeralis*, as saith Galen, which is most high and externe in the arme, & hath neither vaine, arterie, nerue nor tendon vnder it, in opening of the which make a good issue, otherwise it is in daunger to aposthume, because that oft there remaineth lapped blood, for the thickenesse of the flesh; it is good for all dolours and paine of the head, eyes, eares, throat, and Epilepsie. The second is called *mediana*, *vena matricis matricalis*, *mediastina*, *cardiaca*, or *purpurea*.

Alb. li. 2. c. 95.



Rasis, Oriba.  
Avicen, Haly  
Abbas,

Gal. Riff.

Rasis lib. 28.

*purpurea*, it is composed of the basilicke and cephalicke scitu-  
ated betwixt them, in the middelt of the arme, under it is a  
nerue or tendon of the muscle *biceps*, sometime both, for the  
which we must be warie and take good heed in opening it,  
for feare of Gangren, conuulsion, or dolour, it must be ope-  
ned athwart, and is good for all diseases that happen to the  
body, both superiour and inferiour. Once I saw in opening  
of this the nerue pricked, of the which within the space of 4.  
dayes after there came a soft tumor in the *Omoplat*, with a  
relaxation of the ioynt, as also all the ioynts of the body, for  
the which the deepe prouounding is forbidden by Avicen,  
and Rasis. The third is called *basilica*, *hepatica*, *vena inter-*  
*na*, *icorina*, *regia*, or *vena axillaris*, and is scituated lowe  
downe in the arme, accompanied with a great arter under  
it, for the which you must haue a great care and beware of  
Aneurisme. Rasis forbiddeth to bleed in this vaine, but  
in great necessitie. It is opened for the obstructions of the  
liuer, inflammations in all the body, as also parts vnder the  
head, hardnes of the liuer, dolour of the stomacke, pleurisie,  
and difficulty of breath.

#### CHAP. V.

¶ Of the three Vaines in the hands, their  
scituation, the way to open them, and their effects.

Gal. lib. de  
san. missione.

Gal. defecti.

The first of the three vaines is called *cephalica*, or *ocula-*  
*ris*, and is scituated betwene the thumbe and for most  
finger, and is opened longwayes, because it is little, and is  
good for dolours in the head and affections of the eyes. Ga-  
len sayth, that the vaines in the hands giue not much blood,  
because they are but little branches, and therefore were not  
opened by the mediciners Greekes. The second is called  
*saluatella*, *titularis*, or *asellaris*, and is onely a branch of the  
basilicke, it is scituated betwene the middle finger called *me-*  
*dus*, and the third finger called *auricularis*, and is good for  
the



the Jaundise and maladies of the liuer, being let blood in the right hand, and the other in the left hand called *splenetica*, for the affections of the milt, and diuers other commodities which ensue thereupon, as at large is set downe by the learned Schoole of Sacurne in these verses.

*Ex saluatella tibi plurima dona minuta  
Splenem hepar pectus vocem praecordia purgat,  
Innaturalis tollit de corde dolorem.*

The third is called *funus brachij*, and is a branch of the cephalicke, scituate on the finger *medius*, opened in default of the other two. These vaines must be bathed in hote water, in opening of them, as those in the foete.

*CHAP. VI.*

¶ Of the foure Vaines in the Fundament, and their effects.

¶ Each side of the Fundament are scituated two vaines Hemorrhoidals, and are opened for affections of the fundament, especially the hemorrhoides, and diuers other melancholique maladies.

*CHAP. VII.*

¶ Of the foure Vaines in the Legges, their scituation, and effects.

The first of these foure vaines is called *Popletica*, and cometh from the vaine *Femorall*, as all the rest, it is scituated in the bending or pleye of the ham, open it for all affections in any part contained in the inferiour venter. The second is called *Saphena*, scituated within the foot, nere or about the ankle yon inside, opening of it, ye must not profound deepe because the parts are neruous, and so mortal accidents often happen. Note that all vaines in parts neruous, must be



Gal. de curat.  
per lan. missi.

be opened longwise, except *Sciatica* which must be opened a little athwart, yet Galen saith that all vaines in parts nervous must be opened longwise, and are not so much subject to euill accidents : this being opened is good for affections of the kidneys, matrix, gonorrhea making that returnes in againe, and also it prouoketh the purgation in woman. We circumspect in letting blood the foot, for it weakeneth more than any other, as saith Avicen, therefore I vsed alwayes to women a tablet cordiall, or else they eate some-what as foze. The third is called *Sciatica*, scituated aboue the ankle, and is opened athwart as yee haue heard, it is good for sciatickes, dolours in the thighes and ankles. The fourth is called *Medium* or *renall*, and is scituated vnder the bending of the foote, and is opened for such maladies, as the other. Some say that aboue euery knee about thre fingers there are two great vaines, which the Arabians call *Salsores*, and say if the sicke be let blood in them, he dyeth presently, but Galen is not of their opinion.

#### CHAP. VIII.

¶ Of things which are to be considered to bleed well.

Lib. 9.]

Rafis,

First, the Chyrurgian must be in a light place either naturally, or with candle, also his owne sight should be good as sayth Haly Abbas, and must haue a ligatoz, that goeth twice about the arme, an inch broad, also he must haue a round staffe to hold in his hands ; in like manner a little oyle to rub on the vaine to make it souple, also annoynt the Lancet with sallet oyle, befoze the blood which will appease the paine, he must haue diuers Lancets, of the which some are large, some round pointed, when the paine is superficial, also when need is to make a good issue and euacuation, which we vse in putride feuers, and when the blood is thicke and the sicke strong : some must be long, sharpe poynted to open



open when the vaines are dāpe and hidden, as also to make little issues in small superficiall vaines, and when need is to make deriuation as if the person spit blood, or bleed at the nose. The issue you make, must bleed long to diuert it: we make the issue litle in people that are out of y<sup>e</sup> wits, that the issue may be soone consolide, by reason that such people loose the bandage, and oft blood much. The incision must be made one of 3. wayes, to wit, in length, breadth and oblique, making always an incision in middelt of the vaine, not cutting it altogether, which if it be, the blood commeth not well, but alongst the arme, and the extreamity of the vaines retireth one from another. Then let him make the issue as it should be, & cause the blood to come well out, rub first the arme, if thou wouldest blood gently with a hote cloth or thy hand, the knit it with the ligatour a little aboue the elbow, let the binding be steady, so the vaine will shew it selfe the better, then the sick shall close his hand, that the vaines may shew the better, thereafter if it be the right arme the Chirurgian shall take it with his left hand, nere to the part where he intendeth to make the issue, holding his thombe on the vaine that it stirre not, for oftentimes it rolleth and flydeth from the Lancet, sometime it yeadeth being full of wind. This being done, he shall marke the place with the foymost finger of the right hand, making a little marke with his nayle on the vaine, then he shall take the Lancet betwixt the thombe and the foymost finger in the middelt of it, and to the end that he tremble not, hee shall leaue the other thre fingers on the arme, and leaue the finger and thombe that holdeth the lancet on the left thombe which holdeth the vaine, then open the vaine softly flyding the poynt of it in the vaine not suddenly: if the vaine be not openes at the first time, pricke suddenly againe a little aboue or vnder the first, ye may do the same if the hole be not great enough to let out the blood in a reasonable quantity. The vaine opened in that manner, the party shall hold the stasse in his hand, that he may rest his hand, and the blood come out the better. Hauing drawn

Rasis.  
Bartapallia.

Ætius lib. 3.  
Haly Abbas.  
lib. 1.

Guliel. de sal-  
veto.



such quantity of blood as the cause requireth, he shall presse out that which remaineth, if there come out any fat as oft happeneth in grosse people, thou shalt put it in againe, that done, put a peece of cloth the breadth of three or foure fingers double on the wound, and wet it in water, bind the arme with a band of an inch broad, that goeth 3. or 4 times about the arme, winding it about aboue the elbow, and vnder that it neither be too straight, nor too slacke. If the vaines be small blood, then after meat rather than before, for then they are more full of blood, doe not eate nor drinke for an hower or two after.

Gal. Auic. A-  
uerrois.

#### CHAP. IX.

### ¶ Of things to be considered after the vaine is opened.

Auerrois.

Ofentimes chanceth after the vaine is well opened, that the blood commeth well forth, and afterwards suddenly doth cease, it happeneth through too straight ligatour saith Auerrois, or else for an apprehension, and sometime through wrong and euill situation of the arme, in these poynts ye must slacke the ligatour, comfort the party, and scituate the arme right, sometime the cause is in the thickenesse and grossenes of the blood, for the which rub the place incised with a little oyle. If the party be weake, which shall be knowene by the changing his colour and the blood running alongst the arme, in this ye shall loose the ligatour, close the wound, lay the sicke on his backe, cast water in his face & vinegar to smel, & giue him a little wine, within a while after loose the band and let him blede, till ye haue got such quantity of blood as shall be requisite, stirre not nor labour thy arme but carry it in a figure triangulare, sleepe not two howers after. Let the blood stand, to know the nature of it, for in our body there are diuers sorts very variable, according to the diuersity of the age, the complexion, countrey, kind



kind of the sickness, and parts of the body. We shall iudge the nature and quality of the blood three wayes, by colour, taste, and substance. As for the colour, good naturall blood should be red, sweet as phlegme naturall, and of meane substance, when it congealeth not, it is a signe that some of the other humors are with it, when it is red, cleare, and glutte-  
Arist. lib. 2. de partis animal. cap. 4. Gal. lib. de atra bile. & de simp. med.

## CHAP. X.

## ¶ Of Arteriotomie or incision of the Artier.

**L**ike as for diuers maladies we let blood the vaines, so we doe in some artiers. *Arteriotomia* is a detraction of blood by the diuision of the artier, which was not much vsed saue only *Menodotus*, *Albucaſis*, & some others, but is greatly in vse now, chiefly those in the temples and behind the eares, for great fluxion of catarres on the eyes, breast, and maladies of the head ingendered of a hote fluxion inueterated, and vaporous spirits which are contained in these artiers. Cælicis.  
 In opening them, first I shau the haire, and rub the part with a rough warme cloth, that the artier may appeare the better: in opening the artier of the temples, tye fast the necke with a napkin after the forme, as you haue heard in opening the vaines, then consider with your finger the beating of the artier, then marke it with a drop of inke or with your nayle, then make a little incision in the body of the artier, as in the vaine, not cutting it altogether, draw such quantity of blood as is needfull, then stay it, and put on the wound an emplastrum of Masticke, or halfe a Beane clo-  
Albu. lib. 2. cap. 2. Gal. lib. 1. chro. Paul lib. 4. cap. 35.



Alb. li. 2. ca. 4. freed from an hate pituitous substance, also for swimming, giddinesse, long defluxion, and waxing of the eyes.

CHAP. XI.

¶ Of Boxing, and Ventosing.

Gal. 15. met.  
med. cap. 4.  
Alb. li. 2. c. 98.

Henricus  
Rantzovius.

Hip. apho. &  
lib. de oculorū  
morbis.  
Magni. regi.  
sanitat.

**V**entosing which the Latines call *Ventosarie*, is no other thing but application of an instrument, either for the euacuation of some humoꝝ vnder the skinnie, or to diuert the course of an humoꝝ to some other part, and to drawe away such things as are hurtfull, that nature cannot chace forth, and also to draw out wind in some part of the body. It is called *cucurbitula*, or *pixis*. and is made of brasse, horn, glasse, wood, or earth in diuers formes some short, some long necked, for the most part wide bellied, and are called *ventosae a ventre*, as saith A. uicen : some are bigge, some lesse, according to the proportion of the member, the mouth is reasonable wide, the lippes round and thicke, and are applyed most commonly in diuers parts of our body. They are sometime applyed with scarrification and extraction of blood, otherwile without scarrification, as also on diuers parts of our body, according to the cause, as to drawe out some hurtfull humoꝝ of the body, with scarrification and extraction of blood. First wee applye them in the necke to euacuate the humoꝝ from the head, for heauinesse of the head, fluxions on the eyes, affections of the face, and stinke in the mouth : secondly, wee applye them on the middelt of the necke behind, for difficulty of breath and cough : thirdly, vnder the chinne and sides of the necke, for dolours and vlcers of the mouth, corruption of the gummes, Megrin, Opthalmie, and sore teeth : fourthly, on the shoulders for diseases in the thorax, pleurisie, spitting of blood, affections on the shoulders, of repletion, for many affections of the head and throat : fifthly, on the region of the reynes, good for aposthumes and dolours of the reynes and liuer : sixthly,



on the middest of the armes, for dolour in those parts, and in stead of letting blood, and is used both in old and yong: Seuenthly, on the *os sacrum*, and thereabouts, and is good *Rasis li. 9. c. 8.* for the hemorroides, and fistules in the fundament: Eightly, on the middest and rootes of the thighes, and is good to prouoke the monethly course, for strangurie, dolours of the matrix, bladder, and kidneys. The ventosies without scarification, which we call drie ventosing, are applyed for the most part in a 11. places. First, on the open of the head, for relaxation of the brain, and to stay the rhume, as saith Galen. Secondly, upon the *hypocondres*, to diuert the bleeding at the nose, as saith Galen, when the right nosethrill bleedeth, put the ventosies on the region of the liuer; if the left side, on the milt, so in like manner on all parts that bleed, we put the ventosies on the part opposite, for the communication that the vessels haue one with another. Thirdly, on the pappes, to diuert the purgations that runne much, according to the saying of Hippocrates, *Si mulieri menstrua sistere uolueris cucurbitulam, quam maximam sub in animis defige*, and for the ventositie about the liuer. Fourthly, in the beginning of the nerues for Palsie. *Bartapallia.* Fifthly, on the nauill for the windy collicke. Sixthly, on the flankes for ventositie of the milt. *Guydo.* Seuenthly, on the nauill or wombe, to reduce the intestine, or matrix fallen, ventosities in the belly, and dolours which happen in time of purgations. Eighthly, we applye them on vritors, to drawe downe the stones and grauell to the bladder. *Avi. 3. canod.* Ninthly, on the eares and mouth of vlcers, to draw out any thing contained therein, also for drawing out of poyson. Tenthly, if any where there is matter deepe, to draw it out to the superfiice, as in *bubons venerians*, also in *parotides maligne*, or in any other part where need is to draw any thing to the superfiice. *Haly Abbas. lib. 9.* Eleuenthly, on the necke for *Oribasius.* Squinancy.



*CHAP. XII.*¶ Of things requisite before the applying  
of Ventosies.

Gal. Avicen.

**F**irst, if the body be plethorick, it must be taken away by bleeding, otherwise the ventosie is noysome; next, if the blood or humors be thicke, we vse to foment the place with hote water, and rubbe it long with a hote cloth; thirdly, that ye neuer scarrifie, except the application of the dyve ventosies haue preceeded, because the blood must first be drawne to the place before it be euacuated; lastly, that it be not applyed in the bath, but an hower or two after, or longer.

*CHAP. XIII.*

## ¶ Of the way to apply the Ventosies.

Magninus.

Albuerafis.

Haly Abbas.

Galen.

Pauli. 6. c. 41.

**T**he Ventosies are applyed with hords being fastened to the bottome with a little ware or emplaster to hold it, that it fall not on the skinne, that being done, light them and applye them on the part. Some vse two or three peeces of Ware candles put on a pece of a Carde, money or Gould, the breadth of a croone, being lighted, set them on the middell of the part, thereafter apply the ventosie, and being applyed a certaine space, ye shall, for to take it away, presse the flesh vnder the lippe of it, to let in the ayze, and so it shall fall, which being done, make certaine scratches in the skinne with a Launcet, sometime many, otherwhiles few: in delicate folke and childzen, we make fewe scarrifications, if the blood be thicke, make the scarrifications profound, if the humor and blood be subtile, the scarrifications must be supreficiall, and applye the ventosies as before, let it remaine a reasonable time, and euacuate the blood, as ye shall find expedient, if not sufficiently at one time, ye may reiterate.



reiterate twice or thrise, always scarifying, especially when there is venenosity or malignity in the place, by reason of the blood being thicke and grosse. That being done, it shall be very necessary and expedient to dry the place with a soft cloth, annoynt it with oyle of Roses, butter, *cerat Galen*, or *Alb. lib. 2.* *rosat Mesues*, and sleepe an houre after.

*CHAP. XIIII.*

¶ Of Horleaches or Bloud-suckers,  
and their effects.

**T**hese little beasts, which the Latins call *Sanguisuga* or *Hirudines*, in our tong Horleaches, are little wormes, the length of two inches or thre, great, like to a Goose quill, well known to all Chirurgians, ingendered in fresh water, poudes, pooles; of the which there are two sorts, the one maligne, as those which are bred in rotten standing water, where carrion hath been cast, of the which come great accidents, as tumor, inflammation, vlcers, apothumes venemous, as we read of one *Messalinus*, who dyed by putting one on his knee. Therefore we must abstaine from those that haue the head greater then the rest of the body, and are greene coloured, glittering, with blew rayes on the backe, the rest of the body being blacke: we must chosse such as are found in cleane water, in ponds and sandy ground, that haue their head little and bodie small, round, red bellied, the backes rayed like threds of Gould, such shall be kept a day or two in cleane water, to purge them before they be applyed, as also to cause them draw the better. Some keepe them ten or twelue dayes, changing the water once in two or thre dayes, after the which manner they may be kept a whole yeare in glasses or pottes of earth, changing the water once in tenne dayes, with a little crumes of white bread, we vse them for the same purpose, as scarifications, and in such places where ventosles cannot be applyed, as in the

*Magninus regini sanitat.*  
*Arnaldus de villa noua.*  
*Haly Abbas.*  
*Avicen.*  
*Theodoricus.*

lippes,



Alb. li. 2 c. 37

Gal. lib. de  
herudin.Henricus  
Rantzovius.

lippes, gummes, legges, fundament, mouth of the matric,  
 and such parts as are emptie of flesh, as nose, fingers, toes,  
 also about old vlcers, and apcsthumes of the emunctories  
 and others that are venomous, rubbing the part ye put them  
 on, till it grow red. They draw onely superficially the blood  
 which is in the flesh, and so are good *pro morbis subiercurane-*  
*is*, like as in the scabbe called *vulgo*, which is a foulness  
 of the body, with spots of diuers colours: also in the disease  
 called *impetigo*, which is that which we call ordinarily the  
 King-worme: also in great itching in any part they be  
 thought meete to be used, then scarrification, because they  
 draw the corrupt blood more profoundly: if they be apply-  
 ed on the fundament, they make euacuation from all the  
 members, the part where wee applye them must be very  
 cleane, otherwise it will not abide, in applying of them take  
 them with a piece of cleane cloth, or with your hand softly  
 hold their head to the part you would haue them bite, and for  
 the more easie doing thereof, we put a drop of Pigeons or  
 Chickens blood on the part, or picke the part a little to cause  
 some blood to come out: then if you would haue them to  
 draw much, cut the ends of them with the sheeres to let the  
 blood runne: otherwise, if they fall away too soone, you may  
 applye fresh ones in their place, or the same being well  
 stripped, and the blood expriant cut of them betwixt your  
 two fingers: if you would make great euacuation, you  
 may apply two or three at the first, to make the fall away you  
 shall put a corne of salt or droppe of Vinegar on their heads,  
 or a few finders, otherwise separate them with an horse  
 haire: if after they fall the place bleed too much, we applye  
 Cotton, or burnt cloth, or cloth wet in cold water, or halfe  
 a Beane bound and tyed to the part: sometimes by ex-  
 periskilfulnesse it happeneth the Blood-sucker doth draw too  
 much, or else the party is suffered to bleed much after they  
 fall away, whereof euill accidents often happen: as chan-  
 ced in the person of a worthy and notable Captain my good  
 friend, called Captaine Gonsales a Spaniard, who hauing  
 some



some ulcers on his legges, did cause to apply eight Bozlea-  
ches thereto, by the which he lost neere six pound of bloud,  
thereafter fell in *Icteria* and ebullition of cholericke humoꝝ,  
*quia sanguis est frenum cholera*, thereafter he became hydro-  
picke incurable, *quia qui callido sunt hepate si in astitam inci-*  
*dant omnes fere sunt deplorati*, so this Gentleman dyed to the  
great grieve of many; so my counsell is, that after they  
be taken away and made reasonable euacuation, that you  
by all meanes stay any further fluxe of bloud. If there be  
venenosity in the part after they fall, we foment the part  
with water and salt, sometime a cornet or little ventosie to  
draw out that which they haue left, some doe vse before the  
applying of them, to purge the body, if it be repleat with  
humoꝝs.

## CHAP. XV.

**O**f Seton, the qualities of it, and way  
how it should be applyed.

**S**eton which the Latines call *Seta*, is a little round cord, Definition.  
which of old was made of haire or thread, and now is ordi-  
narily made of small Linnen cloth, wollen yarne, or silke,  
and is drawne through the flesh or skin with a sharpe nee-  
dle, in diuers parts of our bodies for diuers occasions, like  
as for rebullion, euacuation, deriuation, or interception of  
some humoꝝ, like as in the necke, betwixt the 1. and 2. verte-  
bre, sometime lower downe; and is good to diuert and draw  
away fluxions from the eyes, catarrhs from the head which  
might fall on the stomacke, gummes, loynes, backe, han- Diuers places  
where the Se-  
ton should be  
applyed.  
des, and other ioynts or parts of our body. Secondly, we  
apply it in the Pawill, when it is swelled or tumified with  
water or other humoꝝs. Thirdly, in the coddies, for wa-  
ter or weake humoꝝs contained in those parts; as also for  
such as are hydropicke. Fourthly, we applye them in  
wounds which do penetrate through one part to another as  
through a legge, thigh, arme, or other part for the better  
euacuation,



evacuation of matter in those wounds, they are applyed with an hote Iron as did our Ancients, or without fire as now is commonly practised : for performing whereof, if in the necke, wee set the sicke in a chaire, then one taketh the necke behind, where you would applye it equally, betwixt his hands, neither more to one side then to another. I doe ordinarily marke the part with inke before, then take the skinne with the one hand next the head, and the other lower downe, leauing two inches or thereabout boyd betwixt the hands, then the Chirurgian shall take hold of the same with his pincers



# Instruments of Seton.



made



made for that purpose, thereafter pierce it with a sharpe Instrument, then passe the needle through both the holes of the pincers, being first threaded with the Seton or cord: some doe vse onely the needle being sharpe pointed, for this purpose, beware you picke not the muscle of the neck, so you must hold the skin fast with the pincers and cause the sick to moue his head, so you shall easely perceiue if the muscle be taken hold of: if so be, let goe the gripe and take onely the skinne, then pearce and passe your needle with the Seton which shalbe an ell in length or thereabouts to the grossenes of a small Goose quill, then take out the needle, and let the Seton remaine, rubbing so much of it as possesseth the wound with common digestiue, fresh butter, or *serat Galen*, and aboue the wound applye an emplaster of *seratum refrigerans Galeni*, *rosatum Mesues*, or such like for two or three daies, thereafter *betonica* or *diapalma*: some for this purpose doe onely apply Woodbind leaues as wee vse in cauters, drawing the Seton the bredth of the wound euery day at morning and night, till it be almost nere the end, make it euer cleane, that no filth remaine on it, then draw it the other way after the same manner, by the which meanes one Seton will serue a moneth, or longer: when you please to change it, sow another new Seton finely to the end thereof, in such sort that it slip not in throught passing, then cut away the old, and leaue the new, and continue this from so long as shalbe found expedient, while the humor be wellevacuated, diuerted, or intercepted: some in long maladies doe continue this one yere or two according to the greatnes of the disease. To apply the Seton in the *flauell*, or *coddes*, you shall onely take hold with your pincers the cods, or skin of the *flauell*, and pearce it with a reasonable great needle, passing and vsing it as the former; it were verie good before the applying of the Seton, to purge the body, as also a little after it be taken away, for feare the euill humors take their course to the part where the Seton was of before.



## CHAP. XVI.

**O**f Cauters actuals, their formes, and whereof they are composed.

**T**he cauter actual, which is called by the Latins *Cauterium actuale*, is a remedie that hath been thought by our ancients verie profitable for the helpe and recouerie of many diseases: it doth burne actually the part where it is applyed, and is most commonly made of Iron, Masse or Leade: some are made for the welthyer sort of Gould or Silver in diuers formes according to the disease and part where they are applyed, as ye may perceiue in Lib. 9. Chap. 7. and it is thought for some diseases oftentimes to be more meete to be vsed, then the potentiall cauter: if we consider the nature and substance whereof the potentiall is composed, by reason that some ingredients thereof are venomous and the actual is without venenositie, so more healthfull also, verie sudden, and sure in operation, not offending nor causing any accident to the partes adiacent where it is applyed: it is enemy to all venome and corruption, preserveth the part where it is applied from putrefaction, and consumeth mightily the maligne and venomous qualitie which is hid in any part of the body, it being there applyed, it correcteth the cold weake temperate, consumeth and drieth up all superfluous humiditie, with diuers other profitable helps: For y<sup>e</sup> which learned Chirurgions of old, did vse diuers formes of actual cauterizations, as witnesseth Galen, Hippocrates, and others who sometime did cauterize with burning oyle, stampe the roote of *Aristolocia*, therein, then light it at the fier, and applyed it burning to the part. *Celius, Aurelius, Dioscorides, and Attius*, sometime did cauterize with drie goatsdung fired, *Aetius* with boyling oyle, *Albucras* did cauterize teeth and other corrupt parts with boyled Butter, *Guydo* with melted Brimstone: all those formes were wont to be applyed in diuers

Gal. 6. simp.

cap. 27.

Alb. li. i. c. 2.

Celius, Aure-

lius, Dioscori-

des, Attius,

Aetius.

Alb. li. i. ca. 2.

Guydo.



Albu, loco ci-  
ta.

diuers parts of the body, for diuers occasions. Like as for discharging of nature, eyther by rebullion, interception, or euacuation of any humo<sup>r</sup>, which did offend either in quantitie or qualitie, also for euacuating of a malignant and venomous vapour that is hid in any part, chiefly about blcers corrosiues, and ambulatiues, fluxions of the nose, *Ægilops*, ciatick passions, and all other parts that require euacuation, they are sometime applied on the head, at that part where the suture sagittall doth end, and the coronall begin, which I haue often practised for the megrim and other dolors of the head, by which meanes diuers grosse humo<sup>r</sup>s and vapours doe exhale from the braines: they be likewise applyed for the epelepsie, to giue issue to some vapour venomous at that part which often causeth the disease, they be also vsed for shortnes of breath, dolors of the teeth, eares, and spuinances, inflammation of the amygdals, *Columnella*, and other diseases of the mouth, anheles: also for the haire which grow within the eyelids, in *Polipus*, *Osena*, some vse to apply them in fūe sundry parts of the head, for Leprosie: but for the rare effects which follow vpon it, for the present, I will ouerpasse them. These be the formes and vtilities of those actual cauters which was practised by our ancients: On those parts where we apply those cauters for gangrens, or great flux of bloud, we put on the parts adiacent a compresse wet in *Oxycrate*, iuce of *Plantine*, *Mozall*, or whites of Eggs, beaten with *Plantine* water, and the cauter being applyed to corrupt bones: in blcers we apply about the borders of the sayd blcers, little peeces of cloath wet in eyther of those liquo<sup>r</sup>s, or a little *refrigerans Galeni*, which both doe pacifie the paine, and causeth the escarre to fall: it softneth the escarre and parts adiacent, by the humiditie. This cauter by the heate doth excitat the naturall heate from the center to the circumference, after the applying of it, we commonlie doe vse a digestiue made of oyle of *Roses*, *Turpentine*, and yolkes of Eggs; others vse onely oyle of Eggs, and *Turpentine*, mixed



mixed with a little powder of *Aristolochia*, & Beane meale. Some late Practitioners (chiefly the Italians, who have been more curious then is needfull) have for the most part neglected all those formes of cauterizing, alleadging them to be over vehement, fearefull to be practised, and not to be used but in great extremities, like as in staying of vehement fluxe of blood, in great vaines and artiers, in gangrens and mortifications, carbuncles and bubons malignes, corrupt and rotten bones, they being enemies to all rottenesse and corruption, and helpeth the separation of the bones: also in venomous blcers and byting of venomous beasts, are very profitable: as for all other occasions that they were used for by our ancients, we now doe use in their place the potentiall cauter, as you shall heare in this next Chapter.

## CHAP. XVII.

## C Of the cauter Potentiall, and composition thereof.

**T**he potentiall cauter which the Latines doe call *cauterium* *potentiale*, or *piroticum*, is that which by the extreame heat hath the force to burne the part where it is applied like fire, leauing an escharre or crust. It is composed of diuers sorts of matter which be hote in the fourth degree: of these, some be extreame hote, others not so hote according to their operation. Among the which are reckoned Cautarides, Vitrioll, Tartall, Arsenicke, Oypimont, Sublimat, strong water, oyle of Vitriol, Cloues, Sage, or Brimstone; as also of diuers other things, as ashes of the barke of Ashe, Palme, Oake, Figge, and Vine-tree, Beane stalkes, quicke Lyme, Salnitre, Ammoniacke, *Axungia vitri*, Vine-stone, and grauill, all these or a part of them y<sup>e</sup> may steepe in water foure or fīue dayes, couering them close, and removing them with a peece of wood euery day, morning and evening, then straine it through a cloth, and keepe it in glasses.

Definition.



M. Io. Quintred his cauters.

M. William Clowse his cauters.

ses for your *lixivium* or *capitellum*; when you have to doe to make your cauters, you shall boyle such quantity of that lixivie in a Brazen pan at an hote burning fire, till such time as it shall be coniealed to salt or stone, which being taken from the fire, you shall cut it in little peeces, to the bignes of a pie or halfe a pie, and put in close glasses, that no aire enter therein. The forme of their composition which I doe vse is this, take the ashes of the inward barke of Ashe, Palme, Oake, and and Vine-tree, Beane stalkes, *Esula*, quicke Lyme, gravill, *Axungia vitrei*, of each halfe a pound, Allom, and Roman Vitreol, of each 6. ounces, steepe all in 15. Eng. pintes of running water, which will be about 5. Scottish pintes, mixe all in an earthen pot the space of 5. or 6. dayes, removing it euery day with the baton of wood as you have heard, then put forth the water and saue the grounds, and boyle it at a very hote fire till it grow somewhat thicke, at which time you shall adde vnto it two drammes of *Opium* disolued in *Aquavite*, it hath the vertue to pacifie the paine, and make the escharre moze soft. Or this forme which was vsed by my M. Iohn Quintred Doctor of Chyrurgerie at Paris, thus made, *Rec. Axungia vitrei lib. sem. salis gemme unc. 6. sublimata unc. sem. cineris sarmentorum & truncorum fabarum, an. lib. sem. aqua lib. 10. infundantur spacio 5. aut 6. dierum, & fiat capitellum in fine decoctionis, adde drag. 2. oppij.* Or these which are composed by M. George Baker Chirurgeon to his Maiestie, thus made, take the ashes of the Oake and Vine-tree, stalkes of Beanes, and *Esula*, of each a reasonable quantitie, gravill, Vine-stone, *Axungia vitrei*, of each a little quantitie, steepe them all in water, with a little quicke Limestone, whereof you shall make your capitall, passe it, and boyle it as the former.



**C** Of certaine cautions in applying of caut-  
ters, and on what parts they vle to be put for  
diuers diseases.

**T**he Potentiall Caulter is applyed in diuers parts of the  
body for diuers paines and diseases, for the which great  
care must be had both for the nature and temperature of the  
person, and the nature of the part where they are applyed:  
for in strong rude people, like as Marriners, Labourers,  
Porters, Wyoners, and such like, sharpe strong cauters may  
be vsed. In delicate tender people, women, and children,  
the cauters must be more weake: as also people who be ex-  
tenuate and leane, may not endure strong cauters, because  
their bodies are membranous which prouoketh great do-  
lour. In applying your cauter beware of nerues, mem-  
branes, tendons, and heads of the muscles, great vaines,  
and artiers. If the body be repleat, you shall first purge  
and let blood: they are applyed in diuers parts of the body,  
but for most common in the head, armes, and legges. They  
vse to be applyed in foure diuers parts of the head, the haire  
being first rased, but most often in the fore-head, where the  
suter sagittall mixtes with the coronall, which part is remar-  
ked by Albucasis after this forme, the Chyrurgian must  
cause the sicke person to put the point of his thombe vpon the  
top of his nose, then extend his middle finger right line so  
farre vpon his forehead, as he can iudge which part shall bee  
the iust place where the cauter should be applyed, and must  
penetrate to the bone, which is good for fluxions on the  
eyes, the Megrim, and other dolours of the head, the epi-  
lepsie, difficulty of breath, Ophthalmie, rednesse of the face,  
paine of the teeth, eares, and squinancy. We apply them  
behind and aboue the eares, in both sides of the head, at the  
extremite of the suter lambdoid, taking good heed of the mu-  
scle tritophit, for the more assurance of the which, hold on  
the

Albu. lib. 1.  
cap. 2.



Theo. lib. 3.  
cap. 45.

Bru lib. 2.  
cap. 18.

Hip. lib. de.  
natura ossiū.

the point of your finger fast on the part where you would apply the cauter, then the sick must close & open his mouth, by which meanes you shall perceiue where the sayd muscle endeth, by the motion of the said muscle. Fourthly, we apply them in the necke. There is an Italian Mediciner that vaunteth himselfe to be the first autho<sup>r</sup> of applying of Cauters in that part; yet I haue read, that, that part was obserued a long time befoze by Hippocrates: this Cauter should be applyed betwixt the first and second vertebre, fo<sup>r</sup> inbe-  
terate fluxions and diseases of the eies, fo<sup>r</sup> Cauters and distillations of the head, to e vacuate and stoppe them from falling on the thozar, and some principall part; they are also put on the inner side of the arme, about the middelt thereof, nere vnto the vaines and artiers, but no waies touching them: fo<sup>r</sup> assurance of the which, hold your finger on the part, cause the sick to moue his arme, so he shall easily perceiue if there be either vaine, artier, o<sup>r</sup> nerue vnder it: wee apply them on the leggs, within thre inches to the knee, eyther in the out-side betwixt the two bones, o<sup>r</sup> in the inside nere vnto the vaine, and is good fo<sup>r</sup> the critick, fo<sup>r</sup> interception of humo<sup>r</sup>, which doe cause and entertaine vlcers and paine in the leggs & fete: They are also applyed in diuers other parts of the body, to giue issue out to y<sup>e</sup> matter therein contained, o<sup>r</sup> where there is vehement dolour o<sup>r</sup> humo<sup>r</sup> malignant, and fume vapo<sup>r</sup>ous, and in the emunctories to giue issue to any vapour o<sup>r</sup> humo<sup>r</sup>, which must be done befoze the perfect suppuration thereof, as you haue heard in the chapter of Parotide.

#### CHAP. XIX.

¶ Sheweth the way to applie Cauters rightly.

**T**O apply Cauters rightly, the Chirurgion must iustly marke the place, either with the point of his finger, o<sup>r</sup> drop of Inke, then make a little emplaster the bredth of a  
iii.



xii. pence either of *Diapalma*, or some astringent and sticking plaister with a little hole in the midst of it, as you shall think meet for the greatnes or littlenes of the issue that ye would make, applie the plaister in such sort, that the marke of the Anke appeare in the midst of the hole of the sayd plaister, then apply your Caulter on the sayd hole; some doe wet this hole with a little spittle befoze the applying of the Caulter, so it shall worke moze easily, thereafter put an other emplaster aboue it and bind it with a little thick compresse, letting it remaine till such time it worke the effect you require, which wilbe in foure or fve houres, if you thinke that the first Caulter hath not gone deepe enough, applie another after theforesaid manner, which being done, take away the plaister and scarifie the escarre, and apply on it to separate the escarre or burnt part from the hole a little oyle of roses, turpentine, or butter, with a little Iris of Florence, or basilicon, some after the first emplaster is taken off, doe cut clean away the escarre with a bistorie. I doe only scarifie; thereafter applie a medicament for foure or fve daies, in which time the escarre doth commonly fall away, and the humors taketh the course to that part; which done, it must be holde open till such time as the disease be whole, for which it was made to hold it open, we vse a great pie, a little ball of Gold or Silver gilt, of the bignes of a small Pistoll bullet, some make those bals of Kubarb, Woodbine, Bush, or Agarick. I my selfe doe vse certaine bals, which last fve or six monethes, and hath the vertue to draw and hold open, and are thus made. Take wax i. Dram. Verdegrease, Opimount, and Vermodates of each i. vnc. Sublimat and powder of caustarits of each dim. vnc. with a little rayson. I make little bals which may be kept for your vsage, and vse as the formers, putting on the wound a woodbine leafe, with a compresse of cleane linnen cloath in two doubles, tie it with a band and dresse it morning and evening, if it boyd much: if not, once a day: for such as trauell, and may not euer get Woodbine leaues. I doe vse Seare cloath which lasteth fve



or six weekes wiping it cleane and vsing sometime one side, sometime another, and is thus made. *Rec. emplastrum triaformaci. lib. sem. cera alba unc. 2. champhora unc. 1. li- targiri aurei puluerizati unc. 2. spicimardi unc. 1. olei oliuarum unc. 1. misce omnia simul.* Melt all these ingredients, there- after dip a round linnen cloath therein, then cut it in peeces, to serue for your vse: as also it is good for cold humors, and vlcers: Sometime we are constrained to continue those Cauters for a long time, if so happen euery yeere once, it were good they were remoued a little, eyther higher, or low- er, or sidewaies; so the matter will auoyde the better, for oftentimes the borders of the Cauters become callous and hard, so empaseth the much flowing of them. If you please not to renew the Cauters, you may consume such callosities by such remedies as yee haue hard in vlcers, with callositie, if in those Cauters or fountenels there be excrecence of flesh, which sometime groweth and weareth forth the bullet, it must be cured by such remedies as yee heard in vlcers, with excrecence of flesh: It happeneth som- times after the fountenell or Cauler beginneth to runne, there cometh inflammation & dolour in and about the part: for remedy whereof you shall applye *Ceratum refrigerans, Caleni, Pupuleon, Resatum Mesues*, or some vnguent, or Cataplasme Anodyn: oftentimes when those is- sues doe run much and are not often handled and dressed, the parts adiacent become vlcered or excoziate by the acry- monie of that humor which floweth, which causeth great paine; for the cure whereof, you must anoynt the part with *Cerat Galen, Pomad*, or red desicative, vntill such time the excoziation be whole. As for these that make a skarre like vnto the Cauler Actuell, they be of diuers formes, and are applyed in sundry parts of the body, for diuers affections, as you haue heard.



## Of Bathes and their Effects.

**B**athing, as by the learned *Herodotus* is at large declar'd *Herodotus.*  
 Bathing, is a washing and steeping of the whole body, for  
 the better preservation and conservation of mans health,  
 and recovery of that which is lost, which was had in great  
 use and custome amongst the Ancients, as among the *Antillus lib. 1.*  
*de remedi.*  
 Greeks, Arabians and Latines, and is also very much us-  
 ed and practised in all Nations in these our daies, and is  
 reckoned among the sorts of evacuations, a singular reme-  
 dy: whereof there are two sorts, one naturall, and another  
 artificiall. The naturall are sayd to be such, as come, and  
 proceede naturally out of the ground, and are alwayes  
 warme and hotte of themselves, but yet are of diuers sorts,  
 qualities, and vertues, according to the diuersitie of the *Tralian, lib. 8.*  
 places, from whence the water cometh and proceedeth, as  
 if it come from Salt, Allom, Sulphur, Brasse, Copper,  
 Golde, Iron, and such like. The Salt is good for pitui-  
 fous, cold, and humide Maladies, Hydropsie, dolours,  
 paynes and aches of the belly, stomack, matrix and kid-  
 neis, also it is good for all Catarres, Epilepsie, dolors of  
 the bladder, head, stomack and eares, whites of women, and  
 scabbes generally through all the body, as is at large dis- *Gal. de sanita.*  
 coursed and set downe by Galen. The Alluminous are *tuenda.*  
 drying and heating, and is good for all colde and humide  
 diseases and sicknesses, vomiting of bloud, staying the he-  
 merrhoides, the monethly course of women, aborting with  
 childe, varices on the legges, hydropsie, maligne vlcers, rot-  
 ten, waterie tumors, for all sortes of vomiting. The  
 Sulphurous are drying in the 4 degree and heale the parts  
 neruous, which are cold and humide, soften the hard parts,  
 appease dolour, and comfort the stomack and spleene, they  
 are good for the stone, strangurie, for all cold and humide  
 Maladies, Palsies, Hydropsies, Apoplexies, yet they  
 must



Lib. de. med<sup>e</sup>  
morbis.

Lib. citato.

Gal. de sanita-  
te tuenda. lib.

Hip. Celsus.  
Fuchius.

must be moderately vſed. Thoſe, whoſe minerall is Iron and ſteele, are colde, ſtipticke and drye, good for hotte and humide Maladies, as Goutes and dolors, of the articles, debilitie, and ſoftneſſe of the ſtomack and milt, apoſtumes in the eares, monethly courſe, flux of vrine, hemoꝝrhoides, out-comming of the fundament, and all vlcers in the bladder, as ſayth Fuchius. The Copperis, which heate, reſolve, clenſe, conſolide, are good for colde and humide diſeaſes, dolors of the guts, maligne vlcers, and members contuſed, alſo for maladies in the mouth, inflammation in the thꝛoat and amigdalles, all ſickneſſe of the eyes. Thoſe that haue their minerall Golde, are hotte and drie, and good for the collicke, voluulus, fiſtules, Goutte, maligne vlcers, cold ſtomacks, the ſtone, rupture, ſcabbes, leproſie, diſeaſes of the eyes, ſtinck in the mouth, palpitacion of the heart, as ſayth Fuchius. The Leade being the minerall, they are good for all maligne vlcers, canckers, fiſtules, diuers affections of the ſkinne, kidneis and bladder, whites in women, hemoꝝrhoides. There are ſome mixed with diuers of theſe together, as in *Lorraine*, *Burgundie*, and diuers parts of *Almaine* and *Italie*, of the which *Wickern* and *Fuchius* haue amply wꝛitten. The artificiall bathes are artificially made, by imitation of the naturall, to ſupply the want thereof, as of running water and mirtion of one or moe of theſe minerals, diuerſifying and appropriating them according to the diſeaſe, ſometime to heate Iron and ſtale redde hotte, and ſlake it in the water, and ſo it participateth the vertue. Sometime by mixing of hearbes, flowers, roots, ſimply, ſometime the decoction of them, alſo of milk or wine, according to the diſeaſe, as to appeaſe dolor, to ſoften, to open the conduites, to looſe or binde in all theſe ſorts. Sometime we vſe water called *balneum aquæ dulcis*, of the which come great effects, ſo that it bee alwaies warme, it is good for all outward affections of the body, it heateth, appeaſeth dolor, openeth the pores of the ſkinne, tempereth and euacuateth ill humoꝝs, prouoketh the purgations and



and hemorroides in women, discusseth and diggeth the excrements, softneth the hard parts humecteth all the parts of the body, prouoketh sleepe, corroboreth the ventricle, helpeth the concoction and naturall heate, good for all affections of the matrix, inflammation of the lights, for all intemperie, except the humide, dolor of the head and eyes, maladies of the lights, lassitude of the stomack and back, for all fluxions and members vlcered, for all scabbes and vices in the skinne of both old and young, it softneth the articles, clarifieth the voice, moueth vrine, bringeth the flesh and skinne in good temperature, it mundifieth and is good for hettick feuers and phrensies as saith *Hippocrates*, it discusseth flatuosities, and sharpe excrements, the water must not be too hot, for it healeth and closeth the pores, and so letteth the excrements vnder the skinne to come forth. It must be done with great discretion, otherwise it will be offensive, as you may perceiue by this Epigram.

*Balnea, vina, venus, corrumpunt corpora nostra;  
Restitunt eadem balnea, vina, venus.*

#### CHAP. XXI.

### ¶ Of Cautions to be vsed in Bathing.

**N**otwithstanding of the great benefit, which commeth thereof, it must be moderately vsed, for the excessive vsing hereof offendeth the heart, causeth syncope, taketh away the appetite, loseth the ioynts, resolueth the naturall heate, prouoketh næsing, moueth humors and offendeth the vlcers as sayth *Galen*. The bathe must be made in this *Gal. lib. de. sanit. tuen.* sort, first there must be a vessell of the length of the party, of two foote broade, of height two and a halfe, or thre, it must be almost full of water. After he hath remaineth a while in the bath, fill it with warme water, couer the vessell aboue with a couerlet, sheete, or some such like thing; hauing remained therein as long as is needefull, the partie shall



Henricus  
Rantzovius.

Hero. lib. de  
remed. foris  
adhibendis.

come forth of the bath, and dry himselfe with hot clothes, put a hot sheete about him, and cover all his body warme, put him in bed, cover him with light warme clothes, so he shall sweat very easily: after he hath sweat one houre or longer as he may endure, then take the wet sheet from him and dry him with warme napkins, chiefly the head under his armes, breast, and roots of his thighs, then let him rest in his bed an houre or two, till he be reasonably refreshed, then give him a drye cleane warme shirt, and let him keepe his chamber warme all that day, some do thinke it not meet to wash the head, grounding theselues only vpon these verses. *Sepè manus, raroq; pedes, caput verò nunquam, esse lavandū;* if the party be strong, he may bath himselfe in like manner the after noone, and so continue three or sixe dayes as shall be thought expedient, entring sometime once a day, otherwhiles twice, adding to the bath such sorts of dregs or hearbs as shalbe most expedient, and hollesome for the patient, and his disease: the common sort vse commonlie in all bathes, these hearbes following, chiefly in the spring and sommer when they are in vertue, mallowes, marsh-mallows, violets, parietarie, fumitarie, Fenill, *Angelica*, Dragon or Buglosse, Plantaine, patience, agrimonie, beare foote, hearts tongue, betonie, roses, which all or some of these may be sodden a little afore they bee put in the bath.

#### CHAP. XXII.

**O**f things to be obserued before ye enter into the Bath, in, and after Bathing.

Antillus.

Hip. apho. 51.  
Bru. lib. 1. de  
balneis.

Iohan. Franc.  
de balniorum  
utilitate.

**F**irst as councelleth *Antillus*, a very ancient mediciner the party should be fasting, or else foure houres after meat, for, as sayth Hippocrates, a man must not enter in hauing his belly full of meate and drinke, so it is meetest time in the morning, or foure houres after noone. Next, ye must beware that no noble part be offended, nor much debilitated, for if the humors bee moued by the bath, the pores

and



and waies dilated, the humors goeth easily to the part offended. The partie must also befoze he enter, be purged, no weake body should enter therein. While he is in it, hee must keepe himselfe warme; the bath must be meanely warme, neither too hot nor cold, for if it be too hot, it closeth the pores of the skin, letteth the fourth coming of the excrements, and heateth the blood. Hippocrates counsell- Hippocrates.  
 leth to be silent in the bath and in no waies commoued, if he war feeble, he may take a little wine or a sop of bread dipped in it, or some prunes to quench his thirst, as counsell-  
 leth Cassius in his problemes, let him drie the sweat of his Cassius prob.  
 face and temples and behind the eares. He must not stay so long the first day, as the rest, Herodotus counsell- Herodotus.  
 leth to be halfe an houre at the first, afterwards an houre or two. After the coming forth, the party must be well dried chiefly his head as counsell- Hippocrates, for humidity  
 is as great an enemy to the head, as cold, he must haue the passage open to the naturall excrements, and not cate  
 for two houres after he come forth of the bathe.

## CHAP. XXIII.

## ¶ Of frictions, and their effects.

Of rubbing and frictions, Galen hath amply written in Galen.  
 his booke *de tuenda sanitate*, as also Aetius, Paulus, Paul. Aetius,  
 and Oribasius, with sundrie other learned men, who haue Oribasius.  
 vsed them for diuers occasions, & in diuers manners, some-  
 time with ointments and oyles, which was in great vse  
 amongst the Romans and Grekes. Those who were  
 olde vsed rubbing with oyle of *irinum*, *camomelinum* & *nar-*  
*dinum*. Hippocrates commendeth the same very much, for Hippocrates.  
 saith he, it hath the force to bind, loose, increase flesh and di-  
 minish the same, for hard rubbing doth loose and mollifie,  
 much rubbing diminisheth the flesh, meane rubbing doth  
 augment and increase flesh.

They



Henricus.  
Rantzovius.

They are vsed for diuers other occasions, as ye haue heard, namely to loose and open the pores and conduits of the skinne, to make thinne humors, and auoyd all obstructions, for the diuerting of fluxion from any part of the body, and especially from the head. They must be done with a cloth or sponge, first softly and easily, sometime to continue vntill the flesh swell and become redde, and may bee done at all times, and chiefly in the morning, beginning at the lower parts, so to ascend to the head, which is accounted generall rubbing. If any particular part be diseased, rubbe onely the place affected whereby in sundry diseases diuers effects are wrought.

THE





# THE TENTH BOOKE,

*Of Antidotaries Chyrurgicall;*

*Which containeth XIIII. Chapters; whose Contents bee these; by PETER LOVVE*

*Scottishman.*

- Chap. 1. Of medicaments in generall.  
 2. Of medicaments Anodines.  
 3. Of repelling medicaments.  
 4. Of medicaments attractiues.  
 5. Of medicaments resolutiues.  
 6. Of remollient medicaments.  
 7. Of suppuratiues.  
 8. Of mundificatiues.  
 9. Of incarnatiues.  
 10. Of Cicatrizants.  
 11. Of medicaments agglutinatiue.  
 12. Of medicaments Catereticks.  
 13. Of medicaments that stanch blood.  
 14. Of Oyles, vnguents, and plaisters.

## CHAP. I.

### Of medicaments in generall.

**I**n this Booke we will speake of diuers sorts of medicaments commonly vſed by the Chyrurgians, in the which we ſhall firſt ſhew the definiton and diuiſion of euery one ſeuerally, both ſimples and compoſed, whereof they proceed and take their originall, as of Plants, Trees, Beasts, Earth, or Sea. Of the parts of Plants,  
 as



as of the leaues, flowers, barke, roote, seede, gumme, iuyce  
 or oyles. Of beasts, as of Vipers, Serpents, Cantarides,  
 Frogs, Cats; or of the dissimulare parts of beasts, as the  
 Liuer, Lyles, Heart, or Braines; also of the bones, mar-  
 row, grease, bloud, milke, and flesh; likewise of the excre-  
 ments, as of the Haire, Hornes, Dunge, and such like. Of  
 Minerals or earth, as Stones, Mettals, Orpiment, San-  
 daracha, Sulphur, Cadmia, Litharge, Quicke siluer, Ar-  
 gent, Calcites. Of the Sea and Waters, as all kind of  
 Salt, Sponges, Asphaltum, Nitre, Amber, Bitumen,  
 Pissaphalen, Garinum, Alcionium. The compounds may  
 be made of these simples diuers waies, as oyles, Unguents,  
 Liniments, Cerates, Cataplasmes, Emplasters, distilled  
 water, Fomentations, Vaporations, Suffumigations,  
 Gargarismes, Bathes, and such like: but for the better  
 vnderstanding of this matter, we shall shew the degrees of  
 medicaments, and next the measure and weight. There  
 are foure degrees of medicines, hote, cold, drie and humide,  
 and haue foure qualities, as heating, cooling, drying, and  
 humecting, but not manifestly, and is so little, as scarcely  
 knowne by the sence. The second degree is heating, cooling,  
 drying, humecting manifestly, as is apparant to the iudge-  
 ment. The third degree is heating, cooling, drying and hu-  
 meding, offending the senses, but not extreame. The  
 fourth degree is hote, burning, and maketh a scarre and cor-  
 rupteth the senses, as quicke Lyme, all caustickes Actuell  
 and Potentiall, cold, which mortifieth and obtundeth the  
 senses, as Opium, and all stupefactiues, or drie, which burne  
 like Cauters actuell: humide is not so vehement, as the  
 others, for humiditie is not of such force, except it be ioyned  
 with cold, of the which Galen hath made no mention. After  
 this manner the medicaments were put in degrees, before  
 Galen, as reporteth Dioscorides.

Galen.

Dioscorides.

Temperate  
things.*Medicaments temperate in hote and cold.*

The Medicaments that are temperate in heate and cold,  
 are Faba, lens, hordeum, fructus & folia brusci, species ca-  
 pillorum



pillorum veneris, axungia suilla, oleum dulce, cera, lac, vitellus oui, lytargirus, adjantum, cadmia, glisiri, cucurbita, fructus, folia brussi, cortices citri, &c.

*Medicaments hote in the first degree.*

Aristolochia rotunda, althæa, amigdalæ dulces, juiubæ, castanæ, ficus brassica, absinthium, apium, eupatorium, buglossa, borago, mercurialis, morsus diaboli, salvia, scolopendria, ebulus spicanardi, aloe, trit cum, fennigrecum, semen Lini, mel, butirum, sacharum, serum lactis, melilotus, vinum novum, fenecio, sambucus, ebuluo, agaricum orbis ænulum.

*Medicaments hote in the 2. degree.*

Guajacum, Cyperus, Calamus aromaticus, Peonia, Nux Indica, nux muscata, amigdalæ amaræ, enula campana, branca vrsina, consolida major, sanicula, dens leonis, eruca, gariophyllata, lauendula, cardamomum, marthubium, mentha domestica, petroselinum, scabiosa, feniculum, thus, mirra, mastiche, sarcocolla, bryonia, betonica, rubia tinctorum, fumestarie, gallitricum, genista, lupulus æsippus, melissa, mentha ranunculus.

*Medicaments hote in the 3. degree.*

Gentiana, Aristolochia longa, Polipodium, Pyrethrum, raphanus, satyrion, acorus, gingiber, iris, apium risus, artemisia, cheresolium, cupressus, helleborus, scrophularia, nasturtium, organum, salvia, ciclamen, dictamus, opopanax, rosmarinus, galbanum, Juniperus, anisum, hissopus, abrotanum, salyrium, rosmarinus, staphisagria, apopinax, rhapentichum, fœniculi, asserum, anisum betonica, colocynthus, costus, ligustrum, perforata, ruta sabina, galbanum, iris radix.

*Medicaments hote in the 4. degree.*

Allium, Cepa, Tithimallus, Sinapi, Euphorbium, Piper, oleum petroleum, pyrethrum, Anacardus, satureia.

*Medicaments cold in the 1. degree.*

Castanea, Malua, Granata dulcia, Spina alba, Gramen, hepatica, liliū, tonuallum, hordeum, atriplex, pira, poma, viola,



viola, rosa, coroneum, malum, granatum.

*Medicaments cold in the 2. degree.*

Pomum persicum, Cucurbita, Cucumer, Asininum, Sinoglossum, primulaevis, pulmonaria, mala granata fetida, psyllium, balauſtia, acacia, plantago, pomum persicum endivia, lenticula palustris, nymphaea.

*Medicaments cold in the 3. degree.*

Virga pastoris, Acetosa, Endivia silvestris, Tormentilla, portulaca, vermicularis, semper vivum, solanum hortense, fragaria, ribes, camphora.

*Medicaments cold in the 4. degree.*

Papauer, Opium, Cicula, hiosciamus, mandragora.

*Medicaments moist in the 1. degree.*

Enula campana, Malua, Buglossum, Borago, Spinachia, amigdales, iuiuba, nuxindica, semen lini, butirum, viola, pisa.

*Medicaments humide in the 2. degree.*

Lilium, Conuallum, Lenticula palustris, Nymphaea, Lactuca, branca vrsina, cucumer asininus, portulaca, primulaevis, eruca, dactili, psyllium, ammoniacum, atriplex, pulmonaria, æringium, cucurbita.

*Medicaments humide in the 3. degree.*

Satyrion, Endivia silvestris, Fragaria, Cucurbita, brassica.

*Medicaments humide in the 4. degree.*

Argentum vivum.

*Medicaments drie in the 1. degree.*

Feniculum, radix Altheæ, morsus Diaboli, Sambucus, mala granata, Ebulus, castanea, hordeum, fenigrecum, camomilla, mellilotum, crocus, thus, argenti spuma, sarcocolla, faba, fumus terræ, tormentilla, acetosa, mercurialis salix, granum shenanthum.

*Medicaments drie in the 2. degree.*

Aristolochia, Guajacum, Cyperus, Calamus Aromaticus, Cynamomum, Anethum, Abrotanum, Cerefolium, Consolida major, Opium, Centaureum, virga pastoris, Cynoglossum,



Cynoglossum, Sanicula, dens Leonis, Hissopus, Genista, Marthumbium, Petroselinum, Scabiosa, Pimpinella, Cardamomum, Amigdales amaræ, Millium, Nux Indica, Nux Muscata, Myrrha, Orobus, Mel, Anethum, Cyperus, cypressus, custula, endivia, fœniculum, lavendula, garriophyllata, lupulus, milissa, mentha, ficus, mala granata, mastick.

*Medicaments drie in the 3. degree.*

Lauendula, Cytlaminus, Alcorus, Raphanus, Piretum, gentiana, galanga, serpentaria minor, Absynthium, artemesia, Apium Rifus, betonica, chelidonium, cicuta, helleborus, scrophularia, ligustrum, nasturtium, origanum, pentaphillon, rosmarinus, Sabina, Anisum, nigella, Agnus castus, allium, cumminum, sanguis Draconis, galla, abrotanum, perforata, pulegium, ruta, tormentille, serpentaria, acetosa, assarum, creta marina, acetum, alooe, Milium,

*Medicaments drie in the 4. degree.*

Piper, tithimallus, anacardus, saturea, oleum petroselinum, Sinapi, euphorbium, allium, nasturtium.

¶ Of the Weights and Measures of Medicaments, vsed by the Chyrurgians.

**Lib.** Signifieth a pound, that is to say, 12. ounces.

**Onc.** Signifieth one ounce, which is, 8. drammes.

**Drag.** Signifieth a dram, which is, 3. scruples.

**Scr.** Signifieth a scruple, which is, 20. graines of wheat.

**Gra.** Signifieth a graine of wheat.

Denarius and Drachma is all one.

**M.** Signifieth *Manipulus*, and is as much as one can hold in his hand.

**P.** Signifieth *Pugill*, which is as much as one can take betwixt the thombe and the two foremost fingers.

**Cyathus.** Signifieth so much as one may easily drinke at one draught.

*Pet.*



Yet forasmuch as the perfect knowledg in compounding of medicaments, which are ordinarily vsed by the Chyrurgions, cannot well be known without the knowledge of the quantity of both waights and Measures; so for the better instruction in that matter, I will briefly declare to you as they are ordinarily marked by the Physicians and Chyrurgians in this our time.

Libra, hath this marke.

Semis.

Vncia.

Quarta.

Dragma.

Scrupulus.

Grana.

Ana, of each one a little much, marked thus.

Libr. semi.

Semuncia.

and so of the rest: but because there be diuers sorts of diseases and sundy symptoms which happen in them, for the which I shall set downe diuers sorts of remedies which are vsed by the Chyrurgions, as well for the helpe of the symptome, as recouerie of ill diseases, like as Medicaments, Anodines, Repercussiuēs, Attractiuēs, Resolatiuēs, Emolientis, Suppuratiuēs, Mundificatiuēs, Incarnatiuēs, Siccatrizants, Agglutinatiuēs, Catharetickes, Septickes, Caustickes, and such as doe re-  
straine fluxe of bloud; of all which I will beginne at Anodines, and so prosecute the rest.

## CHAP. II.

### Of Medicaments which appease dolour called *Anodins*.

Gal. lib. 2 de  
locis affect.  
Gal. 12. meth.  
& de palpitac.

**D**olour is a grieuous thing, like as pleasure is a ioyfull, the which is cured first by knowing the cause, next by the ablation of the same. The Cause of dolour is either dis-  
temperature,



temperature, or solution of continuity which is either hote, dry, or humide. The hote causeth vehement paine. The drye moueth paine, but not so vehement. The humide maketh almost no paine at all. The medicaments Anodin called by the Grækes *Progonia*, are those that haue force by their temperate heate to appease the dolour, of the which some be proper, some be Improper. The proper Anodins are those which by a contrary quality open and take away the cause of dolour, like as *oleum laurinum* in cold dolors, *violare* in hote dolors, *hydelium* in drye dolors. The Anodins improper are those which not by themselves, but by accident appease the paine, and are called by the Grækes *Narcotickes*, the which stupifie the feeling of the part and make it more heauie : The office of the proper Anodins is to euacuate, digest, rarifie, & extenuate the euill humors which be sharpe, thicke, vaporous, and cold.

Gal.li.5.c.18.  
simp.

*The Anodins proper, are either Simple, or Composed.*

The Simple, like as *oleum amygdalarum dulcium*, *butiri*, *lini*, *ouorum*, *hyperici*, *axungia*, *galline*, *anatis*, *anseris*, *folij malne*, *violarei*, *parietarie*, *medulla vituli*, & *cerui*, *aqua calida*, *semen lini*, *camomilla*, *fenugrecum mellilotum*, *folia hyoschiami*, *ol. oliuarum* & *anethi*.

*The Compound Anodins.*

The Compounds of these are oyles, vnguents, liniments, and plaisters, fomentations, cataplasmes, and such like, which may be made according to the varietie of the disease.

*Anodines hote.*

*Oleum Anetinum*, *Camomellinum*, *Amygdalarum dulcium*, *lumbricorum*, *lini*, *vulpinum*, *mellinum*, *triticeum*, *de vitellis ovorum*, *sambuceum*, *ceræ*, *terebinthinæ*, *irinum*, *hyperici*, *laurinum*, *iuniperinum*, *sulphureum*, *piperum*, *masticinum*, *rosmarinum*, *petroleum* : Of these all mixt together, or some are mingled with them, ye may make liniments, vnguents, as *occiosum*, *nicolai*, *de althea*, *resumptivum*, *anulatum sine mercurio*, *martiatum*,

E c

arragon,



arragon, agrippe, cerati filij zatarie filagrij, cyroneum em-  
plastrum, ceratum, andromachi, forus aqua viæ, panus ca-  
lidus in ea merfus & admotus, ista valent in sedatis dolori-  
bus que procedunt a materia frigida, vnguentum comitis-  
fæ is proper for the matrix, martiatum for the nerves, bac-  
cæ lauri for the bellie.

*Linimentum callidum.*

Hote linimēt. *Rec.* Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium, Sambutinum, an.  
vnc. 2. ladani vnc. 1. croci drag. 1. se. muscilaginis seminis  
althææ, & lini extractæ in aqua melliloti, vnc. 2. cere vnc. se.  
seminis anethi, vnc. 1. se. succi caulium vnc. 3. bulliant ad  
succorum consumptionem, fiat linimentum.

*Aliud.*

Hote cerat. *Rec.* Picis, Burgundiæ, vnc. 3. Theriacis & Mithridati,  
an. vnc. 1. pulueris seminis anisi, dauci an. drag. 1. se. olei  
irini & camomillini, an. vnc. 1. fiat ceratum.

*Cataplasma.*

Cataplasme. *Rec.* Florum melliloti in sapa coëtorum, vnc. 4. Ouorum  
vitella 4. ad duritiem in aceto cocta, olei anetini & camo-  
millini, an. vnc. 1. se. fiat cataplasma.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Baccarum lauri, Iuniperi puluerisatarum an. drag. 3.  
coquantur in vino veteri & oleo rosato optimo, fiat cata-  
plasma.

*Anodina frigida.*

Coldanodins *Oleum omphacinum, Papauerum, Rosarum, Violarum,*  
liliorum de hyosciamo vnguentum, populeum de lytargiro  
refrigerans galeni, santellinum, musilago, psilij, cydoniorū,  
opium, cum croco, emplastrum de mineralibus, vnguentū  
desiccativum rubeum.

*Compounds.*

Cold compo- *Rec.* Cere albe vnc. 5. Olei Camomillæ, & Rosarum  
sed liniments. an. vnc. 2. ouorum, lutea 8. succi coriandri & papaueris al-  
bi an. vnc. 2. croci & opij an. scr. 2. misce cum oxycrato, fi-  
at linimentum.

*Aliud.*



*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Ouorum vitella, 2. foliorum Violarum vnc. 2. opij drag. i. croci scr. i. fiat linimentum.

*Cataplasma.*

*Rec.* Medullæ panis albi, in lacte vaccino Infuse lib. se. Cold cata-  
farinæ, fabarum, hordei & orobi, & lentium, an vnc. i. omē plasme-  
nia dissoluatur foliorum hyosciami & coquantur ad crassiti-  
em, deinde adde olei rosarum, violarū, oxyrhodini an. vnc.  
i. opij, croci an. drag. i. fiat cataplasma.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Soli hyosciami recentium M. 2. coque cum hydro-  
mel, admoveantur parti inflamatæ, cum pauca farina hor-  
dei.

*Vnguentum.*

*Rec.* Vnguenti rosati vnc. 6. pupuleonis vnc. 2. musci Cold vnguenti  
laginis, seminis psilij & cydoniorum an. vnc. i. se. fiat vn-  
guentum.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Seminis psilij, olei rosacei, an. vnc. 2. ceræ albæ,  
vnc. i. fiat vnguentum.

¶ Of Narcoticks, which are Anodins

*Improper.*

**L**ike as in taking away paine there are 3. things to be  
Observed, to wit, the cause of the paine, the paine it selfe,  
and the part where it is: for the which Galen hath set downe  
three kinds of medicaments. Of the which some take away  
the cause, some the paine and not the cause, others neither  
the cause nor pain, but only the feeling of the part, & by accident  
the paine. Of the which some be simples, others composed.  
Galen forbiddeth the vsage of such except the body be pur-  
ged, & in no wise in weake parts & neare the noble part, for  
the great accidents which often doe ensue by the paine.

Tral. li. 8. ca. 6

Gal. lib. 3. de  
facul. sim. c. 18

Gal. li. 13. me.

*Narcotickes simples.*

Mandragora, Hyosciamus, Papauer, Lactura, Succus  
E c 2 opij,



opij, semperuiui, solani, camphora, oleum in quo torpedo  
viva fuit extincta, cicuta.

*Composita.*

Cold compo- Philonium, Romanum, Pillula de Cynoglossa, Oleum  
sed narcoticks hyosciami, papaveris, mandragoræ quibus opij, nonnihil  
diluitur.

*Unguentum.*

Vnguent  
narcoticke.

*Reo.* Vnguenti pupuleonis, olei violacei, an. vnc. i. se-  
minis hyosciami, corticis mandragore opij, an. scr. i. ceræ  
quantum sufficit, fiat vnguentum.

*CHAP. III.*

## ¶ Of Medicaments Repercussives.

Gal. li. 5. c. 18.  
simp.

Nicol, Alexā.

**T**he medicament Repercussive called by the the Latines  
*Repercutiens* or *Repellens*, is that which by the cold  
qualitie putteth backe the humors, or else by the astringion  
corroborateth the part or by one or both letteth the fluxion of  
humors, of the which there are diuers kinds, some are cold  
and humide, others cold and astringent. some hote and a-  
stringent, and are either simple or composed.

The Simple with small or no astringion, like as rosa, en-  
diuia, lactuca, acetosa, umbilicus veneris, portulaca, viola,  
nenuphar, aqua frigida, serum lactis, coriandrum, arno-  
glossum, trifolium, parietaria hyosciamus, poma, pira, al-  
bumen oui, cauda equina, caprifolium, fortiora, virgula pa-  
storis, bursa pastoris, plantago, solanum semper vivum, me-  
lones cucurbita, citruli, lens palustris, psilium, omphacinū,  
cidonia, mirtili, malicoria, balaustra, mandragora, acacia,  
sanguis draconis, papauer, opium, bolus armenus, cerusa,  
terra sigillat, antimonium, plumbum vstum & non vstum,  
consolda maior, farina lupinorum & oribi, vitriolum, rap-  
sus barbatus, nux cupressi, oliui folia. Repercussives hote  
and



and astringent are those, *Consolida maior, absynthium, centaureum, marrubium, cardamomum, cyperus, calamus aromaticus, folia cupressi, farina lupinorum, & orobi, sal, alumer, vitreoli, species, and Sulphur, of these simples you may make compounds.*

*The Compounds.*

*Oleum rosarum, Omphacirum, Absynthium, Oliuarum, cammomillinum, masticum, mandragora, papaveris, cidoniorum, myrtilorum, vnguentum citrinum, pupuleum, album rasis, desiccativum rubeum, ex litargiro, santellinum, rosatum, bartholomeum, refrigerans galeni, pectorale, album camphoratum, aqua rosatum, oxycrosum, diamoron, syrupus rosarum, violarum, aqua, in qua verbena fuit decocta, cerussa, vnguentum somniferum, empl. diacalsithios triafarmacum citrinum.*

*Linimentum repellens.*

*Rec. Muscilaginis, seminis Psilij & cidoniorum in aqua Liniment re-*  
*rosarum & plantaginis extractæ vnc. i. pulueris santali al-* *percussive,*  
*bi, rosarum rubrarum, seminis plantaginis, an. drag. se.*  
*cum pauco cerato refrigerantis galeni & oleo rosateo, fiat*  
*linimentum.*

*Aliud.*

*Rec. Olei rosati & omphacini, an. vnc. i. vnguenti pu-*  
*puleonis & comitissæ, an. vnc. se. agitentur simul in succe*  
*plantaginis & solani ad succorum consumptionem.*

*Ceratam repellens.*

*Rec. Vnguenti rosati drag. 6. Santali rubei drag. 5, San- Cerat reper-*  
*ali albi & citrini, an. drag. 2. se. boli armenici drag. 3. Spodij* *cussive.*  
*drag. 2, cāphoræ drag. i. ceræ albæ vnc. 2. olei rosati lib. se.*

*Cataplasma.*

*Rec. Muscigilanis, Psilij & Cidoniorum in aqua vel suc- Cataplasme*  
*co plantaginis, & opij extractæ vnc. 3. farinæ hordei vnc. 2.* *repercussive,*  
*fiat Cataplasma.*

*Aliud.*

*Rec. Succu Oxalidis, Oxylapathi, an. vnc. 4. farinæ hor-*  
*dei, vnc. se. coquantur, & fiat cataplasma.*



## CHAP. IIII.

## C Of Attractiues.

**T**he medicaments Attractiues which the Greekes call *Elcticon*, by the Latines *Attrahentia*, are contrary to the Repercussives. For so much as they drawe from the Centre to the circumference, and are of temperature hote, and substance thinne, to the end they may pearce moze easily; and may be diuided into three sortes. The first draweth by the naturall heat, the second by putrefaction, the third by an hidden property; some adde the fourth kind, *per fugam vacui*: like as in ventosing, boring, sucking, by bandages, frictions, horseaches, visicatories, mendicaments caustickes, the which indeed be not properly called medicaments Attractiues. Of the foresaid there are two kinds, viz. *Simples*, and *Compounds*.

*Simples.*

Like as *Sabina*, *Cepa*, *Aristolochia*, *Tapfia*, *Herniodactylus*, *bryonia*, omnes citinallorum species, *radix lilei*, *abrotanum*, *vrlica*, *serpentaria minor*, *gentiana*, *asphodelus*, *bdellium*, *apopanax*, *gummi rutæ*, *calx viua*, *nasturtium*, *assa fetida*, *Xilobalsamum*, *carobalsamum*, *thuc*, *mirra*, *maiorana*, *flos rosmarini*, *narcissi radix*, *radix bryonia*, *brassica*, *aquavita*, *aqua marina*, *berula*, *ammoniacum hederæ*, *pix*, *bitumen*, *calx viua*, *sulphur*, *radix ciclamini aurei*, *pigmentum*, *arsenicum*, *calcantum*, *amonicum*, *calaminthum*, *allum*, *dictamus*, *Sinapi*, *assarū*, *Sigillum beatæ Mariæ*, *galbanum*, *viscus*, *querqus*, *euphorbium*, *piretrum*, *cantarides*, *nitrum*, omnes salis species *sinabrum*, *hydrargyrus anagallis*.

*The Compounds.*

*Oleum Hederæ*, *Viscus quercinus*, *pix liquida*, *terebinthina*, *oleum philosophorum*, *vulpium*, *laurinum*, *rutaceum*, *Anetinum*, *petroleum*, *de castoreo*, *de tartaro*, *de hypercono*, *de nuce indica & muscata*, *de sulphure*, *de lateribus*,



bus, vnguentem Aragon, martiatum, fuscum, nicolai, agrippæ, theriaca, sapa, mithridatum, confectio anacardina, emplastrum diachilum magnum & parvum, de meliloto, apostolicon nicolai, oxicroceum. Those which draw by putrefaction, Stercus omne, presertim columbinum, caprinum, fermentum, caseus vetus. Those which draw by property occult: omnia medicamenta purgantia, ambar, præonia, magnes.

*Unguentum attrahens.*

*Rec.* Ammoniacy, Galbani, Sagapeni, an. vnc. 1. dissol. Attractiue vantur in aceto, vt artis est colentur, deinde adde terebin. vnguent. chinæ, vnc. se. olei veteris parum, fiat vnguentum.

*Emplastrum.*

*Rec.* Spumæ argenteæ, Cerusæ, Sallis, an. vnc. 2. omnia Attractiue seorsim tritacum oleo veteri, subjgantur & coquantur, de emplaster. inde vsui seruentur.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Radicum arundinis vnc. 2. florum Angelicæ, mani, radicis brionis, altheæ vnc. se. contundantur simul & melle accipiantur & admoueantur parti.

*Cataplasma.*

*Rec.* Ficus pingues N. 6. passularum mundatarum vnc. Cataplasme 1. coquantur, adde postea ceparum subcineribus coctarū, attractiue, capitum liliorum alborum, an. vnc. 3. Misce cum fermento, sale, & vitellis ouorum, fiat Cataplasma.

*Dropax.*

*Rec.* Picis liquidæ, Ceræ, Colophonis, an. vnc. 2. olei veteris li. se. nitri drag. 2. sulphuris vini. drag. 1. se. piperis albi, Euphorbij an. drag. 1. Misce simul, fiat Dropax.

*CHAP. V.*

**C** Of Medicaments Resolatiues.

**T**he Medicament resolatiue, which the Grækes call *Diaphoreticum*, the Latines *Resolvens* or *Digerens*, and



commonly called *Carminatiuum*, rarifieth and euaporateth by insensible trāspiration the humors, openeth the pores of the skinne, and is of quality hote, which are diuided into two sorts, to wit, the Proper which is weake, and Improper which is strong.

*The Propers.*

Proper resolatiues simple.

Sabina, maiorana, rosmarina, ciclaminis, origanum, absinthium, melilotis, atriplex, spicanardi, camomillum, anethum, anisum, cumminum, hisopus, fūnus terræ, malua, parietaria, vrtica, ebulus, sambucus, valeriana, semen lini, abrotanum, adianthum, medulla ceruina humana aristolochia, brassica, brionia radix, sulfur, fenigrecum, galbanum, hordei, tritici, lupinorum, farina crui, malua cum toto, melilotum, menta, mercurialis, piper, resina, sulphur, stercus omne, therebinthina, adeps anserinus, anatinus, gallinaceus, ceruinus, leonis, caseus vetus, aqua callida, vinum, lana succida.

*The Impropers.*

Improper resolatiues simple.

Semen vrticæ, Dictamum, Ciclamen, Cæpa, radix, Cucumeris agrestis, apium, flos rosmarini, spuma nitri, acetum, hermodactilus, aqua vitæ, piretrum, semina omnia calida, bacca lauri, origanum, coriandrum, cinamonium, cherefolium, nux muscata, calamus odoratus, sabina, maiorina, pulegium, absinthium, anisum, spicanardi, piper, stercus caprinum.

*Composita resoluentia.*

Compound resolatiues.

Oleum Camomille, Aneti, dulce, vetus, olcera mirrhæ terebinthinæ, hypericonis, maioranæ, violarum, de cera, de croco, de bombace, terebinthinæ, Sinapi, sulphureum, petroleum, tartarum, lumbricorum, catellorum, liliatium, vulpinum, amygdalarum, dulcium, amararum, sambuci, iuniperi, de lateribus, scorpionis, saluix, minthæ, rutaceum, de euphorbio, de tartaro, de spica, de petroleo, de baccis, vitellus ovorum, jrinum, nardium, seminis lini laurinum, philosophorum, omne oleum igne calefactum, emplastrum, stomaticum, diachilon magnum, de baccis laurij, de ranis, marciatum.



marciatum, Iriatum, de vigo, de melliloto, Philippi philagrei, vnguentum resumptivum, arragon, enulatum, neapolitanum, oxycrosum, mesux, agrippæ, gummi ammoniacum, dellium, apeponax.

*Unguentum resoluens materiam calidam.*

*Rec.* Olei Camomillæ, Liliorum & violarum, an. vnc. i. Vnguent re-  
butiri recentis sine sale drag. 3. cere quantum sufficit, pul- solued hote.  
ueris, camomellæ drag. i. fiat vnguentum.

*Unguentum resoluens frigidens materiam.*

*Rec.* Olei Liliorum, seminis lini & erini, an. vnc. i. se. Vnguent re-  
emplastri de musilagibus, de mellilo, an. vnc. se. pulueris solued cold  
ireos betonice, an. drag. i. fiat vnguentum. humors.

*Cataplasma resoluens.*

*Rec.* Farinæ fabarum, lini & fenigreci, an. vnc. i. disso- Cataplasme  
nantur & coquantur in oxycrato ad pultis crassitiem, adde resolued.  
pulueris florum camomillæ & melliloti, an. drag. i. ouorum  
vitellos, 3. croci drag. i, olei camomillæ & aneti, an. drag.  
3. butiri recentis, vnc. se. fiat cataplasma.

*Ad flatulentum tumor.*

*Rec.* Olei anetini, & Liliorum, an. vnc. 2. Olei rutæ & To resolue  
laurini, an. vnc. i. succi rute, vnc. 2. bulliant ad succorum woundy tu-  
consumptionem, ceræ quod sufficit vel loco succi aduce mors.  
tantillum aquauitæ ad penetrationem.

*Ad hydropicos & equosos humores.*

*Rec.* Stercoris Columbini, Caprini & vaccini, an. P. i. To resolue  
florum rutæ, camomillæ recentium, seminis lini & anethi a watry tu-  
an. P. i. fermenti veteris, vnc. 2. nitri drag. 2. bulliant mor.  
omnia simul in aqua decoctionis apij, deinde pistentur &  
super lanam succidam bene carpinatam cataplasmatibus instar  
extendantur, deinde calido ventre, hydropico aut hydro-  
cele applicetur.



## ¶ Of Medicaments Emollients.

**T**he medicaments Emollient are called by the Grækes *Malactica*, and by the Latines *Emollientia*, the which haue the vertue to soften the hard parts, and bring them to their naturall estate, of the which some are Common, and some Proper.

*The Common.*

Gal. 5. simpl.

Are those which haue the vertue to soften the hard parts, which is done either by congelation, extenuation, or drynesse.

*The Proper.*Gal. 13. meth.  
lib. 5. sim. c. 1.

Are those which soften the hardnes done by congelation, and are meanlie hote, or else dry or humide, for if the hardnes be done by congelation, the medicament must be hote and drye. If it be droughth as often chaunceth in scirres, y medicament must be hote and humide, alwayes whether it be hote, humide, or dry, it must be moze moderate than the attractiue, and lesse than the suppuratiue. In the vsage of the remedies two things are to be obserued, the one, if any of the noble parts be hard, wee applye no mollients except they be mixed with the astringents, neither they be vsed in tumors scirrous the which are either simple, or composed.

*The Simples.*

As Medulla ceruina, Equina, Canina, Vitulina, Vaccina, ursina, hædina, leporina, humana, porcina, gallina, caprina, leonina, anserina, anatina, vulturina, butirum, gummi amoniacum, bdellium, lapopanaxum, galbanum, sodanum, terebenthina, resina, colophonia, pix, herbæ remollientes, malua cum toto violaria, parietaria, mercurialis beta, narcissi radix, radix brionia, cucumeris siluestris, semen lini, radix liliorum, althæa, atriplex, & fenugreci, ficus pinguis, hordei & tritici farina, caput & pedes arietis cocti, cum pelle in aqua vel lacte. Here you must marke that the mar-  
rowe



rowe and grease of all kind of animals, which are of the high kind, are more hot then the females and Eunuchs; and that of wild beasts and fowles, is more hote then the domesticke or tame.

*Composita emollientia.*

Oleum Liliorum, Lumbricorum, Amygdalarum dulcium, de lino camomillæ, vulpinum, iuniperinum, oleum vetus, althea, ceratum filij sathariæ, vnguentum agrippum, resumptivum, nicolai, diachilum magnum, cum gummis, triapharmacum, de musilaginibus, de althea, ceratum philagrii, oxycroceum, ceroneum, de vigo sine mercurio, oleo liliorum & jrino dissolutum, hydrelum.

Compound  
remedies re-  
solved.

*Emplastrum remolliens.*

*Rec.* Emplastri de musilaginibus & Diachilon communis an. vnc. 2. emolliantur cum oleo liliorum, fiat massa emplastri, adde pulueris Ireos & sulphuris parum.

Softening  
plaster.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Cerati Filij Zachariæ & philagrii an. vnc. 3. vngenti vigonis siue mercurio, emplastri de melliloto & diachilon ireati an. vnc. 1. se. amoniaci in aceto dissoluti vnc. 1. pulueris feminis vrticæ drag. 2. misce cum vnguento de althea, & oleo camomillæ, fiat ceratum, & valet ad tumoris gutturis, parotidis & aliarum parvum.

Softening  
Cerat.

*Emplastrum remolliens & resoluens.*

*Rec.* Vnguenti de althea vnc. 1. emplastri de musilaginibus & diachilon ireati an. vnc. se. emplastri oxycrociæ, melliloti, & ceronei, an. drag. 2. malaxentur cum oleo liliorum, camomillæ, & parum ceræ si addideris amoniacum, bdellum, major vis erit.

Resolving  
plaister.

*Cataplasma emolliens.*

*Rec.* Farinæ hordei vnc. 1. foliorum caulum coctorum & præparatorum manipulos duos, vitellos ouorum duos, olei liliorum quantum sufficit, fiat cataplasma.

Cataplasme  
o-resolving.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Furfuris macri trituriati manipulum vnum, amoniaci in oxymellite dissoluti vnc. 2. misce & fiat cataplasma.

Ghap.



## CHAP. VII.

¶ Of Medicaments Suppuratiues,  
or maturatiue.

Hip. 6. epidimorium.

**T**he medicaments suppuratiue, or maturatiue called by the Grækes *Peptica*, by the Latines *Maturantia*, are those, which by their naturall heat seeth and bring the blood and humors superfluous into matter; of the which there is two sorts, some be emplastricks which by closing of the pores augment the naturall heat, so that the matter being retained, maketh generation of Pus; the other kind is hot according to the proportion of the naturall heat of the part affected, of the which there are simples and composed.

*Simples.*

Like as *Aquæ focus modice calens radix Althea, Liliorum capita, violarum, malua, acetosa, farnia triticia, hordeacea, volatilis fenugreci medulla panis tritici, fermentum vetus, adeps porcinus, vitulinus, vaccinus, butirum, pix, resina, semen lini, fenugreci, buglossi, radix brionia, cepæ, branca visina, radix cucumeris agrestis, senecio buglossum, bis malua, parietaria, ficus, passula, cepe ciclamini, as also all medicaments which are of temperature hote and humide, being mixed with medicaments emplastricke substance that may close the pores, poma, malua cocta, vitellus ouorum, mel crudum, amoniacum, galbanum, ladduum, thus, storax.*

*Composita.*

*Oleum liliorum, ol ouorum, butiri, Hyperici, Lumbricorum, Hypericonis, resine, vnguentum basiliconis vtrumque diachilum magnum, commune parvum & album, macedonicum, triapharmatum galeni, de muscilaginibus, vnguentum resumptuum, emplastrum de fermento, demotriti, macedonicum.*

*Cataplasma suppurans.*Suppuratiue  
cataplasmes.

*Rec. Farmæ hordei, tritici, an. vnc. i. Mellis rosati & violati, an. vnc. sc. cum oui vitello, fiat cataplasma.*

*Alind.*



*Alind.*

*Rec.* Olei violari, vnc. 1. se. cum oui vitello, agitetur cum vnguento basilici parum, & admoneatur parti, multum valet in corporibus puerorum. Suppuratiue  
for delicate  
people.

*Alind.*

*Rec.* Altheæ cum toto, foliorum parietariæ, malnæ violarum, brancæ vrsinæ, an. M. se. seminis malnæ bis malnæ, lini & fenegreci, an. drag. 3. ficuum pinguium numero 4. coquantur in aqua, deinde bene contusa cribrantur & pascuntur per setaceum quibus adde farinæ fabarum & hordei an. vnc. 1. olei liliorum & butiri recentis, & axungiae suillæ an. vnc. se. fiat Cataplasma.

*Vnguentum.*

*Rec.* Diachili magni & albi, an. vnc. 1. vnguenti resumptini, vnc. se. basilici, vnc. se. olei lumbricorum parum, fiat vnguentum. Vnguent  
suppuratiue.

*Alind pro partibus nervosis.*

*Rec.* Farinæ hordei, vnc. 1. se. ouorum vitellos duos terbinthinæ & olei liliorum, an. vnc. se. fiat Cataplasma. Suppuratiue  
for nervous  
parts.

*Alind.*

*Rec.* Olei nucum, Axungiae suillæ veteris, an. vnc. 2. ceræ flauæ, vnc. 1. se. mellis communis, fiat vnguentum his omnibus simul liquatis.

### CHAP. VIII.

## Of Medicaments mundificatiues, or absterfiues.

**T**he Medicament cleansing, called by the Grækes *Rip-  
ticon*, and by the Latines *Deiurgens* is that which hath  
the strength to separate and draw away the excrements  
purulent from the centre of the vlcers to the circumference,  
the which is of temperature hote, and of substance thin: and  
is of two kinds, the one is weake, domestike, and is either  
sweet or salt, as farina fabarum, hordei, cicerum, semen lini,  
saccarum,



saccarum, oxymell, terebinthus, thus, mel, despumatum, amygdalæ amara, erui farina, radix indicus, nitrum vstum, nitri spuma, pumex, and diuers others which Galen hath written at length in the Chapter aboue mentioned, and are diuided in simple and compounds.

*The Simples.*

Like as Farina fabarum, Hordei, Lupinorum & Oribi, absinthium, agrimonia, betonica, apium, mirrha, thus, sarcocolla, aloe, abrotanum, flos aris, fellis, leporis, flecas, pix resina, pix græca, viridi aris, tuthea præparata, mel, enula campana, brionia, serpentaria vtriusq; sigillum beatæ mariæ consolida maior, cum toto consolida regalis, terebinthina, iris, centaurea minor, solani radix, arnoglossum, geniana, marribium, calx lota, helleborus, æs vstum, calchantum crudum & vstum, auripigmentum, allumen, serum lactis, butirum, stercus caprinum, amygdalæ, Aristolochia vtraq; melissa eupatorum, fumestore, artemesia, mastick, sarcocolla, dragagantum.

*The Compounds.*

Compound  
mundificatiues

Oleum de vitellis ouorum, hypericonis Mellis, Mirrhæ, Guaiaci, terebinthinæ de tartaro, vnguentum fuscum, diapompholigos, vnguentum viridi andromachi, emplastrum diuinum, de appio, apostolorum, ægyptiacum, puluis mercurialis, farina frumenti, hordei, mel solutum cum oleo rosato.

*Emplastrum detergens.*

Emplaster  
mundificatiues

*Rec.* Terebinthinæ venetæ vnc. 7. Gummi Elemni, vnc. 3. resinæ vnc. 1. se. liquefiant omnia simul, deinde refrigeratis quodammodo, adde pulueris Aristolochiæ longæ vnc. se. sanguinis draconis vnc. 1. se. fiat Emplastrum.

*Medicamentum blande detergens.*

Cleansing  
medicaments

*Rec.* Mellis rosati vnc. 1. vitellum vnius oui, farina hordei quantum sufficit, terebinthinæ in aqua plantaginis lotæ drag. 2.

*Unguentum detergens.*

Vnguent  
cleansing.

*Rec.* Olei Hypericonis vnc. 2. Gummi Elemni vnc. 1. se. ceræ



cera vnc. se. terebinthinæ vnc. i. misce & fiat vnguentum.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Picis resinæ lib. i. Picis græcæ lib. se. butiri recens lib. i. se. viridis æris drag. se.

*Aqua detergens.*

*Rec.* Florum æris vñi vnc. 3. Tutia preparata in vino Cleansing albo vnc. i. vini albi odoriferi vnc. se. aquæ plantaganis water. vnc. se. misce omnia simul.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Vini albi vnc. 2. Floris æris drag. i. auripigmenti, drag. 2. misce simul cum aqua rosarum.

*CHAP. IX.*

**C** Of Medicaments Incarnatiues.

**T**his Medicament which the Grækes call *Sarcoticon*, the Latines *Generatio carnis*, hath the force to drie and change the bloud which cometh to any part, into flesh. It dryeth without mortification, it thickeneth it, and conuerteth it into flesh. Such medicaments by the absterision and desiccation moderately done, helpe nature. It should be drie in the first degree, to the end the two excrements which are grosse and subtil, being contrary, viz. absterision and desiccation, may not let the action of nature in the generation of flesh. Of the which there are three kinds, viz. weake, strong, and very strong, because in a wound or vlcere the superfluous humidity excedeth the naturall habitude, as for example, if an vlcere be in a very drie part, the medicament must be more drie, for this cause there be sarcoticke medicaments drie in the 4. degree.

Gal. 3. meth-  
& 2. de com-  
positio. phar.  
Gal. simp. 6.

*The weake.*

Olibanū, colofonia, mastick, aloe, farina hordei, fenogreci & debet applicari corporibus humidis & delicatis.

*The Strong.*

Aristolochia, iris florētia, farina lupinorū, orobi, calcantum vñtū & debent applicari corporibus siccis, & vulneribus cōcauis.

*The*



*The most strong.*

The most strong are proper to be applyed in deepe vlcers, as centaureum maius & minus, plumbum & antimonium vltum, glutinum adustum, liniaces, mirrha. If a wound or vlcer be aierie, yet in a manner be very humide, the medicament must be drie in the first degree. If the wound or vlcer be charged with great humiditie, and the part neuerthelesse very drye, the medicament must be drye in the second and third degree. Of the which some are simples, others composed.

*The Simples.*

Olibanum, Mastica, Aloe, Borax, colophonix, farina lupinorum, orobi, hordei, fenogreci, fabarum, lentium, tritici, aristolochia vtraq;, radix iris florentix, vitriolum vltum, pix liquida & sicca, mirrha, sarcocolla, mel, antimonium, plumbum vltum, oleum omne, pompholigos vtraq;, betonica, succus pilosellæ, bursa pastoris, squamma æris, hypericon, centarea minor, sanicula, verbena, scabiosa, pimpinella, lingua canis, ceruina, thus, dragagantum, terebinthina, semen hyperici, artemisia, lingua bovis, polinum gummi arabici, cadmia, tuthie.

*The Compounds.*

Oleum rosatum, Absynthij, Mastice, de nuce muscata cydoniorum, vitellus ouorum, Irinum, Omphacicum, thuris, sarcocollæ, vnguentum aureum, basilicum, Mesues, emplastrum gratiæ Dei, croceum, comitissæ, de betonica, diapalma, tripharmacum, ceruse, pretiosum agurdone descriptum, de ienua, nigrum.

*Emplastrum Sarcoticon.*

Emplaster incarnatiue.

*Rec.* Centauræ minoris manipulos tres, macerentur viginti quatuor horis in vino albo, deinde quoq; ad mellis crassitiem, adde lactis muliebris, vnc. i. terebinthinæ, vnc. 6, ceræ nouæ, vnc. 2. resinæ, vnc. i. thuris, mastice, gummi arabici, an. vnc. se. fiat emplastrum.

Vnguent incarnatiue.

*Vnguentum Sarcoticon.*

*Rec.* Pinguedinis anseris, porci, galinæ & mellis, an. vnc. i.



vnc. 1. aloes & calcis vinæ cantillum, succi brassicæ quantū sufficit, misce, & fiat vnguentum.

*Aliud robustioribus corporibus.*

*Rec.* Pulueris Aristolochia rotundæ, corticis Ireis, thuris an. drag. 3. aloes, mirrhæ, cadmiæ, masticis an. drag. 3. mellis quod satis erit.

*Aliud ex Etio.*

*Rec.* Farinæ, tritici, drag. 2. colophonix, drag. 1. misce.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Rasuræ panni linei bene mundati drag. 5. apoponacis drag. 2. mellis, olei rosatum an. drag. 5. litargiri, aloes, sarcocollæ an. drag. 1. sc. fiat vnguentum.

*Pulvis Sarcoticus & Cephalicus.*

*Rec.* Pimpinellæ, Betonicæ, Gariophilatæ, Valerianæ, an. drag. 1. pilosellæ drag. 5. fiat pulvis quo cavum vlcus inspergatur.

*CHAP. X.*

**C** Of Medicaments Cicatrizants.

**T**he Medicament Cicatrizant, called by the Greeks *Epiloticon*, by the Latines *Cicatrizans*, is that which hath the power to make and cicatrize by his drynes and astringion without acrimonie drying the flesh. In such manner, and maketh it in substance like to the skinne, yet not according to the first intention, by reason that parts *Spermatickes* doe not ingender in all points as befoze. This medicament is hote in the third degree, and is diuided into *Simples* and *Composed*.

*The Simples.*

As allumen vstum, vitriolum vstum, galla, spongia vsta, litargirum, polipodium, terra sigillata, squammæ æris, aristolochia rotunda, centaurea, malicorium, oliuæ, apij semen tritum, flos mali granati rosa, anethum vstum, aloes, cacies lignorum, pompholix, spodium, nux eupressi, calx lota, F f æs vstum,



æs vstum, mineralia vsta & lora, mirrha, thus, plumbum, radix cucumeris siluestris, bolus armenus, cerussa, sareocolla, pumex vstus terra lemnia, calcantum siue attramentum sutoreum.

*Composita.*

Emplastrum de cerussa, de minio album rasis, Vigonis, triapharmacum, diacalcithios, desiccativum rubeum, diapompholigos, aqua aluminosa, & plura descripta in capitibus de vulneribus.

*Emplastrum Epiloticum.*

Emplaster siccatrizant.

*Rec.* Lapidis calaminaris, terræ sigillatæ an. vnc. 4. ceræ nouæ vnc. 5. olei rosati vnc. 2. olei hyosciami & papaueris albi an. vnc. 2. se. olei violarum vnc. 4. aqua vitæ drag. 3. fiat emplastrum.

*Puluis.*

Pouder siccatrizant.

*Rec.* Sarcocollæ, Glutinis piscium, Crysocollæ, pumbi vsti, squamæ ferri an. drag. 1. misce, fiat puluis.

*Ulcerebus pudendorum citra morsum siccantis.*

Ulcers in the Yard.

*Rec.* Aloes loti & æris vsti an. vnc. se. puluerescentur tenuissime cum puluere malecorij & balaustiorum & vsui seruentur.

*Alind.*

*Rec.* Olebani, Aloes, sanguinis draconis an. drag. 3. Aristolochiæ rotundæ, cerusæ, corticis pini, centaurei minoris an. drag. 1. gallarum, balaustiorum an. drag. 2. fiat puluis.

*Aqua Epilotica.*

Siccantizant water.

*Rec.* Succiportulacæ, Caprifolij, Acetosæ, Arnoglossæ an. lib. 1. albumina ouorum vigenti, aluminis rupis puluerisati lib. 3. vitrioli romani vnc. 6. misce, & distilla.

*CHAP. XI.***C** Of Medicaments Agglutinatiues.

**T**he medicament Agglutinatiue called by the Grækes *Simphiticon*, by the Latines *Agglutinans*, is that which hath the vertue to drie the humiditie that is betwixt the lips of



of the wound, and are dry in the second degree, of the which some be simples, some composed.

*The Simples.*

Mastix, sarcocolla, thus, mirrha, colophonia, bolus armenus, terebintina, terra sigillata, sanguinis draconis, hypericon, flos rosemarinus, succus centinodia, maioranae, balsamum naturale & artificiale, sanguis humanus combustus gummi dragaganti, elemij, hederæ, olibanum, terra lemnia, fots vini rubei, consolida, petrea, verbenæ, mellefolium, argentina, talietrum, anoglossa, herba roberti, sanicula, consolida minor, morsus diaboli, caprafolij tela araneorum, cauda equina, nux coclearum, sic limacum terrestrum, ebulus, sambulus, pentaphilon, folia pirorum siluestrum, malorum, granatorum.

*The Compounds.*

Emplastrum nigrum, diapalma, de centauria, vnguentum regis anglia, vnguentum de vermibus, oxeleum galeni, ad fracturas ossium.

*Liquor pro one ulcere, aut vulnere cano.*

*Rec.* Terebinthinæ venetæ lib. 1. Aqua vitæ lib. 3. vitrioli romani vnc. 4. herbæ primulae vtris M. 3. distilla in alem- bico vitreo. Liquor agglutinative.

*Balsamum D. S. Iohannis.*

*Rec.* Olei lini, & oliuarum an. vnc. 4. terebinthinæ venetæ lib. 1. æruginis æris & vitrioli romani an. drag. sc. bulliât parû lento igne & serventur, si volueris accomodare vlceribus vice oliuarû & sambuli accipies parum portione mercurij sublimati diligenter puluerisati. Agglutinative balme.

*CHAP. XII.*

**C** Of Medicaments Cathereticks, Septicks, and Causticks.

**T**he Medicament which the Grækes call *Cathereticon*, the Latines *Carnis Consumptivum*, is that which hath the force to corrode, and putrifie in digering the substance



of the flesh and skinne, and may differ in 3. manners, viz. weake, strong, and very strong. The weake is called *Cathereticke*, or *Corrosiue*; the strong is called by the Greeks *Septicon*, and by the Latins *Putrefactivum*; the very strong is called *Escareticon*, and by the Latines *Cauticum*. The *Cathereticke* hath the strength by vehement drying to consume the excrescences of flesh, as Polipus, Tuberculum, verruci, and is applyed commonly in wounds and vlcers putrides, or where there are excrescences of flesh, the which cannot be taken away neither by digerents nor astringents, and it is of two sorts, Simple and Composed.

*The Simples.*

Radix Aspidelorum, Hermodactilorum, Pietrum, Oxilum, calx mediocriter lota, vitrioli omnia genera, squamæ æris, flos æris, allumen vstum & non vstum, sal torrefactus, pompholix, plumbium vstum, antimonium siue stibium, hydrargyrus sublimatus & precipitatus, sinabrum, lana succida, vsta, & in Pulverem redacta, squamæ æris, ærugo, calcantum, troscissi, andronius, radix, sigilli beatæ, mariæ, serpentaris vtriusq; brionia, ciclaminis ranunculus appium risus & regaletitinalorum species sinapi, euphorbium, cauterides.

*The Compounds.*

Vnguentum *Ægyptiacum*, vnguentum omne deterfivum cui permixtum fuerit aliquid ex predictis his medicamentis.

*Pulvis Cathereticus.*

*Rec.* Cerusæ vstæ, Lyrargiri, Corticis Piny, mirrhæ, gal-larum omnium an. drag. 2. pulverescantur vt alcoal.

*Medicament putrefactive.*

The medicament *Septick* is stronger then y<sup>e</sup> *Catheretick*, for by the great heate and thin substance, it hath the force to vlcere the skin, likewise the flesh, yet with little dolour, Nevertheless this kind of medicaments is somewhat dangerous, like as arsenicum, auri pigmentum, purum cum sublimatum, brionia, crysocollo, sandarathus, appium radix, sigillum.



figillū beatæ mariæ. Omnestithimalum species, sinapi, euphorbiū, cantharides, ranunculus, appiū rīsus, appiū regale.

*Medicament Causticke.*

The Causticke which the Greekes call *Escaroticon* is verie strong because it consumeth not onely the soft parts, but also the hard, making a scarre after diuers manners as yee haue heard in the Chapter of Cauters, the which are hote in the fourth degree. Like as calx vina, arsenicum sublimatum, nitrum, vini ferx vsti, lixivium forte, calcautum, salnitrum, thapsis.

*Escaroticon ex Aetio.*

*Rec.* Sulphuris, Radicis brassicæ an. vnc. 2. Axungia porci veteris vnc. 4. misce simul.

*Uissicatorium.*

*Rec.* Cantharidum abiectis capitibus & alis drag. 3. succi flammulæ vel pedis corui vnc. 2. se. fermenti veteris vnc. 2. piperis longi drag. 1. se. misce, fiat emplastrum. A medicament to breake the head.

*Aliud ex Bartapallia.*

*Rec.* Fermentum non siccum, & fac ipsum tenerum fortissimo aceto, deinde accipe cantharides quātitate quæ sufficit, & pone super fermento, & appone loco affecto est mirabilis iuvamenti in humoribus trahendis à capite, & vento sitatibus dissoluendis à fatic.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Flammulæ M. 2. contundantur diligenter & partæ applicentur. Item fieri potest de persicaria, de appio siluestri, radice ranunculi, & de viburno.

*CHAP. XIII.*

Of Medicaments which staye the fluxe of Blood.

Because the Blood is the treasure of life, it is most needfull when it floweth excessiuely, to stay the same, otherwise death shall follow. This medicament is of nature and qualitie cold, and is either simple or composed.



*The Simple.*

Bolus Armenus preparatus, Terra sigillata, sanguis draconis, crocus martis, veneris, calx, testarum ouorum, colcothar simplex, colcothar dulcificatum, cerussa, cadmia, lytargirum, gipsum, thus, aloes, mastix, resina, gluten, Anilū, grana passularum rubrarū, portulaca, semper-vivum, cauda equina, auricula muris, vmbilicus veneris, psilium, farina volatilis, Corallum vtrumq; lapis hæmatites, calcantum vsum, dragagantum, sarcocolla, gummi arabici, pili leporis vsti, sanguis humanus vstus, antimonium, centinodium, tela araneorum, & alia quæ audiui in Capite de vulneribus venarum & arteriarum.

*Pulvis astringens.*

Powder to  
stay bloud.

*Rec.* Thuris partem vnā, pilorum leporis minutim incisorum partem se. fiat pulvis.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Balauftiorum vnc. 3, alluminis vnc. 1. vitrioli vsti vnc. se. misce, fiat pulvis.

*Aliud.*

*Rec.* Thuris partem vnā, sanguinis draconis partem se, calcis viuæ, partem tertiam, fiat pulvis.

*Cataplasma.*

Cataplasme  
to stay blood.

*Rec.* Thuris, Aloes, sanguinis draconis, boli armenici, an. partes æquales omnibus cum oui albumine acceptis, cum pilis ventris leporis minutim incisis, fiat cataplasma.

*Hæmeragia desperata ex Auicenna.*

*Rec.* Vitrioli vsti vnc. 2. se. Thuris vnc. 2, Aloes & Glutinis sicci an. vnc. 1. arsenici vnc. se. gipsi puluerisati vnc. 2. se. misce & fiat pulvis, cui aspergatur pluma ceolis.

## CHAP. XIII.

¶ Of particular remedies, & first of Oyles.

Having heretofore spoken somewhat generally of Medicaments which ordinarily are used by Chirurgians; so



so now I will speake more particularly for the better instruction of the young Artificer, beginning at Oyles, of the which there are foure kinds. The first, is that which is drawen out of Oliues, and is vulgarly called simple or common oyle, well known to all men. The second, is that which is drawen of the expression of Seedes, like as oyle of Almonds, and is thus made. Take Almonds and beat them in a morter of stone or Marble till they become paste, then heat that paste with the vapour of hote water, then worke it much with your hands, then put it in a Canuas cloth made hote, and put it in a hote presse, by this meanes ye shall draw a very cleare sweet oyle. After the which forme ye may make oyle of bitter Almonds or Nuts: also of seeds of Cucumbers, Bellons, Curges, Pæonia Christi, Stasifagria, Hempe-seed, Lint-seed, Puppie, Iusquiam, or other seeds. These sorts of oyles may also be extracted after the forme ye doe the third kind of oyles. The third kind, is that which is done by the force of fire, like as oyles of Egges, which is made of the yolkes of 20. Egges or thereabouts, that haue bene hard boyled in water, then bruse them small with your hands, and put them in a Frying panne that is well luted with Lead, drie them and moue them with a spoone or peece of wood, till such time as they become redde, and you perceaue some oyle, then put them in a peece of Canuas and presse them, as in the first sort you haue heard. As touching other oyles which are composed after this forme; as also the oyle which the Philosophers do call oyle of Tartare, the forme whereof is particularly set downe by Mesues, and others, so not needfull here to insitt further; as also because those oyles be not much vsed. The fourth kind, is that which is made of oyle, wherein is boyled some parts of certaine hearbes or beasts, which hauing lost their quality in the oyle, are crushed through a cloth or pressed: Then if any humoz doe rest in the oyle, it must bee consumed by boyling, like as all other oyles that are made with any liquide iuyce, or wine. For if any liquide iuyce, or humoz

ff 4

remain,



remaine, it doth rot and consume the oyle: then if any such humoꝝ doe remaine in the oyle, you shall know by putting a drop of it on your hand, then if any humoꝝ be, you will perceive the oyle to swimme aboue the liquide humoꝝ. Such oyles as are made of flowers, are either put long in the sun, or boyled at a small fire; and such as are made of Animals or Beasts, are made by putting of those beasts quicke into the oyle, and make them to die, the which forme is vsed with Scorpions, Serpents, Dogges, Frogges, Foxes, and such like.

*Oleum Rosarum.*

*Rec.* Cumarum, rosarum rubrarum recentium, well cleansed and bruised, succi rosarum an. li. i. macerate them in ʒ. pound of oleum omphacinum, or well washed in oyle, then put all close in a glasse the space of sixe or eight dayes in the sunne, then boyle them three houres in a double vessell, thereafter straine the lees, and put in new againe, the which forme you shall vse twice or thrice, euer boyling or sunning of them till the iuyce be consumed. This oyle is good for heat, inflammation, stayeth fluxions, strengtheneth and thickeneth the parts where it is put.

*Oleum Violarum.*

This oyle is made of oyle Omphacine, or oyle of Almonds, by putting in it fresh purple Violets in a vessell of glasse, well couered and put in the Sunne twelue dayes, changing the Violets euery third day, in the end put in dry Violets. It hath the like vertue as the former.

*Oleum Nymphae.*

*Oleum Nymphae*, is made by putting the white flower of water Lillies, well macerate & washed in oyle, and set in the Sunne the space of 20. dayes or longer, changing the Lillies euery fīue dayes once. This oyle doth more refrigerate then any of the former. It pacifieth the heat of the kidneys, head, and bladder, procureth sleepe. The oyle of Pappi, and Iusquiami, are of the same nature, and are made after the same forme, but are better if they be made by expression as you haue heard.

*Oleum.*



*Oleum Cydoniorum.*

*Rec.* Cydoniorum cum cortice & semine tuorum, succi cydoniorum, an. lib. ss. Mingle them in a vessell of glasse with a pound and an halfe of oleum omphacinum, set them in the Sunne the space of twenty dayes, then boyle them for an houre in a double vessell strained, and put in fresh the second and third time, and boyle as the former, then straine it and keepe it for your vse. It hath the vertue to bind, and is very cooling, good for the stomacke, Liuer, and Intraills: it restraineth vomitting.

*Oleum Masticinum.*

*Rec.* Mastichis vnc. 4. vini optimi vnc. 4. olei omphacini or rolacei, lib. 2. boyle them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine. It hath the vertue to corroborate the braine, sinewes, Liuer, and stomacke. It is good for vomiting and hientery.

*Oleum Camomellinum.*

*Rec.* Florum Camomelli recentium & tuorum, lib. 1. Macerate and infuse them in sweet oyle in a glasse in the Sunne, the space of twenty dayes, then straine it and keepe it for your vse. It hath the vertue to assuage paine, corroborate the sinewes and membranes.

*Oleum Liliorum.*

*Rec.* Florum Liliorum alborum integrorum, lib. 1. macerate them in sweet oyle, and set them in the sunne y space of twenty dayes, then straine it and keepe it for your vse. It hath the vertue to assuage the paine of the stomacke, brest, belly, kidneyes, and bladder.

*Oleum Anetinum.*

This oyle is made of lxs of Anetide or Dil, macerate and bruised in a sufficient quantitie of sweet oyle, and set in the sun sine or sixe daies, or boyled in a double vessell, straine it and keepe it for your vse. It hath the vertue to heate, digest, and assuage the paine of the head, sinewes, and procureth sleepe.

*Oleum*



*Oleum Lumbricorum.*

*Rec.* Lumbricorum terrestrium, lotorum, & preparatorum lib. *ss.* vini albi. Vn. 2. olei dulcis lib. 2. boyle them to the consumption of the vine and waisting of the wormes, then straine it and reserue it to your vse. It hath the vertue to assuage paine, doth soften with a moderate heat, very good for bruising and paine in the ioynts.

*Oleum e Castoreo.*

*Rec.* Castorei in aqua vitæ saluti, Vn. 1. olei lib. 9 boyle them in a double vessell untill the third part be consumed. It is good against diseases of the nerues, deafnesse, noise of the eares, and coldnes of feuers.

## ¶ Of Vnguent.

**V**nguent is so called, because they doe annoynt the parts where they are applyed, and are of more thicke and solide consistence, than oyles. The matter whereof vnguent is made, are of parts of plants, and diuers parts of beasts: also of Mettals and thinne Iuyces, the which are consumed by boyling, as you haue heard in oyles. Sometime there doth enter into vnguent dry hearbes, which must be put in fine powder, and mingled with the rest, as you haue heard of Mettals. All vnguent is made either by fire or long working, as the vnguent of Litharge called nutritum, Vnguentum aureum called regis.

*Rec.* Ceræ Citrinæ vnc. 6. olei lib. 2. *ss.* Terebinthinæ vnc. 2. Resina pinæ & calophonix, an. vnc. 1. *ss.* Thuris, Mastice, croci, drag. 1. The Ware must be melted with the oyle, then put in the Terebintine and powders, being finely bruised.

*Vnguentum refrigerans Galeni.*

*Rec.* Ceræ albæ vnc. 8. olei rosati lib. 1. Melt them on the fire, and let it coole. After that beat and wash it long with cold water, thereafter with Vinegar or Rose water.

At



It is very cooling, good for Phlegmons, Heresipelas, and all hote tumors.

*Vnguentum album.*

*Rec.* Cerussæ vnc. 4. litargiri drag. 2. Lay them a good space in Rosewater then put them in a mortar, and by little and little powre in so much Rose-oyle as they can drinke up, continually stirring and tempering them till such time that they appeare in forme of an vnguent, adding thereunto a little white vinegar with some Camphere. It is cooling, assweth paine and inflammation, and is good for heat, scabs, itch, and all out-breaking.

*Vnguentum diapompholigos.*

*Rec.* Olei rosaci vnc. 5. succi solatri vnc. 7. bulliant ad succi consumptionem, deinde adde ceræ albæ vnc. 2. ss. Cerussæ lotæ vnc. ss. plumbi vsti loti pompholigis, thuris an. vnc. ss. coquantur in formā vnguenti. This vnguent is cooling, dryeth and filleth up hollow vlcers and wounds, bringeth malignant vlcers to escharre.

*Vnguentum resumptivum.*

*Rec.* Seminis lini althææ, & fenugreci, gummi arabici, dragaganthæ, an. drag. 2. macerentur & bulliant in lib. ss. aquæ rosarum. Then straine out the musilages, and dissolve in the rest adipis, suillæ, galinæ, anseris, anatis, an. vnc. 2. asopi vnc. ss. olei violarum, Camomilini, Amygdalarum dulcium, an. vnc. 2. medulla vituli, butiri recentis, ceræ albæ an. lib. ss. coquantur, & fiat vnguentum. It hath the vertue to mollifie without great heat.

*Vnguentum Basilicum, or Tetrapharmacum.*

*Rec.* Resinæ picis ceræ an. lib. ss. olei quantum sufficit. It hath the vertue to heat, humect, and mitigate the paine.

*Vnguentum aureum.*

*Rec.* Ceræ citrinæ vnc. 6. olei dulcis lib. 2. ss. Terebinthini vnc. 2. resinæ colophonix an. vnc. 1. ss. Thuris, mastice an. vnc. 1. croci drag. 1. You must melt the Waxe with the oyle, then put in the other ingredients, which being all melted, put in the Terebintine, and take it from the fire,



fire, keepe it for your vse. It hath the vertue to cleanse, fill  
up, and agglutinate wounds.

*Vnguentum Egyptiacum.*

*Rec.* *Æruginis* drag. 2. *Mellis optimi*, vnc. 1. *ss.* *Aceti*  
*fortis* drag. 10. Seth all these on the fire till such time as it  
become thicke & of purple colour. It hath y<sup>e</sup> vertue to cleanse  
mightily fistules & old vlcers, eateth & consumeth dead flesh.

*Vnguentum Apostolorum.*

*Rec.* *Terebintina*, *cera alba*, *amoniaci*, an. drag. 14.  
*floris aris apoponacis* an. drag. 2. *aristolochia rotunda*,  
*Thuris*, *massicis*, *bdellijan*, drag. 6. *Myrrha* & *Galbani* an.  
drag. 4. *litargiri* vnc. 9. *olei* lib. 2. Si æstas fuerit, *hiems*  
vero lib. 3. You must macerate the *bdellium*, *amoniack*,  
*apoponax*, *galbanum* in strong Vinegar, and dissolve with  
the other simples in the oyle and Ware, and boyle it to the  
forme of an vnguent. It hath the vertue to cleanse wounds  
and vlcers, consumeth spungious and dead flesh, and pro-  
cureth new againe. It is called *Apostolorum*, because it is  
made of twelue simples, which was the number of the 12.  
*Apostles*. Yet I find in *Nicholas Alexandrine* an *Empla-*  
*strum* called *Apostolicū*, in the which enters one and twen-  
ty simples.

*Vnguentum Anulatum.*

*Rec.* *Radicie anulae*, *ex aceto*, *cocta*, *tusa*, & *creta* lib. 1.  
*axungia porci*, *olei* an. vnc. 4. *cera noua* vnc. 1. *argenti viui*  
*bene extincti*, *terebintinae loti* an. vnc. 2. *salis bene triti*  
vnc. *ss.* You must first lignifie the Ware and grease with  
the oyle, then put to the *Anula*, thereafter the *Quicke-sil-*  
*uer*, *Salt*, and *Terebintine*. It is good for itch and scabs of  
any sort, and against any filthinesse of the skin.

¶ Of Emplasters.

**E**mplaster is a medicament which is applyed to diuers  
parts of our body for sundry causes. It is of consistence  
har



hard and solide, composed almost of all sorts of simple me-  
dicaments, chiefly such as are greasie and dry, in it doth en-  
ter all parts of Plants, metalliche simples, and terrestrious,  
with diuers parts of Beasts, sometimes whole quicke  
beasts: of these Ingredients some doe onelie lose their ver-  
tue and facultie, like as wine Vinegar, with all other thin  
issues, all which are consumed in the boyling, befoze the pla-  
ster be brought to perfect consistence.

*Emplastrum diachelum simplex.*

*Rec.* Musilaginum seminis fenugreci, & lini radicum, al-  
theæ an. lib. 1. olei veteris lib. 3. litargiri criti lib. 1. *℞.* We  
must first dissolue the Litarge in a moztar with oyle by little  
and little till they be well mixed, then boyle them at a soft  
fire, stirring them euer about with a spyle of wood till they  
become thicke, then put in the musilages and boyle them to  
the consistence of an emplaster. It hath the vertue to soften  
hard tumors of all externall parts, as also the liuer and  
splæne being hard and scirrhous.

*Emplastrum diachelum magnum.*

*Rec.* Litargiri criti vnc. 12. olei Irini camemelini & ane-  
cinian. vnc. 8. Musilaginum seminis fenugræci, & lini ra-  
dix altheæ, ficum, pinguium, vuarum passarum, succi iri-  
dis, & scillæ æsopi, Icathiocolle, an. drag. 12. *℞.* Terebinti-  
næ vnc. 3. resinæ pini ceræ citrinæ, an. vnc. 2. You shall  
mire all these, and make them in the consistence of an em-  
plaster as the former. It hath a great mollifying vertue.

*Emplastrum diacalcitæos, or palmæum.*

*Rec.* Adipis suillæ recentis sine sale, & fibris lib. 2. olei  
veteris litargiri criti an. lib. 3. calcitidos letigatæ vnc. 4.  
The grease and oyle must be boyled at a slow fire, then put  
in the Litarge and Vitrioll, stirre it continually with three  
greene boughs, Myrti, Sorbi, or Mespelum, and when it  
is come to the thicknes of a cerate, the tender boughs must  
be cut in pæces, and put in by little and little, then boyle it  
to the consistence of a plaster. It hath the vertue to staye  
fluxions, it doth resolue and agglutinate vlcers & wounds.

*Emplastrum*



*Emplastrum è Musilaginibus.*

*Rec.* Musilaginum seminis lini, althææ, fenugræci, mediani, & corticis vlni an. vnc. 4. ꝑ. oleorum camomillini, liliorum & aneti an. vnc. 1. amoniaci galbani, apoponacis, sagapini an. vnc. ꝑ. croci drag. 2. Terebintinæ vnc. 2. ceræ nouæ. drag. 20. Of all these you shall make an emplaster as the former. It hath a mighty vertue to mollifie and digest hard tumors; it is a maturative, so is applyed vpon tumors to procure matter.

*Emplastrum è Baccis Lauri.*

*Rec.* Thuris Mastichis, myrrhæ an. vnc. 1. baccarū lauri, vnc. 2. ciperi costi an. vnc. ꝑ. Mellis colati quantū sufficit. Some do adde to these ingredients a little Goats dung well dyled. This plaster hath the vertue to pacifie paine, chiefly of the stomacke, intestines, wombe, and other parts, chiefly when the cause doth proceed of cold or wind.

*Emplastrum oxicrosium.*

*Rec.* Picis Navalis, ceræ, croci, colophonix an. vnc. 4. Terebintinæ, amoniaci, galbani, myrrhæ, Thuris mastichis an. vnc. 1. & drag. 2. The Galbanum and Ammoniacke, must be lignified one night in Vinegar, then melted on the fire, passed and boyled againe till one part be consumed, then put to the Pitch, which being melted put it to the Ware, and being lignified, you shall adde the Turpentine and Colophon, thereafter put to the Masticke, Incense, & myrrhe, stirring it euer with y<sup>e</sup> spyle till it be boyled, then cast it in cold water, thereafter expzime it well with your hands, put it on a Marble Stone rubbed with oyle, and a little powder of Saffron, thereafter forme Magdalions or little roles. It hath the vertue to mollifie, allwageth the paine of the ioynts, and membranes that couer the bones.

*Emplastrum de Ienna.*

*Rec.* Succorum apij plantaginis, & betonice, ceræ, picis, resinæ, Terebintinæ an. lib. ꝑ. Of y<sup>e</sup> which you shall forme your plaster in this maner. Seeth the 3. simples in iuyces at a soking fire, stirre them euer till the iuyces be consumed, then



then put to the Terebintine, and gine it little ſæthing, then remoue it from the fire, and forme the roles. It is good for wounds of the head, it doth mundifie, incarnate, agglutinate, cicatrize, and paciſieth inflammation.

*Emplaſtrum gratia dei.*

*Rec.* Terebintinæ lib. ſs. Refina lib. 1. Cera albæ vnc. 4. Maſticis vnc. 1. Betonice, Vebenæ, Pimpinellæ an. M. 1. The hearbs muſt be bruised and boyled in white wine, till the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine out the liquor. In the which put the Ware, Roſine, and Maſticke, and boyle till it come to the conſiſtence of a plaſter, then take it from the fire and put to the Terebintine, remoue it well, then forme your plaſter.

*Emplaſtrum diuinum.*

*Rec.* Galbani, Myrrhæ an. vnc. 1. & drag. 2. Amoniack vnc. 3. & drag. 3. apoponatis, maſtichis, ariſtolochiæ longa, æruginis an. vnc. 1. Litargiri, olei communis, an. lib. ſs. cera noua vnc. 8. Thuris vnc. 1. & drag. 1. bdellij vnc. 2. Magnetis vnc. 3. The Litarge muſt be mingled with the oyle by ſtirring of it, thereafter boyle it till it become ſomewhat thicke, then adde the Ware it being cut in ſmall pieces, the which being lignified is taken off the fire, then is put to the Galbanum, Amoniacum, Apoponax, & Bdelliū, diſſolued in Vinegar and wine, then boyle it and ſtraine it, thereafter put the pouders, Myrrhe, Maſtichis, thuris, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, magnetis; then ſprinkle it with fine powder of Æruginis. This plaſter is good for tumors with corruption of the bones and maligne blcers. It conſumeth corruption, and ingendereth new fleſh.

Deo laus, honor, & gloria in ſempiternum.

*Candido Lectori.*

Candide Lector, quiſq; ex hoc libello fructum perceperis, bene precare D. Iacobo Hamiltonio, Abricornie Comiti, in cuius, ac Reipub. gratiam conſcripſi.

*Vale.*



*A generall Table of the most principall matters  
contained in this booke: the first number sheweth  
the Booke; and the second, the Chapter.*

**A**

**A**bstinence done two waies. lib. 2. ca. 5.  
Ægylops defined: cause, signes, Iudgements, Cure. lib. 5. ca. 15.  
Ægylops sometime with corruption of the bone. *ibid.*  
Age is defined. lib. 1. cap. 11.  
Age described by Salomon. *ibid.*  
Aged people should obserue rules in their dyet. lib. 1. cap. 2.  
Agria is defined. lib. 4. cap. 5.  
Aire is defined. lib. 2. cap. 1.  
Aire is of two sorts. *ibid.*  
Of Aire dependeth the constitution of our bodies. *ibid.*  
Of Aire dependeth the disposition of our humors. lib. 5. cap. 12.  
Alienation is defined. lib. 6. cap. 1.  
Aliment is defined. lib. 2. cap. 2.  
Aliment is of two sorts. *ibid.*  
Alopetia is defined, with his cause, signes, Iudgements, and cure. lib. 5. cap. 2.  
Amputation from the ioynt. lib. 4. cap. 7.  
Amputation of superfluous fingers & toes. lib. 4. cap. 8.  
Amigdales defined, cause, signes, iudgements, and cure. lib. 5. cap. 37.  
Anger defined, with the effects. lib. 2. ca. 6.  
Aneufisma defined, cause, signes, iudgements, and cure. lib. 5. cap. 41.  
Angiua defined, and cured. lib. 5. cap. 38.  
Anodine remedies. lib. 5. cap. 53.  
Anodines hote & cold. lib. 10. cap. 2.  
Antrax defined, with the cure. lib. 4. ca. 5.  
Apostumes defined, and cured. li. 4. ca. 1.  
Appetite should be followed in the quality of meat, lib. 2. cap. 2.

*Aqua celestis* with the compositio. 15. c. 63.  
Arteriotomie defined. lib. 9. cap. 10.  
Asses milke for Carcinoma. lib. 4. cap. 16.  
Astringent for the clouen lippe. li. 5. ca. 28.  
Astringent for wounds. lib. 6. cap. 6.  
Astringent for fractures. lib. 8. cap. 2.  
Atheorema defined, and cure. lib. 4. ca. 14.

**B**

**B**alme of *John de Vigo*. lib. 5. ca. 63.  
Balme of the Author for wounds done by Gunshot. lib. 6. cap. 5.  
Balme agglutinaue. lib. 10. cap. 11.  
Bals of gold, siluer, or wood. lib. 9. c. 19.  
Bandage for fractnres. lib. 8. cap. 7.  
Bandage for sore paps. lib. 5. cap. 42.  
Banquets forbidden. lib. 2. cap. 2.  
Bathes defined, with their nature. l. 9. c. 20.  
Bladder, with his diseases. lib. 5. cap. 63.  
Blind people haue their other senses more strong. lib. 1. cap. 10.  
Blood nourisheth the body. lib. 1. ca. 6.  
Blood of a Pigeon for Mydriasis. li. 5. c. 18.  
Bleeding at the nose, and cure. lib. 5. ca. 26.  
Bleeding at the nose cured by words. *ibid.*  
In bleeding, diuers things to be cōserued. lib. 9. ca. 2.  
To bleed well, what should be considered, lib. 9. cap. 8.  
Blood knowen three wayes. lib. 9. cap. 9.  
Bolus for the bladder. lib. 5. cap. 63.  
Bonnet to pull out haire. lib. 5. cap. 6.  
Bones haue no feeling. lib. 5. cap. 29.  
Bones of fish in the halse, with the cure, lib. 5. cap. 38.  
Bones in mans body are 258. l. 8. c. 1.  
Bones Sesmoide are 15. *ibid.*

Bones



## The Table.

Bones are conioyned two wayes. li: 8, c: 4.  
 Bread new baked is euill. lib: 2, cap: 2.  
 Bread should be baked wth Anyseeds. *ibid.*  
 Broth for aged people lib: 1, cap: 13.  
*Buracoeli* is defined, wth the cure. li: 5, c: 4.  
*Bubo* is defined, and cure. lib: 5, ca: 66.  
*Bubonele* defined, with the cause, & cure.  
 lib: 5, cap: 55.  
 Burning wth Gunpowder. lib: 6, cap: 6.  
 Burning by fire or oyle. lib: 7, cap: 10.  
 Byting with venomous beasts. li: 6, ca: 9.  
 Byting by a madde dog. *ibid.*

### C

**C***acoetbes* defined, with the cause, and  
 cure. lib: 7, cap: 6.  
 Cake of Lead for vlcers virulēt. li: 7 c: 3  
 Callosity defined, lib: 7, cap: 1.  
 Canker defined, with the cure. li: 4, ca: 16.  
 Candle of wax for the Carbuncle. li: 5, c: 64  
 Candle to burne in the time of embalming.  
 lib: 8, cap: 5.  
 Carbuncle defined, with the cure li: 4, ca: 5.  
 Carbuncle in the yard. lib: 5, cap: 64.  
 Cataplasme for Schirre. li: 4, ca: 15.  
 Cataplasme for Hemorrhoides. li: 5, ca: 29.  
 Cataplasme for the yard. lib: 5, cap: 64.  
 Cataplasme for sore paps. lib: 5, cap: 42.  
 Cataplasme for Aneufrisma. lib: 5, ca: 41.  
 Cataplasme for *Struma*. lib: 5, cap: 39.  
 Cataplasme for paine in the tooth. li: 5, c: 29  
 Cataplasme for the Amygdals. li: 5, ca: 37  
 Cataplasme for *Hernia gutturis*. li: 5, ca: 40.  
 Cataplasme repercussive. lib: 10, ca: 3.  
 Cataplasme attractive. lib: 10, cap: 4.  
 Cataplasme resolative. lib: 10, cap: 5.  
 Cataplasme suppurative. lib: 10, cap: 7.  
 Cataplasme to stay flux of blood. li: 10, c: 13  
 Cataplasme for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 Cataplasme for Parotides. lib: 5, ca: 24.  
 Cataplasme for Gangrena. lib: 4, cap: 6.  
 Cataract defined, with the cure, li: 5, c: 19

Causticke to consume callosities. li: 7, ca: 9.  
 Cauter actuall defined. lib: 9, cap: 16.  
 Cauter, how to be applyed. lib: 9, cap: 8.  
 Cauter actuall hath diuers vtilities. li: 9, c: 16  
 Cauter potētiall with his cōpositiō. li: 9, c: 19  
 Cauters for the gut. lib: 5. cap. 66.  
 Cauter actuall for Panaris. lib: 5. cap. 72.  
 Cauter actuall for the teeth lib: 5. cap. 30.  
 Cauter actuall for Epaulis. lib: 5. ca: 32.  
 Cauter actuall for Fistula. lib: 5. cap. 46.  
 Cauter actuall for Thymus. lib: 5. cap. 47.  
 Cauter actuall for Polypus. li: 3. ca: 25.  
 Cauter actuall for vlcers virulent. li: 3, c: 7.  
 Cauter actuall for rotten vlcers. lib: 5. ca: 7.  
 Cauters of M. George Baker. li: 9. cap. 17.  
 Cauters are to bee applyed in diuers parts.  
 lib: 9. cap. 18.  
 Cautions in applying cauters. *ibid.*  
 Cauters to be applyed in foure parts of the  
 head. *ibid.*  
 Cauters on the legs. lib: 9. cap. 18.  
 Cauters to stay flux of blood. lib: 4. ca: 7.  
 Censure Candle. lib: 8. cap. 5.  
 Chirons in the hands, or membranes in the  
 eye. lib: 5. cap. 4.  
 Chyrurgerie defined. lib: 1. 2.  
 Chyrurgerie invented by God. *ibid.*  
 Chyrurgerie before other Sciences, *ibid.*  
 Chyrurgery practised by Kings. *ibid.*  
 Chyurgions exempted from all publique  
 charges. lib: 1. cap. 1.  
 Chyrurgerie speculatiue first obserued by  
*Hippocrates*. lib: 1. cap. 2.  
 Choller defined. lib: 1. cap. 6.  
 Chollerians are hasty & prompt. li: 1. ca: 5.  
 Cicatrizes should be corrected. li: 6. ca: 3.  
 Circocole defined, the cause, signes, and  
 cure. lib: 5. cap. 61.  
 Clap of the halse defined. lib: 5. cap. 30.  
 Clifters for vlcers in the bladder. li: 5. ca: 63  
 Colyre for Hordeleon. lib: 5. cap. 16.  
 Colyre for the eyes. lib: 5. cap. 12.  
 Colyre for Enchylops. lib: 5. ca: 15.  
 Complexion of those in the East and North  
 parts.



## The Table.

parts. lib: 1, cap: 5.  
 Compresse for wounds. lib: 9, cap: 8.  
 Concoction is of three sorts. lib: 1, cap: 6.  
*Condiloma* defined, with the cure. li: 5, c: 48.  
 Congestion defined, with the cause. li: 4, c: 1.  
 Conserue for the sight. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 Convulsion in wounds. lib: 6, cap: 1.  
 Cornes defined, and cure. lib: 5, cap: 75.  
 Corrosion defined. lib: 6, cap: 1.  
 Criticke dayes. lib: 9, cap: 2.  
 Custome not to be neglected. lib: 2, cap: 2.  
 Cure for ignorants. lib: 5, cap: 26.

### D

**D**Avier to draw teeth. lib: 5, cap: 30.  
 Dead corps, how to be preserved.  
 lib: 8, cap: 5.  
 Decoction for teeth. lib: 5, cap: 31.  
 Decoction approued for hydroptic. li: 5, c: 45.  
 Decoction sudorificke for *Rhymus*. li: 5, c: 47.  
 Decoction for the gut. lib: 5, cap: 67.  
 Decoction for wounds in the Thorax.  
 lib: 6, cap: 12.  
 Decoction for vlcers. lib: 7, cap: 6.  
 Decoction for fistules. lib: 7, cap: 9.  
 Decoction for the eares. lib: 5, cap: 23.  
 Dyet, a friend to nature. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 Digestion would haue rest. lib: 1, cap: 2.  
 Digestiue for wounds. lib: 6, cap: 2.  
 Diseases of the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 10.  
 Diseases of old people. lib: 1, cap: 11.  
 Diseases of the bladder. lib: 5, cap: 63.  
 Diseases of the prunall. lib: 5, cap: 8.  
 Diseases of the Cornea. lib: 5, cap: 10.  
 Diseases of the nerue opticke. *ibid.*  
 Dislocatiōs defined, with the cure. li: 8, c: 4.  
 Distilled water for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 Dolour defined, and cure. lib: 6, cap: 1.  
 Dolour of the teeth. lib: 5, cap: 29.  
 Dolour of the eares by wormes. li: 5, c: 22.  
*Dracunculus* defined, & cure. lib: 5, ca: 70.

Dreames not to be neglected. lib: 2, cap: 4.  
 Drinke to be vsed in spring time. li: 2, ca: 2.  
 Drinke immoderately taken, is hurtfull to  
 the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 Drinkers of water. *ibid.*  
 Dropax. lib: 10, cap: 4.

### E

**A**Le hath diuers vertues. lib: 2, cap: 2.  
 Ale composed of diuers grains. *ibid.*  
 Ale composed by our Auncients of  
 Cockle or Darnell. *ibid.*  
 Eares subiect to diuers passions. li: 5, c: 11.  
 Earrings. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 In Eating, time should be obserued. li: 2, c: 2.  
*Estimeta* defined, with the cure. lib: 4, ca: 3.  
*Edema* defined, with the cure. lib: 4, ca: 11.  
 Elements defined. lib: 1, ca: 4.  
 Elements 4 in number. *ibid.*  
*Elephantiasis* defined, and cured. lib: 5, c: 71.  
*Empiema* defined. lib: 5, cap: 43.  
 Emplaster *contra rupturam*. lib: 5, cap: 69.  
 Emplaster attractiue. lib: 10, cap: 4.  
 Emplaster Mundificatiue. lib: 10, cap: 8.  
 Emplaster Incarnatiue. lib: 10, cap: 2.  
 Emplaster Ciccatrizant. lib: 10, cap: 10.  
 Emplaster agglutinatiue. lib: 10, cap: 11.  
 Emplaster for the eyes. lib: 5, cap: 15.  
 Emplaster resolutiue. lib: 9, cap: 5.  
 Enchylops defined, and cured. lib: 5, c: 15.  
 Encanthus defined, and cured. lib: 5, ca: 32.  
 Epinētis defined, and cured. lib: 4, cap: 3.  
*Epimenides* slept 57. yeares. lib: 2, ca: 4.  
 Epyplon, with the composition. lib: 5, c: 51.  
 Epiplocele defined, with the cure. li: 5, c: 57.  
 Eresipelas defined, with the cure. li: 4, c: 9.  
 Eresipelas in the matrice. *ibid.*  
 Estachiles defined. lib: 7, cap: 1.  
 Euacuation defined. lib: 1, cap: 35.  
 Excrements of Goats. lib: 4, cap: 16.  
 Excrements of Cats distilled. lib: 5, ca: 22.  
 Excre-



## The Table.

Excrements of Myce for *Alopetia*. li: 5, ca: 1.  
 Exercise very profitable. lib: 1, cap: 3.  
 Exercise to be vsed before meat. *ibid.*  
*Exitus Longano*: defined, & cured. li: 5, ca: 50.  
 Eye, a most notable sence. lib: 5, ca: 9.  
 Eye of a dead Virgine. lib: 5, ca: 10.  
 Eyes are hurt by ouer-great light. li: 5, ca: 12.  
 Eyebright. *ibid.*  
 Eyes are the windowys of the soule. li: 5, ca: 9.  
 Eyes are of sundry colours. lib: 5, ca: 10.

### F

**F** Alculties are 3. in number. lib: 1, ca: 8.  
 Fasting heateth the blood. li: 2, ca: 2.  
 Fastnesse of the eye, & vse. lib: 5, ca: 10.  
 Feare defined with the euill effects. li: 2, ca: 6.  
 Figure defined with the cause. li: 1, ca: 14.  
 Figure is of 4. forts. *ibid.*  
 Fistula defined, with the cure. li: 5, ca: 46.  
 Flux of blood at the teeth. lib: 5, ca: 37.  
 Fluxion of the eyes. lib: 5, ca: 12.  
 Fluxion maketh tumors. li: 4, ca: 1.  
 Flux of blood at the nose. lib: 5, ca: 26.  
 Fomentation for *Exitus Longano*. li: 5, ca: 49.  
 Fomentation for *Bubonocoele*. lib: 5, cap: 52.  
 Fomentation for *Interocele*. lib: 5, cap: 56.  
 Fomentation for *Epiplocele*. lib: 5, cap: 57.  
 Fomentation for *Phisocoele*. lib: 5, cap: 59.  
 Fomentation for the yard. lib: 5, cap: 64.  
 Fomentation for the eye. lib: 5, ca: 12.  
*Formica* defined. lib: 4, cap: 9.  
 Fractures in wounds of 5. kinds. li: 6, ca: 11.  
 Fractures defined, with the cure. lib: 3, ca: 1.  
 Frictions and their effects. li: 9, ca: 23.  
 Fundament subiect to 13 diseases. li: 5, ca: 45.  
 Fundament closed in yong ones. li: 5, ca: 48.  
*Furuncle* defined, with the cure. lib: 4, ca: 4.  
*Furuncle* is of two sorts. *ibid.*

### G

Gals of beasts for *Mydriasis*. lib: 5, ca: 18.

Ganglion defined, with the cure. li: 5, ca: 8.  
 Gangrena defined, with the cure. li: 4, ca: 6.  
 Gargarisme for *Angina*. lib: 5, cap: 38.  
 Gargarism for vlcers in the mouth. li: 5, ca: 33.  
 Gargarism for the clap of the hals. li: 5, ca: 36.  
 Glands tumified in the mouth. li: 5, ca: 39.  
 Gland on the yard. li: 5, cap: 65.  
 Gluttons wrack their bodies. li: 2, cap: 2.  
 Gold fortaking away haire. li: 5, ca: 17.  
 Gout cyatick defined, & the cure. li: 5, ca: 67.

### H

**H** Aires on the eyes. li: 5, ca: 17.  
 Hairshauv defined, with the cure. lib: 5, cap: 28.  
 Head is subiect to 200 maladies. li: 5, ca: 1.  
 Health defined. lib: 3, cap: 1.  
 Hearbs good for the sight. li: 5, ca: 12.  
 Hemerage defined. li: 6, ca: 1.  
 Hemorrhoides defined, with the cure. lib: 5, cap: 49.  
*Hernia guttaris*. lib: 5, cap: 40.  
*Hernia umbilicalis*, with the cure. li: 5, ca: 44.  
*Hernia ventosa*. li: 5, cap: 59.  
*Hernia humeralis*. li: 5, cap: 62.  
*Hernia intestinalis*. li: 5, ca: 56.  
 Hordelion defined, and cured. li: 5, ca: 16.  
 Humors defined. lib: 1, cap: 6.  
 Humors of the eye. lib: 5, cap: 10.  
*Hydrocephale* defined, and cured. li: 5, ca: 7.  
 Hydropsie defined, and cured. li: 5, ca: 48.  
*Hydrocele* defined. lib: 5, ca: 58.  
 Hydromell composed. li: 5, cap: 12.

### I

**I** Dlenes the mother of vice. li: 2, cap: 3.  
 Idlenes bringeth old age. *ibid.*  
*Ignis Persicus*. lib: 4, ca: 9.  
 Incision made 3. wways. lib: 4, ca: 1.  
 Incision of the ligament beneath the tong. lib: 5, cap: 34.

G g 2

Incision



## The Table.

Incision of the Palate. lib, 5, cap, 36.  
 Incision of the Trach. arter. lib, 5, cap, 37.  
 Incision of *Empiema*. lib, 5, cap, 43.  
 Incision of Hydroptic. lib, 5, cap, 45.  
 Incision of the Fistula. lib, 5, cap, 46.  
 Incision of *Faterocoele*. lib, 5, cap, 56.  
 Incision for *Circocoele*. lib, 5, cap, 61.  
 Incision of the Prepuis. lib, 5, cap, 65.  
 Incision of the Varix. lib, 5, cap, 69.  
 Incision Circular. lib, 5, cap, 28.  
 Iniection for the bladder. lib, 5, ca, 63.  
 Iniection for Wounds. lib, 6, cap, 12.  
 Intemperies done two wayes. lib, 3, ca, 1.  
 Intestines, wheerof they are composed.  
 lib, 5, cap, 51.  
*Interocoele* defined, with the cure. li, 5, c, 56.

### K

**K** Ybes defined, and cured. lib, 5, ca, 74.  
 Kings Evill defined. lib, 5, ca, 34.

### L

**L** Aviment for the teeth. li, 5, c, 31.  
 Leprosie defined. li, 5, c, 71.  
 Leprosie most incident to Swine. *ibid.*  
 Lyce defined, with the cause. li, 5, c, 4.  
 Lyce cause some to dye *ibid.*  
 Ligatours for *Epaulis*. li, 5, c, 32.  
 Ligament for the tongue. li, 5, c, 34.  
 Ligatour for the pallate of the mouth.  
 lib, 5, cap, 36.  
 Ligatour for the Fistula. *ibid.*  
 Ligatour for *Thymus*. li, 5, c, 47.  
 Ligatour for Warts. li, 5, c, 73.  
 Ligatour for Wounds. li, 6, c, 1.  
 Ligatour for bleeding. li, 9, c, 8.  
 Ligatour for Spasell. li, 4, c, 7.  
 Ligament of the Prepuis. li, 5, c, 65.  
 Lineament for the gut. li, 5, c, 66.  
 Lips pale coloured & hacked. li, 5, c, 27.

Liquor for blood at the nose. li, 5, c, 26.  
 Liquor to make white teeth. li, 5, c, 29.  
 Liquor for sore pappes. li, 5, c, 42.  
 Liquor agglutinative. li, 10, c, 6.  
 Lotion for the mouth. li, 5, c, 33.  
 Lupus in the Legs. li, 4, c, 16.  
 Life of man subiect to 5 mutations. li, 1, c, 11.

### M

**M** *Acrocephale* defined. lib, 5, cap, 7.  
 Malady defined. li, 3, c, 1.  
 Malady is of three kinds. li, 3, c, 2.  
 Maladies of the eye. li, 5, c, 10.  
 Maladies of the membranes. li, 5, c, 8.  
*Malum sanctae manus*. li, 5, c, 71.  
 Masticatories for the eyes. li, 5, c, 12.  
 Measures of medicaments. li, 10, c, 1.  
 Meat defined. li, 2, c, 2.  
 Meat to be vsed by aged and yong. *ibid.*  
 Medicaments Sarcoticks. li, 6, c, 2.  
 Medicaments suppuratiues for wounds.  
 lib, 6, cap, 1.  
 Medicaments for burning. li, 7, c, 10.  
 Medicaments are of foure degrees. li, 10, c, 1.  
 Medicaments hote and cold in degrees. *ibid.*  
 Medicaments Narcoticks. li, 10, c, 2.  
 Medicaments Repercussives. li, 10, c, 3.  
 Medicaments Attractives. li, 10, c, 4.  
 Medicaments Resolatives. li, 10, c, 5.  
 Medicaments Emollients. li, 10, c, 6.  
 Medicaments Suppuratiues. li, 10, c, 7.  
 Medicaments Mundificatiues. li, 10, c, 8.  
 Medicaments Incarnatiues. li, 10, c, 9.  
 Medicament Putrefactive. *ibid.*  
 Medicament to stay flux of blood. li, 10, c, 13.  
 Medicament for Polypus. li, 5, c, 2.  
*Medriasis* defined, and cured. li, 5, c, 18.  
 Melancholy defined. li, 1, c, 6.  
 Membranes of the braines altered. li, 6, c, 11.  
*Membrana adnata*. li, 5, c, 15.  
 Membranes of the eyes. li, 5, c, 9.  
 Morpeons defined. li, 5, c, 4.

Mouth



## The Table.

Mouth serveth for sundry vses. l, 6, c, 9  
 Moouing defined. l, 2, c, 3.  
 Moales defined, and cure. l, 5, c, 74.  
 Muscles Sphincter. l, 5, c, 51.  
 Muscles of the eye. l, 5, c, 10.

### N

**N** Arcoticks is defined. lib, 9, cap, 2  
 Navill neere cut dangerous l, 5, c, 44  
 Nits ingendered of Lice. l, 5, c, 4.  
 Needle for the Haireshavv. l, 5, c, 28.  
 Needle of gold or siluer for Fistula. l, 5, c, 46  
 Needle for *Circocoele*. l, 5, c, 61.  
 Needle for the Cataract. l, 5, c, 10.  
 Needle for wounds. l, 8, c, 1.  
 Nerves of the eye, their vse, and whence  
 they proceed. l, 5, c, 10.  
 Nerus of the eyes differ frō other nerus. *ibid*  
 Nerves of the eyes why they are full of pe-  
 rosity. *ibid*.

### O

**O** Ptharmon defined, & cured l, 5, c, 13  
*Ophthalmia* defined, & cured. l, 5, c, 19  
 Oyle for corrupt teeth. l, 5, c, 30.  
 Oyle of Frogs for the gut. l, 5, c, 67  
 Oyntment for Scrophule. l, 5, c, 39  
 Oyntment to take away haire. l, 5, c, 17.

### P

**P** Anaris defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 72  
 Pappes, their diseases. l, 5, c, 42.  
 Paralisis in the fundament. l, 5, c, 90.  
 Paralisis in the neck of the bladder. l, 5, c, 63  
 Paralisis defined, cause & cured. l, 6, c, 1.  
 Parotides defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 24.  
 Paraulis to be opened l, 5, c, 32.  
*Peritonodon* defined. l, 5, c, 51.

*Periton* hath two tunicles. *ibid*.  
*Phigethlon* defined, and cured. l, 4, c, 3.  
*Phyma* defined, and cured. *ibid*:  
 Phlegmatitians, and their nature. l, 1, c, 5.  
 Phlegmon defined, and cured. l, 2, c, 6.  
*Phymosis* defined and cured. l, 5, c, 55.  
*Physocoele* defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 59.  
*Pistoles* for the head. l, 5, c, 12.  
 Plurisie defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 33.  
 Plumations, and their nature. l, 6, c, 1.  
 Polican for the teeth. l, 5, c, 30.  
 Polypus defined, and cured. l, 5, c, 25.  
*Polytricon*. *ibid*:  
 Pomade for hacked lips. l, 5, c, 27.  
*Potus diuinus* defined. l, 6, c, 11.  
*Priapismus* defined. l, 5, c, 65.  
*Pterigium* defined. l, 5, c, 72.  
 Pouders to make white teeth l, 5, c, 31.  
 Pouder for *Ophthalmia*. l, 5, c, 24.  
 Pouder to stay blood at the nose. l, 5, c, 26  
 Pouder for the pallat of the mouth. l, 5, c, 36  
 Pouder for *Thymus*. l, 5, c, 47.  
 Pouder incarnatiue for wounds. l, 6, c, 2.  
 Pouder to stay flux of blood. l, 6, c, 7.  
 Pouder aromaticke for dead corps. l, 8, c, 5  
 Pouder Cicatrizant. l, 10, c, 11.  
 Pouper for vlcers in the yard. *ibid*.  
 Pouder to consume flesh. l, 10, c, 11.  
 Pouder for *Tinea*, li, 5, ca, 6.  
 Pouder to correct superfluous flesh, l, 5, c, 8  
 Pouder for the eyes, li, 5, ca, 12.  
 Pouder for the weeping eye, li, 5, ca, 14  
 Pouder caustick to consume flesh, l, 5, c, 32  
 Pouder for the Sphasel, li, 4, ca, 7.  
*Pus* defined, lib, 7, cap, 1.  
 Putrefaction defined lib, 6, cap, 1.  
 Putrefaction of two sorts. *ibid*:

### R

**R** Anurn ulus defined, & cured, l, 5, c, 35  
 Reduction of the Epiplon li, 5, c, 56  
 Receipt of M. *William Clowes*. l, 6, c, 1  
 Remedy for hollow teeth, lib, 5, cap, 31.  
 Remedies



## The Table.

Remedies cordiall. lib: 4. cap: 7.  
 Remedy to take away haire. lib: 5, cap: 12.  
 Remedy for Aneufisma lib: 5, cap: 41.  
 Remedies for burning lib: 7, cap: 10.  
 Remedies to consume flesh. lib: 9, ca: 19.  
 Repercussives to be vsed. lib: 4, cap: 1.  
 Repercussive medicaments lib: 10, cap: 3.  
 Repletion is of two kinds. lib: 2, ca: 5.  
 Resolative for windy tumors. li: 0, c: 5.  
 Resolative for watry tumors. li: 10, ca: 5.  
 Rest dulleth the body. lib: 4 cap: 1.  
 Retraction of the tong. lib: 5, cap: 34.  
 Reading & writing euill after meat. l. 2, c. 3.  
 Romanes of old did eat openly. li: 1, ca: 2.

### S

**S** Adnesse defined, with the Symptomes,  
 lib: 2, cap: 6.  
*Sarcoma* defined. lib: 5, ca: 25.  
*Sarcocoe* defined, and cured. lib: 5, cap: 60.  
*Satiriasis* defined. lib: 5, ca: 65.  
*Schir* defined, and cured. lib: 4, cap: 15.  
*Scrophule* defined, and cured. lib: 5, cap: 34.  
 Senses externe. lib: 1, cap: 8.  
 Seton defined. lib: 9, ca: 15.  
 Seton in the Scroton. lib: 5. cap: 58.  
 Seton applyed in diuers parts. *ibid.*  
 Sex defined. lib: 1. cap: 14.  
 Shamefastnes defined. lib: 2, ca: 6.  
 Shell Snakes for Hydrocephale. lib: 5, c:  
 Sight reioyceth in blew, violet, and greene,  
 lib: 5. ca: 12.  
 Syrupe magistrall for the head. *ibid.*  
 Sicknesse doth proceed of some humors.  
 lib: 1. cap: 6.  
 Sicknes in Autume very vnholosome. l: 1, c: 5.  
 Sincope defined. lib: 6. cap: 1.  
 Signs not obserued by the Phisitiōs. l: 9, c: 2.  
 Skinne defined. lib: 6. cap: 1.  
 Sleepe defined, and cause. lib: 2. cap: 4.  
 In sleeping, lye first on the right side. *ibid.*  
 Sphasell, or S. *Antonies* fire defined l: 5, c: 7

*Spasme* defined, and cured. lib: 6. cap: 1.  
 Spermaticke vessels are foure. lib: 5, cap: 52.  
 Spirits defined, & are of 3. sorts lib: 1, ca: 10.  
 Steotema defined, and cured. li: 4. ca: 14.  
 Stones how to be cut. lib: 5, cap: 52.  
 Stones and their vsage. *ibid.*  
 Seare cloth for Cauters, lib: 9, c: 19.  
 Seare cloth for dead corps. lib: 8, cap: 5.  
 Sound of Lead for Fistula, lib: 5, cap: 46.  
 Suture defined. lib: 6. cap: 1.  
 Sutures are of three kinds. *ibid.*  
 Suture drye. *ibid.*  
 Suture Gastroraphicke. *ibid.*  
 Swyne subiect to Leprosie. lib: 2, ca: 6.  
 Symptomes are of three kinds. lib: 3, cap: 3.  
 Symptomes of the humor *Vitrei* li: 5, ca: 18.  
 Symptomes of Christalline humor. *ibid.*

### T

**T** Abes defined, and is of two sorts,  
 lib: 5, cap: 11.  
 Teares whence they proceed l: 5, c: 10.  
 Teeth defined, and their number. li: 5, c: 29  
 & lib: 8, cap: 1.  
 By teeth men may prognosticate long or  
 short life, lib: 5. cap: 29.  
 Teeth that are mowly, to be filed. li: 5, ca: 30.  
 Teeth artificiall. *ibid.*  
 Teeth superfluous. *ibid.*  
 Teeth mowly and euill sauoured. l: 5, c: 31.  
 Temperament defined. lib: 1, cap: 5.  
 Temperature of man known 5. waies, *ibid.*  
 Temperature of man and woman, li: 5, c: 14.  
*Terminthus* defined, and cured, li: 4, ca: 3.  
 Terebintine of Venice for the bladder.  
 lib: 5, cap: 63.  
 Thirst defined, lib: 2, cap: 2.  
*Thymus* defined, and cured. lib: 5, cap: 37.  
 Tinea defined, and cured. lib: 5, cap: 6.  
 Tinea in yong children is contagious. *ibid.*  
 Tinea leaueth the part empty of haire, *ibid.*  
 Tinea deliuereth men from Epilepsie. *ibid.*  
 Tooth.



## The Table.

Toothach, with the cure. li. 5, ca. 29.  
 Topical remedies for the stones. li. 5, ca. 53.  
 Topical remedies for Interocle. li. 5, ca. 56.  
 Topical remedies for gunshot. lib. 6, cap. 5.  
 Topical remedies for vlcers cavernous.  
 lib. 7, cap. 4.  
 Topical remedies for rotten vlcers li. 7, ca. 5.  
 Topical remedies for burning. lib. 7, cap. 10.  
 Topical remedies for the eyes. lib. 5, ca. 12.  
 Topical remedies for Ægylops. li. 5, ca. 15.  
 Triacle for wounds by venomous beasts.  
 lib. 6, cap. 8.  
 Trepan for the head. lib. 6, cap. 11.  
 Trepan when and where it should be vsed.  
*ibid.*  
 Trepan for the sternon. li. 5, ca. 3.  
 Tumors defined, and cured. lib. 4, ca. 1.  
 Tumors are of 4. sorts. *ibid.*  
 Tumors in the Cods. lib. 5, cap. 53.  
 Tumors in the Thorax. lib. 6, cap. 12.

### V

**V** Arix defined, and cured. lib. 5, cap. 69.  
 Vaines of the eyes. lib. 5, cap. 10.  
 Vaines that should be let blood.  
 lib. 9, cap. 1.  
 Vaines in the head to be opened. lib. 9, ca. 3.  
 Vaines in the arme to be opened. lib. 9, ca. 4.  
 Vaines in the hands to be opened. li. 9, ca. 5.  
 Vaines in the fundament. lib. 9, cap. 6.  
 Vaines in the legs, & their office. li. 9, ca. 7.  
 Ventoses defined, and their forme. li. 9, ca. 11.  
 Ventoses how to be applyed. lib. 9, cap. 13.  
 Vertues defined. lib. 1, cap. 8.  
 Vertues animall are of 2. sorts. *ibid.*  
 Vinegar squillique. lib. 5, cap. 31.  
 Vlcers in the necke of the bladder. li. 5, ca. 63.  
 Vlcers defined, and cured. lib. 7, cap. 2.  
 Vlcers sanious cured. lib. 7, cap. 3.  
 Vlcers profound and virulent, defined, and  
 cured. lib. 7, cap. 4.  
 Vlcers rotten & filthy, defined. lib. 7, cap. 5.  
 Vlcers with corruption of the bone, defi-

ned, and cured. lib. 7, ca. 7.  
 Vlcers Cankerous, defined, and cured.  
 lib. 7, cap. 9.  
 Vnguent for the cure of Canker. li. 4, ca. 16.  
 Vnguent for Aneufisma. lib. 5, cap. 41.  
 Vnguent for the Hemorrhoides. li. 5, ca. 49.  
 Vnguent of *Divius* for wounds. lib. 6, ca. 9.  
 Vnguent Anodins. lib. 10, cap. 2.  
 Vnguent attractiue. lib. 10, cap. 4.  
 Vnguent Suppuratiue. lib. 10, cap. 7.  
 Vnguent resolutiue. lib. 10, ca. 5.  
 Vnguent incarnatiue. lib. 10, ca. 9.  
 Vnguent mundificatiue. lib. 10, cap. 8.  
 Vnguent for blood at the nose. lib. 5, ca. 29.  
 Vnguent for the eyes. lib. 5, cap. 11.  
 Vnguent for Tinea. lib. 5, cap. 6.  
 Vnguent for Warts. lib. 5, ca. 73.  
 Urine of Carcinoma. lib. 4, cap. 16.  
 Urine for vlcers in the eares. li. 5, ca. 23.  
 Vvula defined, and cured. li. 5, ca. 10.

### W

**W** Aking much, is noysome. li. 2, ca. 4.  
 Water distilled for the eyes.  
 lib. 5, cap. 12.  
 Water congealed vnder the sternon. li. 5, ca. 43.  
 Water for Polypus. lib. 5, cap. 45.  
 Watry tumors that depend of Oedema.  
 lib. 4, cap. 13.  
 Water of separatiō for *Exanthemata*. li. 5, ca. 5.  
 Water of Cats for the eares. lib. 5, ca. 22.  
 Water of *Cardus Benedictus*. lib. 4, cap. 16.  
 Water-Canker, with the cure. lib. 5, cap. 33.  
 Weaknes of the sight. lib. 6, cap. 12.  
 Weights of medicaments. lib. 10, ca. 2.  
 Wind defined, with the nature. li. 2, ca. 1.  
 Winds from the North are euill. li. 5, ca. 10.  
 Winds oppressing the stomacke. lib. 7, ca. 10.  
 Windy chollicke. lib. 5, cap. 51.  
 Windy tumors which depend of Oedema.  
 lib. 4, cap. 12.  
 Wome become sooner old the men. li. 1, ca. 12.  
 Wormes



## The Table.

Worms not ingēdered in the teeth, l: 5, c: 29  
Wounds defined, and cured, li: 6, ca: 1,  
Wounds mortall, *ibid*:  
Wounds of euery internall part, *ibid*:  
Wounds simple how to be cured, li: 6, ca: 2.  
Wounds composed to be cured, li: 6, ca: 3  
Wounds contused defined, & cured, l: 6, c: 4  
Wounds done by Gunshot, cured, l: 6, c: 5  
Wounds in the nerues and tendons, with  
their cause, and cure, lib: 6, cap: 8.  
Wounds by venomous beasts, & cure,  
lib: 6, cap: 9.  
Wounds in the bones, and cure, li: 6, ca: 10  
Wounds in the Thorax, & cure, li: 6, ca: 12

Wounds in the belly, & cure, lib: 6, cap: 13  
Warts defined, and cure, lib: 5, cap: 73.  
Warts vnder the prepuis, lib: 5, cap: 65.  
Wine should be moderately vsed, li: 2, c: 2

*r*

**Y**ard with the composition and scituati-  
on, lib: 5, cap: 69.  
Yard is subiect to many diseases, with  
the causes, and cure. lib: 5, cap: 65.

*FINIS.*





---

THE  
PRESAGES  
OF  
Diuine *Hippocrates*:

Diuided into three parts. With the pro-  
testation or oath which Hippocrates  
*caused his Schollers to make at their  
entrie with him to their studies.*

---

THE WHOLE COLLECTED  
and Translated by *Peter Lowe Scottish-  
man, Doctor in the facultie of  
Chirurgerie in  
PARIS.*  
(.)

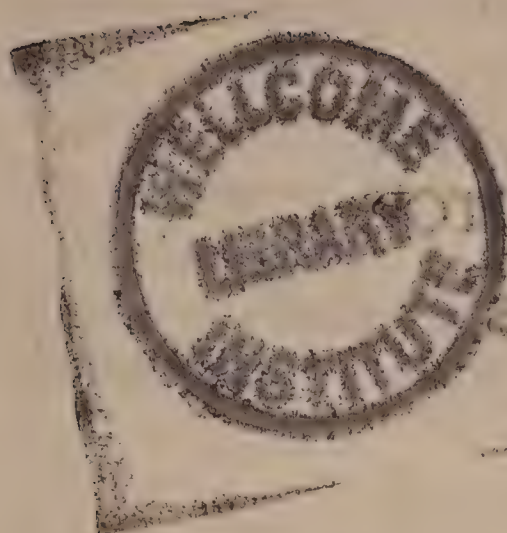


AT LONDON,  
*Printed by Thomas Purfoot.*  
*An. Dom. 1611.*



THE  
PRESSAGES  
OF

Dining Shipboard



Illustrated into three parts. With the  
collection of each which shipboard  
and the collection to make a whole  
and the collection to make a whole

THE WHOLE COLLECTED

and illustrated by Mrs. Jane Scott

and the collection to make a whole

and the collection to make a whole

TABLE

(v)



At London

Printed by Thomas P. in 1800

Ad. Don. 1800



To the reuerend Father in God Iohn, by the  
permission of God Arch-bishop of Glasgowe; Peter  
Lowe wisheth the accomplishment of all perfect  
Honour, and felicitie.



When I had collected and turned into our vul-  
gar language, This little worke (Right Ho-  
norable); I considered with my selfe, that in  
ancient time, and also in this our Age, men  
haue euer accustomed to dedicate their tra-  
uels vnto such vertuous Personages as they  
haue honoured: and I examining my selfe, vnto whome I might  
addresse this Treatise of the Presages, I thought good to offer  
and present the same in all humilitie to your Honour: It be-  
ing the worke of Hippocrates the Paragon of Phisitians, and  
your Lordship the patterne of learning, the patron of learned  
men, the fittest to Iudge of their workes. For I must confesse it,  
euer since it pleased God to place your Lo: in your Ecclesia-  
sticall eminencie aboue vs in this Citie, I haue euer been incli-  
ned to testifie my affection to your Ho: by my humblest en-  
deauours: But hauing nothing in my power, but my simple de-  
sires; my hands being too short to come to solide asserts, I giue  
this publique testimonie to the world of my inward disposition,  
and consecrate my selfe and my labours to your Lordships  
most honourable Patronage. Your Honors piety in religion, pru-  
dencie in pollicie, knowledge in all sciences, (Quoniam nomine  
religiosissimo, prudentissimo, & eruditissimo Principi ac-  
ceptissimus es) and grauely tempered with affabilitie in ciuill  
conuersation, shall protect me from Momus malicious enuie,  
procure me the fauour of good men, encourage me to vnder-  
take further paines for the publique utilitie, oblige me more and  
more to your Honors seruice, and wish your Lordshippe all con-  
tentment, prosperitie, and long life, long to rule in Gods Church,  
gouerne the common-wealth, and better the estate of all those  
that bee subiect to your Honours authoritie. I humbly take  
my leaue from mine owne house in Glasgowe, the 7. day of No-  
uember. 1611.

A 2

Your L. most dutifull to  
commaund, Peter Lowe.



## The life of Hippocrates.



His Maister  
was Pithago-  
ras.

He restored  
Phisicke, long  
lost.

Hippocrates  
Prouerbe.

*Hippocrates* was the sonne of *Heracledes*, as *Galen* doth affirme in the first Booke of Regiment of hot feuers, but as others say, the sonne of *Esclepius*, he was bred and borne in the Isle *Cos*, his Maister and Instructor was the great *Pythagoras*. His naturall inclination was towards good, for hee hated, loathed, and abhorred all pompe and worldly pleasures and veneriall lusts. He constrained also his schollers by an oath to bee silent and keepe taciturnitie, modestie, affabilitie, and humilitie, aswell in manners, as in apparell. *S. Hierome* testifieth that he restored the science of Phisick beeing almost lost Fiuie Hundreth yeares viz. since the time of *Esculapius*. Hee was little in body and stature, but faire and exceeding well fauoured: he had a good and strong head: he went slowlie and softly: hee was very pensieue and of fewe wordes: hee was no great eater, nor glutton: hee liued 95. yeares, he vsed oftentimes this sentēce. *He that will liue in libertie, let him not desire that which he cannot obtaine, and he who would haue that which hee desireth and coueteth, let him desire nothing but that which hee may obtaine.* Furthermore he who would liue peaceably in this mortall life, let him conforme himselfe to him who is inuited to a feast, who giueth thanks for all which is layd before him, and grudgeth not at any thing which is omitted. He liued in the time of *Eliachim*, *Malachias*, *Pereno*, and *Socrates*.

The





¶ The protestation and oath of diuine  
*Hippocrates.*



*Hippocrates* doe vow, promise and protest to the great God *Appollo* and his two Daughters *Higine* and *Panace*, and also to all the gods and goddeses, to obserue the contents of this oath, or tables wherein this oath is carued, written or ingraued, so farre as I can

possible, and so farre as my wit or vnderstanding shall bee able to direct me, viz. that I yeild my selfe tributarie and debtor to the Maister and Doctor who hath instructed me and shewed mee this science and doctrine, euen as much or rather more then to my Father who hath begotten me, and that I shall liue and communicate with him and follow him in all necessities, which I shall know him to haue so farre as my power shall permit, and my gods shall extend. Also that I shall loue and cherish his children as my brothers, and his progenie as mine owne. Further, that I shall teach, shew and demonstrate the sayde science (gratis) without rewarde or couenant, and that I shall giue all the Cannons rules and precepts, freely, truely, and faithfully to my Maister his children, as to myne owne, without hiding or concealing any thing, and to all other Schollers who shall make the same oath or protestation, and to no others. Also that in practising and vsing my science towards the sicke, I shall vse onely things necessary, so farre as I am able, and as my spirit and good vnderstanding shall giue vnto mee, and that I shall cure the sicke as speedy as I may, without dilating or prolonging the Malady. And that I shall not doe any thing against equitie, for hatred, anger, enuie, or malice, to any person whatsoever: Moreo-

Tributarie to  
his Maister.

Loue his  
Masters  
children.



## *The Oath of Hippocrates.*

uer, that I shall minister no poyson, neither counsell nor  
Not to mini- teach poyson, nor the composing thereof, to any : Also,  
ster poyson. that I shall not giue, nor cause to be giuen, nor consent that  
any thing be applied to a woman breeding, or bigge with  
To giue no- child, to destroy, or make her voyd her fruite. But I pro-  
thing to wo- test to keepe my Life and Science purely, sincerely and in-  
men, to cause abortment. violably, without deceit, fraude, or guile. And that I  
shall not cutte, nor incise any person hauing the stone, but  
shall leaue the same to those that are expert in it : and fur-  
thermore, I shall not enter into the Patients house, but  
with purpose to heale him : & that I shall patiently sustaine  
To beare the iniuries, reproaches, and loathsomnesse of sick men, and  
with the sick. all other base raylings : and that I shall eschew as much as I  
may, all venerious lasciuiousnesse. Moreouer I protest,  
be it man, woman, or seruant, who is my patient, to cure  
them of all things that I may see or heare either in mind  
or manners, and I shall not bewray that which should be  
concealed and hidden, but keepe inuiolable, with silence,  
neither reueale any creature, vnder paine of death. And  
therefore I beseech our Gods, that obseruing this Pro-  
testation, promise and vow intirely and inuiolably, that all  
things in my life, in my Art and Science, may succeed  
Heere Hippo- securely, healthfully, and prosperously to me, and in the  
crates shew- end eternall glory. And to him that shall violate, transgresse  
eth, that the or become periured, that the contrary may happen vnto  
place of blef- him, viz. miserie, calamitie, and continuall maladies.  
sed is eternall,  
and the paine  
of the wicked  
infinite.

*The end of the Protestation.*

The





The first Booke of the Prefages of  
diuine Hippocrates.

*The Preface.*



By Phisitian or Chirurgion  
desiring to purchase glozy &  
honour, the loue of the peo-  
ple, and some wealth by his  
Science, ought to shew him-  
selfe skilfull and expert, and  
that by declaring to the Pati-  
ents the signes past, present,  
and future, of their Maladies,  
and shewing the things ouer

The Phisitian  
should be  
skilfull.

past by the sicke men, and aduertising or reducing to their  
memozy, things forgotten: which the sicke persons know-  
ing, will the more confidently commit themselves to their  
hands, presuming and thinking that he hath a generall  
knowledge of all Maladies, and that they shall bee speedily  
cured, the which is true. For hauing such knowledge of  
things past, present, and future, he may more easily helpe  
the Maladies, although it be impossible to any Medicine  
Chirurgion to cure and heale all diseases: for it should be  
a greater thing, then to foretell the future accidents. For  
it sometimes happeneth that the sicke die by the violence or  
malignitie of the Maladie before the Phisitian be called:  
some die shortlie after the Phisitian Chirurgion are arri-  
ued, the same day: also one or two dayes after before that  
by his science and diligence he may correct and take away  
the perill and dangerous accidents. Therefore he ought to  
endeauour, and enforce him to know the nature of such  
sicknes, also the strength of the sicke, to the end hee may a-  
uoyde defamations, opprobrious speeches and reproches,  
the



## The Prefages of.

the which doing, he shall make himselfe admirable, and more diuine then humane, presaging death to one, and health to another; hauing likewise regard to the qualitie, goodnes, and malignitie of the aire, which circun-uicous the sicke, as the vniuersall aire, the times, & qualities of the yeare, also the good and euill aspects of celestiaall bodies, which foresaying, hee shall eschew dishonour, and shall get renowne and friends in all his actions.

### ¶ How the Phisitian or Chirurgion may presage by signes of the Face, in sicknes.

**N**ow to foretell, foresee, or presage well by the signes in dangerous and vehement Maladies; It is requisite to consider and contemplate the Face of the sicke. First to know if it be such as in health, or but a little different: and if it be so, the mediciner Chirurgian may haue a good presagement and hope of Recouerie. But if it be greatly altered, and changed, as followeth, hee shall esteeme it in perill and danger of death, when the nose and nostrils are extenuated and sharpened by the same Malady, and the eyes hollow, and the temples, viz. the parts betwene the eares and forehead are leane, and the skinne of the brow is hard, drie, and loose, and the eares cold and thronke, or almost doubled, and all the face appeareth black, pale, liuide, or leaden and greatly deformed, in respect of that which it was in time of health. When these things before mentioned appeare in the Face, or the most part of them, In the beginning, or first daies of the Malady he must enquire (if he cannot knowe by any other token) if it happen not by watching too much, or that the Patient hath not had time or opportunitie to sleepe, or if he hath had a naturall flux of the belly, or if the said things haue happened by famine: so if it be so, he ought not to feare danger. On the contrarie, if the Face appeare such and continue, and the Patient



## Hippocrates.

tient faith, that the said things doe procede of watching, loosenes of body, noꝝ by fasting, the Mediciner Chirurgion may assuredly presage death approaching; and if the Maladie hath already continued thre or foure daies, after (having considered that as is above mentioned) it behooveth him to contemplate by other signes, as by the eyes, lippes, hands, and other parts of the body.

To presage by the signes of the *Eyes*, and *Lippes*,  
in sicknesse.

**I**f the Eyes cannot see the day or light, and weepe or Euill signes of  
poloze out teares against nature, and against the Pati- the Eyes.  
ents will: Also when it seemeth that they are like to fall  
out of the head, or that the one is evidently growen lesse or  
diminished, or that the white of the eyes is red, and the  
vaines appeare red, or liuide, or that they are bleared or  
dimme, or trembling and very incueable, or deepe & sunck  
in: also when the sick becommeth squint eyed and looketh Mortal signes  
ouer thwart, with a terrible & obscure looke, and hath the of the visage.  
visage all disfigured and fearefull: all these signes are per-  
nicious and mortall. Also when the Patient sleepeth  
with his eyes halfe open (and doth not so by custome) and  
the white of the eye shewit selfe, the eye lids being onely  
closed, if this happen not by the flux of the body, noꝝ by lax-  
ative medicines, it is a signe of death. Also when the eye  
lids, the lippes, and nose seme to be crooked and drawen a-  
woꝝ, also mortified and liuide: these signes with the pro-  
ceedings, fozetell death to the sicke. Likewise when the  
lips are leane, hanging downe, colde and pale, against the  
nature of the sicke, the Mediciner Chirurgion may presage  
and prognosticate death to appꝛoch.

To presage by the manner of *Lying* and *Reposing*  
in sicknes.



## The Prefages of

Stifnes of the  
legges.

Euill signes.

To sleepe  
with open  
mouth.

**A**s for Lying, it is a very good signe when the Patient reposeseth and resteth on the right side, or left, at his ease, hauing his hands vpon his stomack or elsewhere, not being stiffe of his legs, but flexible, and to repose as in health, is best. For to lie with neck, hands, & feet stiffly extended and vnflexible, is an euill signe. Likewise when the sick turneth, wrings, and tosseth vp & down often times, with starting either in sleep, or waking, and making the beds feet where the head should be, casting himselfe down, not knowing what he doth, is an euill signe. Also if hee often vncouer himselfe hauing no great heat in the extremities, & that he casteth forth his armes, legs, feet & head, sometime on this side, sometime on that, it is a signe that he is in great anguish & distresse. Also it is a pernicious signe to sleepe with the mouth open, contrary to nature. Likewise to sleepe with the face vpiward, hauing the legs entelaced, and folded together as it were cords, and that by the force and violence of the Maladie, is a bad signe, or when they are much enlarged against reason. Likewise he that sleeppeth contrarie to nature & custome, with the belly downward laid close to the bed, sheweth and signifieth confusion and alienation of senses, or great rage & dolor of the belly. Also whosoever in the day of Critication, and force of the Maladie, constraines and forceth himselfe to rise, & sit vpright, and is impatient, puts himselfe in danger, and it is an euill signe in all vehement & great Maladies, but worse in pulmonick passions.

To Prefage by the Teeth, in sicknes.

**W**hen one gnasheth the teeth (not as a man that hath extreame cold) but with collision in the Feuer, & hath not had it naturally, nor by custome, it signifieth troubling of the spirit & consequently death, and if he be shortly after void of reason and alienated, it signifieth death approaching.

To prefage of Death by any Vicer.



## Hippocrates.

If there happen to the sicke person any Ulcer, Antrax or Carbuncle, whether it goe before the Malady, or come with the Malady : if the Ulcer dry vp, and become either greene, liuide, or black, and you perceave the sicke to grow worse, you may prognosticate death ensuing.

To presage by the *Hands*, in sicknes.

When any Patient is sicke of the hote or burning Feuer, or in the Malady of the lungs called Peripneumonia, or of bastard frenzie, and not perfect, or of great dolor of the head, and seakes heere and there, about below & upon the bed, threds, & haire of the face, also feathers, or filth of the coverings, straw, rushes, and other things, and thinkes to take hold of the seeling & wales, the which are almost all signes most commonly.

To presage by *Breath* or *Respiration*, in feuers.

The Breath or Respiration signifieth often dolors or inflammations, or burning heat in the spiritual members, as in the hart and lights, but when it is great and rare, so that there is any long space betwixt the Respiration, it signifieth alienation of vnderstanding and reason And when the breath issueth out of the mouth & nostrils very cold, it foretels great perill of death But gentle Respiration in any hot Maladie being ioyned & accompanied with a Feuer, is a signe of health in those that do end in forty daies.

To Prognostication by *Sweat*, in feuers.

The healthfull, commendable, and good Sweat in all hot Maladies, is that which hapneth in the day of Criticall & Iudgement, and chisely when it is vniuersall and the Patient finds himselfe thereby eased and strengthened. And if it happen not in the same day & be not vniuersall, it is no good signe. For the mostall Sweat is particular and cold as in the forehead, in the head or face only, and this in

Sweating is healthfull in the Critick day.



## The Prefages of

the burning Fever and other Maladies declareth continuance of the Maladie.

To prefage of the *Right side* and *Left* in Fevers.

**W**hen the Patient feels not any dolour, tumor, hardnesse, or Inflammation vppon the Ribbes, it is a very good signe, and when the one side is as soft as the other, without dolour. But if there be dolour, tumor, hardnesse, or Inflammation on both sides, or on the one more then the other, it is an euill signe. For if he feele great motion or pulsation in one of his sides, hee may prognosticate great distresse and dolour, or alienation and confusion of Reason. If with this pulsation the eyes be very moueable, the Patient is in daunger of Frensie and to be frantick, or to destroy himselfe.

To prefage by signes of Tumors or Apostumes  
vnder the sides.

**T**he Collection of Apostume in a burning Malady vnder both the sides with tumor and dolour, is more dangerous then vnder one of the sides onely, and chiefly lesse dangerous vnder the left side then vnder the right: and if the Patient die not in the first daies, and if it continue xx. daies and the feuer cease not, nor the Apostume diminish, it is a signe that it shall come to maturation; and if it happen on the seauenth day with the flux of blood at the nose, it easeeth much, and the Medicine Chirurgion may prognosticate when the Patient saith that he hath paine in the head or forehead, and that his eyes are dimme or obscure, & chiefly when the Patient doth not exceed 30. or 35. yeeres of age. And when the collection or Apostume is soft and without dolour, and moueth or varieth when it is handled, it requireth longer time to be cured, then the precedent, but it is not so dangerous. And if it continue 60. daies, and the feuer cease not, neither the tumor diminish, it shall come to maturation and purgation: you shall prognosticate



## Hippocrates.

cate so much of Apastumes in the belly: the Apostume then being hard, great, and with dolour, is dangerous & mortall: The soft without dolour and volable from one place to another, is of longer continuance, but without comparison lesse dangerous.

To preface of *Apostumes* in the bottome of the *Belly* in  
*feuers.*

**T**he Apostumes of the Belly doe neuer become so great, as those that breed vnder the *Mozzie*, and yet they are lesse which ingender vnto the *Paull*, and most commonly they come to suppuration or putrefaction: It is a good signe when they purge by flux of blood at the *Mozzils* from the part of the Apostume: also all such Apostumes by laps of time, and in the end may come to putrefaction and purgation. It is then conuenient to consider that the forenamed Collections or Apostumes come by diuers meanes to putrefaction or purgation, for some purge altogether outwardly, and are little, round, and sharp or pointed, they are most healthfull and least mortall: The large, grosse, and flat, spacious & not round nor sharp, are dangerous: and those which breake and purge within the belly, although they make some tumors outwardly, are more pernicious & dangerous, then those which make no eminence outwardly, & which haue not the skin discoloured.

To preface what the matter ought to be that  
issueth out of *Apostumes*.

**T**he Corruption and matter which commeth out of Apostumes altogether white, and not viscidie, is good and healthfull: that which is otherwise, how much the more it differs from white, so much the more is viscidie and bad.

*The end of the first Booke.*

The





The second Booke of the Prefages of  
*Hippocrates*; and first of *Hydropsie* in feuers.

**A**ll manner of *Hydropsie* with the hot feuer, is dangerous and mortall: For when the Patient is molested and afflicted by any vehement feuer and grievous dolour, then he dieth. This Maladie often proceedeth of the Hepaticke passion which is the Malady of the Liver: It happeneth also by passions in the Guts, Intestines, and Entrails, Meseraick, vaines or melt, & other inferiour parts: That which comes by the Entrails or Meseraick vaines & other parts, is knowne by Inflation in the feet, and by long and continuall flux of the body, albeit the dolor of the belly is not mitigated nor appeased, nor the belly diminished nor growen lesse. That which proceeds of the Liver is known by the signes following, viz. the Patient hath a dry cough and spitteth almost nothing, and his belly is hard & bound in such sort, that there commeth nothing from it, but with great paine and trauell: also his feet are swollen: Moreover there are tumors and inflations sometime on the right side, sometime on the left, then they depart and dissipate, that is, they goe and retourne.

To presage of the signes of *Life* and *Death*,  
in hot Feuers.

**W**hen the Patient is cold in the head, hands & feet, and that the sides & belly are burning & vehement hot, it is a signe of an euill and dangerous Malady. But when the sicke person doth easily turne himselfe from one  
side



## Hippocrates.

side to another without trouble; also when all the body is equally hot, and saourie. it is a signe of salubritie. On the contrarie side, when all the members are heauie, or the armes & legges, or all the body, it is to be feared. And if the Nails be therewith liuide or leaden, one may prognosticate Death approaching. But if the Nails, fingers and feet be altogether black, it is not so dangerous a signe, especially when any other good signe doth appeare, as if the Patient feele no great dolour, and beareth it strongly, and endureth his sicknes without anguish, albeit that which is black will fall away, and the diuine or leaden will be euacuated by Apostume.

To presage by signes taken from the *Genitors*,  
and *Parde*, in feuers.

**W**hen the *Genitors* and *Parde* are shronke in, and apparantly diminished against nature, it is a signe of great dolour, and present death. Evill signe.

To presage by *Sleeping* and *Dreaming*  
in feuers.

**A**s for sleeping and slumbering, the one is naturall and healthfull, and the other vnnaturall and vicious. The naturall rest is taken in the night, and waking in the day: And although it is not altogether wholesome to sleepe from the breake of the day to 8. or 9. of the clocke at morning, yet notwithstanding it is more profitable, then to sleepe in the rest of the day: But if one neither sleepe by night nor day, it is dangerous, and a signe of great dolour, of folly, of alienation of senses, reason, and understanding, eyther present or future.

To



## The Prefages of.

To prefage by purging of the Belly, or fecall excrements, in feuers.

Dangerous  
Accidents.

Good signe.

**A**s for easing of the Belly, and euacuating of superfluities and excrements, it is best when the sicke person followes the custome in Maladies which he did in health, & especially according to the qualitie and quantitie of his diet. For how much the more it is dissonant and different, it is so much the worse. The naturall egestion ought not to be too liquide or adust, but indifferently proportioned & compounded in colour to the meates, and that the Patient goe to stoule without paine or dolour. And if the matter be liquide, it is not altogether to be disliked when it comes without ventositie or violence, & not often in a short time. For so it would make the person, weake, debile, froward, and in danger of swooning, and death: It is also to be allowed about the end of the Malady, that the egestion & excrementall matter become thicke and not too dry, and of a good colour, as drawing nere to red and browne, and be not verie unsauorie. Also if there come forth wormes about the end of the sickness with the excrements, it is a good signe. Likewise in euery Maladie the belly ought to be fleshie and not round, nor full of wind, otherwise it is no good signe. Furthermore the egestion and excrementall matter being liquide and waterie, white, or pale, greatly red, or froathy, is dangerous: the most all is black, and liquide, or greene, unsauory, and slimy. And if it be of diuers of the forenamed colours together, it is no lesse dangerous but of longer continuance: also when there is peeling of the guts or Carbuncles and little skinne, all such are most all.

To prefage of Wind in the *Intestines*, and *Matrice*.

**T**he ventositie and Wind enclosed in the belly issuing forth gently and voluntarily, without making noyse



## Hippocrates.

or sound, and without straining or forcing the Fundament and inferiour parts, is the best and most wholesome. That which cometh forth unconstrained, making a noyse, is better then to retaine it. But if it goeth out with sound & noyse against the Patients will, it signifieth dolorous torsion in the belly, or alienation & confusion of reason.

To presage of *Ventositie* causing Inflation.

**T**he dolours Recent in the belly by Inflation and tumors, and the Inflation by burning, & heate, making noyse, rumbling, and motion in the belly, are cured especially by the benefit of the belly, or by expulsion of wind downward, or by Urine, or if they change the place and descend downward.

To presage by the *Urine* in feuers.

**T**he Urine that is healthfull in euerie Maladie, ought to haue the Residence in the bottome white or pyramiddall, hauing the figure of a peare or little fine apple, a good token, being thick, then it signifieth breuity of the sickness, and the more that it perseuereth, the more it is to be allowed & sure. And if sometime & for certaine daies in the Maladie it be such, and in some daies without Residence, it signifieth prolixitie of sickness & lesse securitie, and the more it differs from the first, the worse it is. The Urine being red or high coloured with the Hipostasie, or light and equall residence, signifieth the Maladie to bee longer then the precedent where there is no Hipostasie, but lesse dangerous. Also when there is grosse Resolutions, as bran or dust in the bottome of the Urine, it is an euill signe, and worse where they are like scales of fishe. The Urine white and subtile, is exceeding bad, albeit the forementioned is worse where there is grosse resolutions. The cloud hanging in the Urine signifieth securitie if it be white, for the black is dangerous

Euill signe.

C



## The Prefages of

Sure signe of  
Death.  
Mortal signes  
in Children.

gerous ; moreover the Urine being yellow and very cleare and subtil in the Malady, sheweth continuitie of sickness, grosse in digestion and crudity. Therefore it is to be feared least the sick person decay before the humors come to perfect concoction, and least the Patient die. The Urine significative of certaine death and unfaillible is unsavourie, slimy and muddy, as dirt and myze, and is tawny, browne, black, and thick. Furthermore the black as well in man as woman is alwaies bad : and the subtle and the cleare as water, is also mortall in little children. The Urine being raw, cleare, and undigested, persevering so long in the maladie without other euill signes, but with good and healthfull, sheweth a future Apostume lower then the Diaphragme or ribbes : The Urine hauing as it were a cobweb swimming aboue, signifieth that the person shall die. Dry & thick it sheweth consumption of the body : you must also consider the place and colour of the cloude, for if it bee nere the bottome of the Urine, it is a good signe, hauing the colour nere vnto white. And if it be swimming aboue and the top blacke, it is dangerous, and uncertaine. Finally as for the Iudgement of Urines, take heede aboue all, that you be not deceiued by the Bladder: For they may appeare such by the diseases of it : And if the Bladder bee not diseased, thy iudgement shalbe certaine, therefore take heed.

To prefage of Vomiting good and bad in fevers.

Mortall signe  
in vomiting.

**A**s for Vomiting, the most healthfull and allowable is composed of Phlegme and coler not too thicke or too viscus nor superfluous : the chollerick or phlegmatick onely, is viscus : the vomiting being green, liuide, or black, is dangerous, and if it be compounded of Greene, liuide, & black altogether, it is mortall. Likewise if it be unsavourie with one of these forenamed colours, it signifieth death approaching : For the Pus is viscus in all vomiting and also euery extremit.

To



## Hippocrates.

### To presage by the *Spittle* in feuers.

**A**s for *Spittle*, it is sayd to be commendable in all pulmonick diseases & Maladies vnder the Ribs when it cometh earely in the first dayes, and beginning after the maladie without great paine and labour, beinge of a redde colour or mingled with blood and well digested not viscos. But if it come not in the first dayes, but afterward with a vehement cough, it is no good signe; also the red not being mingled with the healthfull and commendable, is perniti-  
ous. The white spittle viscos & knotty is dangerous, but the pure red is worse. The Greene and fleshie giueth notice of a dangerous and bad malady. The black about all is mortall: moreouer when the matter which ought to be purged by spitting, remaineth within the Lights & troubleth the wind-pipe, there is no securitie: The spittle also being cleare or red, sanguinolent in apostume & pulmonick infla-  
tion comming in the beginning of the malady, promiset in the first dayes security & health to the patient. But if such egestion continue to the seauenth day or more, it is suspiti-  
ous & vncertaine. Also spittle whereby the dolour doth not cease but perseuer, is not commendable, but viscos. And although the black as wee haue shewed before is mortall, notwithstanding if the dolo: doe thereby cease, it is lesse dan-  
gerous, and more healthfull.

### To presage of *Neesing* in feuers.

**T**he *Neesing* in all hot Maladies, & other how dange-  
rous soeuer they be (except they proceed of the Lungs)  
at any time is commendable & profitable. But being with  
rume & distillation at the nose in Maladies of the Lungs,  
whether it cometh in the malady, or presently after it, is  
dangerous



## The Presages of

To presage of *Suppuration* or matter in  
*Apostumes.*

**T**he dolour aboue mentioned which ceaseth not by spit-  
ting, nor by the benefit of the belly, nor by phleboto-  
mie, nor by laxative Medicines, or good Regiment, signi-  
fieth that the Apostume commeth to Suppuration, and  
Matter. And when the Apostume breaketh and purgeth,  
the Spittle being cholericke, whether the matter of the  
Apostume come with the Spittle, or issueth out after, it is  
perillous; especially when it commeth and beginneth in  
the 7. day or after, it is to be feared that the Patient shall  
die on the 14. day, if there happen no other healthfull and  
commendable signes.

To presage by signes of good hope and commen-  
dable in the foresaid Maladies and others.

**W**hen the sick person doth strongly endure the griefe,  
and if hee draw his breath lightly and at ease, and  
breatheasily without dolour, and feele not any paine, but  
spit without difficultie, and remoue his whole body and  
all his members at his pleasure, without griefe or weari-  
nesse, and that hee hath no exceeding and superfluous heate  
in him without great thirst and drynesse, they be good signes:  
Moreover if the Urine and excrements in all the conduits  
are in due quantitie, & qualitie, & of a commendable coloure  
and substance, as the matter fecall, also being of good con-  
sistence & not too hard, but as in health: the sweat vniuer-  
sall, hot, with ease, also the spittle gentle and commenda-  
ble, and sleepe in the night and so of others as we haue spo-  
ken, are good signes.

To presage of the signes opposite of despaire.

**I**f the sicknesse be intollerable, and doloure insupportable  
with burning heate, & extreame thirst, continuall cough,  
sickness



## Hippocrates.

stiffnesse of members, languishing, short aspiration, filthy spittle, and unsauorie, Urine of a small quantitie, the matter fecall, liuide, liquide, or watery and slimy, and often particular sweat and cold without rest of the day or night, the hands, feet, and sozehead cold, tossing too & fro, and all other euill signes taken in the face: By all which, or many of them, thou shalt prognosticate suddain or lingring death without discredit or dishonour, but shalt be in great reputation and estimation.

To presage by the signes of the time and day of  
the Rupture of the *Apostume*.

**S**ome Apostumes breake and appeare on the 20 Day, or Difference of  
Others differ vnto 40, others to 90. daies. Therefore to Apostumes.  
presage well, thou shalt enquire out the first day, and the beginning of the Malady, viz. when the Patient did first feele heate and the feuer, also stiffnesse and standing vp of the haire, heauines, also dolour and pricking: When thou shalt begin to reckon the daies, and by this meanes thou maist prognosticate infallibly of the euent. Thou shalt also presage if there be Apostume on the one side, or both, by this meanes: aske the Patient if he feele dolour on the one side more then the other, then cause him to lie on the side which is sound, and if he feele heauinesse and ponderositie, it followeth, that the same side where the ponderositie is, is Apostumed, and there is the collection and matter: and if he feele dolour, heate and heauines on both, it will follow, that both sides are Apostumed: Thou shalt knowe the Apostume and collection to be ripe and broken, and the matter retained in the part Apostumed, when the feuer doth not cease, and it is lesse by day then night, and that the Patients sweats abundantly, and ceaseth not to cough, and voides not almost any thing: like wise if his eyes sink in his head, and cheekes are red, the nailes crookes, and the ends and extremities of the fingers turne, and the appetite decayeth,



## The Prefages of.

Be well aduised in prognosticating.

decayeth, and the feete swell, and there is almost through all the body pimples and pustules, these signes do appeare when the matter and Apostume is of longe continuance, & are certaine signes of future health. Therefore to prognosticate whether the Apostume will breake soone or late, consider that spoken of before : for if the cough in the beginning and first dayes doe oppresse the sicke person with dolour and often spitting, and egestion, with difficultie of breath, you may Judge that the Apostume will break within 20. dayes, and if the contrarie happen that the signes be hindered, the rupture will be prolonged : & as the signes be strong or feeble, so the ruption is inueterated or shortened. And to know if there be perill or danger, or probabilitie of health, consider the day whereon the Apostume breakes if the feuer and thirst cease, and the appetite returne, and if the fecall matter be solide, & if the matter of the Apostume be white and equally soft, and come forth without dolour and without coughing : these things are present signes of health. Otherwise when the feuer doth not cease, or presently retourne with great thirst, without appetite, and the fecall matter be watery, the spittle liuide, Greene, and slimy, and in part phlegmatick, thou mayest prognosticate death. And if there happen some good signes, and some bad, compare the one with the other, and diligently advise before thou presage, to the end thou maiest auoyd infamy. For some die presently, others are prolonged and then die in the end, others at length retourne to their health.

To presage of *Apostumes* that come about the *Eares* in pulmonick passions, or diseases of the lungs.

**W**hen the Apostume happeneth about or vnder the Eares, of the sicke person with difficulty of death, & that the same Apostume cometh to maturation, and purgeth and ingendereth a Fistule, it saueth the Patient. And



## Hippocrates.

to prognosticate when it will come, ye shall note this which followeth: when the Feuer continueth in the sayd malady, and the colour is permanent, the Spittle unpertinent and not commendable, and the belly doth not his dutie, euacuating the choller or liquide matter, and the Urine is in small quantitie with abundance of Residence, but all other good signes shewing securitie, then thou shalt p̄sage the future Apostumes to be neere the Care, especially when there is Inflammation vnder the sides and Diaphragme. And if there be no Inflammation nor dolour in the said place, but the Patient hath difficultie of breath, the which goeth away without manifest cause, then the Apostume comes aboue the Care.

To p̄sage of Pustules or Apostumes that come in the Feet.

**I**n vehement and perillous Maladies of the Lungs, there happeneth for the view and health of the Patient little pustules in the Feet, and especially when the spittle is sodainly changed from red to white, it is a most certaine signe of health, for by such spittle the pustule and dolour ceaseth, but if the spittle turne not from red to white, and that the Urine be not good, nor the residence commendable, the Patient shall be in danger to become lame by contraction of the nerves and ioyntures where the same pustule is. If the said pustule or little Apostume in the fete be hidde and vanish away, or that it goe and come without purgation or maturation: Or else if the Apostume in the side called *Periphneumonia* (for it is in the Lungs) be not purged by commendable spittle, and that the Feuer remaine, the Patient is in daunger to lose his vnderstanding, & thereafter to die. Furthermore of the aforesaid pulmonick maladies those which are aged, but not very old (as of 50. yeares) die more often then they who are yonger. And



## The Prefages of.

And young persons die most commonly of another kinde of Apollume: Moreover the person hauing great dolour in the belly lower then the Paull, or drawing neere vpon the thigh with any feuer: and the dolour leauing his place, doe ascend vp towards the Ribbes, it is very dangerous. For then one or two euill signes doe foreshew death, but if there be many good signes, as easie spitting, white, and not vnsauourie, it is a signe of euasion: the red and vnsauourie is mortall: and if there be not any euill signe, there is hope that the euill will come to suppuration and matter.

To prefage by the signes of the *Bladder*, in feuers.

**T**he hardnesse and great dolour of the *Bladder* is mortall, specially with quotidian feuer. It hapneth often with constipation, therfore it is mortall without remission: Mortall signe. But if the *Urine* be like the matter of the Apollume, with Residence white and pointed, and thereby the dolour ceaseth, there is hope. Some hope. But if the dolour be not allwaged, and the bladder mollified, and the feuer taken away by such *Urine*, iudge present death: and this happeneth more to Children of Heauen or Fourtene yeares of age, than to any others of elder age.

Heere endeth the second Booke.







## The third Booke of Prefages of Diuine Hippocrates;

### How to prefage of Feuers.

**T**HE End of the Feuer happeneth to one, and that with death, and to an other with life in the same day. And if it tende vnto life, all good signes doe appeare in the first dayes, whereby thou shalt prognosticate the end in the 4. day, or before. And if the Feuer be mortal, all euill signes giue notice of death in the 4. day or before the first period and day of Iudgement or critication, and the end or tearme of the Feuer is (as we haue said) in the 4. day: the second on the seauenth: the 4. on the 20. day, the which number doth augment by quaternaries, and is produced to the 20. day in the Feuer and hotte maladies, and they ought to be nombred by whole quaternaries. For the yeere and moneth cannot be counted by number of whole & complete daies, as by this computation, wee make three weekes of 20. daies, which is called one moneth or yeere of the Moone. So after this computation and augmentation, the first shall be the 20. day, the second the 40. day, the third the 60. day, and it is to be noted, that the trouile maladies are of long continuance, and of more difficile indication, knowledge and prognostication. Therefore it must be looked vnto more exactly. For their beginnings are secret, and shew no signe of digestion. If therefore you will diligently contemplate it, you shall be able to prognosticate to what end the Feuer shall come. Likewise the quartan Feuer obserueth the foresaid matter in his crications and indications, or weekes of Iudgement. For that which is done in others by number of daies, in this is done



## The Prefages of

Healthfull  
signes.

Euill signes.

Flux of blood  
in the begin-  
ning.

A dangerous  
token.

done by number of fittes and periods. The short & brieue maladies are of more easie presagement and knowledge: For it changeth presently, & in the first dayes from good to better, or from badde to worse. The healthfull signes are known by this, that the patient hath good easie breath, and feels no dolour, and sleepest in the night, and other holisome signes. The mortall or dangerous are knowne, when the patient hath difficultie of breath & great dolour, and resteth not in the night, with other badde signes, wherby one may prognosticate death. To the end thou mayest presage well, thou shalt consider all the signes of digestion, the time, houres, and dayes, in which the sick are most afflicted. And if the Malady happen to women in child-birth, or some after they be deliuered, beginne to reckon from the day of her deliuerie, and not from the day wherein the feuer began. Also to speake generally, when one feels vehement dolour in the head & continue with any feuer. If there happen any euill signe with the foresayd, it is a signe of death. But if the dolour and feuer continue and perseuer to the 20. day, thou maist presage flure of bloud at the nose, or apostumes in the inferiour parts of the body, if there be no other signe. Sometime also there happeneth in the beginning & first daies, flure of bloud at the nose, or apostumes, principally when the dolour is in the forehead & parts nere adioyning. And it is to be noted, that the said flure of bloud happeneth most often to persons of 30. or 35. yeeres of age. And apostumes or collections to those which are elder. Also if the patient in the continuall feuer hath great dolour and apostumes in the eare, it is a dangerous signe. For oftentimes the person loseth his vnderstanding, and dyeth. Therefore one ought well to speculate the good and euill signes in the beginning of the maladie: for yong persons sicke of this maladie, doe often die in seuen dayes: But olde persons die not so sone. For the feuer cannot bee so hotte in them, nor the alienation of the spirit so vehement. Therefore the Apostume cometh to maturation, suppuration



## Hippocrates.

ration and matter : But if olde persons haue the relapse, they comonly die. And the young die befoze that the Apostume of of the eare come to maturation, except that which cometh forth be white & digested with other good signes, then they recouer their health. Also if there happen in the continuall feuer and hotte Maladie, vlceration of the throat or windpipe, it is most dangerous and badde, especially when there happeneth other maligne and mortall signes.

### To presage of the Squinancie in the Throat.

**A**LL manner of Squinancie is dangerous, for it killeth the person presently, especially when there is no appearance of apostume, or tumor upon the neck, or in the throat, and that he suffereth grievous dolour, and cannot aspire, nor respire, or drawe his breath. When it killeth the patient in the first, second, third, or fourth day at the furthest. Also when eminence and great rednesse appeareth with vehement dolour, it is no lesse dangerous, but more tardy and of longer continuance. But where there is eminence and rednesse upon the necke or throat, but especially in the breast, it is more tardy and lesse dangerous, then the superiour kinds. And if it doe not hide it selfe and goe in againe, it is a good signe. But if the said Squinancie & tumor doth augment in the day of crication, & that it do not purge outwardly, or by the spittle, although the diseased person feele himselfe eased, and without great dolour : it is an euill signe and mortall, or signe of Relapse. It is then a better signe and lesse dangerous, when the tumor and rednesse appeareth outwardly. For if it descend vnto the lungs, the patient is in danger to lose his vnderstanding, although sometimes the said collection come to suppuration, matter, and purgation.



## The Prefages of

To preface of the *Inula*, *Gargarion*, or *Collumella*.

**I**t is a thing dangerous and mortall to incise the *Inula*, *Gargarion*, or *Collumella* being swollen, grosse or red. For eyther it is found in the *Apostume* and inflammation, or else there followeth great flux of blood. Therefore one must labour to heale and cure the patient by some other meanes. And if he cannot, and that it be liuide or pale, and that the superiour part be little, and not tumified nor swollen, but the inferiour part tumified and rounde, you may without danger incise and open it, and so cure it. And if you know that the Patient is not in daunger to fall into suffocation, and so die, the chiefe thing shall be to purge the belly, if you haue the oportunitie and time.

Signe of *Apostume*.

Heere doth diuine *Hippocrates* returne to speake of feuers. **W**hen the hot *Feuer* doth not cease, nor giue rest to the Patient in one or moe daies of *crisis*, without other good signes thou mayst prognosticate *Relapse*. And the *Feuer* with healthfull Signes is when the patient is not molested with great dolour, nor labour, and that there is no other manifest cause, thou mayst prognosticate *Apostume* and inflammation in the winters and inferiour parts, and specially to those who do not exceed 30. or 35. yeeres. Neuerthelesse the same *Apostume* doeth not often happen befoze the 20. day of the *Feuer*, specially to those who are aged : although that the *feuer* continue longer to old persons, then to young : such *Apostume* also doth happen commonly in continuall feuers, which keepeth no order nor manner of accesse or fittes, called wandering or vncertaine feuers. viz. afflicting easely twice or thrise a day, then ceasing as long, and afterward returning without obseruing any order : Oftentimes they change into *quartan* feuers, especially about harvest. And as the foresaid *Apostume* doth happen most often to young persons, so the *quartan* *feuer* happeneth to men and women that are in yeeres. And as for the nature of the *Apostumes*, they doe most vsually and commonly



## Hippocrates.

commonly happen in winter, but are most slow, and prolix, and lesse subiect to relaxe.

To presage by signes of vomiting in Feuers.

**W**hen it seemes to y<sup>e</sup> sebeditant that there are flies & black things appeare befoze his eyes, with dolor in the head, without other bad signes or mortall, thou mayest presage vomiting of yellow choloz, especially when the patient feelles dolor at the mouth, or opening of the stomack. And if he feeles stiffenes, chilnes, or cold with it, in the inferior parts, & vnder the *Hypochondria*, the vomiting shall be so much the more hastened. And if the patient doe then eate and take repast, he shall presently vomit. And to presage most apparantly when the dolor of the head molesteth the person in the first day of the feuer, & be augmented the fourth or fift day, the feuer will end on the seauenth, & the person shall be cured. And if the dolor begin the third day, and augment in the fift or seauenth, the feuer shall end the xijth or eleauenth day. And if the dolor begin the fift day with convenient vrine, and other good signes it shall end the 24. day, and this happeneth aswell in women, as in men, and especially in tertian feuers to persons of 30. yeeres of age, & to young persons in continuall feuers, and perfit tertians. And when there doe not appeare flies in the feuer with dolor of the head, nor black things coruscant and resplendent, or shining as lampes, and splendor, or brightnes, & that the patient feelles torsion, or tumor, or inflation vnder on of the sides, he shall haue in place of vomiting, inflammation, and of dolor, flux of blood at nose, and this happeneth chiefly to yong persons vnder 30. yeeres, and to older most commonly vomiting. And yong children vnder 7. yeares olde fall into a swoond be hot feuers, specially when they are bound or constipated in the belly, and sleepe & change color, sometime pale, then red, græne, or liuide: but those which excede 7. or 8. yeeres, they fall most often into a swoond, if there happen not some perillous & dangerous signes, as of Phrensie.



## The Prefages of.

The Conclusion of the whole Booke of the Prefages  
of Hippocrates.

To preface  
life or death.

**N**OW then for final conclusion, let the Mediciner, Chirurgion or Physitian labour to know the sick persons and maladies: also the good and wholesome, and the evil and mortall accidents of them, as well in young folkes, as old, and in all infirmities, especially fevers, to the end to preface life to one, and death to another: also the breuitie and prolixitie of euery malady, and the transmutations and other inconueniences, collecting & accumulating all signes good and bad, and considering and comparing the superiour and inferiour, which are able to ouerthrowe, or saue the patient, and that by urine, fecall matter, spittle, sweate, and other excrements & superfluities comming out of the body. Moreover let him practise to consider, & speculate, or note as well the time of dayes present, as past, viz. the variation of weather by winds, colde, heate, drought and humiditie, and the condition of the whole yeere, and foure parts: as the Spring, Sommer, Harvest, & Winter. For although that all maladies may happen at all times, yet some doe more commonly happen at one time then another. And some signes that be good or badde, come and happen rather in one day, houre, or moment, then in another. And to the end thou mayst not doubt to preface and prognosticate according to the doctrine and prescribed instructions, know that we haue here experimented these things in Ethiopia, Mauritania, Lybia, in the Ile of Delos, in Hesperia and Scythia, briefly in the Orient, Occident South & North: and haue found it true as wee haue shewed. And therefore doe not despaire, but take courage, and endeuour thy selfe to knowe the said things, and thou shalt easily attaine to greater knowledge of things, then thou canst imagine, and shalt maruaile howe these thinges can so well concurre, and succede so rightly. And if thou doest well ponderate my principles, doubt not at last that there can happen



## Hippocrates.

happen any malladies to thee, whereof thou mayst doubt,  
or cannot haue the knowledge of : and that by the sayd in-  
structions, if thou doest vnderstand them well, and especi-  
ally in these which obserue dayes of affliction, and manner  
of Paroxisme, and which end in one certaine number of  
dayes and certaine space as we haue sayd, if thou  
wilt speculate exactly, and take  
mature deliberation.

FINIS.





*[Faint, mostly illegible handwritten text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]*

3-8

*[Faint handwritten text at the bottom of the page, possibly a signature or date.]*











